

**PSYCHOLOGY IN EDUCATION**

McGraw-Hill Series in Education  
HAROLD BENJAMIN, Consulting Editor

---

- AYARS • Administering the People's Schools  
BARON AND BERNARD • Evaluation Techniques for Classroom Teachers  
BEAUMONT AND MACOMBER • Psychological Factors in Education  
BOGUE • The Community College  
BROOM, DUNCAN, EMIG, AND STEUBER • Effective Reading Instruction  
BROWNELL, GANS, AND MAROON • Public Relations in Education  
BRUBACHER • A History of the Problems of Education  
BRUBACHER • Modern Philosophies of Education  
BUTTERWORTH AND DAWSON • The Modern Rural School  
BUTTS • A Cultural History of Western Education  
CARTER AND MCGINNIS • Learning to Read  
COOK AND COOK • Intergroup Education  
COOK AND COOK • School Problems in Human Relations  
CROW AND CROW • Mental Hygiene  
CROXTON • Science in the Elementary School  
DE BOER, KACLFERS, AND MILLER • Teaching Secondary English  
FERNALD • Remedial Techniques in Basic Subjects  
FOREST • Early Years at School  
FRANSDEN • How Children Learn  
GRUBER AND BEATTY • Secondary School Activities  
HAGMAN • The Administration of American Public Schools  
HAGMAN • Administration of Elementary Schools  
HAMMOCK AND OWINGS • Supervising Instruction in Secondary Schools  
HAMMONDS • Teaching Agriculture  
HECK • The Education of Exceptional Children  
JORDAN • Measurement in Education  
KEMPFER • Adult Education  
MCNERNEY • The Curriculum  
MCNERNEY • Educational Supervision  
MACOMBER • Teaching in the Modern Secondary School

---

MAYS • Essentials of Industrial Education  
MAYS • Principles and Practices of Vocational Education  
MELVIN • General Methods of Teaching  
MEYER • An Educational History of the American People  
MICHEELS AND KARNES • Measuring Educational Achievement  
MICKELSON AND HANSEN • Elementary School Administration  
MILLARD AND HUGGETT • An Introduction to Elementary Education  
MORT AND ROSS • Principles of School Administration  
MORT AND VINCENT • Introduction to American Education  
MORT AND VINCENT • Modern Educational Practice  
MOUSTAKAS • The Teacher and the Child  
MURSELL • Developmental Teaching  
MURSELL • Successful Teaching  
MYERS • Principles and Techniques of Vocational Guidance  
PITTENGER • Local Public School Administration  
PRESCOTT • The Child in the Educative Process  
REMMLEIN • The Law of Local Public School Administration  
REMMLEIN • School Law  
RICHEY • Planning for Teaching  
SAMPFORD AND COTTE • Social Studies in the Secondary School  
SCHORLING AND BATCHELDER • Student Teaching in Secondary Schools  
SEARS • The Nature of the Administrative Process  
SOBENSEN • Psychology in Education  
STRANG, McCULLOUGH, AND TRAXLER • Problems in the Improvement of Reading  
THUT AND GERBERICH • Foundations of Method for Secondary Schools  
WEBER • Personnel Problems of School Administrators  
WELLS • Elementary Science Education  
WILSON, STONE, AND DALRYMPLE • Teaching the New Arithmetic  
WINSLOW • The Integrated School Art Program  
YOAKAM • Basal Reading Instruction

# PSYCHOLOGY IN EDUCATION

HERBERT SORENSON  
University of Kentucky

---

THIRD EDITION

MLSU - CENTRAL LIBRARY



17852EX

McGRAW-HILL BOOK COMPANY, INC.  
1954 New York Toronto London



# Preface

In this third edition the author has tried to present a text that keeps step with the developments in educational psychology and related fields. He has also tried to anticipate trends and growing areas of emphasis.

The problem of organization of content for a course in educational psychology is a very troublesome one. It is doubtful that the organization of a textbook will suit a given professor, or even the author himself, fully. Generally, however, a professor adjusts the content of the textbook he is using to the organization of his own course.

The two chapters on evaluating and reporting the student's achievement and adjustment are placed at the beginning of the text. This is done so that the professor can correlate the content of these two chapters with a discussion of how he determines the marks for his students in educational psychology, for he usually mentions this at the beginning of the course.

Comparably, it has been considered desirable for the content of Chap. 3, *How to Study and Learn*, to be taken up early in the course so that the student will have more opportunity to apply the ideas and principles of that chapter.

The chapters on physical, social, and mental development are not in consecutive order but are placed where it is believed that they integrate best with the adjacent chapters. The chapter on Human Physical Growth and Development is presented early so that students will learn at the beginning of the course how function is dependent upon structure. In a general way the chapters fall into the following areas:

1. Evaluation, marking, and reporting achievement and adjustment.
2. How to study and learn.
3. Physical growth and development.
4. Motivation, emotional health, and mental hygiene of teacher and pupil.
5. Social growth and development.
6. Learning capacity, mental growth and development, meaning

# Preface

In this third edition the author has tried to present a text that keeps step with the developments in educational psychology and related fields. He has also tried to anticipate trends and growing areas of emphasis.

The problem of organization of content for a course in educational psychology is a very troublesome one. It is doubtful that the organization of a textbook will suit a given professor, or even the author himself, fully. Generally, however, a professor adjusts the content of the textbook he is using to the organization of his own course.

The two chapters on evaluating and reporting the student's achievement and adjustment are placed at the beginning of the text. This is done so that the professor can correlate the content of these two chapters with a discussion of how he determines the marks for his students in educational psychology, for he usually mentions this at the beginning of the course.

Comparably, it has been considered desirable for the content of Chap. 3, How to Study and Learn, to be taken up early in the course so that the student will have more opportunity to apply the ideas and principles of that chapter.

The chapters on physical, social, and mental development are not in consecutive order but are placed where it is believed that they integrate best with the adjacent chapters. The chapter on Human Physical Growth and Development is presented early so that students will learn at the beginning of the course how function is dependent upon structure. In a general way the chapters fall into the following areas:

1. Evaluation, marking, and reporting achievement and adjustment.
2. How to study and learn.
3. Physical growth and development.
4. Motivation, emotional health, and mental hygiene of teacher and pupil.
5. Social growth and development.
6. Learning capacity, mental growth and development, meaning

of intelligence, educational guidance, individual differences and provisions for them.

7. Heredity and environment, nature and nurture.

8. Learning—progress and growth through learning; theories and principles; attention and motivation; memory; mental discipline and transfer; fatigue and efficiency; learning through projects and problems.

This sketchy outline is set forth so that the organization may be quickly grasped and any readjustments which the individual professor may wish to make may thus be facilitated.

The author is indebted to many: to those researchers whose materials he has quoted, and also to those whose ideas he assimilated more or less successfully; to Professor Arthur G. Butzbach for constructive criticisms; and to Professor George H. Fahey for detailed evaluations of the manuscript. Dr. Fahey's insightful analysis of many aspects of the manuscript was very helpful and greatly appreciated. The author acknowledges the help of his wife Mabel, who spent as many, if not more, hours in the library and on the manuscript as did the author, and she has probably experienced more temporary frustrations also.

Herbert Sorenson

# Contents

	vii
Preface	1
1. Measuring the Learning and Achievement of Pupils	21
2. Reporting the Achievement and Adjustment of Pupils	40
3. How to Study and Learn	66
4. Human Physical Growth and Development	100
5. Our Needs, Wants, Urges, Drives, and Motives	118
6. Mental and Emotional Health	153
7. Healthy Behavior and Personal Adjustment	189
8. Personality and the Mental Hygiene of the Teacher	208
9. Social Growth and Development	237
10. Measuring the Capacity for Learning	258
11. Mental Growth and Development	278
12. Intelligence, Its Meanings, Organization, and Relationships	304
13. Learning Capacity and Progress in School	326
14. Providing for the Differences in Capacities and Interests	347
15. Heredity, Environment, and Human Development	379
16. The Progress of Growth and Development through Learning	401
17. Principles and Theories of Learning	424
18. Interest, Attention, Incentives, and Motivation	449
19. Memory—Remembering and Forgetting	467
20. Mental Discipline and Transfer	499
21. Fatigue, Drugs, Atmospheric Conditions, and Efficiency	523
22. The Activity and Project Method of Teaching	

Appendix: Discussion of Some Statistical and Experimental Concepts That Are Contained in the Book	539
Glossary	545
Bibliography	555
Text-films on Educational Psychology	569
Index	571

# 1. Measuring the Learning and Achievement of Pupils

**What to Look For.** Learn about the characteristics of the essay examination and its advantages and disadvantages.

The objective, or short-answer, test is described; its advantages and disadvantages should also be studied.

What are the different kinds of items in the objective test, and how are they scored?

What is educational age? Geography age? Reading age? Arithmetic age?

The educational quotient is the ratio of general educational achievement age to chronological age. Note that there are quotients for specific subjects.

The accomplishment quotient seems very good in theory but is not satisfactory for practical use.

How can the examination limit education, but also how can it be used to stimulate learning? What good educational purposes can the examination serve?

**Introduction.** A group of high-school students were talking about examinations.

Mary said that she liked the essay examination better because the short-answer test pinned one down to so many details:

Jim replied, "You write a very legible hand, and the teachers like your writing, but they can hardly read mine."

"I like the short-answer test," countered Earl. "It covers the subject, and your answer is either right or wrong."

"It seems that our education centers too much on examinations, on passing them to get a mark," was Ned's objection. Ned did much independent reading and did not like to be closely controlled by examinations.

Susan felt that "examinations, especially the objective type, would be better if they covered main ideas and meanings and didn't include so much inconsequential detail."

"Just to see if we have read every word," was Nan's explanation.

not touched on by any of the questions. They also add that questions were asked about material that had not been assigned. In other words, the questions did not cover all the material in the course and covered some not included. After the examination is marked and discussed, the same students may discover that they misinterpreted one or more of the questions. They did not realize that the teacher was asking for a particular response. Had they known just what the teacher meant, they would have answered the question satisfactorily. They protest mentally, if not verbally, that they received too little credit for an answer that they think is better than the teacher judged it to be. The individual student may be rationalizing with such arguments; but, on the whole, these objections often have some validity. Factors of inclusiveness, interpretation, and judgment sometimes tend to discredit the essay examination.

**Various Advantages Claimed for the Essay Examination.** Certain advantages are claimed for the essay examination. One is that the student is given an opportunity to express himself. Thus he can organize his materials and present them in written form as logically and completely as he is able. He is given an opportunity to evaluate the relative importance of facts and information. In doing so, it is possible for him to exercise judgment in drawing from his fund of information and show originality in setting forth his ideas. Composition, which gives play to the imagination, initiative, powers of judgment and association, and individuality, may be regarded as valuable.

Ordinarily, the essay examination is not used in a manner that achieves such fine training. Usually the student is too hurried. He writes as rapidly as he can, putting down the answers that he thinks the teacher wants. From the standpoint of composition, the examination papers are generally not good because they have been so hurriedly and carelessly written. Nor is the student encouraged to exercise his initiative by presenting his own interpretations and bringing to bear on the question supplementary, although not immediately related, facts. He does not have time to weigh facts and organize them. For these reasons, the essay examination as usually conducted does not have all the virtues claimed for it.

Still, it must not be assumed that, because the essay examination does not always produce the desired results, these results cannot be obtained. Perhaps if teachers set out to realize the virtues that are attributed to the essay examination, they could do so. If haste and carelessness cause the students to learn bad habits in composition rather than good ones, they should be given more time to devote to careful composition of their answers. They should be told that simple, direct, and accurate presentation of their facts and ideas is best. When

for he knows that some of the items are not true and therefore has the proper mind-set for them.

The modified true-false provides for supplying the words that will make the false items true. The student is asked to supply the words that if substituted for the underlined words will make the statement true.

The following three items are false, and this fact is indicated by the zeros in parentheses. Because the items are false, words are to be supplied to the right of each item by the student, and if these words are substituted for the underlined words in the item, then the item will be true. For example, if *middle value* is substituted for *highest value*, then the item becomes true, as the second item does also if *median* is substituted for *mode*. If an item is true, there are no words to supply.

- (O) The median is the highest value in the distribution. middle value
- (O) The mode is a score or value above which the number of values is equal to the number below. median
- (O) A good sample consists of only the highest scores. representative scores

Great care must be exercised in preparing true-false items. Their preparation is a good exercise in writing clear, simple English. Long sentences containing several clauses may lead to conflicting interpretations. Each statement should therefore be a clear expression that is indisputably right or wrong.

The score on a true-false test may be determined as the number right or as the score obtained when the number wrong is subtracted from the number right ( $R - W$ ). Scoring by the rights minus the wrongs ( $R - W$ ) gives a better range of scores for a class and thus provides better differentiation of abilities.

The accompanying tabulation will make clear these facts. Let us assume that there are 100 items in the test. The range of the number

Number right (R).....	100	90	80	70	60	50
Number wrong (W).....	0	10	20	30	40	50
$R - W$ .....	100	80	60	40	20	0

right is 50, that is, from 50 to 100. The range of the scores when  $R - W$  is used is 100, that is, from 0 to 100. The latter scores are a better index of the student's ability than the number right. For example, the pupils who get 50 right and 50 wrong may know nothing about the subject, because by chance there might be 50 correct and 50 incorrect answers. The person getting 50 R and 50 W should receive a score of 0, as he does when the W's are subtracted from the R's. The same results are obtained by taking two times the number



wrong from the total number of true-false items, which in this case is 100.

In the case of the pupil who gets 70 right and 30 wrong, it may be assumed that, of the 70 correctly answered, 30 were answered correctly by chance or guess. The score of 40 represents the number of statements for which the student had the correct answer. Of the other 60 he most probably guessed wrong or had the wrong answer for 30 and for the other 30 guessed the right answer. Thus, the net score is 40. It is assumed that, of the right answers, the number that are right by chance or guess equal the number that are wrong for the same reason.

The true-false examination is also administered with the provision that students may omit items which they feel they do not know or for which they do not wish to attempt an answer. Generally a score of 1 is taken off for omitted true-false items, while 2 is taken off for those which are wrong. When the students are given the option of omitting items, the scoring is complicated because the scoring must take into account both omitted and wrong items. On the average and over the long run the results are probably the same whether a student must answer all items or may omit those he wishes. Thus there probably is no advantage in permitting the student to omit, and even some disadvantages, but the teacher may want to try both methods and judge for himself.

**Multiple-choice.** In this type of test, the pupils are usually given four or five items from which to select the correct one. The following are examples:

**DIRECTIONS.** In the following statements underline the correct answer, and write the letter corresponding to it in the parentheses at the right.

1. The mean is a measure of (a) correlation, (b) central tendency, (b) (c) variability, (d) rank, (e) validity.
2. The median is a score of (a) position, (b) range, (c) relationship, (a) (d) reliability, (e) regression.
3. The mode is a score or characteristic that is (a) least frequent, (b) ex- (d) treme, (c) the 75th percentile, (d) most common, (e) the 25th percentile.
4. When the pupil has a percentile rank of 60, (a) he is in the poorest (e) quarter, (b) he is in the best quarter, (c) 60 per cent of the class are above him, (d) he is at the median, (e) 60 per cent of the class are below him.
5. A standard deviation above and below the mean of a normal or (c) nearly normal distribution includes approximately (a) all, (b) one-half, (c) two-thirds, (d) nine-tenths, (e) one-fifth of all the cases.
6. The coefficient of correlation is a measure of (a) relationship, (a) (b) spread, (c) regression, (d) position, (e) central tendency.

7. A good sample is (a) biased, (b) large, (c) small, (d) representative, (e) skewed.
8. Academic abilities generally correlate to the extent of (a) .95, (c) (b) .70, (c) .45, (d) .20, (e) .05.

As noted in the directions, the student is asked to underline the correct answer and to record the number of his answer, or letter as it is in this case, within the parentheses. This is for the convenience of the scorer, for a paper is much easier to mark and the score is more quickly counted when the answers are in a vertical column than when they are distributed over the paper. Occasionally, the choices in some multiple-choice items have different degrees of correctness, and thus more than one answer may seem satisfactory. But where more than one answer seems acceptable, the more precise one should be selected. In scoring the examination, only the best answer is usually given credit. For example, in item 7, which asks what a good sample is, some might regard *large* as an accurate description. *Large* has some merit as an answer, but the best answer is *representative*. To be sure, large samples, on the whole, are better than small ones; but large samples may still be poor, for they may not be representative. One may, for example, test many children and not obtain reliable standards or norms for all, for the children tested may have been chosen entirely from the better districts or entirely from the poorer ones.

**The Matching Test.** In this test the student is asked to match, or associate, the items in the parallel columns. Because of its nature, this is also called an *association test*. The following is an example:

**DIRECTIONS.** In the parentheses at the right, place the number of the word from the left-hand column opposite the one in the right-hand column that it most accurately describes.

1. Percentile rank	Relationship	(7)
2. Mean	$\Sigma X/N$	(2)
3. Median	Includes about two-thirds of the cases	(6)
4. Mode	The middle value	(3)
5. Range	From lowest to highest	(5)
6. Standard deviation	Measures what it claims to measure	(10)
7. Correlation	Most common value	(4)
8. Variability	Position in terms of percentage	(1)
9. Reliability	Measures well what it measures	(9)
10. Validity	$\sqrt{\Sigma x^2/N}$	(6)
11. Skewness	Generally the most reliable measure of	(6)
12. I.Q.	variability	
13. Frequency distribution		
14. Regression		

It is well to have more items in one column than in another; otherwise the pupil can first eliminate those of which he is certain and then guess correctly more of the remaining ones than he can when there are several that are not matched. Another variation is to have two items in the right column that refer to a single phrase. In the sample test given here are two phrases and a formula for item 6. The three items in the right column that are to be associated with standard deviation, or item 6, are (a) Includes about two-thirds of the cases, (b) Generally the most reliable measure of variability, and (c) the formula  $\sqrt{\sum f x^2 / N}$ . The matching, or association, test is generally used for names, terms, definitions, dates, titles, etc.

**The Completion Test.** This test can be devised in different forms or variations, as can most of the other types of objective-test items. The following are examples:

**DIRECTIONS.** In the column of numbered blank spaces, write the words that make the sentence true. The number in the sentences and the column should correspond

In a normal distribution, (1), (2), (3) are equal.

The (4) of correlation indicates the extent to which variables are (5).

1. Mean
2. Median
3. Mode
4. Coefficient
5. Related

The completion test may also be devised so that the answers are included in a column (see below). The object is to select the correct answer and write it in the appropriate blank. This form of the test is called a *controlled-completion test* and has some of the elements of the matching test. The following is an illustration:

**DIRECTIONS.** In the blank spaces at the right of the page, write down in order, for each letter, the number of the word in the left-hand column that is necessary to complete the sentence.

- |                    |   |                |
|--------------------|---|----------------|
| 1. Normal curve    | In normal distribution, the (a), (b), and (c) are | a. <u>2</u>    |
| 2. Mean            | equal. The (d) of correlation indicates the       | b. <u>4</u>    |
| 3. Correlation     | extent to which variables are (e)                 | c. <u>7</u>    |
| 4. Median          | A test of perseverance has (f) if it actually     | d. <u>6</u>    |
| 5. Related         | measures perseverance, etc.                       | e. <u>5</u>    |
| 6. Coefficient     |   | f. <u>9</u>    |
| 7. Mode            |   | g. <u>    </u> |
| 8. Regression      |   | h. <u>    </u> |
| 9. Validity        |   | i. <u>    </u> |
| 10. Skewness, etc. |   | j. <u>    </u> |

3. (a) correlation, (b) skewness, (c) correspondence, (d) relationship, (b) (e) association.

There are other forms of variations of the types that have been presented, and there are other types of exercises, such as analogies or arrangement of items according to a common quality. The following is an example:

Mark those words or terms which belong to the concept of correlation.

- |                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| ( ) 1. variability    | ( ) 5. average    |
| (x) 2. correspondence | (x) 6. agreement  |
| ( ) 3. percentile     | (x) 7. similarity |
| (x) 4. relationship   | ( ) 8. sampling   |

The preparation of a good objective test requires a high order of skill and considerable time. It is necessary to try it out in order to remove unsuitable items and to add others. Even when a test has been perfected, so to speak, it should not be used for too long a time, for it will tend to fix the course content as well as the teaching method. Examinations should be changed often in order not to retard curricular changes or to routinize the teacher's technique.

A good way to avoid an inordinate amount of work in preparing examinations is for the teacher of a given subject or department in a school system to keep a card file of examination items. New items should be added to keep pace with new material and obsolete items removed to a dead file. Alternate forms of items should be filed, also. The teacher can then make up relatively fresh examinations with a minimum of labor as the need arises.

Anyone wishing to investigate this subject in greater detail or make a special study of examinations may consult some of the references given at the end of the book. In fact, all teachers should make a study of the methods and techniques of the objective examination and should experiment in the construction and use of tests.

**Recognition and Recall.** In the multiple-choice, true-false, and matching tests, the ideas and meanings are set before the student, and he indicates the correct answer. Such tests are called recognition tests because the student must recognize what is true or false, the correct item in the case of multiple-choice, and the items that belong together in a matching test.

When students have to actually put down the answer to a question, as in the essay examination, completion test, or modified true-false test, they must recall it; hence such tests are called *recall tests*. Recall is considered a more searching mental activity than recognition.

#### EVALUATION OF THE OBJECTIVE, OR SHORT-ANSWER, EXAMINATION

Claims have been made for the objective examination that indicate a tendency to overvalue this newer type and to depreciate

unduly the older essay examinations. But even though the advantages of objective examinations may have been overemphasized, they have some distinct merits that argue for their extensive use.

**Desirable Features of the Objective Examination.** The objective examination handicaps the bluffer, for he is called upon to give precise and definite answers. It holds the pupil to the point, and he cannot avoid it. Though he may wish to interpret the question loosely and write about other aspects of it, the objective test, by limiting the number of possible answers, does not permit this kind of evasion. It is an excellent device for testing a student's knowledge of the factual elements in a subject and its vocabulary. The extent of his knowledge of such a body of words and facts can be tested better by an objective test than by the essay type.

The objective feature of the true-false, matching, completion, and multiple-choice items has real significance. These items can be accurately scored. The score that a student obtains on a comprehensive objective test indicates how much he knows in the field in which he was tested. It has a definite meaning in terms of the score of other students in the class. The student sees his relative standing and accepts the results of the test, and he feels that he has been marked fairly. The instructor, too, can feel more confident of the fairness of his marking standards. The objective test is free from the influence that personal prejudices arising from the pleasant or unpleasant relationship of the pupil and teacher have on school marks.

One of the features that has made the objective type of examination popular is the ease with which it can be scored. By means of lists of answers recorded on cardboard strips, or by scoring keys which fit the column of answers on the examination blanks, the scoring can be done very rapidly. In some tests the answers may be recorded by the students on scoring sheets, which can be rapidly scored. Then the same examination blanks can be used over and over again, and the scoring can be turned over to a clerk or an assistant.

The objective test can cover the material of an area or field more completely than the subjective test can. In other words, the objective examination can sample the course materials more thoroughly. Because of the many items in the objective test, no large section of subject matter is omitted. The student can no longer complain that some parts of his preparation were not even touched by the test. The sampling is improved by the variety in the nature of the test forms, which give different approaches to the subject matter.

In short, it may be said that the objective test is a reliable measure of achievement. It tests well the extensiveness of the student's knowledge and information. A good basis is thus provided for accurately determining the mark that the pupil has earned.

**Disadvantages of the Objective Test.** Notwithstanding its advantages, however, the objective test is deficient in several important respects. Generally, it is limited to the more factual elements of the course. It stresses the meanings of terms, definitions, opinions, and quantitative materials. All this may be well and good if the examination is limited to facts and information that are significant. Unfortunately, however, it often includes details whose educational value almost anyone would question. This actually is the fault not of the examination but of the person who devised it.

In order to keep the test as objective as possible, questions or items are omitted for which no one incontrovertible answer exists. Therefore, some of the best material in literature, history, sociology, and other subjects must be excluded because it is speculative and hypothetical. Whatever is controversial in nature is also omitted, for a satisfactory key can hardly be made for a test when there is doubt about many answers. Consequently, as objective tests are now generally made, the questions are limited to those for which no disagreement can arise about the answer. Furthermore, these tests are better for subjects which are quantitative in nature than for those which are descriptive and involve more speculation and evaluation. The latter subjects require the discussion of facts in their relation to each other rather than the recognition of items in comparative isolation.

The usual objective examination does not provide an opportunity for the student to do independent and original thinking. The feature of this form of examination that keeps the student from bluffing also prevents the good student from speculating and expressing whatever original points of view he might have. The objective examination does not encourage original intellectual explorations by the pupil.

The objective examination causes the student to study in a manner that is not conducive to high scholarship. (The essay examination may be almost as faulty in this respect.) He adjusts his studying to the examination question that he anticipates. In class, he listens to the teacher largely to note anything of what she says that later may appear in an examination, and this he writes down. In reading, he checks only the items or facts that he thinks will be called for, and he thus becomes a hunter for bits of material. He does not try to coordinate these fragments into a pattern, for this will not help him in his tests. Just before the examination, students frequently gather together to "try each other out" on numerous more or less isolated facts that they think will be useful. They memorize all sorts of informational bits. Cranning has not been reduced by the objective test but has rather been accentuated by it. Our students are becoming "bit pickers" rather than reasoners, inquirers, and learners.

In an investigation of the effect of type of examination on method of

preparation and efficiency in learning, it was discovered that the method of preparation did differ with the characteristics of the examination. About three-fourths of the students were conscious of preparing differently for the four types of tests. For true-false and multiple-choice tests, or the recognition type, emphasis was placed on rote memorizing of more or less isolated items and details. In preparation for the essay and completion test, or the recall type, more emphasis was placed on the organization and summarizing of material. The results indicated that a method of study emphasizing organization of material resulted in a better command of the subject as tested by all four types of examination that were used.

These findings point out the dangers lying in the control that examinations can exercise over educational methods and procedures. For example, if examinations of certain types are given state-wide under the auspices of the state board of education or similar sponsorship, they may tend to control both the study habits of the pupils and the teaching methods of the teachers. Examinations on a state-wide basis may be objectionable on several counts; but if they emphasize limited bits of information, scrappy facts, and unrelated details, they are objectionable because they cause teachers to narrow their teaching to relentless drill and the pupils to learn, without questioning, many bits by rote. Instead of organizing, relating, and evaluating, they store up prospective answers for the examination. Examinations at all levels, from the elementary grades through the graduate school, may either restrict or expand the educational processes. They may cause the thinking processes to be narrowly confined, or they may stimulate originality and creativeness. The results of the different types of examination influence learning in different ways.

These evils are not necessarily inherent in the objective examination any more than the deficiencies attributed to the essay examination are inherent in it. If teachers decide to devise their examinations so that they stress judgment, analysis, evaluation, and original reactions, many of them can succeed in doing so. But the task is a very difficult one, a fact that accounts for the make-up of most objective tests and their stress on memory. It is up to the teacher, however, not to accept meekly conditions that can be improved but to set about making the desirable changes.

#### THE STANDARDIZED ACHIEVEMENT TEST

The standardized achievement test is an objective test and represents one of the important values that developed from the introduction of the objective type of testing. The standardized achievement test is usually scored in the same way as the teacher's objective test. The principal difference is that the standardized test has more care-

fully sampled a larger area of work and has been tested out sufficiently to allow standards and norms to be set for it. Also, the standardized test is published. Most standardized achievement tests are designed for grade-school and high-school use to measure pupils' achievement in reading, geography, arithmetic, chemistry, geometry, and other subjects.

Another feature of standardized tests is that directions for giving the test are printed in the test manual or on the test itself. These directions are to be followed faithfully, so that all students taking the test will respond to exactly the same directions. Furthermore, there are time limits for the different tests, and these, too, must be observed accurately. These features, standard for all, are among the reasons why the tests are called *standardized*.

Standardized achievement tests are generally given at the end of the year to measure the level of the pupil's achievement in his subjects. His score is compared with the average achievement score for his grade and age; thus, his relative status in various subjects can be determined.

**Standards and Norms.** Good standardized tests are constructed to include a thorough sampling of the subject matter in history, geography, arithmetic, or whatever the subject may be. Furthermore, in its preliminary forms, the test should be given to many children who represent a good sampling of all abilities in order to obtain norms, or standards, for pupils of various grades for each of the subjects. For example, the average score of third-graders in a reading test would be made the standard, or norm, for that grade. Similarly, the average scores for fourth-, fifth-, sixth-graders, etc., would become the norms for those respective grades.

Thus a teacher can compare the average score of her grade with the standards to determine whether or not her class measures up to the established achievement standards for that grade. In addition, the grade status of individual pupils can be found from the norms. For example, some fifth-grade pupils have sixth- and seventh-grade ability or even higher. There will also be some under their norm, equal to only third- or fourth-graders or, in a few instances, even lower.

Age norms of achievement tests are established for a range of ages in the same way as they are established for grades. The average achievement for eight-year-olds on the preliminary tests is made the norm for that age. In order that the norm may be accurate, the eight-year-olds to whom the test is given must be carefully chosen so that their ability is average eight-year-old ability. If too many bright or too many dull children are chosen, the norm will be either too high or too low, and similarly with other ages, nine, ten, eleven, etc. By means of age norms, one can discover whether or not the pupil is



"at age" in his various subjects or the number of years that he is above or below his age in achievement.

There may be several reasons why age and grade norms may not fit the pupils in some schools. It may be that the test does not adequately sample the subject matter of the courses of those schools which include material different from that in the tests. Furthermore, the grade placement of course material may vary from school to school. Those schools which introduce a subject earlier in the course of study are more likely to equal or exceed the norms than schools which introduce the same material later. A definite tendency exists in some schools to delay the teaching of certain material, especially lower-grade arithmetic. Arithmetic formerly taught in the first and second grades is now being taught in the second, third, and fourth grades. Changes such as these dislocate age and grade norms based on a former grade location of materials. The promotion policy of a school also affects the grade norms and to some extent the age norms. The school that fails a larger proportion of its students will tend to have more capable students in its upper grades than one that passes most of its students.

A danger of the standardized test is the effect that it may have on teaching and on school policies. Sometimes, where these tests are in use by many schools, the teacher in an effort to have her class make a good showing directs all her instruction toward preparing her pupils for the examination. She and the students thus tend to be limited to the content of the tests. Administrators may be equally guilty in allowing their concern for their schools' high achievement on the standardized examination to "freeze the curriculum" and control subject content for various courses. If they do not stress competitive standing on these tests, however, the latter will not have a constricting effect on the teaching processes. The learning of the child need not therefore be dominated by the standardized test but actually can be stimulated by it.

**Educational Ages and Educational Quotients.** We have explained how pupils of a given age may vary in achievement from an age norm far below their age to one far above it. Thus, we have ten-year-olds with the arithmetic ability of average seven-, eight-, nine-, ten-, eleven-, twelve-, thirteen-, and fourteen-year olds; indeed, the range may even be greater. The ten-year-old who is equal in his arithmetic ability to a seven-year-old is said to have an arithmetic age of 7; one who is equal to an eight-year-old, an arithmetic age of 8; etc. Comparably, a pupil also has a reading age, history age, and geography age and ages for other subjects. His general educational achievement determines his educational age, which is symbolized by the letters E.A. This E.A. is to general ability in school subjects

as M.A. is to general mental ability. E.A. is determined by one's composite achievement in a test of several subjects.

E.A. may be equal to life age, or C.A., or may be less or higher. The quotient used to indicate the relationship of E.A. to C.A. is known as the *educational quotient* (E.Q.). It is found by dividing E.A. by C.A. and multiplying by 100, that is,  $(E.A./C.A.) \times 100$ .<sup>1</sup> A child whose E.A. and C.A. are equal has a quotient of 100, which is average. A boy ten years old whose achievement is equal to the average for his age has an E.A. of 10 and an E.Q. of 100 ( $\frac{10}{10}$ ). The E.Q. of a pupil twelve years old who has an E.A. of 9 is  $\frac{9}{12}$ , or 75. An eight-year-old with an E.A. of 10 has an E.Q. of 125, or 150%.

Quotients can also be calculated for the pupil in each of the various school subjects. Thus if a student is 11 years 7 months old and has a history age of 13 years 2 months, he has a history quotient of 114. By dividing his geography, arithmetic, history, reading ages, etc., by his C.A., a geography quotient, arithmetic quotient, history quotient, etc., will be obtained. The standing of a pupil in various subjects can be compared, and thus his strength and weaknesses observed. Such observation provides an opportunity to help him. If a pupil is particularly strong in history, for instance, special attention may be given to increasing his interest in the subject. Weakness in a subject indicates a need for assistance, but it is scarcely wise to devote so much time to teaching the child in his weak subjects that his strong ones are neglected. This topic is taken up at some length in other pages.

In the hope that educators could evaluate achievement in terms of the individual's mental capacity, the accomplishment quotient was devised. It is arrived at by dividing the achievement age by the mental age. Unfortunately, the accomplishment quotient has a number of serious weaknesses, so that its use has not been satisfactory, and we merely mention it in passing.

#### THE EXAMINATION AND EDUCATION

It is generally maintained that the examination, whether objective or subjective, is an instrument for measuring the pupil's learning and achievement in his school subjects; and the value of an examination is generally analyzed from this point of view. The examination, however, may prove to be more than this. It may operate in a number of ways, and thus it does much to shape the nature of the education that a

<sup>1</sup>Although the formula is  $E.Q. = (E.A./C.A.) \times 100$ , the general practice in calculating educational as well as intelligence quotients is to assume multiplication by 100, and thus the 100 is often omitted from the formula. In the cases that follow the quotients are, strictly, 1.00, 0.75, and 1.25, but the decimal point is ignored and the quotients are considered to be 100, 75, and 125:

child receives. First of all, it can be used as a whip to make the pupil do his work. The test is given to check on how carefully he has done it. He is thus trained to work for examination results.

When the student asks the teacher, "Shall we need to know this for the examination?" we have evidence of the control that the examination has over the pupil. For example, a teacher in expanding a point deviated a considerable distance from it. A boy in the class raised his hand and said, "What has this got to do with the entrance examination?" It is true that one should not as a regular practice stray far off into the remotely illustrative or speculative, but a system of examination that holds pupils and teacher to a very narrow course is not good educationally.

Again, the examination may be used to measure achievement, to indicate the proficiency of the student and the quality of his scholarship. The test results may be used to guide the student in his school career and may therefore be useful in a practical way. As a guide, the examination is an important instrument, but it should not be used too often. Carefully devised comprehensive examinations, either teacher-made or published, given once a year, will adequately determine the achievement status of individual pupils. Such annual examinations, requiring several hours, will serve as a better index to what the pupil has learned than all the marks on his report cards. They will assess his various abilities well and give a good basis for guiding him.

Though examinations need not be used frequently to determine the level of pupils' achievement, they should be used often for instructional purposes. The examination may, for instance, serve an educational purpose. To fulfill this objective, it should be so devised and so used that it promotes the pupil's education. The teacher gives it not to coerce the student to work but with the understanding that no marks will be based on it and that it is intended to help the student discover his strength and weakness. We might call this approach the *diagnostic process*. The student will be guided in his studying by the results of the examination, and the teacher will help him with his particular difficulties. For this purpose, the examination should be used frequently. It is then a teaching instrument.

Finally, tests may be used to organize and integrate knowledge. They can be made more comprehensive in scope so that the student will have an opportunity to focus information from many fields on a given problem. Generally, examinations are based on a part of a course or, at the most, on a whole course. Instead, they should be devised to cover a large body of knowledge and thus to encourage the student to integrate his ideas and not isolate them from one

another. Thus, the examination on the larger areas of learning should be used not merely to measure, like the semester finals, which the student does not see again, but to help the student see the interrelationships of the various fields of knowledge and to aid him to strengthen himself in the respects where it has revealed that he is weak. The test thus becomes a valuable part of the educative process.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Students should be tested in order to determine their abilities and progress.

The essay examination requires expository writing in answer to questions, which usually begin with the words *describe*, *what*, *explain*, *why*, or *how*.

The essay examination is hard to evaluate accurately. If the teacher establishes standards for each question to guide her when she evaluates the answers, she will do so more reliably.

The essay examination gives the student opportunity to exercise his originality, but he may also "bluff" by writing much about nothing.

The objective, or short-answer, examination takes much more time to prepare than the essay but is more easily and accurately scored. It consists of a number of items: multiple-choice, true-false, matching, completion, recall, and a classification test. The short-answer test can be devised so that it covers the subject comprehensively, but it has a tendency to cause students to study "bits" rather than relate and integrate knowledge.

The standardized achievement test has the objective, short-answer type of items and is an objective test for which age and grade norms or standards have been established. By means of the standardized test a child's achievement in the various school subjects can be evaluated in terms of averages for different ages and grades.

The achievement tests yield educational ages, and quotients, involving these ages and chronological age, can be calculated. These are called *educational quotients* and are obtained by dividing achievement ages by chronological age.

The geography quotient is obtained by dividing geography age by chronological age, and reading, arithmetic, and other quotients are similarly obtained.

The examination can be used to make a student work, as a basis for determining his marks, and as a means of helping him ascertain what he knows and does not know. The last-mentioned purpose is the best educationally, for thus the examination becomes a teaching instrument.

**TEST YOUR THINKING**

1. The tests should show a student what progress he is making. Discuss.
2. How can the examination be used to contribute most to the education of the child?
3. Name the advantages and disadvantages of the essay test.
4. A child 9 years 2 months old has an E.A. of 11 years 11 months. What is his educational quotient? Interpret this quotient.
5. Describe the general make-up of the objective, or short-answer, test by naming the various types of items that are found in it.
6. What is the meaning of objective? Standardized?
7. Explain what educational ages are.
8. What are the desirable and undesirable features of the objective test, and how can it be used to best advantage?
9. Imagine that students have gone through grade school, high school, and college and have been tested by the short-answer, objective examination and no others. Discuss what effects this would have on their learning and education.
10. What would students lose if they were tested only by essay examinations?
11. How does the standardized achievement test differ from the objective test that the teacher constructs for his own use?
12. How should examinations be utilized diagnostically to help a student fill in the gaps in his learning, correct his errors, and reinforce his knowledge?
13. Explain how the essay test can be prepared and used so that it is most effective.

## 2. Reporting the Achievement and Adjustment of Pupils

**What to Look For.** Focus your attention on the importance of marks in the minds of students and their concern about the basis on which they are marked.

Learn why the basis for giving a mark in a subject should be the achievement in that subject.

Acquire some facts about the different ratings that teachers give the same lessons.

It is pointed out how the standards of marking vary from department to department and from school to school. The reader should acquire a number of ideas about this variation, which may be justifiable or may not.

Learn the various reasons for marks' being very important.

How can a standard distribution of marks, sometimes referred to as a *normal curve*, be a helpful guide in distributing marks?

What factors should be taken into account in determining the percentages of the various marks?

A number of reasons are given for changing the marking and report-card system that now prevails. Note especially the arguments to the effect that the marking system has a bad influence on real education.

Learn how a better system of reporting a pupil's successes, failures, adjustments, or maladjustments can be of greater help to pupil, teacher, and parent.

What philosophy should control the teacher's evaluation of the pupil? Note that teachers should abandon the traditional marking system, and parents their reliance on it, and that both groups should cooperate in guiding students in achieving the fullest development.

Observe that there is a better way of establishing a record of pupils' achievement than by recording school marks.

### SCHOOL MARKS

**Introduction.** A few weeks after sending in the semester marks, a university professor received the following letter from a member of a

class that had consisted of schoolteachers. The letter is presented here because it raises several questions about principles and standards of marking.

Dear Sir:

Some day when you have a bit of leisure, will you please tell me precisely what one must do or leave undone to earn an A in your courses? I was valedictorian of my high-school class and a special honor graduate from \_\_\_\_\_ College, so it piques me to draw tepid B's—especially in courses to which I devote as much time and work as I did to yours. Perhaps you can suggest more efficient methods for organizing the vast amount of reference material you submit.

But, after all, how did you judge the extent of my knowledge in the course in mental tests? I know you approve the modern clamor for attention, but it's a bit unfair to those who, like myself, are by nature reticent, especially in classes where obvious deference is paid to certain gray hairs and, paradoxically, to effeminate, eighteenth-century fidgeting. It seems I must join the gushers to draw the A's—those spouters who think any kind of talk goes as long as it is sufficiently vacuous and irrelevant, who boast of their open minds, when, as a matter of fact, they are often merely vacant. Yes, silence is golden, but frequently the gold goes to those who have brass enough to speak up. Then, again, your distribution of marks may be based on economics, which, according to *Mercury*, knows no right or wrong.

I know, too, that you objected, to the point of sarcasm (for which, I learned from Professor \_\_\_\_\_, the classroom is no place), to my being late for two or three classes—but how could I know when you would be on time? Waiting for dilatory instructors is the favorite enemy of my Viking disposition.

Call this rationalizing or what you will; I thank you for any help you can give me.

Yours expectantly,

---

It may be said in the vernacular that this student put her instructor "on the spot."

A phase of education that weighs heavily on both teachers and pupils centers in school marks. Teachers spend an enormous amount of time and energy in marking the achievement of their students, who are seriously concerned about marks, all the way from the kindergarten through the graduate school. Teachers arrive at these marks according to more or less clearly defined educational and psychological principles, and students react to the marks that they receive with feelings that range along the whole emotional scale from greatest satisfaction to the impulse to commit suicide. It has been reported that the impulse has even been carried out.

Students have a right to know on what basis their marks are determined. The writer of the letter quoted implies that activity in class, deference to the instructor, and promptness in arriving at class

influenced the marks. What should be the standard for determining the grades<sup>1</sup> that pupils are given by their teachers? Should they be based on the efforts and earnestness of the students, their mental capacity, good or bad behavior, achievement and accomplishment, improvement, or on other factors? In view of the many conditions influencing teachers in grading students, almost as many different standards exist for determining school marks as there are teachers.

**Standards for Marking.** To illustrate this topic, reference will be made to a certain man's response to his son's achievement in arithmetic. This father had obtained some standardized arithmetic tests, which he gave to his son, thus discovering that the boy was below the standard for his grade. The man recalled seeing A's in arithmetic on his son's report card. The inconsistency between his son's achievement on the standardized test and the mark on his report card caused the father to do what some interested parents do when certain questions come up—go to see the teacher.

He explained to the teacher that he had discovered by means of arithmetic tests that his son did not know as much as she had indicated by the A's on his report card. She admitted that his son was not the best pupil in arithmetic; there were several who were better, but she emphasized the fact that no boy in class was a better citizen, tried harder, was prompter in handing in his work, or showed a better attitude.

The father replied, "My chest swells more with the pride of knowing those facts about my son than it would if he were the best in arithmetic, but you have been fooling me. You have been telling me by those A's on my boy's report card that he is excellent in arithmetic; and now I find out that, as a matter of fact, he isn't."

The marks in a subject should have a reliable meaning; they should, it seems, represent a student's achievement in that subject—his status in terms of knowledge, ability, skill, or accomplishment in it. An A in geography should represent that quality of attainment in geography. The highest marks should be given to those who have satisfactorily demonstrated the greatest superiority and the lowest to those who show that they are least proficient. Those between the best and poorest should be distributed according to the degree of excellence between the two extremes of achievement.

Many teachers will protest that some students try hard and should be rewarded for their efforts. They argue that if the sincere, industrious students of low capacity get grades determined by their ability

<sup>1</sup> Possibly the term *grade* should be reserved for indicating the school grade (fourth, eighth, tenth, etc.) that a pupil is in and the term *mark* for indicating the quality of a lesson or the work of a period or semester. *Grade* and *mark* have such extensive use as synonyms, however, that they will be so used here.



in a subject they will be discouraged and lose interest; their valuable trait of perseverance will thus be destroyed. Other teachers insist on grading according to the improvement that individual pupils have made in their subjects. They insist that a pupil who is only average at the beginning of the year but improves his position so that he becomes one of the better students deserves a high mark. Similarly, if a pupil starts at a low level of achievement according to the standard of the class and works himself up to the average, he also deserves a good mark according to this viewpoint.

All these points of view have validity. Attention should be given to the development of desirable traits and the prevention and discouragement of undesirable ones. The teacher who thus has the development of the pupil's personality in mind is to be commended. Nevertheless, there should be a better way of accomplishing this purpose than making a mark for a given subject a composite of varying proportions of achievement, improvement, initiative, effort, attitude, regularity of attendance, etc.

The way to avoid making a mark in any subject a symbol of conglomerate achievement and various degrees of other excellences is to rate achievement and the other traits separately. The mark in history, for example, should represent attainment in that subject, and the other traits should be rated individually. If teachers of a school system wish to judge their students according to their growth in a subject, their industry, activity in class, initiative, and any other qualities, they should enter separate items on the report card and rate the pupils in those traits as carefully as possible. By this plan the several ratings and opinions of the teacher are recorded separately and not merged in a mark whose meaning may be misleading.

One instructor in talking to his students put it this way:

"When I mark you, I shall give you a mark that represents what you know in this mathematics course according to the examinations you have taken. Whether you have been tardy or not or shown a nice attitude or laughed at my jokes won't matter one bit when I give you your marks. They will be based entirely on what you know in mathematics.

"But when I am asked about you or asked to recommend you for college or for a position, then I shall discuss how industrious, cooperative, and helpful you are. Then I shall lay great stress on your qualities of character and personality. Your personal qualities are very important, and I am very much concerned about them, but when I mark you in mathematics I shall mark you only on your achievement in mathematics."

**Variability in Marks among Teachers.** Another source of unreliability in grading is found in the varying standards among different

teachers. An A, for example, obtained from one teacher may not represent the same degree of attainment as an A from another. Furthermore, the mark that a teacher gives a certain student may be based on standards different from those determining the same mark for another student; and the same teacher may differ from time to time in her evaluations of a certain pupil's themes, arithmetic papers, drawings, and examinations. If, for instance, a large group of typical history teachers should rate the same exam, a few would probably mark it a failure and a few would mark it superior, though the great majority would give the theme approximately the same rating.

The great variability in the marking method of teachers has been established by a number of investigations. It characterizes teachers of all subjects. Arithmetic teachers, for instance, may say that their marking can be standardized because arithmetic is exact and precise. Investigation has shown, however, that teachers differ almost as much in their evaluation of an examination in arithmetic as in any other subject.

Briefly reviewed are several studies by Rinsland,<sup>1</sup> which support the conclusion that teachers differ in marking papers and that their marks are unreliable. A paper in English was marked by 142 teachers, and the marks ranged from 50 to 98 per cent. When 114 teachers marked a geometry paper, the range was from 28 to 92 per cent. Similar variation was characteristic of the marks given history and arithmetic lessons.

Furthermore, students soon learn that teachers differ among themselves in their marking, that some teachers are easy markers and others hard. The general characteristics of their grading methods are learned; and in high school and college, where students may elect subjects, they take into account the likelihood of getting a good grade by virtue of the instructor's standards of marking. Students have discovered from experience that a theme, for instance, which has been marked and returned may be submitted in corrected form by another at another time and get a lower mark than it received originally. One student removed the mark from a drawing of goldenrod made by a student in the class the previous year and submitted it again. Receiving a lower rating on it than the other student had received, he remarked, "Teacher must have been suffering from her hay fever when she marked the goldenrod this year." Such incidents do not increase student respect for the justness and reliability of marks.

Such conditions and situations are not inherent in examinations and can be remedied. If teachers would agree on standards for grading papers and would practice marking them to achieve uniformity in

<sup>1</sup> Rinsland, Henry D., *Constructing Tests and Grading*, pp. 2-11, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1937.

would be unable to do graduate work and consequently felt that a barrier had been raised against her. The good school marks that she had received in a school where the standards were low misled her into believing that she was capable of succeeding in any school.

The variation in the standards of high schools and colleges misleads many students. Marks of one college represent a standard of accomplishment different from that of another, partly, no doubt, because of variation in marking standards but probably to a greater extent because of the differences in the quality of the students.

Here, then, is a situation among individual teachers, departments, schools, and colleges where marks vary to such an extent that it is hard to tell what they mean. The teacher can scarcely be confident that the mark he records on a paper or report card is a valid rating of achievement. Unusual is the teacher who can say that his marks have definite meanings in terms of established standards.

What has been said about the variation in schools and colleges is true in a number of instances and should always be kept in mind, but in general among the great majority of schools a student's marks are a fairly reliable index to his abilities and what he will accomplish in any school. Usually the truly best students of any reputable school will do very well in any other school, and the poor or failing students usually fail in another school, also. There are a number of students whose actual knowledge and abilities are above what their marks may indicate, and there are some pupils below their marks in actual knowledge and understanding. On the whole, however, the composite or average of a student's marks is a fairly good and in most instances a very good index to his abilities and what he will do in any future school situation. Considered from this broader point of view, marks can be depended upon.

**Importance of School Marks.** A study was made of college students to discover why they wanted to obtain good marks in their courses. Some of the reasons they gave were to earn a better chance for a job, to gain evidence of effective learning, to outstrip others, to please one's family, and to uphold a reputation. There were other reasons, too, but practically all were in terms of personal gain and prestige. Marks are recognized by students as a means of helping them progress and enhancing their reputation.

Probably nothing else that a teacher does is regarded so seriously as the marks by which she evaluates lessons and those which she records on report cards. Because most children and parents alike take the report card seriously, the marks recorded on it should be as true and reliable as it is possible to make them.

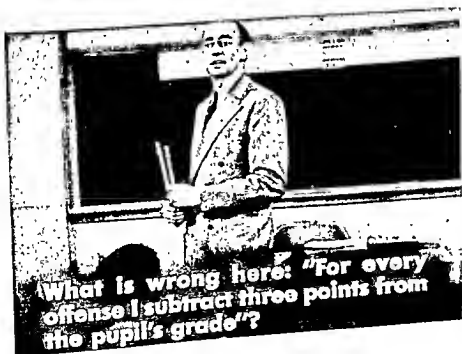
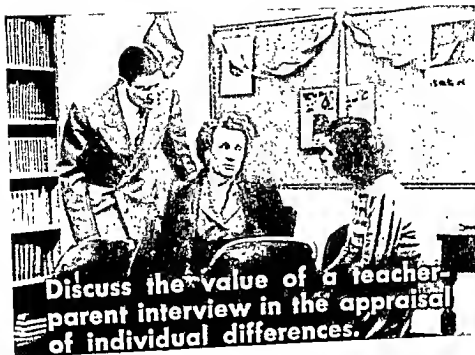
Marks are important also in that they determine failure and promotion in school. Surely, at times, teachers have failed some pupils

who actually were better in achievement than others who were promoted. The teacher has an important responsibility when she determines who shall and who shall not pass.

College marks have assumed additional importance because male students of poor standing weaken their claim for military deferment. Consequently college men are more concerned than ever over their marks.

Marks are valuable, too, in guiding the student, as the scholarship of a student in grade school is one of the best indications of what he will do in junior high school, and in turn his scholarship there indicates what he will do in senior high school, and similarly through college and professional or graduate school.

School marks are used, moreover, to decide who shall receive honors and scholarships. Many schools have various honorary societies in which qualification for membership depends chiefly on high marks. In college, membership in Phi Beta Kappa and the privilege of wearing its coveted key are determined largely by marks obtained in college courses. In some colleges, students receive extra honor points for superior marks, and thus they are enabled to reduce the number of courses that they must take; they earn quality credits for excellent work. Valedictorians and salutatorians are those who have received the highest marks. Nearly all the honors and distinctions accorded students in school are given to those with high marks. Occasionally other factors, such as general all-round development, are taken into account, as they should be in conferring these honors, but the student's marks are usually given most consideration.



school do tend to make for success in adult life, despite popular opinion to the contrary.

Moreover, school marks play an important part in recommendations for some positions. The student who is planning to teach will find it easier to obtain a position if his record contains good marks rather than poor ones. Large law corporations employ law graduates with the best scholastic records. When possible, hospitals select as interns those who have done best as medical students. Marks are thus held to indicate in a general way the amount or extent of certain desirable qualities.

College marks are clearly related to distinction in science, for example. Tilton<sup>1</sup> reports that, from those in the highest tenth of college marks, there are twice as many starred men of science as found in the other nine-tenths. Correspondingly, of those elected to the National Academy, the ratio is 3 to 1.

Marks, then, to repeat, are exceedingly important. No doubt, some attach more importance to them than is warranted. Probably our educational methods would be improved if we minimized this emphasis by giving more general marks and thus recognizing the unreliability inherent in ratings of students by individual teachers. However, because even necessary changes are often made very slowly, it must be recognized that teachers will probably be giving marks for a long time to come. Consequently, it is well to have some principles in mind for guidance in methods of marking.

Important as marks are in that they represent fairly accurately abilities and industry, other personal qualities such as likableness, reliability, and cooperativeness must not be overlooked. A straight A student may not know how to make friends, for example. The teacher should be as concerned about the personality of her pupils as their marks—probably more so. It is not enough that a student gets good marks in the subjects he takes; he must try to achieve development of personal qualities as well.

Some Standards and Guides for Distributing the Marks. Students will ask about their teacher, "Does he mark according to the curve?" What they have in mind usually is whether or not he gives the same percentage of A's and F's and of B's and D's, the largest percentage being C's. When the normal curve is spoken of by educators and students in connection with marking, usually a balanced distribution of marks is meant.

The actual normal distribution is seldom applied to students' marks. The usual distributions vary greatly but nearly always have a larger percentage of A's than F's and a larger percentage of B's than

<sup>1</sup> Authorities cited in the text will be found listed in the bibliography at the end of the book.

D's. The average distribution in 80 middle western colleges as reported by Edson is shown in the accompanying tabulation. It will be

	A	B	C	D	F
Practice in colleges. ....	15.2	31.1	36.4	9.1	3.2
Normal or theoretical. ....	7	24	38	24	7

observed that the proportion of F's is less than one-half and the number of D's slightly more than one-third of the proportion according to the normal curve. It will be observed also that the percentages of A's is over twice the theoretical percentage.

There seems to be a tendency to mark more liberally than formerly. Probably this is a result of teachers attaching less importance to marks, which conceivably is a symptom of a transition to a future practice of much less marking of students. Probably several decades from now, student achievement will be measured by comprehensive examinations on fields of learning and not on individual courses.

This is done to a limited extent now. Comprehensive standardized tests have been developed for prospective teachers, lawyers, and doctors and for graduate students and are used to evaluate their preparation for the work they plan to do. These provide a dependable basis for judging how much a student has actually learned.

However, students will be marked in the usual way for years to come, and the marking should be done in a fair and equitable manner so that the marks that students receive in their subjects represent as truly as possible what they have achieved in those subjects. If a class is above average, then more than the usual proportion of high marks should be given. There is a tendency to give upperclassmen better marks than lowerclassmen because upperclassmen are more highly selected.

Teachers may decide that they should be guided in general by a standard distribution of marks. In the accompanying tabulation are sample distributions showing the percentage of each mark; any one of these might be adopted, or any other standard devised. All are sym-

	A	B	C	D	F
1	10	20	40	20	10
2	7	24	38	24	7
3	5	25	40	25	5
4	5	20	50	20	5
5	15	25	45	10	5
6	10	20	50	10	10
7	15	25	45	15	0

metrical except numbers 5, 6, and 7. Distribution 2 is usually regarded as being the normal, or theoretical, distribution when five divisions, or steps, are used. The steps need not always be represented by letters but may include numerical ranges, or the percentage system, such as 95 to 100, 85 to 94, 70 to 84, 0 to 69, or whatever numerical steps one may wish to choose. If a school decides that it will fail no one or very few or will have a preponderance of passing grades, it can adopt scheme 7 or one similar to it.

A standard can be serviceable if it is usually observed by the teachers of a school system but is disregarded when there is a good reason for doing so, as when a class is definitely superior or inferior. The usefulness and validity of a standard for marking can be illustrated by describing briefly how the superintendent of one school applied a standard. In this school the children in the third grade received marks so much lower than those which they had got in the second grade that the parents were aroused. They criticized the third-grade teacher so severely that it became necessary to go into the matter.

In order to understand the difficulty, the superintendent studied the marking systems of his teachers. He discovered that the second-grade teacher gave much better marks to the pupils than either the third-grade teacher or the other teachers. It was suggested that they all adopt a common distribution for marking members of the classes in the various subjects. Copies of the distribution of grades given by each teacher were mimeographed so that they could be compared by the teachers. The second-grade teacher soon distributed her marks in harmony with those of the other teachers and thus corrected the difficulty arising from the large differences in the marks obtained by the pupils in her grade and the grade following. It is a good practice to mimeograph the distribution of marks of all the teachers and give each teacher a copy of the results. The individual teacher can compare her marks with others, and the correction of unusual or unwarranted methods will result.

A school can determine for itself what standard it wishes to observe. The faculty in a high school may say that it will observe any one of the schemes listed on page 30. If, for example, it adopted scheme 1 as the standard for freshmen, then the instructors would aim to distribute their marks so that, of all the freshmen in all their subjects, 10 per cent would receive A's and 10 per cent F's, 20 per cent B's and 20 per cent D's, with the remaining 40 per cent C's. It is doubtful that a high school should maintain the same standards for the sophomore, junior, and senior years. It might do so on the decision of the faculty, but it is logical to decrease the proportion of low marks from the freshman to the senior year and increase the number of higher marks correspondingly, for after the first year the students are a more or less selected



group. In the senior year the percentage of failures should be smallest, for by then many of the weakest students have dropped out.

The experience of a geography teacher illustrates how marks might have been assigned in a balanced manner. She had three sections of students, and these were given the same assignments, taught similarly, and given the same examinations. When the examinations had been scored and the average for each class calculated, she found that the classes differed in their achievement. She was perplexed as to what proportion of the various marks to give the members of each class and decided to apply the same distribution of marks to each section. By this method there was the same proportion of A's in the poor as in the good section and the same percentage of F's in the best as in the poorest section. Obviously, here was a faulty use of the principle of normal distribution. According to the method used, the achievement that resulted in a C in the best section resulted in a B and possibly an A in the poorest section. Such inequalities in the marking standards are an injustice to the students.

It would have been sound practice to combine the scores and make one distribution for all three sections. Then those in any class who received A did so because their achievement was equal to the A work in either of the other groups. Similarly, the A, B, C, D, and F of one section would have represented the same quality of achievement as these marks obtained by the students of any other section.

The problem of grading students and their work is one of the most troublesome but important that the teacher faces. She should consider it with great care and be sure that she has good reason for what she does. However, a teacher is hardly warranted in having much confidence that the marks that she puts on a lesson or records on the report card are wholly accurate or reliable, for observation and experience have revealed, as stated before, that evaluations of student work differ from teacher to teacher, from department to department, and from school to school. Frequently, the evaluations of even a single teacher will be inconsistent.

If the mark given in any subject indicates the degree of achievement or attainment in that subject and nothing else, then the other qualities of the students should be marked separately. Teachers, at least within the same school, should attempt to define the basis for their marks so that the mark of one teacher will have the same meaning as that of another. The individual teacher should use a system such that her marks on one day are comparable with those given on another. Applying an agreed-upon standard of distribution may be helpful as a general guide; but when it is used, certain factors must be taken into account, especially the quality of the students. Still, in arriving at a standard for marking, teachers will probably help the students most if they have only a few failures, if any.

## MODIFICATION OF THE PREVAILING MARKING SYSTEM

**Undesirable Effects of the Traditional Marking System.** Marks have been discussed to a considerable extent because of their great importance in most schools. The discussion, however, should not keep us from considering the advisability of minimizing the emphasis that we place on them. Excellent arguments can be offered for modifying or possibly altogether abandoning the conventional marking systems. Some of the evidence, such as the variation of standards and the unreliability in marks, has already been set forth. Such facts are important, but the effect of marks on the learning process is even more important.

Marks affect the learning process in education by becoming, for the large proportion of students, the end in education. Those accustomed to D's want C's; the C students want B's; all hope for A's, and a few expect them. Most students discuss the grades that they receive in a course and not the facts and principles included in it. They react emotionally to the grade on a lesson or paper but are, for the most part, indifferent to the content of the lesson itself. Students from kindergarten through the graduate school become primarily seekers for marks and true learners only secondarily, if at all.

Many students are relatively indifferent to the quality of instruction if, in the end, they receive a satisfactory mark. One student said of his teacher, "He is no good as an instructor; but if I get at least a B, I'll be satisfied." Many students evaluate their subjects or courses in terms of the marks that they receive in them. Thus, marks make students comparatively uninterested in learning and education.

The extent to which school marks influence and control the mental life of school children can be illustrated by the case of Esther, a little girl who had spent 2 years in school, 1 in the kindergarten and 1 in the first grade. In the kindergarten, no marks were given. Esther did her work well and showed considerable initiative. She had much freedom and exhibited a lively interest and curiosity. She asked many questions and wanted to learn about numerous things. Her attitude changed in the first grade, for there she was marked on almost every bit of work that she did. She would receive a gold star for this, a silver star for that, and a rubber-stamp star for a mediocre lesson. It was not long before she began to work for the different grades of stars. Becoming a victim of the narrow control that the teacher exercised over her by incessant grading, Esther lost much of the natural curiosity and initiative that had formerly characterized her work. She became a task doer, a lesson getter, because she was trained to ascribe a high value to the marks that the teacher put on the lesson.

Furthermore, the system that involves the continuous rating of the pupil's work by the teacher results in a relationship between teacher

and pupil that is not conducive to the best learning situation. The student does tasks for the teacher, who in turn rates or marks how well she thinks these tasks have been performed. The student asks, "How do you want it done?" or "How long does this paper have to be?" He becomes a performer of set specified tasks for which he wants a good rating. Need we wonder that students fail to do any independent work, that they cease reading and studying as soon as a course or subject has been completed? For most students, with the final grade in a course comes the termination of all effort and interest to learn anything more about the subject.

The relationship of teacher and pupil is further complicated by the fact that marks, instead of being an incentive to learning, become an end in themselves. Instead of a cooperative partnership in which pupils and teachers become interested in their mutual growth and development, the situation becomes one in which the teacher holds the power of marking as a control over the pupil. Some teachers use this power vindictively and give high marks to those whom they like and lower ones to those who are in disfavor. The learning situation would be much better for both pupil and teacher if both minimized marks and worked together on the problems that developed for them in and out of the schoolroom.

Abandoning the great emphasis that is put on school marks would not destroy any desirable incentives. It is true that children need to be stimulated in their learning, but this motivation can be otherwise provided, as we have indicated elsewhere (Chap. 18). Here, however, the point to bear in mind is that emphasis on school marks militates against the effectiveness of true and desirable incentives.

The present school plan divides the education of any given individual into numerous subjects; during these periods of study, many marks are given; at the end, final marks are recorded. Such a procedure is not sound psychology. Education becomes divided into sections artificially kept apart, whereas psychologically they belong together. Furthermore, thousands of records are kept of student marks. At the end of every month or 6 weeks, at the end of every quarter, semester, or term, millions of grades are reported and recorded in the American school system. They are unnecessary. The process is expensive and wasteful in terms of energy and money and doubly wasteful because the multiplicity of marks is educationally unsound. Fewer marks on larger units of work would be much better. Some think that, if we did one-tenth as much marking as we do now, we could mark more effectively.

These critical statements are directed at the usual marking that consummates with the report card and not at the help a teacher gives a pupil by evaluating his work so that he can delete his errors and



## Fall rating:

Teacher's comment: John has shown some temper tantrums and has been unwilling to participate in some of the group projects.

Parent's comment: When he has a tantrum, don't pay any attention to him.

Don't urge him to take part in the activities. Possibly if he is neglected, he'll wish to join.

## Winter rating:

Teacher's comment: John is improving. Your suggestions were good ones.

Parent's comment: He seems to like school better, for he doesn't complain about going.

## Spring rating:

Teacher's comment: Altogether, John has had a good year and is now ready for the next grade.

In the grades in which accomplishment in specific subjects is to be rated, the subjects can be marked with the same symbols: S to indicate satisfactory work, U to indicate unsatisfactory achievement, and I to indicate that the work is not marked U because there are hopeful evidences of improvement. There should also be space for teacher's and parent's comments and for marking qualities similar to those named on the cards for the lower grades, as has been illustrated.

It is unnecessary and wasteful of time and energy to mark pupils on their achievement and send home a report card more than three times a year. Furthermore, parents do not need a report every 4 or 6 weeks. They know approximately what their children will do on the basis of what they did the previous year. If reports are made only half as frequently as at present, parents will be sufficiently informed. When necessary, the teacher can send home a special report indicating an unfavorable change in a child's scholarship. Then parent and teacher can cooperate in order to find the cause of the change and attempt to find methods for bringing the child's achievement back to its usual level.

Some schools may favor three descriptive categories of pupils' responses in school, using H, S, and U. The letter H represents honors, or work of A grade; S, or satisfactory, represents B, C, and possibly a D grade of work; U represents unsatisfactory work or F, and in some instances D work.

In addition, the report card should be made a means for stimulating the child's development. It can be more than a report; it should be one of many educational methods that contribute to the total education of school children. To be sure, even when report cards are greatly simplified and are issued much less frequently, the teacher's errors in judgment are not entirely removed. Because fine gradings are not attempted, however, unreliability is minimized, and the marking system aids in stimulating the educational growth of the child and in guiding him, rather than merely indicating his classroom achievement.

Conceivably the use of S and U or other symbols may reduce the

evils of the traditional report card and of the myriad marks on papers, recitations and examinations. The marking of character traits will probably not do any good and may do harm. It is very doubtful that students will actually improve their behavior because it is graded periodically.

**Guiding and Helping the Student.** Probably best of all is to abandon the traditional report card. The time saved can be utilized for guiding the student. This can be done best by the teacher's having conferences with students and their parents. The purpose of these conferences is to help students with their problems and to help parents to understand their children better. Parents can also help teachers understand their pupils. The teacher will use the conference periods, which of course should be in private with the parent and child separately, not only to discuss school marks but also to discuss what can be done to overcome the student's weaknesses and reinforce his strengths. Problems of personality and social effectiveness may deserve more attention than academic achievement.

A conference or two per year with the parents of each child should be sufficient to take care of the needs of most children and parents. If a child needs a great deal of help, more conferences can be arranged. Conferences between teacher and student at least once a year according to schedule and as often thereafter as needed should take care of the student's needs.

What shall teacher and parent do at a conference? What does the parent want to know? The teacher and parent should talk about the child with a view to understanding him personally, socially, and academically. The purpose of the discussion is to bring about co-operation of home and school in helping the student make the most successful use of his potentialities.

Many parents are going to ask specific questions about their children's achievement in school subjects, and the teacher should give specific answers. Having on record the results of many examinations and having observed the student work in class, the teacher has a good understanding of his achievement. Of especial value are the results of standardized achievement tests, which enable the teacher to indicate how the student ranks in his class and also according to national norms.

Some teachers are not successful in conferences because they cannot draw out information from the parent and do not impart it satisfactorily. Some teachers, too, may be on the defensive over the effectiveness of their teaching. Failure, however, can be turned to success if a teacher will study conference techniques and work to improve her methods. Some parents are difficult to confer with because they are on the defensive also. They may be overconcerned and inclined to defend and excuse their children rather than trying to gain understanding so that they can help them more intelligently. In such cases the teacher

must try to lead the discussion so that the spirit of guidance develops. If the conference method can be worked out, much can be accomplished in helping the student. It is successful in a number of schools.

Report cards are not an indispensable evil and are not necessary as a record of achievement. A record of students' achievement can be developed by giving standardized achievement tests each year. The teacher can make an evaluation of each pupil's annual achievement, based on her tests and observations. The teacher's evaluation, plus annual test results, will help build up a record that is excellent for understanding a child's academic achievements.

The records for each pupil should also include the results of mental and interest tests. His athletic, dramatic, forensic, musical, and other special experiences should be listed. The teacher will want to record any special experiences and observations that help in understanding a student's personality and potentialities. The purpose of such records is to have sound facts and information for the parents and pupil. The tremendous amount of time that teachers use in grading their pupils and preparing report cards and recording marks can be utilized much better in guiding the student.

## SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Students are interested in knowing what factors are taken into consideration when the teacher assigns their marks. Sometimes students suspect that personal factors affect marks.

Sometimes teachers take into account promptness, effort, attitude, and what is called good citizenship when they determine a child's mark in reading, arithmetic, or other subjects.

A mark in a subject should be determined by knowledge or achievement. Other qualities should be ruled out or marked separately.

There are no uniform standards for marking. A particular piece of work can be given a widely different range of marks. Teachers differ in their standards, there are different standards in various departments of high schools and colleges, and standards vary greatly from school to school. There are schools with much poorer students than other schools, but a poorer school may give even higher marks.

School marks are important to the prestige of the pupil and his family. Marks are also important in obtaining a position and being recommended for college. Many prizes and honors are based on the marks pupils have received.

Draft boards, in passing on the deferment of military service for college men, take into account the marks they make.

Using a symmetrical, or "normal," distribution as a guide for assigning marks may tend to bring about fair standards, but special consideration must be given to a fair standard of distribution and to the quality of the class or grade.

Some psychologists and educators feel that the present marking system is not conducive to good learning and scholarship in that it causes students to work for marks and limits their methods of studying. Consequently, it is believed that the present marking system should be modified so that the emphasis will be not on grading students but on diagnosing them and giving them the help they need. It is recommended that the teacher and parents confer with each other about the welfare of a pupil whenever it will be helpful to do so.

School marks are not necessary for a record of student achievement, as the best record can be obtained from standardized achievement tests given annually.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Do you think that the present marking system develops many stresses and strains for students, parents, and teachers? Discuss.
2. Describe how a standard distribution of marks can be used either wisely or unwisely in a school.
3. A representative of a large firm who hired many graduates of engineering colleges said, "Give me my choice of the graduates who in scholarship are in the upper 20 per cent, and you can have the rest." What is your reaction to this statement?
4. When conferences replace report cards, what should be accomplished when the teacher confers with parents and with pupils?
5. A mark in a subject or course should represent achievement in that subject and not various personal qualities. Comment.
6. What type of marking or reporting system do you think is most conducive to the growth and development of pupils?
7. It is possible for a student to do the same quality of work in two colleges and get an A in one and only a C in another. Explain.
8. What are the advantages and disadvantages of the traditional marking system?
9. Much is said against school marks, but still those who get the best marks in school tend to be most successful in postschool life as well. Comment.
10. What do you think would be a desirable distribution of marks for the freshmen of a large high school?
11. When so much emphasis is placed on marks as now, students tend to work for marks rather than having an interest in learning. Discuss.
12. Describe how departments within the same college differ considerably in their standards of marking.
13. Even though it is true that there are many instances of the unreliability of individual marks, as a whole marks are fairly reliable indicators of very important qualities and abilities of students. Explain.
14. Discuss which is a better record of what a student has accomplished, a record of all his marks, or a record of achievement as determined by standardized achievement tests.
15. An A of one teacher means the same as the A of another, and similarly for B's, C's, and other marks. Comment on this statement.



### 3. How to Study and Learn

#### *Being an Effective Student*

**What to Look For.** Note that teaching methods may control the way in which pupils study.

Be able to explain the importance of a definite program of study that involves time and place.

Why do we have to learn to study in situations that are far from ideal?

What are the best ways to prepare for examinations, and why is cramming ineffective?

In preparing the individual lesson, learn the advantages of preliminary scanning; thorough, intensive reading; acquiring the main thought of the paragraph; special study of difficult parts; note taking and outlining; reviewing the lessons and relating the old with the new; studying several sources; and a thorough understanding of words, charts, tables, formulas, and questions. Be able to explain how these methods improve learning.

How can a good assignment help the student, and what is the purpose of pretesting?

The whole and part methods are described in considerable detail. Their various aspects should be understood and also how these methods can best be utilized.

Learn what are good and poor study habits and what their relation to scholarship is.

Note that those who study less tend to get slightly better marks and also that those who study less tend to be brighter.

Be able to classify and analyze the most important rules of study.

To what extent can the achievement of pupils be improved by teaching them how to study? What can be done to help them improve their reading?

Examinations vary according to the nature of the questions; some result in better achievement than others. Observe the difference.

How should study time be divided as to length of periods in order that studying be most effective?

Should bright, able students be permitted to take a heavier than average load? Should students have jobs while they attend school?

Introduction. "It's killing time that is the worst enemy of good scholarship," said Ben when the senior boys were discussing how to be a successful student.

"Or procrastination, not getting down to work, which is about the same as killing time," added Ralph.

"A person has to put in a certain minimum amount of time in which he actually concentrates on his lessons, or he won't be one of the better students" was Wendell's contribution.

"Who wants to be a bookworm?" asked George, who was barely passing in his work.

To this Carl replied, "A student can put in 20 to 30 hours a week if he has a definite plan and still have time for fun."

"A good school record is the best guarantee of future success," added Ben. "I wish that I had a better system of studying."

"But if a student doesn't learn easily, no system or amount of study will make him a very successful student. There is no substitute for brains." This was George's second remark which was prompted by his awareness that he didn't have the mental equipment to be more than an average student.

Then Ben hurried to reply by saying, "No matter how dull or bright a student is, he can make the most of his abilities only if his study habits are good—effective methods and devoting plenty of time to the lessons."

As the discussion continued, various ideas about studying effectively were brought up and discussed.

**How Methods of Teaching Affect Methods of Study.** Methods of study vary with the purposes of the learner, which, in turn, reflect the methods of the teacher. If the teacher is a textbook teacher who "calls for" the facts of the book, the students will uncritically try to memorize the facts in order to repeat them to her. Then the method of study resolves itself largely into one of rote memorizing.

If the teacher's method is a broader one and tends to stimulate problem solving, critical evaluation, and the relating of knowledge, the student will prepare his lessons accordingly. Especially if the student, rather than taking the "next 10 pages," is working on a problem or engaged in a project, he will search for information and relate it to the problem that he is working to solve. A student should study with a clear purpose in mind so that he will be motivated.

**Need for a Good System.** The first and probably most important thing is to acquire the habit of studying systematically. Effective methods of study consist basically in applying those fundamental principles which underlie efficiency. Doing one's work regularly, per-

sisting until it is done, and not falling behind in it are the general guides for successful study as well as for effectiveness in any field of endeavor. It is assumed that the student has ability enough to cope successfully with his academic tasks. Then the success with which he masters the tasks before him depends in a great measure on his efforts.

Occasionally a teacher meets with a highly motivated student who proceeds in his own way, propelled by his own power and the stimulation from his environment, to which most persons fail to respond. He may not be observing the usual methods of study in a technical sense, but in effect he is. Therefore he should be allowed to practice his own methods as much as possible.

The following methods and techniques are set forth with the faith that they will increase significantly the learning of those who practice them.

First, one should have a definite place and time for study. For the child in the elementary school, this is provided by the school program. Because homework is being minimized for the elementary-school pupil, he does not have to organize his home environment for the purpose of devoting much of his out-of-school time to study.

It is more important for high-school students to organize their program so that they have a definite time and place for their work. High-school students have nonrecitation or study time during school hours, which they can either waste or utilize. Consequently, the budgeting of time must be stressed in high school.

As the college student is almost entirely "on his own," if he does not organize his program of work so that his time for study is utilized, he is almost sure to fail. When he is not in class or in laboratory, his time is his own to use as he pleases. If he goes to definite places to study with regularity, he observes the basic principle for becoming a successful student. The best places are the study hall, the library, or his own room.

On the negative side, the student is advised to avoid loitering and loafing. It is all too easy to spend an hour or two with other students between classes, sitting in a room merely talking or playing cards and other games. To move with dispatch to the place where one can get right down to work requires self-discipline, which is difficult in the beginning but, when once begun, is not so hard to maintain.

Definite periods and places for work are conducive to beginning a task. Half of achievement is accomplished if one gets down to work. If a start is made, the likelihood is great that the work at hand will be accomplished. Dilatoriness and procrastination are the most relentless enemies of achievement. The businessman, housewife, farmer, or student who never gets around to answering the letters, preparing the meals, beginning the plowing, or attacking the lesson finds that his

work piles up on him and that his accomplishments in the end are small.

In a student's home it is often difficult for him to have a place of his own that is suitable for study. Altogether too frequently he must study in the kitchen, dining room, or living room, where the presence and activities of the family distract him from effective study. The most isolated room in the house should be reserved for study when students are home. The difficulty of studying at home, because it is a place associated not so much with work as with eating, sleeping, playing, or using one's spare time, can be overcome if the place, table, and other equipment set aside for study are used exclusively for that purpose and not for chatting or playing games. For example, if students have a little library or place for studying, they might avoid using it for anything else by talking or playing in another part of the house. In short, a definite place should be dedicated to work.

In a certain home the piano was in a room known as the music room. The children practiced there but were discouraged from using it for other purposes. Whenever they were found playing dolls, cards, and other games in this room, they were tactfully directed to their own rooms. Consequently, they thought of the room as a place for practicing the piano; thus, when they went into it for that purpose, they were influenced to practice by the associations that they had with it.

A good student devotes considerable time to his lessons, but time in itself is not a great virtue. The time must be used in active and concentrated effort if it is to be effective, and all good students and all people with records of achievement put in many hours of hard work. There is no substitute for time if a person wishes to reach a high level of achievement.

**Studying under All Conditions.** Even though it is of first importance that the student observe the general principles of beginning work without loss of time in places conducive to study, he cannot always do so. A student and learner should organize his living so that he can study systematically in as ideal situations as possible, but he should also learn to study when conditions are not ideal. He must learn to use a few minutes here and a few minutes there and thus utilize a large amount of time that otherwise would be wasted. For example, a good student will study on a bus or read while waiting on a corner. At home, while waiting for dinner, he can snatch a few minutes for his lessons or for general reading. If a person depends on having perfect conditions, he will miss many opportunities for working effectively.

Very few persons work under conditions that are considered ideal. The stenographer, for example, usually works in an office where there

are others at work, and she is subject to interruptions. In the newspaper office reporters must think and write in noisy and busy surroundings. The man in the office is interrupted by telephone calls and intrusions and must turn his concentration off and on. In countless situations it is necessary to read, write, and think in the midst of noise, distractions and interruptions.

The student should therefore learn to fight off distractions and concentrate in situations that might ordinarily be disconcerting. This is not easy to do, and under such circumstances it may help to select for reading or study the more interesting material. By practice and repeated attempts, the student will be surprised at how successful he can be in studying effectively in situations which he may have thought rendered it impossible to do so.

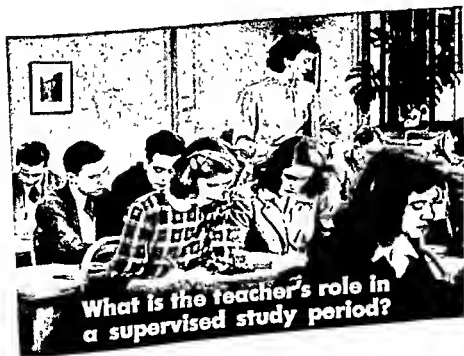
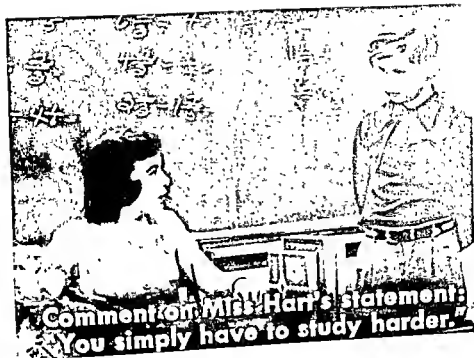
#### PREPARING THE INDIVIDUAL LESSON

A major part of most lessons consists in mastering a number of printed pages. On the other hand, in a subject such as arithmetic or algebra the lesson consists largely in working a number of problems. Even though a few of the following suggestions for effective study apply more to such subjects as reading, geography, history, and literature, they apply in some degree to material like problems in arithmetic, algebra, and geometry.

**General Examination of the Content.** The student faces his lessons—pages to read, a number of problems to work, music to play, and papers to write. Rather than starting out with no understanding of what the topics or the problems are, a student should run over quickly the whole lesson, scan the pages to be read, skim over the problems to be worked, pick through the piece of music, and think up some points which should be included in the paper to be written. Such a quick survey may clarify the general pattern and develop an outline of the lesson in the student's mind. Then he can proceed from one part of the lesson to the next knowing what to expect. Thus it will be easier to interpret the ideas and formulate a pattern of the facts and meanings and therefore see their relationships.

In looking over the work to be done and in trying to gain a general orientation to it, a number of cues can be used. These are the center and side headings usually found in a chapter to be read, the processes that will solve the problems in mathematics or physics, the theme and general structure of a piece of music, and some main points for the paper. Thus a student "catches on" to what the lesson is about before he studies it intensively, and his understanding is thereby enhanced.

**Intensive Reading.** After a general survey of the material it should be studied intensively. Some suggestions for effective intensive study follow.



First, hurry should be avoided. Nobody can study in haste. The attitude of digging deep into the lesson should be cultivated. If the student's one desire is to get through his lessons quickly, this is bound to render him an ineffective worker. There is complete incompatibility between hurried studying and mastering the thought of the printed page. The student hurries because he has other purposes more strongly in mind than that of studying and thus his lessons are merely hurdles to leap over. But if his teacher can develop in him interests and an attitude favorable for learning, such obstacles may be overcome. In fact, in every school there is a race and struggle between study activities and distracting tendencies to loaf, "visit," and play. But if the instructional forces are strong enough, the discipline of thorough study will be established.

**Mastering the Main Thought of the Paragraph.** Words make up sentences, and sentences make up paragraphs, which in turn make up sections and chapters. The student is told that he must learn the meaning of all unknown words he encounters so that he will understand the meanings of individual statements and subsequently the paragraph. Understanding the individual words or sentences does not assure one of understanding the paragraph, although it helps greatly. In general, knowing the parts does not make it certain that one will understand the whole.

The paragraph contains a main thought, or concept. When studying material which has to be thoroughly mastered, the reader can profitably stop and ask, "What is the main idea of this paragraph?" and then answer the question. Similarly, when writing, the student might check to see whether or not his paragraphs are well unified about a central idea. Any effort to locate the core of a paragraph or to write so that there will be such a core will always be helpful.

**Studying the Difficult Parts.** One bad habit often acquired is that of "sliding over" difficult parts of an assignment. Portions of some lessons are bound to be difficult, but instead of being read perfunctorily they should be read and reread until mastered. If the difficulties are overcome, later material will not be burdensome; but when a student slides over difficulties rather than working through them, he piles them up against himself. In short, he falls increasingly behind in his work because the failure to master the first difficulty makes harder the mastery of subsequent ones; worst of all, the habit of avoiding hard problems is developed.

**Words, Charts, Tables, Formulas, and Questions.** Every student encounters the problem of mastering unfamiliar words; of interpreting charts, tables, and formulas; and of answering the questions usually found at the end of the chapter and occasionally at its beginning. Unfamiliar words should be looked up in the dictionary and the meaning

fitted into the sentence. A good plan is to keep a list of new words and review them occasionally. Better yet, of course, is to read so widely that the words are learned by being frequently encountered.

A common practice of students is to pass over tables, charts, and formulas. These are included in order to summarize in effective form the data at hand and to provide data pertinent to the discussion. Often they require careful study and consequently are skipped. A good plan is to study tables, charts, and formulas until every detail is clearly comprehended and a conclusion drawn. In the case of the formulas particularly, it may be necessary to memorize them, but the meaning of the symbols should be understood before they are memorized, for memorizing meaningful material is more effective than memorizing material the meaning of which is not comprehended.

Questions at the beginning or end of chapters enable the student to prepare himself for the lesson before he begins reading and to test his knowledge after he has studied. Whether the questions are at the beginning or at the end, a good habit for a student to develop is to study them before beginning to read the chapter; to examine some of them again during the reading; and then, after the first reading is completed, to see whether or not he can answer them all. Reading the questions before studying and occasionally while studying causes the student to search for the answers. Thus, purpose and direction are given to reading.

In general, the principle of studying thoroughly and painstakingly applies to the meaning of words, to the interpretation of charts and tables, to the learning of formulas, and to the answering of questions. Careful work is of first importance. Beyond this, there may be incidental techniques of importance, also.

**A Good Assignment.** In a sense, the questions that the author provides are his assignment, but the teacher also can give purpose and direction to the lessons by specifically directing the student to answer definite questions and to find information about specified topics. Some teachers discuss new material to be studied with a view to interesting pupils in it. Students must know definitely what they should do, or else they will work ineffectively. Whether assignments should be made frequently and thus cover comparatively little material at a time or should be made less frequently and thus cover a considerable amount of material, such as several important topics, is a question that is often raised. It is sometimes contended that, if assignments are made every day, students will not learn to work independently but will acquire the habit of being spoon-fed. There is considerable validity to this point of view. One of the major objectives of teaching methods and how-to-study techniques is to train students to work independently through a large amount of reference material. But whether assign-



ments are large or small, the teacher should develop a vividness about the work so that the students will have a motive and consequently will be interested.

A good way to overcome the difficulties mentioned about "piecy" assignments is to develop the broad objectives of the course at the beginning and set up the major topics with some of the larger sub-headings. Then as the work proceeds from day to day, the smaller assignments will contribute to the larger solutions and a continuity and coherence will be achieved.

**Pretesting.** Students vary widely in the amount of information that they possess about a course before they take it. In courses that are not highly specialized or technical, some students have sufficient knowledge at the beginning to pass with a fair mark. In fact, in some instances, the best 15 per cent of students at the beginning of the course obtain higher scores than the poorest 15 per cent at the end. A surprising amount of overlapping of scores is obtained on an examination given at the beginning and end of a course. Furthermore, even though considerable gain is made on the average, some answers that were given correctly at the beginning of a course are given incorrectly at the end. Probably some of these answers were not known in the beginning or at the end and were given differently by chance.

The problem educationally is to discover what the pupil knows and does not know before he takes a course and to direct his studying and learning accordingly. Going over material that is known may be a waste of time. Emphasis should be placed on those phases of a subject about which the pupil knows least. Pretesting and diagnostic work give a basis for more individual teaching and more fruitful study.

**Underlining, Taking Notes, and Outlining.** As the student reads, he may find it helpful to underline the important terms, statements of principles, and topical sentences. Underlining gives the student practice in picking out what he thinks is important.

He should, of course, underline only in his own book, not in books belonging to anyone else or to the library. It is very distracting to other students to have to read a book in which there is much underlining. One of the reasons for a student's having his own books lies in the values that accrue from a fuller use, which includes underlining, making notes in the margin, and even cutting out parts of the text material.

It is profitable to take notes on material as it is studied. Such notes should represent the important ideas. To a large extent, notes are clues to the content of the material that has been studied. They may also serve as a brief record of the difficult portions of a lesson, and they are especially helpful when the student wishes to refer to previous lessons.

The problem of note taking may be complicated by the study of several sources rather than one. Notes taken may be recorded selectively, however, and duplication can be avoided. By careful outlining, the main topics of the several references may be included without much complication.

#### PREPARING FOR THE EXAMINATION

Many students prepare for examinations by studying intensively just before taking them. They study only indifferently except when they *cram*—that is, try to acquire in a few hours or days of frantic effort what should have been learned by systematic effort over a long period of time and attempt to stuff themselves with enough facts and terms so that they can pass the course. The crammer is hardly ever the student who tries to do exceptionally well in the courses themselves.

Cramming alone cannot be a sound method of studying, for it violates many sound processes, such as thinking reflectively, maintaining a critical attitude toward references, relating new material to old, working in a thorough and painstaking manner, and the distribution of time. It substitutes haste for care, superficiality for thoroughness, and rote memory for reasoning and problem solving.

Furthermore, the student whose only method is cramming has the attitude that the material is acquired only temporarily and only for the purposes of the examination. He is not learning it with permanent acquisition in mind. Once the examination paper is handed in, forgetting takes place rapidly. In the first place there was no attempt at retention; and in the second place the material was only superficially learned.

Occasions may arise when it is necessary to cram. If a person is in a situation where he must marshal many facts for a single occasion, he must cram them. The speaker preparing to discuss a certain topic or the lawyer collecting evidence on a case must cram considerable knowledge, transitory in nature, for the single occasion. However, the cramming is not effective unless the material learned for the moment is associated with a solid background of general principles and definite knowledge. The lawyer, for example, will learn temporarily many details about a specific case, such as persons, places, dates, and amounts of money involved; but in connection with them he will make use of legal principles which he understands or tries to understand thoroughly. If he had to cram all the details and also the law involved, the likelihood is that he would not be a very effective lawyer.

The best preparation for examinations consists in thorough day-by-day preparation. The student who does not fall behind in his work, always knows the assignment, and has the necessary books, papers,

and other equipment will be the best prepared. Such a student can profit by systematic reviews and by more intensive study near the time of the examination, but he avoids the attempt to gorge himself with the whole course in a few hours, as the crammer does, just before the examination. In fact, the best preparation for one who has worked systematically throughout the course and made thorough reviews is to enjoy some recreation and go to bed early the evening before the examination, rather than studying late into the night. This method has not been proved experimentally, but some students have discovered that it results in satisfactory achievement. Even though analogies are not always sound, it may be pointed out that athletes before a contest do not train rigorously up to the minute of the bell or whistle but do their intensive training well before the contest and then taper it off and engage in only light exercises. Light study and a short rest before the examination will probably enable the student to attack the questions with least confusion and greatest clarity of mind.

#### WHOLE AND PART METHODS

**Meaning of the Whole and Part Methods.** Much of the discussion concerning the superiority of the whole method versus the part method centers in the memorizing of poetry. Shall the learner study and read the poem from beginning to end until the whole of it is memorized, or shall he memorize it line by line or verse by verse? The learning of poetry lends itself well to the discussion of the whole and part methods, but the fact is that memorizing poetry in the average present-day school is a relatively unimportant matter. One might argue that it should have greater importance, but at present most lessons do not include learning poetry by heart.

But the problem of learning by wholes or by parts is applicable also to lessons in vocal and instrumental music, arithmetic, history, geography, reading, and other subjects. Natural, or normal, divisions exist in these areas, such as a song, an instrumental selection, a process in arithmetic, a chapter in history, a topic in geography, and a step in reading. One can practice the whole selection in music or parts of it at a time; in history and geography, one can study part of a topic or the whole. In reading, a letter-and-word method, as when phonics is used, or larger units such as phrase and sentence, with little attention paid to the parts of the word, may be employed. In these examples we have the principle of the whole-and-part method illustrated as smaller units against larger ones. The parts-and-wholes concept is really a relative one and should be considered as such.

A combination part-and-whole method should also be considered, for the method of learning need not be either part or whole, but a combination of these two. There are many possibilities of combining the

two. In practicing a piano selection, one may first play parts of it and then play the whole; or play over the whole a number of times, practice the difficult parts, and then play the piece as a whole. Thus there are many possible combinations of the part-and-whole method.

There is considerable virtue in this method. It enables more time to be devoted to specific weaknesses. Thus, if a health diagnosis shows that a person's specific weakness lies in excessive weight, attention will be devoted to exercises and modes to correct that deficiency. In fact, the entire diagnostic movement in education is based on the part-whole method, with special emphasis on correcting weaknesses and then achieving competence in the entire process or problem.

**Comparative Effectiveness of the Part and Whole Methods.** Many experiments have been conducted to test the effectiveness of these methods, singly and in combination. Some experiments favor one method, some another. Probably more evidence exists in favor of the whole than of the part method. Nevertheless, little is to be gained by concluding that the whole method is superior and then proceeding to incorporate it into our educational procedures to the exclusion of others. Considerable discrimination is necessary. Instead of generalizing too broadly, we shall seek to identify the virtues of each and examine the factors to take into account in evaluating the whole, part, or combination method.

The whole method has the advantage of causing the learner to work in larger units, comprehending the interrelationship of parts and their logical sequence. In learning a poem of several stanzas, for example, if the stanzas are learned individually the general theme of the poem tends to escape the reader, and the relationship and sequence of the stanzas are lost. After mastering one stanza the learner goes back to the beginning instead of starting the next one. This tends to establish the wrong order of connections—a fact that is apparent when children reciting their "pieces" have difficulty in beginning the next stanza and tend to go back to the beginning of one that they have recited. In general, logical and sequential order is best established by studying wholes or longer units.

The method of learning, whether by whole, part, or combination, depends on the difficulty of the material and the learner's intelligence. These two factors go hand in hand. The difficulty of material should be interpreted in terms of the ability of the learner. Material that is difficult for a third-grade child is likely to be easy for a college student. Difficulty, in other words, is a relative matter; and ability, too, is relative.

If the material is difficult or the ability low, the value of the whole method is decreased and that of the part method increased. Then the material should be assimilated piece by piece. When it is easy or when

the ability of the learner is high, the whole method is more effective. The student can master larger units effectively, for he can comprehend them.

Furthermore, if the selection, chapter, or unit is difficult, the student of less ability will become discouraged if he must attack it as a whole. For a long time, no visible progress will be made, and discouragement may result. But if in such a situation the problem is solved part by part, the learner will be encouraged by the feeling that he is making progress. In working arithmetic problems, for example, the solving of an individual problem is what stimulates the student to work the next. If he had to do a single problem that took as much time as 10 problems, he probably would drop the work before it was completed and accomplish less than when he worked individual problems and was spurred on by success in solving them.

Much stress has been placed on the value of the whole method, in that it enables the learner to perceive the continuity of the thought and to see the problem as a whole. It follows, therefore, that the value of the whole method is in proportion to the meaningfulness of the material learned. The more meaningful the material, the greater the advantage of the whole method; the less meaningful, the less the advantage.

One of the great values of the whole method lies in making a task a *meaningful whole*. Comprehending the main principles of a lesson, becoming acquainted with the characteristics of the entire violin concerto, knowing what a course or subject is going to cover, in general, being orientated to the problem in its entirety—this meaningfulness to the learner enables him to learn material better than if he studied it in parts. Learning by parts may cause the learner to learn more by rote, not seeing the interrelationship of individual ideas and losing the general theme or concept of what is learned. Thus, if the whole method is to be of maximum effectiveness for both student and teacher, it must be used to develop a thorough meaning of the whole and the interrelation of the parts.

In learning and teaching, the whole-and-selected-parts method is applicable in many situations. For example, in music, the student should play over the whole piece a few times, then practice the difficult parts, and then play the whole piece to integrate into the whole the improvement of the hard parts. Teachers of typing, physical education, arithmetic, reading, and other subjects can use the same method, having the students go over the whole, uncover difficulties, practice them, and then go over the whole again to integrate the gains from the practice of the difficult parts.

The instructor—and the student, too—should apply these facts and principles with discrimination, so that a maximum of learning is

achieved. In general, a student should conceive of his problem as broadly as possible and see its connotations and implications. In working on an individual lesson he can enrich it by associating it with related lessons. In trying to master material, it is effective to comprehend the whole in a general way, work on the difficult parts, and complete the lesson by studying it as a whole. No indisputable facts exist to prove one method better than another, but the principles that have been set forth will be useful as a general guide.

### STUDY HABITS AND SCHOLARSHIP

If there is a causal relationship between study habits and scholarship, students with better habits should obtain better marks than those who have not such good study practices. Surely this would be true if other factors, such as intelligence or capacity, were equal. In an investigation made of the study practices of ninth- to twelfth-grade high-school pupils to determine the relationship of study practices and scholarship the students were given a list of study methods and procedures by which to check their practices as *never*, *occasionally*, *usually*, or *always*. In general, it was found that good marks accompanied desirable practices. For example, the practices of looking up new words, skimming over material before careful study, reading silently without moving lips, getting lessons day by day to avoid cramming, and reviewing notes before examination were reflected in the students' marks. Those whose practice was *never* or *occasional* almost consistently obtained lower marks than those whose practices were *usually* or *always*. The differences were not large, but apparently those who received better marks had better study habits. We may conclude that better study habits result in more learning, which is what we should expect.

**Accomplishment and Amount of Study.** A number of studies have been made, at the college level especially, to discover how amount of study affects scholastic achievement. This relationship of amount of study and achievement is complicated by another factor, namely, general mental capacity. If bright students studied more hours than dull, then the relationships between hours of study and achievement would be very high because the capacity of the students would increase the relationships between hours of study and achievement or school marks. The students who studied more (and were the brighter correspondingly) would achieve much better than those who studied less (and were the duller correspondingly). If on the other hand bright students studied fewer hours than duller students, then there would be a lower relationship between hours of study and achievement. This is the case.

There is a tendency in college for bright students to study fewer

hours than duller ones, though not every bright student studies less than every dull one. It is expected that if a college student is below the average in college brightness, he is the kind who makes up for a lack of capacity to learn easily by extra industry. Bright students can do satisfactory work in less time, and duller students can do satisfactory work only if they work more. Facts about hours, capacity, and achievement indicate that the number of hours devoted to one's lessons is an important factor in achievement, but so is mental capacity.

In general, the best practice for most students is to study between 20 and 30 hours per week. Less than 20 is not enough to obtain optimum results. More than 30 or probably 35 hours brings diminishing returns. Long hours of study do not make up to any great extent for low mental ability. On the other hand, if a bright pupil spends too little time on his work, he will not become sufficiently acquainted with it and possibly will fail to do it satisfactorily. The failure of many to obtain satisfactory marks lies in their habit of not studying an average amount. In the case of all students who study average to maximum amounts and still fail, investigation should be made to determine whether their difficulties are special disabilities in reading, low mental capacity, health and emotional problems, or a wrong course of study. Experimental attempts may be made to improve the learning of the failing pupil on the basis of such analysis. In some cases, improvement will follow. In many others, failure will continue. Control of study habits and the number of study hours may help, but no investigation has revealed any phenomenal improvements.

**How to Get the Best Results.** In short, a student will achieve most if he has a motive for studying, is interested, and has the capacity for being successful. Nevertheless it is believed that there are methods and techniques which translated into practice will make one a better learner. The problem of both teachers and pupils is to comprehend the best study methods and to set up motivations which will lead to the formation of good study habits. Thus an awareness and understanding of the best rules and methods of study might prove helpful in improving the scholarly habits of students.

A careful analysis of the work done on methods of study has sifted out what probably are the most important ideas on the subject. They can be divided into two categories as follows:

1. Time, regularity, and intensity of study.
  - a. Enough hours per week.
  - b. Having a schedule—definite time and place.
  - c. Isolating oneself for studying.
  - d. Ignoring distractions.
  - e. Studying in a situation conducive to diligence.

**Study and the Nature of the Examination.** In order to investigate methods of study and efficiency of learning, students were examined after they had been told that they were to be tested by an essay, completion, multiple-choice, or true-false examination. The material to be learned consisted of a chapter on memory in a psychology textbook, and the students were helped by lectures, recitations, and supervised study. They were divided into four groups according to which examination they were to prepare for. All students, however, were given the four types of test, two of which, the essay and completion, may be regarded as the recall type, and the other two, the multiple-choice and true-false, as the recognition type. Results of the testing were analyzed to discover for which type they learned most efficiently and also to note the difference in methods of preparation for the various types.

In all tests—essay, completion, multiple-choice, and true-false—the students who studied for the essay and completion test, or the recall type, tended to do best. Those who prepared for the true-false and multiple-choice tests did not do so well on their own tests as did the students who had prepared for the essay and completion tests. The differences are not large, but they could not be expected to be so; for the material studied consisted of a single chapter, and the mind-set for specific kinds of test should not be expected to cause a large difference. The consistency of the difference in favor of study for the recall type of examination is important and indicates how the examination controls methods of study.

**Distribution of Study and Practice Time.** In the schoolroom the program of study may be arranged so that study periods are long, average, or short. In preparing lessons the student may work on the same lesson for a whole evening, or he may divide his time of study among several lessons. A question may be raised regarding the length of period that is conducive to most effective learning. If a child, for example, spends 2 hours a week on her piano lessons, should she practice one long 2-hour period, two 1-hour periods, four 30-minute periods, six 20-minute periods, or eight 15-minute periods? Furthermore, it is important to know how much time should elapse between the periods of practice.

The period should not be too long, or, during parts of it, interest will lag and achievement will be reduced. If, on the other hand, the periods are too short, time is usually lost in beginning and stopping. The amount lost in this way may be a large proportion of the total; the learner no more than gets well started, or "warmed up," before the time is up. Thus the pupil is cut off when the period of greatest efficiency is reached. If the period were longer, practice and learning would be continued through the minutes of greatest efficiency.



The length of the period should vary according to the age of the learner. In the matter of piano practice, which was used to illustrate the division of 2 hours into practice periods of different length, it is conceivable that for an adult expert in music who is motivated to achieve a high degree of artistry, long periods could be very profitable. They permit the practice of the material as a whole, whereas short periods restrict practice to bit-by-bit work or to smaller pieces.

In the case of children, whose power to sustain attention is less than that of adults, short practice periods of about 10 or 15 minutes will prove more profitable than long periods. A short period of intensive practice is better than a long one in which the attention begins to lag and a distaste for practice sets in.

The length of the period varies with the nature of the material or subject matter. A drill period in addition combinations or the multiplication tables should be short. It has been discovered that drills of about 10 minutes in length can be just as effective as those two and three times as long. Daily short drills, in which keen interest is maintained, is of maximum effectiveness for teaching the combinations in arithmetic, words in reading, and various facts in other subjects taught by the drill method.

In certain fields that by their nature are best studied through reflective thinking, careful analysis, and speculation the periods obviously should be longer. Subjects like geography and history, if studied for their principles and implications, need longer periods for study and for recitation.

When such subjects are taught narrowly and stress is placed on bare data and oversimplified events, drill periods that may be described as "short and snappy" are probably best. A class period in geography or history devoted to a discussion of the reasons for events and the trend of situations and to making predictions or speculations should be more leisurely and extend over longer periods. One cannot, for instance, discuss the economic implications of the First and Second World Wars by the quick-drill method. The students will need time to set forth the facts and draw conclusions, which in turn should be criticized and evaluated.

If in a geography class the topic consists of whether the Dakotas should have been left as grazing lands instead of being settled by farmers, who plowed up the prairie, the period should be longer than one devoted to drill about the location of cities in those states. Such a problem requires earnest and premeditated consideration compared with that required by the more mechanical phases of work. Critical and analytical work cannot be carried on in short periods.

Good scholarship is not nourished by the hurry and scurry that is characteristic of our schoolwork. Short, hurried periods, speed

tests, and time-limit drills have their value in acquiring a number of skills, but if carried over to phases of schoolwork that by nature require penetrating analysis and the making of associations, the result will be the acquisition of unrelated factual elements.

The optimum length of period depends to some extent on the age of the learner and the nature of the materials being learned. In general, it is a sound principle to have reasonably short practice, study, and recitation periods rather than long ones. The best length is one throughout the whole of which the learner maintains maximum attention and proficiency. If the period is too long, loss results because of reduced efficiency. Part of such a period could be utilized at a different task where interest could be maintained. If it is too short, the momentum of being under way is lost through stopping work when learning is at a high level.

The data in Table 1 indicate that the learning period should not be too long; nor should it be too short, with a comparatively long interval between periods. The findings indicate most conclusively that long single periods are least effective, probably because of a drop in interest and, if very long, because of actual fatigue. Periods can also be too short and the intervals between them too long. The intervals should be of such a length that the learner is well rested by them and resumes the task with a maximum of interest and skill. If the intervals are too long, some of the acquired skill will be forgotten and the learner will have to "warm up" to the task again because of a loss.

TABLE 1. *The effect of length of practice periods and their distribution on ability to add two-place numbers\**

Group	Practice period	Frequency	Extent of practice	Gains in numbers attempted†	
				Number	Per cent
I	60	Once	Continuously	4.1	10.9
II	20	Once a day	3 days	14.7	35.9
III	10	Once a day	6 days	15.3	33.1
IV	10	Twice a week	3 weeks	14.6	28.6

\* Adapted from H. B. Reed, *Distributed Practice in Addition*, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 15: 248-249, 1924.

† Gains were found by subtracting the number attempted the first 10 minutes from the number attempted the last 10 minutes.

Thus, the period should be long enough to reach and maintain maximum efficiency; yet it should not be so long that efficiency is lost. The interval between practice periods should be long enough to provide a complete rest but not so long that some of the previously acquired abilities are lost. In doubt, the tendency should be toward

credits, they generally manifest improvement. If certain individuals show a marked decline in scholarship, they should be carefully studied and observed to determine the reason. As a general principle, pupils should be given so much work that they attack it earnestly and with maximum interest.

**Student Employment and Achievement.** In college particularly and in high school, too, an important number of students are employed part time. Many students work a few hours a day in stores, offices, restaurants, and homes, on the farm, and in other places. Working for wages and for board and room while going to school is a common practice among many high-school and college students. Some teachers believe that students should not be employed while going to school because this interferes with a good program of study and thus prevents them from getting as much out of school as they would otherwise.

A few investigations indicate that employment does not interfere with a student's success in his school subjects. Students whose employment does not exceed 3 hours a day earn the highest average marks, and students who are not employed have the lowest average. Those who are employed 4 or more hours a day do not do quite so well as those who do not work as much. The differences between the groups are not large, but the evidence indicates that students who are employed a moderate amount are not handicapped by such employment.

Even though school marks do not suffer from moderate employment and suffer only a little from what may appear as too many hours of outside work, still the student may suffer by being kept out of school activities. It is not known whether or not employment has this effect; but if it did, the effect might be a very considerable one, for students should participate in extracurricular activities. Employment while in school should not consume so many hours and come at such a time that students are prevented from doing their best work in their subjects and from engaging in the school activities. Still it is usually better for a student to work more than is thought desirable and still attend school, even if at a disadvantage, than not go to school at all. Part-time employment if wisely controlled will not affect schoolwork and activity adversely but will actually give many students valuable experiences that will contribute to their education and maturity.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Narrow, unimaginative teaching stresses the memorizing and reciting of facts, and then these are the methods of study and recitation which students will employ. If teaching is based on problems, projects, and activities, then students will study and learn more comprehensively.

Students need to establish a system of studying. The main essential is that the student actually settle down to work every day and put in plenty of time. A schedule that includes a definite time and place will prove very helpful, though a student must learn to snatch time for study when he can and also to study in the midst of distractions.

In preparing the individual lesson, the student should first scan the contents in order to get a general idea of what it is about, then read it intensively, get the main thoughts of the paragraph, reread the difficult parts, take notes, and outline them. He should review the lesson carefully shortly after studying it, trying to relate old and new material. It is well to study several references. Unknown words should be mastered, as well as tables, charts, and formulas. The teacher can help students by making an insightful assignment and by pretesting the students to see what they actually know before they take up a topic.

The best preparation for examinations is thorough daily preparation and systematic review. Cramming is a superficial preparation that results in fragmentary learning.

A very desirable and effective practice is to go over the facts, ideas, and principles in one's mind. Thinking and reflecting on the lesson content and discussing it tend to clarify ideas and to improve understanding and retention. This mental review allows ideas to incubate and generate.

The whole and part methods consist, respectively, in studying a unit as a whole and studying it part by part. A combination method is usually best. The difficulty of the material and the maturity of the learner are factors to be considered in connection with the whole and part methods.

Good methods of study result in better scholarship. Good college students tend to study slightly less than poor students but get better marks because they are usually bright and learn readily. This is hardly true for grade-school and high-school students, among whom the good students study more.

Good rules of study are to put in an adequate amount of time and use the effective methods that have been described. Between 20 and 35 hours per week is recommended.

The work of students can be improved by supervising their study and teaching them to read, but the results do not seem to be permanent. A sustained program is needed. In helping a student improve his reading, consideration must be given first to comprehension and second to speed.

Periods of study should not be so long that time is lost through disinterest and fatigue or so short that proportionately much time is lost in starting and stopping.

Bright, able students tend to do as good or better work if they take more than an average load.

Students who are partly employed do better, too, if the employment is not more than about 3 hours per day.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. A good practice is to start a lesson as soon after the recitation as possible in order to have the lesson "on one's mind," or with one, for a maximum part of the time between meetings of the class. Explain.
2. A little student employment is desirable. Comment.
3. In preparing the individual lesson, thoroughness and completeness are fundamentals which the student should observe. Comment in detail.
4. The evidence seems to indicate the attempts to teach college students how to study do not bear much fruit. Comment.
5. Some students should take an extra course. Comment.
6. What are the advantages of learning to study in situations that are not ideal?
7. What do a good assignment and pretesting have in common?
8. There are various rules of study, and good ones, too; but it seems that the best way to be an effective student is to be motivated and to work at one's lessons a sufficient amount of time, and then with enough intelligence one will succeed very well. Comment.
9. The nature of the examination controls the way students study. Discuss.
10. What should a student do and what should he avoid if he wants to develop an effective system of studying?
11. What are the best ways of preparing for and taking examinations?
12. Many parents complain because their children do not learn how to study. What is your reaction to these complaints?
13. One can glibly say that the whole method is better than the part method. The answer to the question of which method is better is not so simple as this. Explain the various factors that are involved in determining the best use of these methods.
14. Do you think that the scholarship of grade-school pupils could be permanently improved by how-to-study courses?
15. The evidence seems to indicate that it does not pay to study many hours each week. Comment.

## 4. Human Physical Growth and Development

### *Its Educational, Social, and Personal Meanings*

**What to Look For.** Learn the meanings of the terms *growth* and *development*. Study carefully the course of human growth from conception to maturity in terms of pounds and inches. Note that there are several quite distinct phases of growth.

What account should be taken, in terms of healthful living, of weight in relation to age and height?

What account should be taken of growth in adjusting both academic and physical-education programs?

How does maturing increase a child's powers and potentiality?

What change in the proportion of the head, torso, legs, and arms takes place with growth from infancy to adulthood?

How can the factors of nutrition, exercise, and fatigue be balanced in relation to growth so that the child will achieve the most healthful development? How can athletics be either healthful or detrimental?

Study the course of growth of the brain, the body as a whole, the genital system, and the lymphoid system, and relate this growth to personal, social, and educational development.

What is the relation of structure and function?

Two terms, *puberty* and *adolescence*, are used. What do they mean, and what ages are involved?

Physique has a considerable effect on personality, and the reader should understand how this influence operates. How can the individual achieve the physical development that is best for him?

Observe how to predict how tall a child will be when he grows up.

What is the relationship between intelligence and physical size and between personal and physical characteristics?

Can personality be judged from physical type and characteristics?

The growth of abilities in sports and of the ability to do physical work accompanies increase in age up to maturity. Be able to explain.

Boys and girls differ in their physical development, and this difference affects behavior. Explain.

Do you think that there is a general motor ability that functions in all activities such as athletics and working with tools of various kinds?

How should the matter of handedness be treated?

**Introduction.** "Where were we and what were we before we were conceived and born?" asked Wilbur in a discussion that was taking place in a group of high-school students.

"I am more interested in the great changes that have taken place in us as we grew older. For example, what happens to the brains of young children as they grow older?" contributed Clarence.

Then Ray suggested, "Maybe our many interests in life, like our interest in games, in our jobs, in the other sex, and in what we read, are controlled by the stage of growth we have reached."

Willie brought up his major trouble by saying, "I haven't grown as fast as you fellows, and I'm so small that I am handicapped in the games we play. The girls regard me as just a kid and don't care to date me. I'm really bothered, and I wonder if I'll have some years of rapid growth so that I'll be at least average size."

"You wouldn't want to be as tall as I am, Willie, skinny and leggy and often feeling out of place" was Sid's consoling remark.

"You don't feel out of place when you are playing basketball," replied Willie with a complimentary overtone in his voice.

"I was interested in what the coach said about Fred, who is in the eighth grade. He said that Fred would be a fine ballplayer in a couple of years after he had grown bigger and stronger."

"Good physical development and good carriage contribute to a good personality," said Bill. "If a fellow has a good appearance, it makes him more confident and he feels more secure."

**Why Study Growth and Development.** The student may inquire about the reason for studying growth and development and why a book on educational psychology should have a chapter on this topic. Psychology is primarily a study of human characteristics and human behavior. Educational psychology is the study of human characteristics and behavior applied to education and its problems. It is essential that any student of educational psychology understand how the human being grows and develops in order to understand his behavior. What we do and what we are able to learn depend basically on our physical structures. The educator must realize that he cannot understand health and physical education, the problems of learning and teaching, personality and social development without studying what the human being is made of and how he grows and matures. If we are to understand function, we should understand structure. These various relationships will be discussed in this and subsequent chapters.

**Meaning of the Terms Growth and Development.** The two words *growth* and *development* are used together so often in education and psychology and have such great importance that we shall try to explain their meanings. Ordinarily, the term growth refers to increase caused by becoming larger and heavier. We speak of growth of the muscles, growth of the brain, growth of the skeleton, and growth of the body in general.

Growth is used here to indicate a growing that causes increases and enlargement. The changes are additive and augmental. There comes to be more of that which is growing, and it can be measured quantitatively in points, inches, or pounds. The heart grows and becomes bigger; the bones become longer, thicker, and heavier. In general, the body grows by measuring more inches in height and more pounds in weight.

Development indicates that there is advancement, more unfolding, progressive changes, and a going forward to greater maturity. A process of maturing and functional improvement takes place because of qualitative changes in structure and form. Development is related to growth but indicates more specifically the change in character that takes place. Bones, for example, grow and become larger, but they also develop by changing their composition and form. The skull grows from infancy, but it also develops by filling over the "soft spot," the fontanel. At birth, a child is born with the number of his brain cells determined. These grow larger, but they also develop by undergoing chemical change, by the formation of the medullary sheaths, and by becoming more complex.

Usually growth contributes to development, but not always. A child or adult may grow very fat and heavy, but such growth can hardly be considered development in the sense that it represents advancement or a higher level of maturity. We would say a person has developed physically if his physical condition is healthier, if he has more sensorimotor skills, and if his physical status is conducive to greater social effectiveness.

A child not only grows into adulthood but develops, also. Furthermore, the bodily parts change their sizes relative to each other. The head becomes proportionately smaller as children grow older, and the muscles become proportionately a larger part of the body. Internal changes take place with the increase in the activity of some glands, such as the sex glands, and the decrease in the activity of others, such as the pineal and thymus. Changes of this kind constitute development and in turn influence it.

A person can develop even after physical growth stops and maturity is reached. He can develop physically by making full use of the capacities he receives from about two decades of growth. He can ac-



quire many skills and habits that will enable him to participate profitably in games and sports and that also will make him healthier. Intellectually one can develop by becoming more objective-minded, by placing reliance in facts, and by rigorous sustained study and inquiry. Emotionally and socially one can develop, too, by living more healthfully, by improving one's social relationships, and in general by maturing to higher emotional and social levels. Growth and development are closely related, but it is well to explain growth as indicating increase, enlargement, and augmental changes and development as usually indicating increase, it is true, but referring primarily to progressive changes resulting in improved quality, character, and composition. This results in unfolding more completely and in greater maturity. Growth usually results in development, but not always, as has been indicated.

**Growth and Development before and after Birth.** Life begins with the union of two germ cells, the male sperm and the female ovum. The germ cell of the father fertilizes the germ cell of the mother, and a new life is on its way. From the union of these two cellular specks a new and hitherto unknown human being begins his growth in the body of his mother. At the beginning of life following conception, there is rapid multiplication of the original weight, but this is so small originally that only during the second half of pregnancy does the fetus gain rapidly in ounces and pounds.

TABLE 2. *Size of embryo and fetus\**

<i>Age, weeks</i>	<i>Length, inches</i>	<i>Weight, pounds</i>
At conception	0.005	
2	0.05	
4	0.10	
8	1.00	
12	3.15	
16	8.00	1.00
20	11.80	1.55
24	13.20	2.65
28	14.70	4.00
32	16.50	5.50
36	18.30	7.00
40	20.00	

\*The information in this table was adapted from Gesell's *The Embryology of Behavior* and other sources.

After 9 months in the body of its mother, the infant has reached a relatively very advanced stage of development, and when born it is in a measure fully endowed. All the sense organs, eyes, ears, nose, skin,

and mouth, are ready to function and actually do shortly after birth. The nervous system, which is one-tenth of the newborn's total weight, transmits some of the stimuli which reach the senses. The newborn infant actually possesses all the organic parts he will ever have—toes, feet, legs, genitals, visceral organs, fingers, hands, arms, the nervous system, the various sense organs, the vascular system, and endocrine glands. From birth to adulthood, nothing new is really added, as the growth and development that take place are the enlargement and changing in composition and form of that which the child was born with. The growth and development that take place during the 9 months of prenatal life seem even more phenomenal when one realizes that it takes place during about 1 per cent of the life span of a person.

Table 2 shows the growth of the embryo, for the first 8 weeks, and of the fetus, for the subsequent 32 weeks. It will be observed that the increases are small in amount for the first fourth of prenatal life, but by the halfway mark, at 20 weeks, a little over one-half the birth length has been achieved, though only about one-seventh the birth weight. During all the growing years of postnatal life, too, height is a greater percentage of adult height than are the weights for the same years (see Table 3).

Nature begins early to shape the embryo and fetus into a human being, and at 20 weeks the form and features are well established. At 8 weeks, even, the general outline is easily distinguishable, and the hands and feet, for example, are well defined. The normal intra-uterine growth period is 280 days, or 40 weeks, and then the child painfully and dangerously enters a world of jeopardy. He is well equipped to continue his growth and development and, if given good care, continues to grow very rapidly.

The growth and development of a human being from the union of two germ cells constitute the most fascinating and stirring drama that comes within the experience of mankind. From the seemingly unknown, through the embryonic and fetal period, the unconscious beginnings of infancy, and the period of childhood; through adolescence with the changes that bring on maturity, to the prime of life, and then to the period of progressive deterioration, with many dropping out along the way; then old age for many, and finally death—all this is the certain march from conception to the end of life. Life and living, the human being and his reactions to his environment, transcend in drama and in the ability to captivate the imagination the wizardry of electricity or the mysteries of the atomic bomb.

**General Growth and Sex Difference in Physical Development.** On the average, at birth a child is about 20 inches in height or length and between 7 and 7½ pounds in weight, boys being slightly taller and

heavier. During the first year there is rapid increase in both height and weight. Growth in the second year is also rapid, but considerably less so than during the first. The weight of a child doubles in the first 6 months and triples in the first year. During the first year the height increases about 50 per cent. There is a steady and slower growth from the third year to the time of the adolescent spurt, which begins on the average at about the age of eleven or twelve for girls and twelve or thirteen for boys. Up to the time of puberty, boys are slightly taller and heavier than girls.

From age twelve to a little past fourteen, the girls are slightly taller and heavier. At this time they are physiologically ahead of boys. They are more mature, for they have reached puberty at an earlier age and become temporarily a little larger, and this gives them a feeling of prestige.

You may have observed that girls of thirteen, fourteen, and fifteen usually prefer the company of boys a year or two older than themselves. The reason for this is the fact that a girl likes the idea and the security of being with a boy who is bigger and stronger than she. She often looks upon the boy of her own age who is smaller than she as not being grown up. "He's just a child," she may think. The interest in boys a little older than themselves seems to persist, for generally girls marry boys a little older than they are.

It is during the years of eleven and twelve to fourteen and fifteen that girls join boys in some of their sports. Girls feel their strength and size at this age and so play games like baseball and basketball vigorously. It is usually their last fling at the more manly sports, for they soon find more pleasure in individual sports and social activities.

At fourteen or fifteen, however, boys grow faster than girls. When maturity is reached, young men are about 5 feet 9 inches tall on the average and young women about 5 feet 5 inches. Boys weigh about 150 pounds at the age of twenty and girls about 125 pounds. Thus young men are about 4 inches taller than girls and about 25 pounds heavier on the average.

It should be kept in mind that we are speaking of averages and that there is wide range in height and weight for each sex, some being very short and some very tall, some very heavy and some very light. Big girls and women are larger than average men, and both average and large women are larger than small men. Men range in height from the little dwarfs or Tom Thumbs, who are under 2 feet tall, to the big side-show giants, who have reached the maximum height of about 9 feet 3 inches. In weight the range is from the small "human skeleton" or little midget to the circus fat man or woman. The maximum weight reached by a man is about 1,000 pounds and by a woman about 800 pounds. It is interesting to note that in terms of height or weight per

inch, the heaviest woman on record weighed more per inch of height than the heaviest man.

In spite of this great range in height and weight, the fact is that most children and adults fall within 4 or 5 inches of the average height and

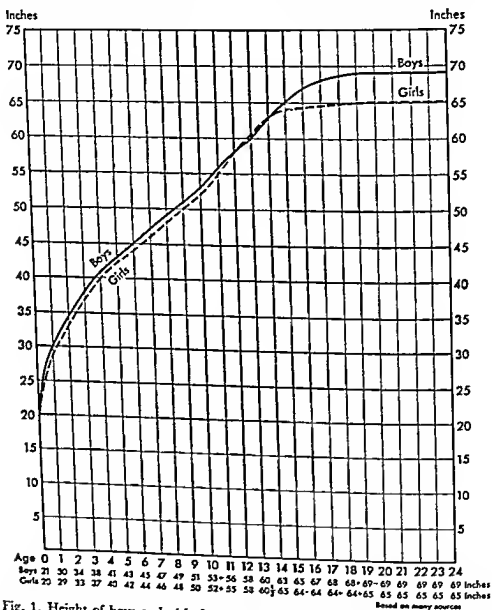


Fig. 1. Height of boys and girls from birth to maturity. (From Sorenson and Malm, *Psychology for Living*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1948.)

within 15 or 20 pounds of the average weight for their age and sex. Most persons are at or near the average, and as the distance from the average increases, the number at those weights and heights decrease.

In Table 3 one can see what percentage of adult height and weight boys and girls have attained at various ages. Height of children is a

much larger proportion of adult height than is weight. By the time adolescence is reached, youth has about 90 per cent of its adult height but only about two-thirds of its adult weight. It is during the teens, then, that adolescents put on weight, and a good proportion of that

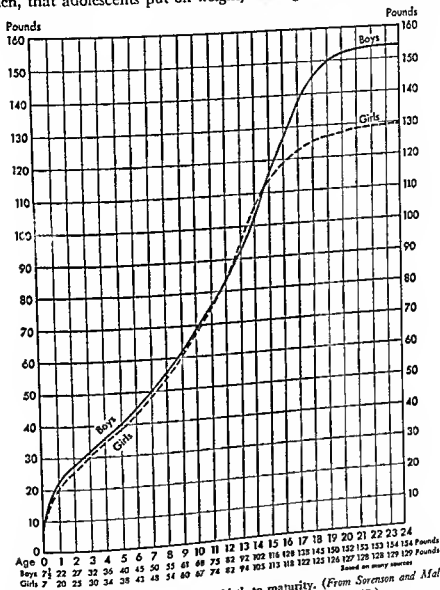


Fig. 2. Weight of boys and girls from birth to maturity. (From Sorenson and Malm, *Psychology for Living*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1948.)

increase is in the form of muscle. Thus during the teens the adolescent increases greatly in physical strength and power.

The teen-ager's gangliness and lankiness have been dramatically described in plays, stories, and psychology books. Actually the adoles-

cent is proportionately heavier than he was as a child. There is a short period at the beginning of adolescence when a rapid spurt in height takes place, but it is accompanied by a rapid increase in weight which continues longer than does the spurt in height, with the consequence that, during the later teens, the adolescent is better developed physically than at any time during his growing years.

So the current emphasis on the gangly adolescent is not warranted by the scientific facts. There are gangly adolescents just as there are fat, rounded ones and thin, gangly eight-year olds and gangly, lanky forty-year-olds. But it should be stressed that, during adolescence, the teen-ager gains proportionately almost three times as much in weight as he does in height. Correspondingly he gains greatly in physical power and skill. This is more pronounced for boys than for girls.

It is noteworthy that girls are proportionately more advanced toward their adult height and weight at every age than are boys. This is probably consistent with the general fact that girls are more mature than boys. This is especially true during the early adolescent years, and it is then, according to Table 3, that the differences in percentages of adult height and weight between the boys and girls are greatest.

TABLE 3. Percentages of adult height and weight (age 20) represented by height and weight of boys and girls at given ages

Age	Boys' height		Girls' height		Boys' weight		Girls' weight	
	Inches	Per cent	Inches	Per cent	Pounds	Per cent	Pounds	Per cent
Birth	21	30.4	20	30.8	7.5	4.9	7	5.6
1	30	43.5	29	44.6	22	14.5	20	15.8
2	34	49.3	33	50.8	27	17.7	25	19.8
3	38	55.0	37	57	32	21.1	30	23.8
4	41	59.4	40	61.5	36	23.6	34	27.0
5	43	62.3	42	64.6	40	26.3	38	30.2
6	45	65.2	44	68	45	29.6	43	34.1
7	47	68.3	46	70.8	50	32.9	48	38.0
8	49	71.0	48	73.8	55	36.2	54	42.9
9	51	73.9	50	76.9	61	40.1	60	47.6
10	53.3	77.2	52.3	80.5	68	44.7	67	53.2
11	56	81.2	55	84.6	75	49.3	74	58.7
12	58	84.1	58	89.2	82	54.0	82	65.0
13	60	87.0	60.5	93.1	92	60.5	94	74.6
14	63	91.3	63	97.0	102	67.1	105	83.3
15	65	94.3	63.7	98.0	116	76.3	113	89.7
16	67	97.1	64	98.4	128	84.2	118	93.6
17	68	98.5	64.5	99.2	138	90.8	122	96.8
18	68.3	99.0	64.8	99.7	145	95.4	124	98.4
19	68.7	99.7	64.9	99.8	150	98.7	125	99.2
20	69	100.0	65.0	100.0	152	100.0	126	100.0

This statement is more applicable to the differences in proportional weight than proportional height.

**Growth, Development, and Increasing Potentiality—Maturing.** Often one hears it said, "He is not big enough yet to do that." The reference may be to a child's sawing a board, lifting a box, or throwing a basketball. He has not grown and developed to a stage where he is mature enough, in other words, he does not have a readiness, for these activities. He does not have sufficient capacity and consequently is not ready.

Of special interest in this chapter is readiness for acquiring various sensorimotor skills which pupils need in their school and out-of-school experiences. Writing requires various skills in handling pencil and pen. The teacher should take cognizance of the readiness of children, not expect more than their little, unskilled hands can do, and introduce pen and ink only when they have a readiness for them. The same applies to scissors, crayons, and brush in art, to the use of tools in shopwork, to the needle and machine in sewing. In games and sports, certain levels of capacity are needed which are usually determined largely by size, strength, and previous activities. A child is ready for these various processes and experiences when he has matured by growth, development, and experience to the stages where he is equipped to acquire skills readily enough to satisfy himself and to have stimulated in him a healthy interest in becoming more skillful. A student is not ready when his efforts pay small and discouraging dividends, when frustration kills interest, and when, no matter how hard he tries, he is able to make only very meager progress. In such instances the learner should first have rich, fruitful experiences which prepare him for acquiring later the skills which now are too difficult for him. He should wait until more maturing or natural growth and development help to raise his potentiality to a level which enables him to acquire readily the skills which were too difficult for him previously.

The concepts of maturing and readiness are so important in modern education that they need to be clearly understood by anyone who is or will be helping children and youth. Consequently a short discussion of maturing and readiness appears early in this text. Also, such a discussion is desirable in connection with physical growth and development because function is dependent on structure.

Physical education, too, takes into account the course of growth and development. In the first place, we should be most concerned about a program of health and physical education for the young child. Health and physical education are important at all stages of life, it is true, but more so during the first 10 years of life than the second 10 years and more during the first 5 years than the second 5 years. The nearer the beginning of life, the more important are good nutrition, good medical

and dental care, play and exercise. As our schools now carry out their health and physical-education courses, the emphasis is placed on athletics and physical education during the senior high-school years rather than during early childhood. By the time of the junior and senior years of high school, most growth has taken place; it is a period of rounding off into maturity and adulthood. At this time, games and play, health and physical education do less good than when a child is in the beginning phases of his growth. We can say, "As the twig is bent" or "A good start is essential" when we think of health in connection with the beginning period of physical growth and development. Consequently, in planning our health and physical-education program, we should cooperate closely with Nature and do more for the child's health and physical well-being at the beginning of his growing period than we now do. The idea of taking advantage of the formative period of life applies particularly to health and physical education.

The period of the adolescent spurt, which varies with individuals but takes place for most between the ages of eleven and sixteen, should receive emphasis in any program of physical education. This is a period when bones are growing and developing at a rapid rate. It should be regarded as a highly formative period comparable somewhat in that respect with the first years of life.

**Age, Height, Weight, and Health.** Children increase in height and weight with age; but the course of growth is not the same for all, and they differ greatly in height and weight at a given age. The weight of any child is largely in terms of his height, regardless of age, although it is expected, for example, that a child of ten of the same height as one of seven will be a little heavier than the seven-year-old.

For each age and height there are standards of weight, which should be available in every school and to every teacher. There is no true average for any child of a given age and height; but if a child is in the lightest 10 or 15 per cent or in the heaviest 10 or 15 per cent for his height, he should be carefully examined by a doctor to ascertain the condition of his health and to plan for increasing or reducing his weight as required. Ordinarily, the very thin or the very fat will experience an improvement in health from being brought nearer the average, though it may be found that some children who are "naturally" thin or "naturally" heavy are in good health.

It cannot be emphasized too much that not everyone can fit the average or should be expected to do so. Some children, youth, or adults will be lighter than the norms or averages because of a small skeletal frame or because of a general constitutional slenderness. Others are at the other extreme in being constitutionally sturdy and heavy. Both types can be in good health and have plenty of energy.

If the thin person is poorly nourished and lacks energy because of



poor food habits and the very heavy person is what he is also because of poor but very different food habits, each will be improved physically and emotionally if he gains or loses weight, as the case may be, so as to become nearer the general norms. The teacher should observe the thin and the fat in order to determine whether or not the physical condition of such children affects their personalities. Clearly, both physical and mental health may be involved.

Up to the age of thirty, being a little above the average in weight is ordinarily associated with better digestion and greater resistance to colds and tuberculosis. After the age of thirty, it is probably more healthful to be slightly under the average in weight. From the standpoint of physical and mental health, as well as of aesthetics, adolescent girls and those in their twenties are making a mistake when they eat sparingly in an attempt to substitute angles for curves.

**Changes in Body Proportion.** An adult is not merely a child grown to adult size. Infants, children, adolescents, and adults differ in their body proportions. At birth the head constitutes about one-fourth the length, or height, of the human body. Never again is it proportionately so large. At maturity it is only one-eighth the total height, or only one-half as large proportionately as at birth. The torso is three-eighths the body height at birth, which it also is in adulthood. The legs are comparatively short at birth, being only about three-eighths the total height, but in adulthood they are one-half the total height.

Thus, as the child grows older, the proportion of the head decreases and the proportion of the legs increases correspondingly. All the body parts—head, torso, and legs—grow larger, of course, but the legs grow comparatively faster than the head. The arms also become proportionately longer in adulthood.

The adult body is better adapted to the demands made upon it than it would be if it were that of an infant grown to adult size. The adult legs are better adapted to locomotion, for getting about, and for supporting the rest of the body. If the legs of the adult were as small and short relatively as they are in infancy, the adult would be greatly handicapped in maintaining his balance and in moving about with agility. The comparatively longer and stronger adult arms are needed for the work and the activities of every waking hour.

It has been predicted that hundreds and thousands of years hence our legs and arms will be shorter and more poorly developed than they now are. This prediction is based on the extensive use of automobiles and other conveyances and on the increasing development of laborsaving devices, which result in much less use of both arms and legs. There is little to be worried about, however, for the extensive participation in play and games is likely to maintain the present improved body structure of the adult.

It has been predicted also that we shall become large-headed since we shall be more and more mental and less and less physical. Possibly the adult physical type will be like what our type is now at birth, with large head and short legs. Most probably the stomach section will be smaller, for we shall live on refined foods, which will have less bulk than present-day foods. All this is interesting to contemplate, and we probably can obtain comfort in the thought that our body throughout the great future will continue to adapt itself so that it will be a better and better body for the environment in which it finds itself.

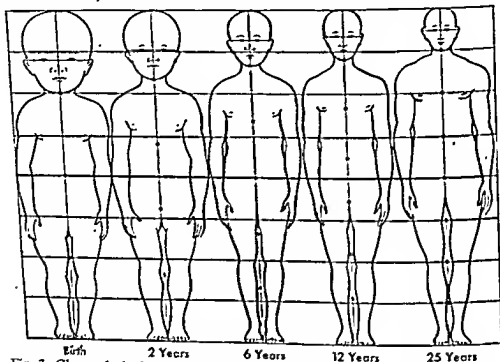


Fig. 3. Change in body proportion from birth to twenty-five years. (Adapted from *Ciba Symposia*, Vol. 5, April-May, 1943, after Stratz.)

The musculature of the body increases from about 25 per cent of the total weight in infancy to about 45 per cent in adulthood. The skeletal structure stays about the same proportion, 15 to 20 per cent of the weight from infancy to adulthood. There is much development of the bones during adolescence, another condition that places great responsibility on the health and physical-education program of the home and school.

Figure 3 shows the changes in body proportion that have been discussed. By comparing the human body at the different ages, the phase of human development pertaining to comparative growth of the different parts can be more readily understood.

**Growth, Nutrition, Exercise, and Fatigue.** The period of growth is associated with great energy and activity. The child and the adolescent are in motion throughout most of the waking hours. It is health-

ful for young people to be physically active. Exercise and activity contribute to their growth and health.

Still, a child, teen-ager, or person of any age, for that matter, should not be so active and exercise so much that fatigue tends to become chronic. It is well to exercise to the point at which one is wholesomely tired if he then gets a good rest or a good sleep. But being "dead tired" much of the time is serious. The personality tends to become dulled by fatigue. One tends to droop in physical appearance. A person in this condition does not think so well and is likely to have less resistance to disease.

Good nutrition is a strong antidote to fatigue and a friendly ally of physical "pep" and growth. Milk, meat, and potatoes, eggs, vegetables, and fruits, whole-grain breads and butter, rather than "cokes," coffee, candy, "hot dogs," sirups, and cakes, will do much to promote vigor.

A well-nourished child is less nervous and more stable and so is more responsive to opportunity. An experiment was conducted by Laird and others to test the effect of drinking milk, which, for one group of children, contained a pleasant-tasting concentrate of calcium, phosphorus, maltose, and lactose. In this experiment, conducted for children from the first, third, and fifth grades, at 9:30 A.M. some children received milk only, some received milk plus the food concentrate that has been described, and some were not fed. The pupils were rated by teachers at the beginning and end of a 2-week period for worry, emotional calmness, temper, criticalness, excitability, and other characteristics. It was discovered that there was about 8 per cent improvement among those who were given the milk and a 16 per cent improvement among those given both milk and the food concentrate. There were, of course, individual differences in improvement, some showing much greater change than others.

In such an experiment as this, which covered only a short period of time and involved a rating scale, there is certain to be a considerable degree of unreliability. Still, one can place some faith in the general trend and conclude that, if a little supplementary feeding in the middle of the morning causes children to be less nervous and more stable, we have an index at least to what effect scientific feeding based on an ample diet will have on the health and personality of growing children and even of adults.

A word should be said about junior high-school and senior high-school athletics and health. If athletics for boys and girls between the ages of twelve and eighteen, which are the ages of junior and senior high-school pupils, are not carefully controlled, they can be harmful. Competitive sports may be too severe for teen-age boys, who are at the formative and rapidly growing ages. The heart of a teen-age boy is

still comparatively small in terms of its ultimate development, and the strain imposed on it by strenuous and fatiguing sports may do injury in some cases.

- We can say arbitrarily that junior high-school youngsters should not play as heavy a schedule of competitive games of football and basketball as senior high-school boys do. Even in the case of senior high-school boys, there is a well-grounded suspicion that long, crowded schedules of football and basketball are not good for physical growth and development. The highly competitive organization of basketball in most districts, regions, and states keeps boys playing often and hard, possibly too hard. Adolescent boys are not physically mature or at their prime. The age of physical maturity and the greatest physical power and skill is reached some time in the twenties, from twenty-two to twenty-eight.

One group of junior high-school students which participated in competitive athletics was compared with a group of nonparticipants by Rowe, first when both groups were 13 years 6 months old and then again at 15 years 6 months after 2 years of participation and non-participation, respectively. The nonathletic group gained over twice as much in height, a little more in weight, and over twice as much in lung capacity as the athletic group. When a group of gymnasium students were compared with nongymnasium students, or those who had controlled physical education with those not having it, the results indicated slightly better physical development for those who participated in the physical education than for those who had not done so.

Teen-agers of thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, and older should be physically active, but rigorous competitive athletics are not conducive to optimum physical growth and development. The unfavorable effects of competitive athletics result not alone from physical wear and tear on the participants but also from the excitement and tensions which young athletes feel before games. The effects of these stresses and strains are shown in the loss of appetite, diarrhea, frequent urination, and dry mouth which many athletes experience before the game. Young teen-agers should not carry the profound and serious responsibility of enhancing through athletic prowess the honor of good old Junior High.

In many high schools, a program of health and physical education is crowded out by the time and money spent on basketball and football. Money is spent for a coach, not for a teacher of health and physical education. The coach devotes his attention to boys who play football and basketball, usually already the strongest and healthiest in school. The result is that the great majority of boys and girls who need health and physical education do not get it. This is not good for the personal and physical development of the students.

It is possible to minimize the unhealthy effects of strenuous high-school athletics by intelligent guidance and coaching. The modern, well-trained coach pays special attention to the welfare of his boys. He builds them up gradually so that they will be conditioned for strenuous play; he checks on their weight and demands that they "keep training" and live healthfully; he makes frequent substitutions

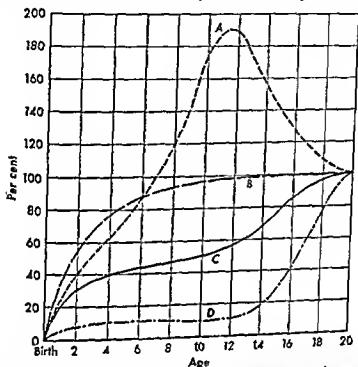


Fig. 4. The major types of postnatal growth of the various parts and organs of the body. The several curves are drawn to a common scale by computing their values at successive ages in terms of their total postnatal increments (to twenty years). *A*, lymphoid type: thymus, lymph-nodes, intestinal lymphoid masses. *B*, neural type: brain and its parts, dura, spinal cord, optic apparatus, many head dimensions. *C*, general type: body as a whole, external dimensions (with exception of head and neck), respiratory system, digestive organs, kidneys, aorta and pulmonary trunks, spleen, musculature as a whole, skeleton as a whole, blood volume. *D*, genital type: testis, ovary, epididymis, uterine tube, prostate, prostatic urethra, seminal vesicles. (From Harris, Jackson, Patterson, and Scammon, *Measurement of Man*, University of Minnesota Press, 1930.)

during a game and does what he can to minimize the bad effects of over strenuous high-school sports.

**Growth of the Body and Some of Its Structures.** Another aid to understanding the social and educational problems of human beings is a comparison of the growth of the nervous system, the genital system, the lymphoid system, and the body as a whole. Figure 4 contains four curves, which show the course of the growth from birth to the age of twenty. Observe that the curves indicate what the per-

The reader should keep in mind that we are speaking of the weight of the brain. It is possible and even probable that the development of the brain does not follow precisely its growth as determined by scales, which measure in pounds and ounces. By this we mean that there can be changes or developments in the brain which are reflected in only a very small change in weight. In fact, tests of mental development indicate that measured mental power and ability do not increase as rapidly as the weight of the brain and that there is much more growth and development in this respect after the age of four to six and comparatively less before. This is probably due to the fact that after the age of four to six the changes that do occur in the brain are more important psychologically or functionally than the increase in weight might indicate.

At least we know that Nature hurries to give us high mental power early in life by very rapid neurological growth during the first years of life and by establishing the full or nearly full anatomical basis (the nervous system) for intelligence by about the age twenty or the early twenties. The amount of growth and development after twenty is surely not very great. The implication of neurological growth and development for child and adult education will be discussed in the chapter that deals with mental development as determined by the use and application of mental tests. Suffice it to say here that, as a child grows older, his powers increase from maturing.

The genital type of growth is almost the exact opposite of the growth of the brain. When the brain is growing most rapidly, the genitals, or sex organs, are growing least rapidly; when the brain is growing least rapidly, there is a spurt in the growth of the genitals.

By the age of fourteen only 20 per cent of genital growth has been reached. Growth begins then to increase very rapidly, and between the ages of fourteen and twenty 80 per cent of genital growth is attained. The beginning of this spurt is a true adolescent spurt and corresponds closely with the adolescent spurt in general physical growth. Both have their beginnings between the ages of twelve and fourteen, though the increase in growth of the genitals is much more pronounced than general body growth. It is conceivable that the maturation of the sex glands and organs, along with the hormones or chemicals that they give off, stimulates physical growth and therefore accounts in part, at least, for the acceleration of body growth at the beginning of puberty. The pituitary is no doubt involved, too, as it governs the growth processes.

During adolescence, boys and girls become especially interested in each other. They have "dates" and go to dances and parties, and in general the spirit of romance begins to kindle. They seek bodily contact with each other, as by holding hands, kissing, hugging, "neck-

ing," and "petting." The new desires and practices that develop in adolescence have, clearly, a physiological basis. These new desires are in part based on the sex drive resulting from the maturing of the sex glands during the teens.

As a consequence of these sex interests, which lead to romance, marriage, and the responsibility of fatherhood and motherhood, it is desirable that in the adolescent years and to some extent in the pre-adolescent years, junior and senior high-school students be taught the physiology of human development so that they will understand the physical changes that they are undergoing. They should be taught about sex and also about family responsibility so that they will be intelligent about themselves and their problems.

It is a good school, too, that has a rich program of social events—parties, games, athletic contests, musical organizations, and clubs. By means of such organizations and their activities, boys and girls in their teens have wholesome outlets for their interests and energies.

**Puberty and Adolescence.** Adolescence is the period of transition from childhood to adulthood caused by physical and sexual development primarily. Puberty is the beginning of adolescence, which includes the teen ages approximately. Puberty is marked for girls by the first menstruation; on the average this occurs at about the age of twelve to thirteen—for most girls between the ages of ten and sixteen. About the time of puberty, girls experience accelerated growth and develop sexually at a fast rate, as figures and data in this chapter show. The breasts grow rapidly, and a girl acquires the typical body of a woman.

Boys reach puberty on the average at about thirteen or fourteen. Puberty is accompanied by a general growth spurt and by the beginning of very rapid growth of the sexual organs. Hair begins to make its appearance on the boy's body, and his voice deepens so that it becomes like a man's rather than a child's, but in doing so it often cracks or plays tricks. Tender down appears on the face, which is the butt of many not-so-tender jokes, but before adolescence is over the down has become whiskers, stiff and stubborn enough for most razors.

Puberty is referred to as marking the beginning of a stage of development when boys and girls are capable of reproduction, but some evidence indicates that this capacity is reached a year or two after puberty when more sexual maturity is reached. This evidence is deduced from the age of pregnancies of girls in those cultures where they marry before they reach puberty.

During early adolescence there is a sharp increase in growth for both girls and boys, which lasts 2 or 3 years. Girls shoot up a year or two earlier than boys. During this short gallop to adult size, sensitivity may develop about one's new size and the consequent outgrow-

ing of one's clothes. The teacher should be alert to the problems of boys and girls when they are growing very fast.

**Relation between Height in Childhood and Height in Adulthood.** Is growth among children consistent from year to year so that the relationship in size remains relatively constant? In other words, does the short child become a short adult, the average child an average adult, and the tall child a tall adult? In general, this is the case—height in childhood indicates adult height. There are exceptions, however. Some prove to be considerably taller or shorter as adults than might have been predicted from their heights as children. This occurs probably in the case of one in five persons.

Growth varies in speed from individual to individual and also during the growth period of any one person. Growth is more rapid at certain periods than at others, but it does not fluctuate in the sense of being "jumpy." There are some individual fluctuations; but the curve showing growth over a period of years is a relatively smooth one, indicating a more rapid growth during some periods of life than at others but nevertheless showing a steady, consistent growth.

Generally, children who are very tall tend to be not quite so tall relatively as adults. Similarly, children who are very short for their ages tend to be not quite so short relatively as adults. This tendency is called regression. Not all very tall or very short children tend to regress toward the average in height, but most do.

Another factor indicating what the final height will be is the age at which a child reaches puberty or the age at which the adolescent spurt begins. Children who reach puberty or the adolescent spurt early tend to grow less from that age until maturity is reached than do those who reach the adolescent spurt later. For example, of two equally tall girls at the age of eleven, one begins the adolescent spurt at eleven and the other at fourteen. The girl who begins the adolescent spurt at fourteen will probably in the end be the taller. In general, those who have a late adolescent spurt usually grow relatively more from the age of ten or eleven or twelve to the age of twenty than those who reach puberty or begin the adolescent spurt at an early age.

The information in Table 3 can be used for judging how tall and heavy a child or adolescent will be when his growth is completed, which is assumed to be at the age of twenty. For the ages from birth to twenty the percentage of height or weight of age twenty is given, and by assuming that a person of precadult age has achieved the percentage of his adult height or weight given in Table 3, his likely adult height or weight can be calculated. For example, if a twelve-year-old boy is 65 inches tall and weighs 105 pounds, he is likely to be about 77 inches tall and weigh about 194 pounds at age twenty. It is assumed that he will continue to grow according to the percentages given. However,



attractive or being very tall, short, thin, or fat or having physical defects. Nicknames may be constant reminders of physical deviations and inadequacies, which will therefore have a more unfavorable effect on mental health. This is discussed more fully in the chapter Healthy Behavior and Personal Adjustment.



Fig. 7. Four Baltimore seventh-grade boys of very nearly equal age, each healthy, growing at his normal rate, and each a good student. Each is at a different stage of physical and mental maturity. (From *Baltimore Bulletin of the Public Schools*, Vol. XXVIII, No. 1, school year 1949-1950, p. 5.)

The pictures of the four seventh-grade boys and four seventh-grade girls of the same age show big differences in size. Each child is healthy but has grown at different rates, which accounts for the large variation in their sizes. Certainly these boys and girls live differently and have various attitudes and outlooks because of their sizes. The biggest girl will be interested in older and bigger boys and girls and will not care to be in gymnasium classes and other activities with the "little tots" of her own age. One large and well-developed junior high-school girl said she didn't want to dance with those "little squirts." The smallest boy and girl fit better with fifth-graders and in their play probably find them more compatible. The teacher recognizing the interests, attitudes, and complexes which students have because of their sizes can guide her pupils so that they will not feel out of place but will feel personally adequate instead.

Some children and adolescents do not like to go swimming because they are sensitive about their bodies. References to their skinniness or fatness or their lack of muscular development cause them to feel inadequate. For similar reasons, some children may not like to wear "gym" clothes. The roly-polys and the thin and angular feel more conspicuous than they do in their usual clothing. However, it is good training for some children to have to face such unpleasant situations, especially if the teacher can show them how to achieve a physical development of which they can be proud.

Attempts have been made through the centuries to find a relationship between personality and body types. The attempt is still being made today, and the body types with corresponding characteristics of personality may be classified as follows:

<i>Body Type</i>	<i>Personality</i>
Ectomorph—skinny, poor musculature, thin, lanky.	Intellectual and tends to be introverted.
Endomorph—heavy, soft, fat, rounded, bulging.	Likes fun and pleasure. Is relaxed and friendly.
Mesomorph—heavy, thick, rugged, big frame, muscular.	Likes action and adventure, being in control. Extroverted.
Balanced or average type.	

This classification has been developed by Sheldon and Stevens. The personal qualities given are in accord with those which are popularly associated with these body types.

Studies have been made of psychosis and body type. The designations used are *leptosome*, *pyknic*, and *athletic*. The leptosome resembles the ectomorph, the pyknic resembles the endomorph, and the athletic corresponds to the mesomorph.

No extended discussion will be given of body type and personality. The problem is a very difficult and complex one, and the reader should be very reluctant to accept the general idea that there is any dependable relationship between somatotypes, or body types, and personality or kinds of insanity. The pattern of evidence hardly supports such a view.

Probably the soundest generalization is to the effect that the physique, body characteristics, and sensorimotor abilities of a person affect his personality according to the adequacy and favorableness of his physical equipment for effective living and also according to how his physical status and powers are regarded by himself and by others. Being weak or strong, attractive or unattractive, skillful or awkward, healthy or sick influences a person's interests, attitudes, and activities. In that sense there is a relationship between physical development and personality.

from this to the conclusion that the appearance of the forehead is an index to intelligence. This reasoning, however, is incorrect.

In the first place, while in general it is true that the larger brain to a slight degree tends to characterize the more intelligent, for over 99 per cent there is very little relation between the size of the grown brain and intelligence. There have been some gifted people with brains several ounces under the average of 48 ounces and some very mediocre people with brains several ounces above this average. It is much more the quality of the brain than its quantity that is important.

The shape of the forehead indicates very little if anything about the brain or intelligence. The same can be said about the relationship of the face and physical proportions to intelligence, character, and personality.

A teacher could look over the members of her class the first days of school, study their faces very carefully, and survey their physical proportions and characteristics and still be unable to judge at all reliably their intelligence and personal characteristics. Many experiments have been made attempting to judge intelligence from studying faces, but it has been found that this cannot be done successfully.

**Achieving Good Physical Status.** It should be apparent to the reader that a person's physical growth and development are closely related to his social and personal problems. The question that should be asked is "What can we do about achieving a good physical status?" The teacher and parent can do much in cooperating with the child to achieve optimum physical growth and the best mental hygiene.

By eating and exercising wisely a person who is too fat can usually attain normal or nearly normal weight. Similarly, a person who needs more weight can often attain this by resting more and eating foods that tend to increase weight. A diet should be undertaken only under the direction of a good doctor.

There is little to be done about height except what having good posture can effect. It should be kept in mind that we vary in height and physical appearance and that this variation is desirable. Some prefer large persons, others average, and others small. Thus the variation in taste and the variation in size ensure that everyone can be pleased.

Each individual has to determine what constitutes the best physical status for himself. People do not conform to exact types. Some are naturally sturdy and heavy, while others tend to be slender, being small of bone and narrowly built. If one is in good nutritional condition, neither very fat nor very thin according to his natural tendency, there is little cause for worry. One should try through proper exercise and the correct diet to be as physically attractive as possible.

**Correlation between Physical and Mental Growth.** In one sense, there is a high correlation between physical and mental growth. Over

an age range from early childhood to adulthood, the physical and mental status are closely related, for increase in age is accompanied by both mental and physical growth. In other words, just as the physical growth and development of six-year-olds is advanced over that of four-year-olds, of ten-year-olds over that of eight-year-olds, of twelve-year-olds over that of ten-year-olds, etc., there is a corresponding and similar advance in mental growth and development. Both physical and mental growth correlate highly with age; consequently, over an age range covering the growth period from birth to adulthood, there is a high correlation between the levels of physical and mental development.

If, however, we remove the effect of age and consider children of any given age, there is only a very low correlation between physical and mental status. For purposes of illustration, we may consider a large, unselected group of 9-year-old children. (Almost any other age group of children would serve just as well.) In this group, all of whom are 9 years old chronologically, will be found a wide range of mental ability. This range may be expressed as probably varying from a mental age (M.A.) of 3 to one of 16. The range might be greater or, possibly, smaller. However, it will probably be found that in a large group of 9-year-old children there will be a very few who have the mental ability of an average 3-year-old and one or more who have the mental age of the typical 16-year-old, but that most of our 9-year-olds will be at the 9-year-old level, with others at the 8-, 7-, 6-, etc., or 10-, 11-, 12-, etc., year-old level. As the amount of deviation above and below 9 increases, the number of children with corresponding mental ages decreases.

This description of the mental variation is applicable to the physical variation among nine-year-olds. A few will be of the size of children considerably younger, and some will have the height and weight typical of children much older. Thus there will be considerable variation in the average level of physical growth.

If the mental and physical levels of these children are correlated, a low correlation of about .05 to .15 will probably be found. Thus, there is very little relationship between the stages of mental and physical growth of this age group. In fact, the correlation is low for any age group. This means that, almost as often as not, a person of advanced physical development may be advanced, average, or retarded mentally. Similarly, if a person is either average or retarded physically, he is almost as likely to be advanced, average, or retarded mentally. The same is true for mental development. One cannot judge accurately a child's physical status from a knowledge of his mental capacity. However, because there is a slight correlation between mental and physical status, high mentality, more often than not, is associated with good

physical development. Among a group of bright children will be found more large, well-developed children than among a group of children who are mentally retarded. The bright children will probably be about 2 to 3 inches taller on the average and 5 to 10 pounds heavier. The differences are less for young children than for older. Consistent with this fact, it can be stated that among a group of physically advanced children there will be more children above average intellectually than among a group of small, "runty," undeveloped children of the same age. There are, of course, many dull children who are well-developed physically and many bright ones who are poorly developed. The relationship between mental and physical status of children of the same age is not marked but is sufficiently definite to substantiate the principle that desirable qualities tend to accompany each other.

**Increase in Physical Abilities Accompanying Physical Growth.** Just as a person's mental and learning powers grow from birth because of the growth and development of the nervous system that accompanies the process of becoming older, so do the physical and athletic powers grow from merely becoming older. A term which explains the increase in these powers from birth to age twenty is *physical maturing*. For example, the power with which a child can squeeze with his hand, or his handgrip, increases steadily from early childhood to early adulthood. This increase in the power of hand and arm is illustrative of the increases in power that accompany growth and development. The legs become longer and stronger, and so do the muscles of torso and those of the neck.

This change in physical power is reflected in the norms, or standards of performance, of boys and girls of different ages as shown in Table 4. These are averages, or norms, and thus represent average achievement. It is apparent from an examination of the figures that physical abilities do improve with age during childhood and youth.

The values given are averages—we must not lose sight of the great variation in the capacity of children of each age group. This variation in physical capacities is wide, just as it is for mental and personal qualities. There are a few eight-year-olds who can run faster, jump farther, and throw a ball farther and who, in general, have more motor skills and power than some twelve-year-olds. Conversely, some fourteen-year-olds cannot play ball so well or are not so skillful in various games as some nine- or ten-year-olds. There are great variations in sensorimotor abilities at each age, but the averages indicate that there is a steady growth of motor skill and power throughout the years of childhood. It is this growth and development that should be understood, along with physical, mental, social, and personal develop-

ment. Then the education of the child will be in full cooperation with nature.

The standards of physical performance are comparable with the standards for mental performance. It is expected that as a child grows older he can give the meanings of more and harder words, can work harder arithmetic problems, and can comprehend more difficult

TABLE 4. *Philadelphia elementary schools, age aims for track and field events\**

Age	Standing broad jump, feet and inches		Ball throw overhead, feet		30-yard dash, seconds and fifths		40-yard dash, seconds and fifths		50-yard dash, seconds and fifths		Chin-ning	Knee raising
											Times	
	Boys	Girls	Boys	Girls	Boys	Girls	Boys	Girls	Boys	Girls	Boys	Girls
8	4-0	3-8	17	15	6-2	6-4	8-0	8-3	9-2	9-4		
9	4-4	3-10	19	17	6-1	6-4	7-4	8-2	9-0	9-3		
10	4-6	4-0	21	19	6-0	6-3	7-3	8-1	8-4	9-2	1	16
11	4-10	4-2	23	21	5-4	6-2	7-2	8-0	8-3	9-1	2	25
12	5-0	4-4	25	23	5-3	6-1	7-0	7-4	8-1	9-0	3	28
13	5-2	4-6	27	25	5-2	6-0	6-4	7-3	8-0	9-4	4	30
14	5-6	4-8	30	27	5-1	5-4	6-3	7-2	7-4	8-3	4	32
15	5-10	4-10	33	28	5-0	5-3	6-2	7-1	7-3	8-2	4	35
16	6-2	5-0	36	29	4-4	5-2	6-1	7-0	7-2	8-1	5	

\* Taken from J. F. Boyard and F. W. Cozens, *Tests and Measurements in Physical Education*, p. 117, W. B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia, 1938.

directions. For these and other mental tests, there are standards for each age.

It is to be expected that there are higher standards of performance for each age group because of development and experience. For example, better performance is expected from nine-year-olds than from eight-year-olds and from ten-year-olds than from nine-year-olds, because as children grow older they become bigger and stronger and get more practice and thus improve in skills. According to this point of view, a child improves in motor skills from growing stronger and bigger and from additional practice.

In considering the importance of practice alone let us assume that a group of boys stop growing at age nine. They are an average group of boys who can run 50 yards in 9 seconds, can jump 4 feet 4 inches from a standing start, and have a grip with the right hand of about 40 pounds. Their other abilities are also average for nine-year-olds. Now at nine we assume that they grow no more. They will practice and train and as a result will increase their motor and athletic skills. But

will they keep up with a second group of nine-year-olds who in due course become ten-year-olds and then eleven-year-olds, etc.? No, of course not, for the latter group not only are receiving exercise and training but are growing bigger and stronger, too. Our hypothetical boys who stop growing at the age of nine will never be much better than average nine-year-olds, for their bodies are not growing. They will develop their nine-year-old muscles to the maximum, but they will soon reach their limit.

Let us also imagine a group of nine-year-old boys who grow and develop normally except that they have no practice. They will increase in potentiality, and when they resume their athletic practices at the age of fifteen, let us say, they will in a short time be better than they were at nine but not as good as if they had had practice, too. Thus age standards are those which result from both growth and practice.

Teachers should take into account the stage of physical development reached by their pupils. They should realize that there are certain standards of performance for each age group but that there is great variation in the physical abilities of children of each age. They vary in their game skills, interest in play, and resistance to fatigue.

**Interrelation of Motor and Athletic Abilities.** This topic raises the question of whether or not a person, if good at running, is good at jumping; if good at throwing a ball, is good at batting one; or if good at juggling, is good at tumbling. Also, we may ask, if a person is a good athlete, will he be skillful at using the tools in a manual-training shop? If a person is a good basketball player, will he be a good baseball player? Will a good football player be a good tennis player? In other words, to what extent are physical and motor skills and abilities related or correlated?

Let it be said at once that there is not a complete correlation of motor and physical abilities. Those who are best in some one skill are not usually the best in all skills, though they are usually above average in all or certainly in most of them. Those who are average in some skills, say running or catching, are usually average in other skills, such as throwing or jumping, and those who are very poor in one are generally poor in others.

In other words, if a person is a very good baseball player, he is likely to be a good basketball player if he chooses to play basketball. The same can be said for other sports. It is true, of course, that players make a specialty of their best game and do not play the other very much. But the likelihood is that a person who displays a high order of motor and physical skills in one game can also do so in several others. Similarly, a person who has a high order of strength and skills in the machine and manual-training shop will tend to have more than average skills on the playfield.

At this point we should be careful to recognize the nature and extensiveness of motor skills, which range from the limited but highly skilled eye-hand coordinations needed for watch repair, for example, to the power, skill, and endurance needed by the whole body in boxing, basketball, or football. There is considerable correlation between the motor and athletic abilities that have much in common in terms of all-round motor powers and skills such as those used in football, basketball, baseball, boxing, tennis, and wrestling. Skills which are limited largely to the fingers or hands such as those involved in shuffling cards, repairing watches, hand sewing, and certain work with silver and jewelry do not correlate much if at all with the more extensive motor powers and skills which involve the whole body as do the rigorous sports and games.

The study of Willgoose shows some correlation of physical abilities. He divided 300 boys, fifteen to eighteen years old, into three groups on the basis of their scores on a battery of strength tests which were used to determine their strength of handgrip, back and leg strength, and strength as determined by chin-ups and push-ups. The boys were then tested in broad jump, crab race (on hands and feet with back to the floor), and 50-yard dash, and the average scores in these three activities corresponded to the strength grouping. The strongest group made the best average scores in the broad jump, crab race, and dash, the middle group were next, and the group with the lowest average strength score made the lowest average score in the jump, race, and dash. This indicates a relationship between physical strength and certain jumping and running abilities.

Though there is not a perfect correlation of motor and physical skills and abilities, they are interrelated to a considerable extent in a number of activities. This is to be expected, for in general the power, strength, and skill of hands, arms, legs, head, and torso are involved in many physical activities. Furthermore, we must not overlook the eye and ear, the keenness and sensitivity of which affect so many of our motor and physical activities.

**Left- and Right-handedness.** About one adult in 15 or 20 is left-handed, in spite of the fact that this is a right-handed world. A considerable number of children who had a tendency to be left-handed and actually were left-handed have been trained to be right-handed. Being factual about the proportion of left-handed is further complicated by the condition that many persons are neither right-handed nor left-handed exclusively but right-handed for some activities and left-handed for others.

There are many theories to account for handedness. It is claimed by at least one student of the problem that the left-handed are born left-handed. Others claim that the left-handed have had early experiences



which caused them to be left-handed. The likelihood is that during early childhood accident or circumstances caused the left-handed person to prefer using the left hand. Possibly some children have a "natural tendency" to be left-handed because of certain peculiarities in the organization of the nervous system. It is contended that there is brain dominance of handedness and that in the case of the left-handed the right side of the brain is more dominant because it controls the left side of the body. In the right-handed the left side of the brain is more dominant, according to this theory.

Some children are trained to be left-handed. Use of the left hand then becomes a habit. For example, an athletic coach trained his son to be left-handed because he felt that it would be to the son's advantage when he participated in sports. Incidentally, the father was left-handed. It is quite probable that if we started in infancy we could train most children to be either left- or right-handed. If we trained the child to prefer the right hand in taking hold of objects, the child would become right-handed. Conversely, by favoring the left hand, the child would become left-handed. Because it is conventional to be right-handed, most children are so trained.

What should be done about handedness as an educational problem? For example, if a person is left-handed, should efforts be directed to making him right-handed? This question is more important than it may seem on the surface. In fact, it is the most important problem in connection with handedness because of the emotional disturbances that may be produced in a child by coercive or disturbing attempts to cause him to change to right-handedness. Some investigators contend that stuttering is the result of trying to change the handedness of a child, though others disagree. It is probable, though, that unwise handling of the handedness problem can harm the child. The attempt to change handedness after habits in the use of the hands are well established can upset a child emotionally and injure his personality. Here are some of the principles to observe:

Handedness, either left or right, develops through various stages in infancy and early childhood. At that time, the child should be trained in the establishment of the handedness that is desired by controlling his grasping and manipulation of objects and things.

If a child is to be retrained to use another hand, this should be done early in life, preferably before starting school. There is seldom a favorable change of handedness after the age of seven or eight. By that time, the handedness habit is well fixed. Thus the correction of handedness should hardly be a school problem at all.

The training of a child to prefer the other hand should be done thoughtfully so that the child will not be upset emotionally. Little games involving the use of the preferred hand may prove helpful. The

problem should never be considered so important that the parent by force and vigorous control tries actually to "break" the left-handedness, for it is possible thus to produce stammering or unfavorable emotional reactions. In general, it is best not to try very hard to change handedness but to accept the handedness that persists.

### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

We study physical growth and development to learn how education can be most effective for the intellectual, physical, and personal improvement of the student.

There are five phases of physical growth: (1) the prenatal period; (2) the first 2 years of rapid growth; (3) the steady growth from age two to the beginning of the adolescent spurt, usually at ages twelve and thirteen; (4) the spurt to about fifteen or sixteen; (5) the decreasing growth to the age of about twenty.

A child should be at a weight that is most healthful for him. If a child is in the lightest or heaviest 10 or 15 per cent for his age and height, his physical condition should be evaluated by a doctor.

With increase in age, the brain and body grow and develop and thus increase the mental and physical capacity of the child. Thereby, maturing increases potentiality. Function depends on structure.

In adulthood the body has different proportions from what it had in childhood, the head being proportionately only one-half as large, the torso being the same, but the legs being proportionately one-third longer. Body proportions may have emotional consequences.

Growth refers largely to increase in inches and pounds. Development includes not only growth but also changes in nature and composition.

Children should be fed, exercised, and rested in order to achieve maximum health. Poor food, too strenuous exercise, and fatigue should be avoided. Good nutrition seems to have a good effect on the temperament. Athletics should not be too strenuous, and the good coach works for the healthful development of his boys.

The brain grows most rapidly during the first 5 or 6 years of life, after which it increases slowly until maturity is reached at the age of about twenty. The genitals grow slowly until about the age of twelve or thirteen, when they develop rapidly to the age of twenty. The lymphoid type of growth reaches its maximum at about the age between eleven and twelve and then declines.

Puberty is the beginning of adolescence and of rapid sexual development. About a year or two after puberty a boy or girl can beget or conceive children. Adolescence is the period of the teens and is the stage between childhood and adulthood.

About 1 child in 5 has changed his comparative size as an adult. To

predict the adult size of child, consult Table 3, which gives the percentage of his development at a given age.

The adult size of a son can be estimated by averaging the father's height and 110 per cent of the mother's. For a daughter take the average of the mother's height and 92 per cent of the father's height. Account should also be taken of maturity of wrist bones and the size of the grandparents.

Size, strength, thinness, fatness, and general physical development may affect personality favorably or unfavorably. A person should eat and exercise in a healthful way so that he may achieve the best possible physical development.

Personality and character cannot be judged from body type and physical appearance.

There is a slight positive correlation between mental maturity and physical development.

A child obtains increasing physical power and capacity for skills from the physical growth and development that accompany the process of becoming older. This is maturing.

Girls mature a little earlier, or reach puberty a little younger, than do boys and are larger for 2 or 3 years. This has social implications.

Do not try to change the handedness of the child if this upsets him seriously. Handedness should result from healthy development.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. What is your opinion of the relationship of body type or structure and personality?
2. Big, strong, and dull: small, weak, and bright—may children ordinarily be classified in one of the two preceding groups?
3. A girl fourteen years old is 60 inches tall. How tall will she probably be as an adult?
4. A third-grade teacher said, "Bruce Brown is left-handed, and I am going to make him right-handed even if I have to use force on him every day he is in school." Comment.
5. A boy eleven years old is 57 inches tall. How tall will he probably be as an adult?
6. During the junior and senior high-school years, girls prefer the company of boys who are about a year or two older than they. Can you explain this preference in terms of the growth curves of boys and girls?
7. On the basis of the evidence presented, what kind of physical activity is most healthful for children and young adolescents?
8. Johnny and Mary are two sixth-grade children. Johnny is very thin and in weight is in the lowest 10 per cent of children of his height and age, while Mary is very fat and classifies in the heaviest 10 per cent of children of her height and age. What health and personality problems may these children have? What do you recommend?

9. A brother and sister have a father who is 6 feet tall and a mother who is 5 feet 6 inches tall. How tall will the son and daughter probably be when they are grown up?

10. Physical development is important in terms of education and health, but its importance in connection with personality and mental health is often overlooked. Discuss this latter relationship.

11. Discuss whether or not mental and physical abilities increase with age during childhood and adolescence in about the same general manner.

12. Do you feel that the changes in the proportions of body parts from birth to maturity indicate the wisdom of Nature? Have you any improvements to suggest?

13. In the discussion of physical growth, it is shown how the structures grow and develop and how function improves because of this growth. From this we have the ideas of structure and function. What are those ideas? Discuss.

14. Note the pattern of growth of the brain and of the genitals. How do these patterns of growth influence human interests and behavior?

15. Does the adolescent growth spurt take energy from the brain so that the fast-growing adolescent's scholarship suffers? Comment.

16. Name and explain as many characteristics of adolescence as you can.

17. Explain how a program of health, physical education, and athletics can be adjusted to the growth of children.

18. The great development that takes place during the 9 months of prenatal life is little short of a miracle. Discuss.

19. Accompanying physical growth from birth to adulthood are increasing sensorimotor abilities. Explain.

## 5. Our Needs, Wants, Urges, Drives, and Motives

### *The Mainsprings of Behavior*

**What to Look For.** There are a number of needs, wants, and motives that underlie our feeling, thinking, and overt behavior. Try to comprehend how these needs, urges, and drives are at the basis of personal adjustment and how they are forces which cause us to learn and to work.

Try to sense also how the teacher and the school can utilize the needs and wants of the pupils in order to cause them to work effectively and live healthfully.

Pay special attention to the meanings of the terms, *need*, *want*, *urge*, *drive*, and *motile*.

Note that there are three securities which we want: (1) security of life; (2) security in living, or economic security; (3) security with people, or social security.

Observe that the want for personal worth is very dominant and that it can cause both desirable and undesirable behavior.

Attempts are made to show how feelings both of well-being and of pain influence and control our behavior.

The human organism craves stimulation and action. How can the school work with nature and not against it?

The wants for individuality, liberty, and freedom are closely related. How can the school utilize these wants most fully?

The sex drive and interests are discussed. The reader should try to understand how they may be forces for good and also forces that are misdirected. It is contended that the Freudian emphasis is greatly exaggerated.

Observe that basic needs, wants, and urges have both a physiological and psychological basis.

Comprehend how a failure to satisfy one's needs and wants causes unhappiness and maladjustment.

Along with each need, want, or urge are listed some items which are

related to it and explain its importance or indicate various aspects of the particular need or want.

Try to understand the interrelationship of the various needs, wants, drives, and motives.

**Introduction.** Have you wondered why pupils want the approval of teacher, classmates, and parents?

When James entered the house, he threw his cap on the davenport and exclaimed, "We don't do anything in school—we just sit there, and teacher does all the talking."

When asked why he was going to school, Fred said that he "wanted to be prepared so that he could hold a good position and make a good living."

Most high-school and college girls when asked in conference or questionnaire what they want to do when they finish their formal education say that they want to get married and have a home.

You have heard such statements as "Let's have it good and comfortable!" "I've got to do something to get rid of this painful headache." "Let's all get together and have a good time."

All these facts and statements reflect basic needs and wants and indicate some of the human urges and drives that account for human behavior and emotions.

Pupils in and out of school behave as they do and experience emotions and have various feelings because of their needs, wants, drives, and urges. If a teacher knows these springs to action, she can understand the behavior of people and can utilize this information in dealing more effectively not only with her pupils but with all the persons with whom she comes in contact. Her methods can be in harmony with the wants and drives that underlie human behavior, and her pupils can be guided to learn more and to be more successful and better adjusted human beings.

**Meaning of Need, Want, Drive, Urge, and Motive.** These terms belong in the same family because their meanings are closely related. Furthermore they are mutually dependent on each other and have cause-and-effect relationships.

*Need* indicates a lack of something which is useful or desired. A person has a need for food when he is hungry, water when he is thirsty, clothing when he is cold, and medical care when he is in pain. Psychologically, a person has need for company when he is lonesome, entertainment and excitement when bored by monotony, praise and success when he feels inadequate, stimulation and activity when he has been kept in for a long time or has been sedentary in his living.

*Want* is very closely related to need and indicates the state of having a need or desire for. An individual has want for safety, income, friendships, importance, variety of activity, rest, or freedom in order

to be healthy and happy. These are his wants because of his need for them.

*Drive, urge, and motive* have much in common. Motive is probably more comprehensive in meaning. Drives and urges are driving forces or impelling forces to action. We speak of the hunger drive, the sex drive, or the sex urge. According to the individual's physical and psychological conditions, he will have drives or urges for eating, sexual activity, achieving distinction, gaining liberty, taking a brisk walk, becoming wealthy, or being very careful to avoid accidents.

Motive is a thought, feeling, or condition that causes one to act. It is a need or organic state that prompts to action. We think of motive as a condition or a state which functions as a prevailing force for more than just a short time, prompting or inciting behavior over an extended period of time. A person is motivated to practice the violin and to try to become an excellent player because he feels that he is making rapid progress, that he is one of the better players, and that he can make a good living as a violinist. A young man works hard to achieve a good economic status because he was poor as a boy and he does not want to remain in that condition. Furthermore he has an attractive girl friend, and he would like to marry and have a home and family. Consequently his thoughts, feelings, and condition motivate him to behave in a way that will enable him to achieve his purposes.

Our thoughts, feelings, and conditions will at certain times cause us to lie down and rest, at others to take a few drinks of liquor so that we will get rid of our tensions and feel better; to go out to the golf course for 18 holes of golf, or to work overtime to earn some extra money; to invite friends over for dinner, conversation, and bridge, or to try to become wealthy, write a book, give a speech, or do something that will attract favorable attention and thus give us recognition and prestige. We have the urge or drive to do these things—we are motivated.

The human organism has various psychological and organic needs and wants, and because of them we have corresponding drives, urges, and motives. They are not separate or distinct but closely interrelated and interdependent. They are the dynamic forces and powers of human behavior, and we shall set them forth at this time.

## THE NEEDS, WANTS, URGES, DRIVES, AND MOTIVES

### *I. The Want to Live. Avoidance and Postponement of Death*

1. Safety education.
2. Health education.
3. The struggle against disease—medicine, hospitals.
4. Food, shelter, and clothing.

Except for the few who have been badly defeated by life, everyone wants to stay alive. We are terribly afraid when our lives are threatened. When seriously ill, we are greatly concerned about getting well because we do not want to die. When men go to war, they claim to be doing so in order to defend the lives of their loved ones, but those in battle experience the fear of being killed.

This strong urge to live has been called the instinct<sup>1</sup> of self-preservation—the instinct to preserve oneself, or to keep on living.

One of the appeals of health and physical education is the appeal of freedom from illness and the prolongation of life. We appeal to children to keep clean in order to avoid infection, to eat good food because thus they will feel better and live longer, and to avoid the use of liquor and other narcotics because they can cause illness and shorten life. We appeal to the desire for a painless and long life.

## *II. The Want for Economic Security. The Avoidance of Poverty*

1. A job and income.
2. Life and property insurance.
3. Property—buildings, land, equipment, animals, minerals, trees, etc.
4. Money in the bank.
5. Stocks and bonds.

People desire to earn good wages and have adequate incomes so that they will be secure economically. They want enough money so that they can have good food, clothing, and shelter. They save money in order to have security in their old age, when their earning power has been lost. In order to satisfy the want for economic security, they are acquisitive.

When children are asked why they go to school and why they want to get good marks in school, they say that an education will help them get better jobs and that if their marks are good they will get better recommendations from their teachers and principals.

Economic security makes people feel better and happier and consequently has a good influence on their personalities. The children of parents who hardly know where the next month's rent is coming from, whose grocery bill is getting so large that the grocer threatens to discontinue credit, and who can afford only old, badly worn clothes for their family—such children often have personalities that are distorted with fears, worries, and inferiority complexes. In trying to understand a pupil the teacher should try to discover what the economic condi-



tions of the home are, for it is in those conditions that some of the explanations of a child's personality and behavior may be found.

### III. *The Want for Social Security.* The Avoidance of Solitude and Lonesomeness

- |                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Belongingness.     | 4. Love.          |
| 2. Social acceptance. | 5. Affection.     |
| 3. Friendship.        | 6. Companionship. |

Among organizations for obtaining social security are the following:

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. The family. | 5. Congregations. |
| 2. Teams.      | 6. The school.    |
| 3. Clubs.      | 7. Gangs.         |
| 4. Unions.     |                   |

By the want for social security we mean the want for friends and companionship and the desire to be with other people a portion of the time. All but the extremely unusual or abnormal want to be with others. This desire to be and the practice of being in a circle of friends or in a group, audience, or crowd is called *gregariousness*.

Connected with this is our desire to be liked by others. We want to be thought well of, and we are deeply concerned about what others think of us. Children want to be known, want to be members of a gang or "bunch." People join fraternities, clubs, unions, churches, orders, and so on, for social security, and for economic security, also, in many instances.

The teacher may find a number of explanations for the personalities of her pupils in their home and family life. Those pupils who are socially secure in their family because of harmonious living and because they experience love, generosity, and justice are likely to be emotionally healthy. Those, however, who are insecure in their family life because of parental dissension, overseverity, poverty, and parental neglect may be shy, fearful, depressed, and troublesome. Security or insecurity in the home has a very strong bearing on a child's personality.

In the school the teacher can make many appeals to the want for social security. She can build up the feeling that the class is a good class, that it is a good group, and that the school is a good school. Pupil morale and school spirit have their roots in group, or social, security.

Pupils want to be respected members of their classes. They want the approval and friendship of their teacher and also the approval and friendship of their classmates. Each pupil wants the feeling of security, of being an active and successful member of his group.

The teacher, too, should want the friendship and approval of her pupils. Her personal relationships with her pupils should be so successful that she has their good will and confidence. Such a relationship gives the teacher a feeling of social security, and this is conducive to good teaching and happy living.

The school that contributes most to social security is the school where instruction is socialized, as differentiated from narrow instruction that barricades the pupil in his own seat, where he has little or no intellectual and personal exchange with his fellow students but studies the teacher's lessons and answers the teacher's questions. In the socialized classroom there are group planning and discussion, committee work, excursions, games, and group projects. Then a student gets the "feel" of the group, an experience that is good for him and one that he likes because of the need and want for social security.

The appeal to the "socialness" of students can be made through a rich extracurricular program of sports, parties, school government, forensics, drama, and journalism. That these activities make an appeal to the desire to participate in group activity and thus to achieve social security is important in itself, but more important probably is that better personalities are developed by participation and thus the firmest basis for social security is obtained.

Before going on to a statement and explanation of the other wants, needs, and drives, it must be pointed out and emphasized that all of them are closely related and similar in many ways. The wants and urges have common elements and are similar in several respects, as has already been made evident in the discussion of the three aspects of security and as will be even more evident in what follows.

#### *IV. The Want for Personal Worth and Superiority—Ego Value. The Avoidance of Shame and Inferiority*

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. Success.                            | 7. Approval             |
| 2. Ascendancy—leadership.              | 8. Importance.          |
| 3. Mastery and power.                  | 9. Self-respect—esteem. |
| 4. Favorable attention or recognition. | 10. Worthiness.         |
| 5. Prestige—good status.               | 11. Self-satisfaction.  |
| 6. High standing, self-enhancement.    | 12. Honor.              |

Every human being wants to have a feeling of personal worth: he wants to have recognition, to be well thought of, and to have standing.

When Mr. Opulence buys a large, expensive car, he does so not only for the extra riding comfort such a car gives him. He wants the admiring attention of people who see him in the car. He wants the prestige and attention that the ownership of a big, expensive car gives.

The whole motive for "keeping up with the Joneses" is to have prestige and maintain a feeling of worth.

The child in the cradle wants attention. If attention is given someone else in his presence, the young child will "carry on" in order to receive attention.

When children begin school, they seek the approbation of their teachers and fellow pupils. They like to have their work displayed from the wall; they aspire to gold stars and to high standing.

All through life, people seek rewards, prizes, and recognition. Many want to be leaders because leadership has ego value. We like praise and recognition that enhance our value of self, or increase our self-esteem.

A feeling of value or importance makes us feel happy, and a feeling of unworthiness or inferiority makes us unhappy. Just as in the physical world nature abhors a vacuum, so in the psychological world human beings abhor a feeling of inferiority. We are willing to work hard to achieve a feeling of worth, but often we engage in tricks and dodges in trying to achieve it.

Much of human behavior and feelings can be explained in terms of this prevailing human want for a feeling of importance—this strong urge for ego value, or the worthiness of self. To ourselves each of us is a very important person.

The teacher can capitalize on this strong urge in helping the student with his personal problems. If a student is failing in his work or has not the standing with his classmates that he would like, the teacher should understand that what he needs is some success and a chance to show some leadership.

In the schoolroom the pupils are benefited most when there is a constructive or positive atmosphere, for then the appeal is made to their desire for individual personal worth. A feeling of personal worth cannot be obtained fraudulently; it must be obtained through achievement or improvement. When a teacher sees a child trying especially hard, when a pupil has an especially good idea, or when someone has done extra work or has achieved an especially good lesson, she should be alert to award recognition through special mention or praise.

The means used by teachers and the school to motivate the child, such as prizes, praise, school marks, honor rolls, being made a leader, being at the head of the class, being chosen for the team, and other recognitions, appeal to the feeling of worth. They also give a feeling of security, which in turn contributes to a feeling of worth, but the important problem is to have all pupils achieve enough recognition and success.

Of course, care needs to be exercised in any appeal to the feeling of worth lest a child become egotistical or conceited. It is well to achieve a healthy feeling of worth or importance, but such a feeling, if too strong, invades the feelings of other people and generates antagonism.

Everyone should feel worthy, but accompanying this should be a modesty that invites the good will of others.

The development of feelings of personal worth and true self-satisfaction, or failure to do so, with the resulting feelings of inadequacy and inferiority, has probably more to do with personality and emotional health than anything else. It is so significant that the teacher should try first to ascertain the degree to which the student is satisfying his need and want for standing and importance. Furthermore the teacher can do something about it because with skillful guidance she can increase the success a child enjoys and reduce his failures.

*V. The Want for Health, Comfort, and Feeling of Well-being. The Avoidance of Illness, Discomfort, and Pain*

1. Body needs and processes.  
Air-breathing.  
Food—digestion and elimination.  
Liquids—absorption and elimination.  
Rest and sleep.
2. Healthful, comfortable surroundings.  
Clothing.  
Climate—humidity and temperature.  
Equipment—beds, chairs, tables, etc.  
Sanitation and medical care.  
Protection and safety.
3. Mental and emotional health needs.

So uppermost is the idea of health that one of the most common questions is "How are you feeling?" Health, comfort, and a feeling of well-being are both psychological and physical, or both psychic and somatic. Mind and body are not separate in this respect, although one may be more involved in illness, or more cause or effect at one time than another.

It is common for us to think of health and feelings of well-being largely in terms of the avoidance of fevers, colds, stomach-aches, tonsillitis, etc. These are illnesses and pain surely enough, but we should think of emotional and mental illnesses and pains, too, such as chronic states of dissatisfaction, shyness, fear, anger, anxiety, feelings of inferiority, and so on. It is a rare parent or teacher who regards the mental and emotional pains as being as serious as the physical ones and consequently gives them thoughtful attention. The physical pains are usually more apparent. In terms of the child's health and well-being, mental and emotional pains and illnesses may lead to even more serious consequences than do the physical pains and illnesses.

The healthful state that everyone seeks, except the few who seemingly get satisfaction out of physical illness, is one accompanied by a

feeling of well-being. It is the opposite of the physical and mental conditions that are accompanied by pain. Thus two factors that influence behavior a great deal are a feeling of well-being on the one hand and pain on the other. The one is positive, and the other is negative.

Our course through life is controlled to a great extent by seeking that which gives us a feeling of well-being or satisfaction and avoiding those experiences which give us dissatisfaction or pain. Satisfactory experiences are healthful, and of course healthful experiences are satisfactory. Correspondingly, unsatisfactory and painful experiences are usually not healthful.

The need and want for a healthy, painless state are strong, and the teacher can help her pupils if she has a good understanding of health education. Each school should offer adequate health service so that the students can have attention to the following:

1. Mental and emotional problems.
2. Sensory defects—eyes, ears, nose, etc.
3. Nutrition.
4. Healthful exercise.
5. Skin diseases.
6. Headaches and their causes.
7. Fatigue.
8. Other health needs.

In the classroom the teacher should be alert to lighting, seating, ventilation, and other conditions that contribute to the comfort of the surroundings. She should study health education and should acquire the attitudes and knowledge which will enable her to help to take care of the health needs of her students. It is our purpose here not to teach health but only to show that it is essential for the teacher to be able to help meet the needs of her pupils in that respect, and of course her own, too. The topic of mental hygiene and emotional health is given considerable emphasis in this book with the purpose of equipping the teacher for solving her own personal problems and those of her pupils.

In the past the inflicting of physical and mental pain has been one of the important school methods for controlling the behavior of the pupils. Pupils were punished freely with whip and tongue in the belief that pain would deter them from doing what they should not do and spur them on to do what they should do. This approach, however, was largely negative. Pupils were punished not only for doing wrong or breaking the many rules of the school but also for failing to do their lessons as well as the teacher expected.

As is true of any rudimentary methods, the severe methods of the

last century were not effective. The schools have now been humanized. The teacher "accentuates the positive." But there is still place for pain in the education and training of pupils. When a child deliberately ignores the best interests of the group and his own, too, he should feel the pain of being denied some trust and freedom or should be reproved or otherwise recognized unfavorably. Such a procedure must be handled carefully so that the pupil gets no prestige out of being in conflict with the teacher. If he gets ego value out of the situation, he may be achieving the attention he wants. Consequently, it is important that there be good morale in the class. The feeling that the class is the pupils', not the teacher's, will do much to keep the individual pupil a good citizen. There is hardly any pain that a pupil dreads more than the reproof or rejection of his class or group. The attitude of his classmates will do more to govern a pupil than probably any other force or influence.

*VI. The Want for Stimulation, Activity, Enjoyment, and Satisfaction. The Avoidance of Monotony and Boredom*

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Work.                        | 7. Travel.   |
| 2. Sports and play.             | 8. Visiting and conversing.                        |
| 3. Reading.                     | 9. Oral expression—speaking, singing and shouting. |
| 4. Music.                       | 10. Drinking and eating.                           |
| 5. Painting and sculpture.      | 11. Manipulation.                                  |
| 6. Motion pictures and theater. |  |

The individual wants to be stimulated interestingly and satisfyingly, and therefore he tries to engage in and to watch enjoyable activities. Much happiness is obtained when a person places himself in situations which are stimulating and satisfying. Monotony and boredom are depressing: an unschooled man, complaining about the drabness and monotony of life, said that "life was so daily."

The human organism with its eyes, ears, nose, taste buds, and skin craves a variety of pleasing stimulation and is readily set to respond. People spend almost limitless amounts of money for motion pictures, concerts, the theater, ball games, horse racing, motoring, and travel—*all in the pursuit of pleasure and excitement.* We seek variety to prevent monotony and boredom. In order to live healthily, we must engage in many pleasant activities.

We like to be in a situation where there is "something doing," as we say. We like to be stimulated: to see people, things, and interesting action such as races and games, to hear music, speeches, and conversation, to feel the presence of others, to feel a warm sun and a soothing breeze, and to taste, to eat, and to drink.

We not only want to be stimulated pleasantly through our senses—

we want to be in action ourselves. We crave to be up and doing. We want to be with people and talk to them. We want to play games, to dance; we want to be on the move, walking or riding. We crave action.

In the growth and development of a person, learning is a major contributor, and it is controlled by satisfaction and dissatisfaction. We are attracted to and tend to learn that which gives us satisfaction and avoid learning that which is unsatisfying.

The human organism grows and develops through stimulation and action. We learn by doing, but we also learn because of what we see, feel, taste, and so on. In our living and in our growing and developing, there must be a taking in, psychologically speaking, and there must be a giving out. For example, solitary confinement, which limits this take-and-give process to a minimum, is most abnormal for the human being and consequently a very severe punishment.

Children have more urge for stimulation and action than those of any other age group. This urge or drive cannot be suppressed. The school should utilize it and work with it rather than against it. If teaching is reasonably interesting, children will pay attention. If what they are doing stimulates them, they are going to be completely absorbed in the lessons, projects, or activities that are making a bid for their attention.

- Because children have a tremendous urge for action and for doing, they should not be expected to sit rigidly in their seats for long periods. The schedule should be organized so that they can work in groups, so that there is educational handwork, so that they can talk and participate in discussion, play games, and work at the blackboard.

Teachers are inclined to judge their own effectiveness by the amount of information they present, by the talking they do, and in general by the extent of their own performance. The criterion of good teaching is not so much this as the intensity and extensity of the action of the pupils. The teacher's tendency to do all the performing is consistent with the urge to be doing, but she should redirect that urge so that it will be the pupils who will be most active.

In the old school, an attempt was made to repress this craving for activity. The result was that the children were always annoying the teacher with their restlessness and would often break out into the more dramatic forms of pranks and mischief. The fact is that children cannot be repressed. This means not that they cannot or should not be controlled but that it is best to utilize their want to be stimulated and to be doing. In the typical modern school, games, sports, athletics, drama, parties, and funfuf activities are enjoyed by most of the students of all ages and grades. In stimulating them, audiovisual aids make an appeal. The use of films, both sound and silent, slides, radio, phonograph, demonstration apparatus, objects, tools, and materials

satisfies the natural wants of children and contributes to effective teaching.

*VII. The Want for Freedom and Liberty—Individuality. The Avoidance of Regimentation, Undue Control, and Imprisonment*

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. To think.           | 6. To determine one's own course of action. |
| 2. To create.          | 7. To be free to go about.                  |
| 3. To do.              | 8. Self-government.                         |
| 4. To express oneself. | 9. Equality of the individual.              |
| 5. To make decisions.  |   |

When an infant or young child is held firmly so that he cannot move, he will cry and struggle to be free. He resists restraint. The line in a popular song of some years ago, "Don't fence me in," expresses in a sense the feeling of most people. We do not wish to be unduly restrained, fenced in, or repressed.

In a way, this desire for freedom is influenced by the wants for ego value, for activity, and for pleasure and the avoidance of pain, because a repressed person feels less worthy, his activity is restrained, and his experiences are made less pleasant. In hardly any instance, however, are the human wants and urges separate and independent from each other. The child or adult does not want freedom without control and law; he wants a freedom that allows him to live ethically the best kind of life he is able to live.

Thus, in school, children want the right to do their own thinking and to express themselves freely. They do not like to be governed by rules and regulations whose purpose they do not understand. But fundamentally neither do they like a school where there is so much freedom that there is disorder. Children find fault with a teacher in whose room they can behave in a disorderly fashion. They also find fault with teachers who are unimaginative and too rigid and who cannot enjoy a joke. Apparently a schoolroom and school where behavior is governed largely by understanding and good will afford the freedom that is most satisfying to both pupils and teachers.

Correlated with the urge for freedom is the desire of people to have freedom under laws and regulations of their own making. This desire is satisfied in the school by student government. Obviously, in the lower grades, children are hardly capable of self-government, though even there they can express themselves about what they would like to do and how it should be done. In the third and fourth grades, pupils can hold meetings, conduct business, make motions, and establish rules and regulations.

Suppression of normal activity causes children to remain in an unhealthy, static condition from which they may try to escape through disorderly behavior. Children need freedom, as do adults, and they



chafe under many restrictions, such as the requirement that they sit stiffly for long periods, keep silent except when they answer the teacher, and march in and out of the schoolroom in formal fashion. In the schoolroom as in a state or nation, that government is best that governs least.

### *VIII. The Want for Sexual Stimulation. The Avoidance of Sexual Frustration*

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Sex drive.                            | 6. Eroticism.       |
| 2. Sex urge.                             | 7. Erogenous zones. |
| 3. Libido.                               | 8. Amorousness.     |
| 4. Life force.                           | 9. Sexual love.     |
| 5. Psychological and chemical pressures. |                     |

Through most of life, human beings experience sex feelings of one kind or another. Sex feelings are not limited to the postpuberty age but are had by children of practically all ages, though they are much stronger after puberty. There are great individual differences in the strength of these feelings, but the sex urge and the desire to have sex experience constitute a dominant factor in human behavior.

This serves the purpose of propagating the race and thus fits into a great plan of Nature. Sex is a fundamental drive and urge, underlying love and controlling many human relationships.

Most schools are coeducational. Boys and girls from kindergarten through college are together in schoolrooms and on school grounds. They play and work together and are school rivals, too. In the school there are many opportunities to develop wholesome attitudes and relationships between the sexes. Boys and girls get accustomed to each other by being in school together, and this is good. They associate at school games, parties, and dances, and this is conducive to the boy's and girl's understanding one another better.

Because sex is so important an aspect of life, the more alert schools offer sex education to their students. Through acquainting the students with the facts about sex—its physiology, sociology, psychology, and morale—ignorance and morbid curiosity will be overcome. Experience has shown that such sex education results in better behavior.

The teacher should recognize the importance of boy-girl relationships and realize that behind some of them at least and probably behind many of them is a fundamental biological urge. She should be sympathetic and understanding and try to guide her students toward good behavior and high idealism.

Sex has been given tremendous importance in psychology and psychiatry during this century. The work of Freud has emphasized

that sex has a dominant role in human behavior and is responsible for happiness or unhappiness. Freud found sexual frustration or maladjustment at the bottom of nearly every hysteria, neurosis, psychosis, or personality disorder. He regarded the sex urge or libido as the dominant life force which should take its natural, normal course; if it did not, maladjustment resulted.

Much of today's psychiatry is based on Freudian principles, with sex viewed as being at the core of peoples' disordered behavior and unhappiness. The Freudians see sex forces at work in infants, children, adolescents, and persons of every age. They see it in sucking, defecation, and in son-mother and daughter-father relationships. For the Freudian, sex rears its lovely head in almost every situation, in our most wakeful consciousness or in our dreams, and sex symbols are all about us, showing the dominance of our libido or strong sex forces.

Threads and strands of Freudianism, moreover, are found running through novels, plays, and poetry. The thinking of many persons about human behavior and why people have the interests they do is tinted by the Freudian concepts.

It should be remembered that Freud pioneered. He developed many very important ideas, which should not be discredited. In his medical practice he came in contact with many patients whose illnesses seemed to him to have a sexual cause. However, the Freudian emphasis is probably very extreme; we mention it so that the reader will be aware of this school of thought.

The material in this text shows that there are a number of basic needs, wants, drives, and strivings. Eight have been discussed in an attempt to explain the basic dynamics or mainsprings of human behavior. Sex is only one of these. A person's mental and emotional health, or in general his happiness, depends on how satisfactorily he gratifies his basic needs, drives, and motives. Not only mental health is dependent on these forces; they also underlie growth and development through learning.

Reasons for Understanding the Needs, Wants, Urges, Drives, and Motives. It is assumed that human behavior is dynamic—that it is impelled by certain energies and forces and that people have various cravings and purposes. The theories and meanings advanced here are to the effect that what people do can be explained and understood best in terms of needs, wants, urges, drives, and motives. The teacher can understand the responses of her pupils and how to teach them most effectively when she knows what the springs to action are and how to utilize them. She can also control her own behavior more effectively when she understands what underlies it. In the field of educational psychology, the area of emotional health and learning is of first importance. Understanding our basic wants

and needs helps us to improve our learning and mental health. In a general sense, if we can gratify our needs and motives, we shall be emotionally healthy and happy; in order to understand why and how we learn, we need to understand the fundamental wants and motives that underlie learning.

**The Wants, Needs, and Drives Are Related.** Together the wants, needs, and drives make the life force or the life-stream. They blend and mix. Probably some are primary, and others are derived from them, but any attempt at such differentiation would lead to much trouble and no particular good would be served. We are trying to understand the motive forces underlying behavior, and the needs, urges, and motives set forth explain peoples' behavior quite satisfactorily, it is hoped.

✓ The interrelation and interdependence of these wants and motives can be very easily illustrated. People have a need and want for economic security; therefore they work and save so that they will have the means for acquiring the food, shelter, clothing, and other things they need. A shortage threatens life, and being without brings death. Thus economic security and security of life are closely related.

Furthermore, if a person builds up his economic security, he gains standing and prestige. Consequently, he develops a higher self-esteem and a feeling of greater personal worth. Similarly the urge and want for companionship and friendship result in a feeling of belonging and enhance the sense of importance. In similar ways the needs and wants for stimulating activities, health and comfort, freedom and liberty can also be shown to be related with the other needs and drives.

✓ A question may be asked as to whether we inherit these needs and motives or whether they are acquired from our culture. Both the genetic and cultural explain our needs and urges, and it would be futile to attempt an allocation to either nature or nurture. Both are responsible for "human nature." The author has tried to identify the various needs, wants, urges, drives, and motives and to explain them so that the behavior of students, in particular, and of all people in general can be understood better. If we understand what makes the human being "tick," we can help him behave more effectively. Without the basic needs there would be no human beings, for there would be no forces to keep them in existence. Or if human beings did exist without these urges, which is hard to conceive, they would be most uninteresting and unmotivated creatures.

**Frustration from Failure to Meet Our Needs.** As the human being with his drives and strivings tries to make the best possible adjustment to his environment, various frustrations, conflicts, and other maladjustments develop. If we get along well with people, have

good jobs and make plenty of money, are married to the right persons, have a variety of interesting experiences, are in good health, and are free from undue restraint, we are likely to be happy and wholesome. Our wants, urges, and desires will be satisfied; we shall have a feeling of security; there will be good sexual adjustment; our desire for stimulating experiences will be satisfied, and life will not be dull. There will be comparatively little pain; life will be comfortable, and freedom will be enjoyed. And with all these satisfactions will go the feeling of personal worth—of a satisfactory ego value.

An individual who has such experiences will be well adjusted, and his mental hygiene will be good. His emotions will be wholesome, because he will not have fears about insecurity and he will not worry unduly about how he is getting along. He need not be jealous, for he is getting along very well, and he need not hate, for he is getting what he wants in life. He will love and be loved; he will like people; he is not likely to become angry very often or to be unhappy.

Thus our happiness or unhappiness, or our mental hygiene, is dependent largely on the extent to which our urges, cravings, needs, wants, and desires are satisfied. If they are wholesomely satisfied, then we are well adjusted; if not, we become maladjusted.

Let us consider an example. Here is a young man who wants to be one of the group—to belong to the set. He tries to be friendly and a good fellow, but he does not know how to begin. He is not much fun for anyone, and he does not play games well enough to be wanted for any of the teams. He feels the social neglect and rejection and is frustrated socially. He begins to strike back by being critical and hostile. He assumes an air of independence and superiority. Or he may stay by himself or attract a few less desirable companions by special favors or by leadership in exciting but antisocial activities.

Many persons, young and old, are frustrated because they are unsuccessful in various ways, not only in personal relationship, but in their school work, in getting a good job, in having a good home, or in general in having enough prestige and a satisfactory standing. Such persons feel frustrated more or less consciously, develop tensions, and react in various ways which are explained later. In one fashion or another a person tries to gratify his needs, drives, and motives, and his strivings are attempts to achieve a satisfactory adjustment.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

A *need* indicates a lack of something which a person should have. A person has a *want* for that which he needs; thus need and want are cause and effect. *Urges* and *drives* are internal forces that impel to action. *Motive* is more extensive than urges and drives. It is a prevailing state or condition in a person which prompts and controls his be-

havior. Need, want, urge, drive, and motive are closely interrelated and have much in common.

The basic human wants, drives, and urges that motivate most human behavior are those for life and economic and social security; personal worth; health, comfort, and the avoidance of pain; stimulation and activity; individualism and freedom; and the satisfaction of the sex urge.

Our present stage of learning and understanding has not advanced enough to enable us to indicate which are primary wants and needs and which are secondary. But it is believed that the ideas set forth will help in understanding and guiding one's own behavior and dealing effectively with others.

The teacher, in guiding the learning and personal development of his pupils, must control the school situations for meeting these needs and wants in order to stimulate maximum growth and development.

A person is frustrated and maladjusted when the basic wants are not satisfied. Unhealthy emotions develop. Consequently, when students do not respond wholesomely to a situation, the teacher should look for failures to satisfy basic wants. The problem then is to make changes that will result in satisfaction.

It will be observed that the needs, wants, urges, drives, and motives are interrelated and not independent of each other.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Why do people work hard and try to satisfy several objectives?
2. Students have their gangs, cliques, fraternities, and sororities. What drives and urges underlie such organizations?
3. In today's schools, much emphasis is placed on health and safety education. Discuss what fundamental wants and motives this emphasis is based on.
4. List what you want in life, and check against the basic needs and wants.
5. Show how students are motivated to go to school by the drive for economic security.
6. In the old school, physical pain was inflicted frequently in order to stimulate learning and to control the pupils. This is rarely done in the modern school. In view of our strong tendency to avoid discomfort and pain, do you think the old school used an effective method?
7. In school, students compete to be on the honor roll, to be on athletic teams, to gain the approval of their classmates and teachers, and to be class leaders. From what fundamental wants or needs do such activities derive?
8. Do you think that games, parties, and week ends for adults and students are a kind of safety valve?
9. There is an increased demand for sex education in the high school. Discuss whether or not you think such education is psychologically sound.
10. The modern school uses the project and activity method in the classroom and in addition has a rich program of extracurricular activities. Dis-

cuss whether or not you think such activities are fundamentally sound in terms of human wants and urges.

11. Describe a person whom you think very thwarted and frustrated.

12. Describe a person who is well adjusted because enough of his wants and fundamental motives are well satisfied.

13. Explain how the satisfying of one need may help satisfy one or more of the others.

## 6. Mental and Emotional Health

### *Emotions and Personality*

**What to Look For.** Learn what proportion of pupils is likely to become seriously ill mentally, and contrast the personality problems of the extreme deviates with those of the normal.

Differentiate between undesirable and desirable worry and concern. Note the principal causes of worry among students and what can be done about them.

Learn the meaning and effects of worry, complexes, suppression, repression, rationalization, compensation, fantasy, conflict, temper tantrums, and malingering. Show how these mechanisms result from a failure to satisfy one's wants and urges.

Develop some ideas on how a person acquires an inferiority complex.

It is pointed out that conscience should contribute to emotional maturity.

The healthful effects of catharsis, sublimation, diversions, and substitute activities are set forth and explained.

What are the causes of procrastination, and what are its ill effects?

Observe how maladjustment can result in mental and physical illness. What is the meaning of *psychosomatic*?

Describe how people differ in their resistance to the hardships of life.

What are the meanings of the terms *escape* and *defense mechanism*?

Learn the causes of frustrations, tensions, and nervous habits and how they can be dealt with successfully.

**Introduction.** When a teacher faces her class, she should realize that 1 out of every 20 of her pupils, or 5 out of every 100, will at some time be in what is called a *mental hospital*. This is what will happen on the average if her students prove to be typical of the population as a whole.

The 1 out of 20 of whom we are talking will be in the hospital not because of an organic illness such as a weakness of the heart or appendicitis, cancer, or tuberculosis; in fact, a physical examination usually will show that the body seems healthy. This person will be in the

hospital because of emotional trouble or a personality disorder. It will be said that he is in poor mental health or is mentally ill. It may be that such a person has had a mental breakdown, acts queerly, is emotionally depressed, is shot through with fears, does not respond normally to the people with whom he deals, or fails to meet the requirements of his position because of personality disorders.

There will also be those who are not maladjusted enough to go to a hospital but who need treatment. Including those who go to a hospital, it is estimated that 1 out of 10 persons will need the treatment of a psychiatrist or psychologist who specializes in the treatment of what is termed *mental diseases*.

There remain the 9 out of 10 who are normal and have no problems so serious as to require psychiatric attention but who nevertheless have their unhappiness and personal problems. All of us have worries, distresses, fears, and difficulties, though fortunately they do not become so serious as to make us morbid. But we should all understand the principles of mental health and hygiene so that we can be more efficient in preventing or overcoming our difficulties. Further, as teachers, we should be familiar with these principles so that we can understand our pupils and help them in overcoming their personal problems and troubles.

In the discussion that follows, attention is centered on the emotional states or the mental health of normal people. We are not concerned here with the extreme forms of maladjustment that need psychiatric help or hospitalization. A few introductory facts about serious abnormality of the emotions and mental state were given, to sharpen the consciousness of the teacher about the problem of mental hygiene for her pupils as well as for herself. They should make us conscious of how important the satisfying of human wants is, of the significance of having healthy emotions, and in general of the responsibility of the school for developing good habits in the pupils and helping them to live successful and happy lives.

As pupils attempt to fit into their environment and try to control their environment by mastering their lessons, by getting along with their parents and teachers, by standing well with their fellows, by achieving or maintaining good health, and by any number of similar efforts, they experience their worries, upsets, disappointments, and conflicts. Some develop mechanisms of thinking and behavior that are substitutes for good ways of doing things and thereby cause poor mental health. In the next few pages, discussion will focus on the various aspects of the feelings, emotions, and personality of an individual that control his mental hygiene and personal adjustment.

**Worry, or Overconcern.** Let us begin with an affliction common to almost everyone—one that centers principally in our want for social



and economic security and our want for importance and personal worth. It is our anxiety about satisfying these wants, and others, that causes us to worry.

It was explained in the previous chapter that we have certain wants, needs, and goals. If we are successful in achieving or gratifying them, we are likely to be in good emotional health, but if we are thwarted in doing so and thus unsuccessful, various unhealthy feelings and emotions develop. Then we are unhappy, and accompanying this unhappiness will be worry, complexes, repression, suppressions, rationalizations, and other symptoms and causes of unhappiness and maladjustment. These will be discussed later, but now we shall turn to the worries of schoolsters.

Specifically, what do pupils and students worry about? Worries differ for pupils of different ages. Grade-school children have outlooks and experiences different from those of college students, and consequently their worries differ. College students, for example, are more worried about jobs than are grade-school children, but both are worried about their studies, and thus there is some similarity, too.

The following is an analysis and summary of what all pupils and students worry about:

1. They worry about being successful in their studies. Such worries and anxieties center in getting to school on time, mastering their lessons, and obtaining good report cards.

In her inquiry about the problems of high-school pupils, Pope describes a boy who explained that one of his problems about getting along was caused by lack of ability. The boy wrote, "One of my problems is that I can't read good enouf to be in high school, and as you can see, I can't wright or spell vary good."

2. Pupils are anxious about their relationships with their teachers. This anxiety is a phase of another fundamental concern of pupils, which is about how they get along with others.

3. Personal relationships that concern pupils are those with parents, brothers, sisters, and their fellows. Because of a craving for social security, they want to feel that they are appreciated, loved, and wanted by their parents. They are troubled by quarrels with their brothers and sisters and worry about being scolded by their parents.

Always of profound concern to everyone is how he is regarded by his fellows. Students want to get along well with their peers, and they dread losing a friend. When boys and girls reach the adolescent stage, they are especially concerned about their popularity with the opposite sex. Girls want to be asked for dates, and boys are anxious about having dates with the girls of their choice.

4. When a child gets old enough to be conscious of socioeconomic status, he worries especially about economic security. He is concerned about his father's job, about having a nice enough home, and

about having money enough to buy good clothes so that he will look as well as other children do. This concern has its roots not only in the desire for economic security but also in a feeling for personal worth and for social security or adequacy.

Some investigations indicate that a substantial proportion of high-school pupils are not concerned about a job or vocation, while other investigations show the opposite. As one boy said, "I'm very much concerned about my record in high school because I know if it's good it will help me get a good position."

5. Another source of worry and anxiety concerns health and a feeling of well-being. We like to be well, to be free of illness, and to have a feeling of being healthy and strong. Children as well as adults are worried by a headache, a pain in the region of the stomach, an ache in the joints, or some physical discomfort. Some do not sleep so well as they should or are anxious about their appetites. The matter of weight is a concern to many. The high-school athlete wants to be heavier. Girls, in particular, are afraid that they are too heavy, although this is usually not justified.

Anxiety about health is not one of the worst troubles of young people, but it is an important one for some. Related to the anxiety about health is the worry about death. On that score, pupils should take solace in the fact that death is at the minimum for those of school age, the very least probability of death being at the age of ten and eleven.

Children in many instances are much concerned about the health of their mothers and fathers. It is not uncommon for children to be anxious when they see their parents suffering pain or illness. Parental illness worries children because they do not want to lose those who give them economic and social security.

The concern of children about their health stems from the basic want for security of life and the want for good and pleasant feelings and therefore the avoidance of pain. Children have the want for an active life, for almost unbounded activity and freedom, it seems, and bad health limits the fulfillment of these basic wants.

What can the teacher and school do about the worries and anxieties of children? First, the teacher can discuss the topic of worry with her pupils so that they will understand the futility of overconcern. Worry may be described as being fear dreaming. She can point out that it is useless to worry about the past. Yesterday and what we have done yesterday are gone and cannot be brought back. One should calmly review what is past and profit from it as so much valuable experience. In order to make progress, one has to rid oneself of the handicaps of worrying about the past. Let the sky of today be clear of yesterday's clouds.

The present can be mortgaged by a dread of tomorrow. Most of the

troubles and difficulties we anticipate do not develop. When pupils fret and fume about a coming examination, they waste energy that should be used in preparation. When they take the examination, they usually find that they can pass it.

It is the present that counts, as no doubt the Good Book means when it speaks of taking each day in one's stride. One should be concerned about the future, but not to the point where he becomes so highly emotionalized that he cannot think and work effectively. When energy is dissipated in worry, it cannot be used for the work at hand. A knowledge of the general futility of worry will not prevent it entirely but may help to prevent some of it.

The teacher can profitably discuss the student's worries with him. If a child talks about his anxieties and fears and gets them out in the open, they usually become much smaller. Furthermore, when the teacher understands a student's troubles, she can deal with them intelligently and thereby release many of his tensions. It often helps to discuss with the student how serious it would be if what the student worries about actually should happen. Usually such analysis makes it clear that what we worry about is not very serious after all, and consequently stresses and strains are eased. During the discussion the teacher and student may arrive at solutions of the worry problems. Most worries result from having faulty perceptions, distorted imagination, and inaccurate images. Mutual analysis and evaluation will often correct these distortions and thereby eliminate much worry and anxiety.

In addition to helping children understand why they worry and the futility of most of this, the teacher can reduce the emotional tensions of overconcern by developing in the classroom an atmosphere of calm and wholesome industry. First, the teacher should not herself indulge in worry but should be at ease and should proceed without much apparent wear and tear. A sense of humor reduces tension, and students respond favorably to a teacher whom they describe as a "good sport." Excessive rivalry, with emphasis on prizes and honors, produces excessive tension among some pupils and a feeling of "I'm not in it" on the part of many. The present emphasis on school marks, with the consequent threat of not being promoted, causes undue concern among a considerable number of pupils. For the good of the students, situations that create excessive emotional tension should be eased.

This is not to convey the notion that conditions in the classroom should be so free and easy that there will be no proper concern whatever. Indifferent and oversoft education would develop unhappiness, too, and would be conducive to poor mental hygiene. Pupils should feel some anxiety, but in the sense that they should be concerned about

their duties and responsibilities, or they will accomplish nothing. Worry in the sense of wholesome concern is really necessary if pupils are to come to grips with their problems. If they are truly concerned about their lessons, they are determined to master them.

The person without the ability to worry in this sense drifts along with little or no concern for anything. He is careless, indifferent, and irresponsible. It would be well for such a person to worry a little, not to the point of becoming overexcited or overconcerned, but to the point of developing a real determination. The person who has little or no concern for anything misses the exhilaration that comes to pupils who have the experience of working hard and achieving their goals. Such success is necessary for achieving the best mental health.

**Complexes, Unpleasant Feeling, and Distorted Thinking.** A large number of pupils have trouble learning to read. Others learn to dislike examinations, have a dread of them, and worry about the marks they will get. Because of their discouraging experiences, they develop emotionalized attitudes which may cause blockages that impair their thinking when they try to read, take examinations, or engage in similar school activities which are emotionally colored for them. It may be said that these pupils have developed complexes over reading, examinations, and marks.

A complex is an emotionally toned thought, idea, or memory. This means that when a certain thought or idea comes to mind it is accompanied by feelings and emotions. Complexes can be pleasant or unpleasant, although we usually think of them as the latter.

Hates, biases, prejudices, bitterness, and jealousies are complexes and often go together. Here is a young man who hates a second young man and is jealous of him. The reason is that the second young man got the captaincy of the team which the first wanted most of all. The thought of the successful man invariably makes the first man feel angry and bitter. These ideas are emotionally toned or are saturated with feeling; hence we say that he has a complex. This complex may show itself in sharp criticisms of and unfriendly attitudes toward the young man who was successful.

Complexes can develop about almost anything. However, they usually develop around happy or unhappy experiences or those which satisfy or fail to satisfy our fundamental wants or urges.

The child who fails in school or finds the work too hard will have ideas and thoughts about his work that are toned with unhappy emotions. Children may feel that they are not so bright as most. Others may feel themselves too tall or too short, too slim or too fat or may have big noses, buck-teeth, or some deviation of which they are sensitive. This sensitivity is caused by a complex or unhappy feeling that accompanies the idea or thought of these personal characteristics.

We have all heard of and probably know some narrow-minded people. Such persons have a few positive and negative ideas and are intolerant of the ideas of others. Much of this narrowness and intolerance is caused by a training that sets up prejudices or feelings—positive in respect to the things favored and sharply negative in respect to those opposed. Narrow people generally take a very firm stand for or against; they do so because they have become hemmed in by complexes. It is in the area of tolerance and in the development of generous attitudes toward other people and their ideas that the teacher can accomplish much by enlarging her pupils' knowledge and understanding and by being herself tolerant, sympathetic, and broad-minded.

Another complex that should be mentioned and described is one that pertains to feelings about oneself. To each person, he himself is the most important person in the world. Each person has many thoughts and feelings about himself. For example, a pupil who is a good ballplayer, who gets his lessons easily, and who has many friends has a feeling of confidence when he thinks of himself. Another pupil has a feeling of confidence when he thinks of himself in terms of his school subjects but a feeling of inferiority when he thinks about his relationship with his fellows, for these are not satisfactory. There are children who have so little success that they feel inadequate or inferior in many ways.

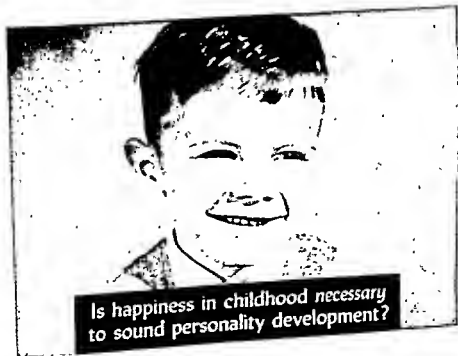
We speak of a person whose ideas about himself are tinged with feelings of inferiority as having an inferiority complex. This means that when he thinks of performing a task, is faced with a problem, or is associated with people in a social situation, his ideas and feelings about himself are to the effect that he is inadequate or inferior and that he cannot perform work or get along with others very well. He is self-conscious and lacks confidence.

Persons with an inferiority complex are apt to be shy and sensitive and often like to be alone. They are hungry for praise and resent criticism that is unfavorable even though constructive. They are hard to get along with, for they do not know how to give and take and are what is known as "thin-skinned."

Of college students asked by Fenlason and Hertz to indicate their feelings about the adequacy of their personality, 2 out of 3, or 67 per cent, were conscious of defects in personality. A little over 1 out of 3, or 38.5 per cent, had feelings of inferiority. Only 1 out of 10, or 10 per cent, felt no particular handicaps of personality. Data like these show how much people really live with themselves, so to speak, and how important feelings of self really are. We cannot slough off personality. It is always with us, and we continuously face the problem of getting along with people and of being happy.



**What is the value of having  
a friendly talk with a pupil?**



**Is happiness in childhood necessary  
to sound personality development?**

The problems of personality center largely in the self and the want of the individual for having others think well of him and for self-esteem. These college students felt that their problems were shyness, self-consciousness, overmodesty, few friends, aloofness, awkwardness and backwardness, the fear of being made a fool of, and the fear of the opinions of others. Practically all their thoughts and feelings centered in personal and social adequacy and the resultant feelings of inferiority. They gave as the cause for the development of feelings of inadequacy certain lacks or deficiencies, such as lack of opportunity to meet people socially, lack of money and proper clothing, and lack of experience in social situations.

It appears from this that these college students were putting the blame where it does not belong. They were projecting the responsibility outside of themselves for conditions over which to a great extent they had control. One always has a chance to meet others; in fact, one is always with other people, and one's success with them depends on one's ability to get along with them. This is almost entirely the individual's responsibility. Experience in social situations is gained by seeking out people, being friendly, and making friends. This, too, is largely the individual's own responsibility.

Money is important, but it is altogether too easy to blame one's lack of it for one's social inadequacy. It is one's own worth that really counts: if one will develop personal charm and friendliness, most of the other problems will be incidental. The surest and quickest way to make an adjustment and dispel feelings of insecurity and insufficiency is to put the responsibility sternly on oneself and then try to improve.

A teacher should be on the alert to discover the complexes of her pupils. If a pupil has an inferiority complex, the first question to ask is why he has ideas and feelings of inferiority. Perhaps he is failing in his work and has no friends; the solution then is to give him more success, praise for sincere efforts, special recognition for achievement, and guidance socially so that he will have more friends. It is not easy to overcome complexes, but sympathy and understanding will help. If the teacher expresses faith in her pupils, recognizes their strong points, and helps them succeed, she will do much to develop in them healthy attitudes toward themselves and their work.

One may also have a superiority complex. The person with a superiority complex has much confidence in himself. His feelings about self are pleasant and satisfying because of the feeling of superiority. There is also the attitude of overconfidence—of having too much confidence. Then a person does not have a good understanding of the tasks before him, which he underrates, and of his own abilities, which he overrates.

What appears to be a feeling of superiority may frequently be a

cover for a true feeling of inferiority. In order to understand a child, the genuine feeling of superiority must be distinguished from the pseudo feeling. Some persons with feelings of inferiority appear confident, "bossy," and superior and try to give the impression of being important, but they are merely trying to make up, consciously or unconsciously, for true feelings of inadequacy.

Complexes prevent clear thinking, for emotions and feelings obstruct ideas or guide them illogically. We all know that we cannot depend on the opinion of a prejudiced person, for he will not take the facts into account but will be governed by envy, hate, or partiality. Furthermore, a person affected by feelings and emotions becomes confused or has stage fright, and his answers are slower, less clear, and less likely to be right.

**Conscience and Guilt Complexes.** A guilt complex is a set of emotionalized ideas over having sinned or done wrong. A person with a guilt complex is seriously disturbed by his thoughts and feelings about his behavior and is probably oversensitive about right and wrong. Students are often disturbed about their wrongdoings, real or imagined. They are troubled by their consciences, and emotional stresses and strains develop.

Because conscience plays an important part in mental and emotional hygiene, we should have an understanding of what it is. Though it can be defined in many ways, it may be described as sensitivity to right and wrong, as self-criticism in terms of ethical and moral standards, as anxiety about guilt and fear of consequences, as ideals and consciousness about what should and should not be done. The core of conscience apparently is the feeling about right and wrong.

If people do what they know is ethically and morally right and do not do what is wrong, they will avoid much emotional unhealthiness. In short a person goes a long way toward mental health by behaving himself. Wrongdoing often brings on pangs of conscience, worry over loss of face, fears of punishment; in general wrongdoing brings on a guilt complex.

A child or adult should be neither too sensitive nor too callous about wrongdoing. One's conscience should be a reliable guide. If it is too sensitive, a person is in an emotional turmoil when he should not be. If too callous, the conscience does not help in keeping one out of trouble.

The attitude of a child toward right and wrong should be as mature as possible. He should not be trained to believe that innocent and enjoyable activities are wrong, for then excessive anxiety is likely to result. Guilt complexes often result from imagining certain behavior as having been seriously wrong when actually it was of no consequence whatever. If repressed, such complexes tend to discolor the emotions



and distort the behavior. The purpose of a conscience is to contribute to a person's social growth and development. Consequently a child should be trained by home and school to have a well-balanced outlook on right and wrong.

For the development of a healthy, well-balanced conscience, children should not be dealt with too strictly. Overemphasis on the rightness and wrongness of behavior may develop oversensitivity and, instead of improving behavior, may raise many conflicts that distort behavior and thereby make it worse. Overemphasis on right and wrong may also result in an attitude of indifference or one of rebellion. If guided sympathetically and understandingly, children usually develop from their experiences a wholesome attitude toward right and wrong.

**Repression and Suppression, Loading Oneself with Trouble.** Many of our complexes center on unhappy and bitter experiences of which a number are failures that tend to undermine our self-esteem and feeling of personal worth. Consequently we want to get rid of these painful complexes and forget them. We always protect our ego, and because of the motivation to get rid of such disagreeable complexes we more or less unknowingly or unconsciously repress them into the subconscious in order to forget about them. According to the theories of repression the pushing of these unpleasantly emotionalized images and memories into the unconscious or subconscious is unhealthy because although we have seemingly forgotten them, still they will tend to disorder our thinking and behavior. Just as a person unknown to himself may have something wrong with some organ or part of the body that causes him to feel languid, so a person can be harboring repressions of which he is not conscious but which may block and fetter him in one way or another.

In the side heading of this section appears the word *suppression*. It refers to the holding secret of one's feelings and complexes. In the case of suppression the individual consciously holds back his feelings or keeps secret his unpleasant and painful ideas or complexes. He is aware of the complex and covers it up so that no one will know about it. The type of experiences one may repress or suppress are failure in a subject, dissatisfaction with school or one's work, losing of friends, or rejection in love. Any unfavorable experience that will result in punishment, in shame, or in the lowering of one's status and self-esteem are subject to repression or suppression. Repression is more or less unconscious and the complex is forgotten, but in suppression the process is conscious and awareness of the complex persists.

Other unhappy experiences and facts that a person may repress or suppress are failing to graduate, a quarrel with a classmate, having a drunken father, being unpopular, and having stolen some money.

These are distasteful, painful experiences or situations, and because they reflect upon one unfavorably, it is to be expected that with their accompanying feelings they will be relegated to the subconscious or held secret through suppression. A person wants to get his painful complexes out of the way so that he will not be troubled by them and also so that others will not be aware of them.

Repression and suppression serve to store up troubles so that they can continue to cause pain and unhappiness. When complexes are bottled up, they cause stresses and strains and distort behavior. Let us illustrate by the case of a boy who has been shunted aside and subtly rejected by his parents, who are very fond of his brother. The rejected boy is not too clear about what his parents are actually doing, and he represses his feelings about these unpleasant experiences. He is not aware of the rejection in the sense of having clear and articulate memories of actual occurrences. But because he has these repressions in his subconscious, he is clouded emotionally, his images and perceptions of himself are distorted, and his behavior is frustrated or disordered to a greater or lesser degree.

An example of suppression is that of a boy who is conscious of lying and stealing but keeps it a secret (to himself, as we say). His suppressed complexes are sensitive spots in his emotional body; when lying or stealing is mentioned, he will feel sensitive, uncomfortable, and on the defensive. There will be many associations that will set off painful emotions conducive to poor emotional and mental health.

Several similes can be used to illustrate the effects of repression and suppression. They may be thought of as being like slivers or shrapnel in the body, developing sensitive areas and even causing infection and illness. Or repressed or suppressed complexes are like little imps within us, kicking about and doing mischief, or like little rodents that gnaw away at our nerves just as rats gnaw at the ropes of a ship. Another point of view is that the unconsciously or consciously hidden complexes keep us full of unhealthy and poisonous emotions and thereby cause an unhealthy body chemistry. We say, too, that repressions and suppression "build up" an internal pressure that will "break out" in unhealthy behavior.

What needs to be done is to pull out the slivers and remove the shrapnel, chase out the little imps and rodents, take out the poisonous complexes, and release the pressure. If the complex is got out of the unconscious or the secret conscious and into the open, a healthy emotional state can be restored by then facing and discussing the unhappy situation fully and freely.

One way to get some relief from a complex is to talk it over with someone who is competent in counseling and in whom full confidence is reposed. The truth of the situation must be frankly recognized. Just

as it is painful to pull out a sliver, so it is painful to discuss truthfully an unhappy experience. But there are occasions when, in order to save one's ego value and prestige, one must acknowledge the experience that seems to reduce that ego. The ego value is thereupon usually restored to its former status.

Personality may be distorted, with consequent maladjustment, because of the repression of unhappy experiences that have occurred many years before. One of the fundamental principles of psychiatry is to get the patient to speak freely and try to recall unhappy experiences, even childhood experiences, that may have wounded the personality and may still be affecting it. It is conceivable that a situation in which parents were too busy to pay attention to a child and thus seemed to reject him, or a failure in school, or a poor family background may have resulted in repressed complexes. Getting them into the open makes reeducation possible.

Complexes develop from wrongdoing and unhappy experiences. One can save oneself from these by clean living and being a good citizen. However, there are circumstances in life, such as unavoidable failure in schoolwork, relatives who are scoundrels, having few friends, that will almost inescapably cause complexes and consequent repression. In dealing with complexes produced by unhappy circumstances in the schoolroom, it should be remembered that a teacher who gains the confidence and good will of her pupils will be consulted by them. Her pupils may unburden themselves, as we say, and rid themselves of their complexes. One of the values in a good guidance and counseling program is that teachers and students have a chance to talk with each other. In talking about a pupil's problems, the pupil is encouraged to bring his complexes out in the open, analyze them, and dispose of them. Of course, teachers should not be busybodies harmfully prying into their pupils' personal problems. A teacher in order to be effective must be liked by her pupils, have their confidence, and be skilled in dealing with personal problems.

*Children will develop much more healthily in an atmosphere where they can express their ideas and feelings. In an overstrict or rigid classroom climate, the children must restrain themselves unnaturally and suppress their thoughts and attitudes. Under such conditions of stress and strain, unwholesome suppressions usually develop. A buoyant, happy teacher who is friendly with her pupils helps to create an atmosphere where children express themselves wholesomely in thought and feeling. This will do much to avoid repressions and suppressions and will help to dispose of those which exist.*

**Catharsis, Getting the Trouble Out of One's System.** In discussing repression and suppression, it was pointed out that locking up one's troubles within oneself is not healthful since they are not got rid

of but are stored away to continue their mischief. Therefore it is recommended that one should not bury his difficulties within himself or, if one does have buried complexes or is trying to hold secret various painful memories, that he get them out of his system. Psychoanalysis, for example, depends on free association for uncovering one's repressed and forgotten troubles and disposing of them through discussion.

The troubles a pupil is conscious of should be talked over with a trustworthy friend, a sympathetic teacher, or a counselor. In addition to airing these troubles, which clog up his mental and emotional systems, the student often receives advice and assurance; and when he talks over his problem with someone, he may acquire new perceptions and understandings that help him to work out his own solutions.

**Sublimation, Diversion, and Substitute Activities.** One should not live with one's troubles, and catharsis helps to avoid that; but there are other ways of overcoming one's troubles or reducing the tensions they cause. Sublimation is one of these. It consists of redirecting one's interests and energies into acceptable activities and thus satisfying one's wants and motives. The idea of sublimation has been applied to the sex drive, and it has been held that if young men and women are very active in sports and physical work, their sex drive will be absorbed or sublimated. Another example is that of women who have not married and thus satisfied the want of having children of their own but who gain satisfactions as teachers from helping and developing children. Others who do not satisfy certain drives and wants sublimate these urges in writing, music, painting or sculpturing. Actually, hobbies may represent sublimations of many kinds.

Diversions often serve as wholesome outlets. A person depressed by failure and disappointment may overcome his tensions by doing something interesting. Surely the worst behavior is to sit and dwell on one's troubles, because that only makes the tensions worse. Furthermore, one should avoid routine living with all its monotony, as such living develops more tensions. Diversions such as the taken-for-granted recesses during the school day releases tensions that accumulate in the class room. Motion pictures, ball games, the use of libraries, golf, bowling, church activities, card games, dances, and countless events divert us from annoyances and upsets.

Another aspect of this same approach to maintaining one's mental health is to do what may seem to be second best. Substitute activities may be found; thus, if it rains and one cannot have the tennis game that had been planned, one may go indoors and play cards or swim in the pool. If one cannot go abroad, one may see a little more of the United States. If one cannot afford to be a musician, one may be a doctor, engineer, accountant, or something else to one's liking, and

then be a musician avocationally, for recreation and fun. If one cannot have one's first choice but does something else that is satisfactory, a good adjustment has been made. Sometimes the substitute activity may be more satisfying than the original activity might have been.

Even though there probably is little or no sublimation in the strict sense as applied to the sex drive, variety of experiences and the use of substitute activities are of great value for maintaining good emotional health. When one is bogged down with troubles and failures, having some fun or doing something interesting can be of great help and can even overcome problems.

**Rationalization, Putting Up a Good Front.** A high-school girl hoped to be asked by a certain boy to go to a party with him. But he asked another girl. Our young woman said, "I wouldn't go with him if he was the last boy on earth. He isn't at all interesting, and I could never like him the least bit."

What she said was not true, and yet it may have sounded convincing. She was trying to maintain her self-esteem and her prestige with the other girls. Her attitude is sometimes described as trying to "save face."

This girl was rationalizing. She gave an untrue explanation but one that might appear reasonable and convincing. Rationalizing is the more or less unconscious process of protecting our feeling of worth or self-esteem, the process of saving face by giving feasible but untrue excuses. When a person is rationalizing, what he says probably feels like the truth to him. A deliberate lie is not rationalizing, and the rationalizer does not feel that he is lying.

In this instance the rationalization took the form known as "sour grapes." The term comes from Aesop's fable about the fox who, when he could not reach the grapes he jumped and jumped for, called them sour and implied he did not want them. When our high-school girl did not receive the invitation she wanted from a certain boy, she said that he was uninteresting and that she could never like him.

It is not uncommon for pupils to say that good school marks are unimportant because the persons who are most successful in life and make the most money were poor students in school. It is also often claimed that the "grade getters," the students who get the good marks, are usually teachers' pets and frequently fail on the job. Statements like these are considerably more false than true, but they offer satisfaction to the students who do not do very well. This sour-grapes rationalization saves their sense of importance and gives them a feeling of worth.

One pupil says to another, "I'd learn that stuff in algebra if the teacher could only explain it. I don't believe she knows it herself." Now it is quite possible for such a statement to be true, but we shall

assume that in this case the fault is the student's and that he is projecting the blame on the teacher. Putting the blame on someone else in order to excuse oneself and protect one's own standing is a form of rationalization known as *projection*. We lay the fault on someone else in order to maintain our own ego.

A truant says that the reason he does not go to school is that his clothes are not good enough. The fact is that he can have good enough clothes if he wants to, but he projects the blame on the lack of clothes. He is rationalizing. In this instance, he is only partly defending his feeling of worth. He is principally interested in staying out of school because he is happier and more satisfied out of school than in.

"We lost the baseball game because it was so wet our pitcher couldn't handle the ball." The ball was wet for the other pitcher, too. This is projection, putting the blame on the slippery ball. The player will not admit that his team was beaten because it did not play so well as the other team.

Another aspect of projection is the ascribing to another of one's own faults and weaknesses. If a person says that so and so can't be trusted any farther than you can see him, he may unwittingly be attributing to someone else his own untrustworthiness. He feels more worthy for having done so, and it may help to take the attention off himself.

Projection is one of the worst psychological narcotics, because it prevents a person from remedying his own weaknesses. This is true to a considerable extent for most mechanisms described in this chapter, but projection is very common both among individuals and among nations, and it seems to explain and excuse our behavior very satisfactorily. A person using this mechanism fails to see things as they really are, hence assumes no responsibility for trying to improve himself. The practice of projection creates a false attitude and point of view and so keeps a person from seeing his true goals and reaching them.

"Oh, it will come out all right," says a pupil who is getting poor marks on his lessons. "It will turn out for the best. I'll pass anyway." Similarly, a boy who is not promoted says that this is probably all for the best, for now he can cover the ground more thoroughly. In both instances the boys are careless and indifferent. Their failures are entirely their own fault, but they are trying to satisfy themselves by saying it is all for the best. This form of rationalization is called "Pollyanna" or "sweet lemon." The first term is derived from the book whose heroine Pollyanna regards everything from an ultra-optimistic point of view. The second term is used because a sweet response is made to a bitter or sour situation. The football coach who loses all his games, speaks in lachrymose tones about the spiritual and

has to accord him special attention and when the boys begin to talk of him as not being scared of the teacher. When a boy is referred to by his schoolmates as a fellow who "is so smart the teacher can't catch him" or who "isn't afraid of anybody," he begins to feel superior. Through troublemaking, he is compensating for failure to gain recognition by doing his duties as a pupil.

The bully is probably compensating for some inadequacy. He may feel inadequate because of his home background, or because he is not doing well in school, or because he feels he is not liked by his fellows and thus lacks a sense of "belongingness." Consequently he may lord it over others and bully them. He acquires thus a feeling of worth and superiority. His bullying is compensation for his inadequacies and the feeling of being less important than he wants to feel.

Some persons have an air of aloofness and of being better than others. They are commonly referred to as being "stuck-up." Such boys and girls and adults, too, are probably compensating for an inferiority complex. In fact, most compensation is an attempt to cover or offset a feeling of being inferior. Through being aloof a person attempts to give the impression of being superior. When we see someone who seems haughty, proud, or snobbish, we can be almost sure that these attitudes of his are compensatory efforts at trying to appear better than others.

Usually, the truly successful person who is really superior puts on no airs whatever. Generally he is a good fellow who is easy to talk to and rarely says much about himself. The successful man is usually interested in the other person and shows it by asking questions about him and showing interest, friendliness, and concern about his general welfare.

Another form of compensation shows itself in attitudes of "cockiness" and pugnaciousness. Here is a little fellow who has an affected walk and general demeanor that suggest a strutting cock. He apparently wants to give the impression of being snappy and alert. He is quick to sense unfavorable criticism and quick to defend himself against it. Although he does not realize it, he is really "putting on an act." He is compensating for a feeling of insecurity caused by his small size.

There exists a good form of compensation that should be explained. This is not the "false-front" type of compensation, which we have discussed in some detail, but a real and useful kind of behavior that helps overcome insecurity and inferiority. Here, for example, is a pupil who is not a good athlete but has good learning abilities. He devotes himself to his lessons so that he can maintain a good scholastic record. He is thus compensating for an inadequacy in athletics by

being an exceptionally good student and getting his worth thereby. Doing well academically will help him make a good adjustment.

In this form of compensation we emphasize and exploit our best qualities, so to speak, in order to minimize the penalty of our poorest qualities. We do in life what we do in bridge—play our strong suits and slough the weak ones.

A girl, for example, may deviate considerably from prettiness. As the world is now constituted and probably always will be, not being pretty is a disadvantage. But the disadvantage can be overcome. Of course, every person should look as attractive as possible. But in our example the girl can compensate by being pleasing, developing a charming personality, and making situations attractive and comfortable. She can learn to excel in many things such as sewing, cooking, dancing, and many sports and activities. All this represents good compensation.

Sometimes a distinction is made between compensation and overcompensation. Compensation is a name for substitute behavior which has for its purpose the indirect achievement of satisfaction in place of failure, weaknesses, and frustration. Compensation may be either ineffective or effective behavior. Overcompensation is behavior which directly overcomes weakness and frustration but continues to an unhealthy extreme.

For example, a person who leads a bad life and is steeped in sin reforms and lives morally. So far so good, but he overcompensates by being intolerant of other people's behavior and oversensitive about his own. He becomes a perfectionist and extremist and develops reformer tensions. He has overcompensated and is less healthy than he would have been if he had not carried his reform so far.

Similarly, a person who has a poor physical start builds up his health and overcomes his weaknesses. That is a fine achievement, but he does not stop there. He dramatizes physical strength and vigor, engages in dangerous hunts, exposes himself to the extreme rigors of the outdoors, boxes, wrestles, and may even try his hand at a rodeo. He has made a passion of physical fitness, and this overcompensation nullifies some of the gains made in overcoming his original physical frailties.

A person should not compensate for a weakness that can be overcome or cured. Instead, attention should be directed to overcoming such a weakness. One of the greatest track stars of all time was weak physically and had an injured leg. He trained and trained until he gained the great satisfaction of being an outstanding champion. People who have felt the handicap of a poor education have set about acquiring a good one while others were complaining that they never had a chance to go to school. Others who could not get along with people studied wherein their failure lay and set about correcting their



being an exceptionally good student and getting his worth thereby. Doing well academically will help him make a good adjustment.

In this form of compensation we emphasize and exploit our best qualities, so to speak, in order to minimize the penalty of our poorest qualities. We do in life what we do in bridge—play our strong suits and slough the weak ones.

A girl, for example, may deviate considerably from prettiness. As the world is now constituted and probably always will be, not being pretty is a disadvantage. But the disadvantage can be overcome. Of course, every person should look as attractive as possible. But in our example the girl can compensate by being pleasing, developing a charming personality, and making situations attractive and comfortable. She can learn to excel in many things such as sewing, cooking, dancing, and many sports and activities. All this represents good compensation.

Sometimes a distinction is made between compensation and overcompensation. Compensation is a name for substitute behavior which has for its purpose the indirect achievement of satisfaction in place of failure, weaknesses, and frustration. Compensation may be either ineffective or effective behavior. Overcompensation is behavior which directly overcomes weakness and frustration but continues to an unhealthy extreme.

For example, a person who leads a bad life and is steeped in sin reforms and lives morally. So far so good, but he overcompensates by being intolerant of other people's behavior and oversensitive about his own. He becomes a perfectionist and extremist and develops reformer tensions. He has overcompensated and is less healthy than he would have been if he had not carried his reform so far.

Similarly, a person who has a poor physical start builds up his health and overcomes his weaknesses. That is a fine achievement, but he does not stop there. He dramatizes physical strength and vigor, engages in dangerous hunts, exposes himself to the extreme rigors of the outdoors, boxes, wrestles, and may even try his hand at a rodeo. He has made a passion of physical fitness, and this overcompensation nullifies some of the gains made in overcoming his original physical frailties.

A person should not compensate for a weakness that can be overcome or cured. Instead, attention should be directed to overcoming such a weakness. One of the greatest track stars of all time was weak physically and had an injured leg. He trained and trained until he gained the great satisfaction of being an outstanding champion. People who have felt the handicap of a poor education have set about acquiring a good one while others were complaining that they never had a chance to go to school. Others who could not get along with people studied wherein their failure lay and set about correcting their

personal weaknesses and developing favorable personalities. A teacher should try to show her pupils how to overcome their weaknesses. If a child is not up to par physically, she should enlist the help of the school nurse and the teacher of health and physical education. If a child has speech defects, she should correct them. If a child is a poor student, she should help him to learn how to study effectively so that he can be a better student.

Let us turn our attention to the teacher and her personality and methods of teaching. The way she teaches and her attitude toward her pupils show the degree of her knowledge of the subject matter and the amount of ease and friendliness in her relations with her pupils.

All of us know the authoritative teacher who does not like to be asked questions, who discourages discussion, and who requires definite, unqualified answers. There is little range of subject matter, and procedures are mechanical and held in a narrow groove by closely following the textbook. Such a teacher keeps strict control over questions and answers. She interprets curiosity on the part of the pupils as a testing of her knowledge and at once is on the defensive. This teacher does not know her subject matter well. Her authoritarian method defends her weakness and is a compensation for it.

This teacher is not sure of herself. Consciously or unconsciously she becomes arbitrary and authoritative in order to gain a control over the situation that she would not have in an atmosphere where curiosity and inquiry are encouraged. By her more dictatorial methods she acquires a feeling of ascendancy and superiority by placing herself over her pupils and subordinating them to her. Many teachers gain much satisfaction by placing themselves in a position of arbitrary authority where they dramatize themselves and acquire a feeling of worth. Possibly this is good for the teachers, although it is certain that it is not good for the pupils. A teacher should get her satisfaction from true worth, not by compensating for her weaknesses, which in any case seldom yields true satisfaction.

The teacher who has a thorough understanding of the subject and good personal qualities in dealing with her pupils is free of the complex of inadequacy. She has confidence in herself and consequently gives the pupils more liberty of thought and action, for she does not have to operate behind defense methods. She can act as a friend and helper of the pupils and can work cooperatively with them on projects. If unforeseen difficulties arise or if problems develop to which teacher and pupils do not know the answers, they can set about as investigators to find the answers, which is as it should be. The good teacher helps pupils develop experimental situations. She likes to see new problems come to the front, for she is a guide and learner working with her pupils, rather than a question-and-answer teacher who keeps

the lesson on the narrow plane where she knows the answers. The teacher's methods reflect to a considerable extent her scholarship and personality.

**Dreaming of a Better World, Daydreaming, Fantasy.** When Miss Jones called on Rollie, he was startled, seemed confused, groped a bit, and then asked to have the question repeated. We may ask what Rollie had been doing. He had been in another world, a world of his own making, a dreamworld. Rollie had been daydreaming, had been in the land of fantasy.

When the real world is so difficult and hard that we are discouraged by defeat and are unhappy, we escape by dreaming about what we want for ourselves and try to satisfy ourselves by fanciful imagination. We try to get for ourselves what we do not have in reality. The weak and tired fancy themselves strong and manly, the poor dream of riches, and the person who enjoys little success has himself adored in his fantasies because of his great triumphs. In the dreamworld a person overcomes his weaknesses and turns an unfriendly environment into one that is most satisfying.

It must not be assumed that entrance into the dreamworld is limited to children and adults who are frustrated because the ideas and exercises of their environment are too difficult for them and consequently distasteful. Bright children may escape from monotony by spending time in a world of their own making. Children with superior mentalities have more vivid imaginations, also, and consequently can build for themselves a very lively dreamworld, and many of them do so.

Many stories and tales are imaginative in nature and afford the reader an escape into glorious and happy situations. Motion pictures encourage people to identify themselves with the hero and heroine, and thus experience loveliness, romance, wealth, distinction, and conquest. A little pleasant escape may not be harmful, but habitual retreat from reality is bad. Much time is wasted thus, and when the person who has expanded his ego in fantasy gets back to the real world, he is less competent to face reality than ever before because he is further from it.

The teacher should try to identify her daydreamers, those pupils who are "absent though present." She should look for the most serious aspects of daydreaming—the conditions that cause daydreaming. What failures and disappointments does the daydreaming child experience, and why is he failing to get a sense of worth in reality? A careful study should be made of the child and special effort exerted to arouse his interest. The child who dreams may be of any capacity, but there is a likelihood that he finds the work too hard or too easy. In other words, the pupil is probably dull or bright, though not neces-

sarily so. If he is kept busy and experiences success and the approval of the teacher and his classmates, he will probably be cured of daydreaming.

**Conflict, Fighting within Oneself.** Jean will have to make up her mind about what college she is going to or whether or not she is going to any. She has to reach a decision and quit debating with herself.

Ada is in a ferment over whether or not she should accept Dick's proposal. She has been thinking about it for months. Ideas pro and con frequently go through her mind, and often she loses sleep over the problem. Sometimes she thinks she should marry Dick, and at other times she thinks she should not. She is never sure. She wants to get married, and still she is not sure that she wants to marry Dick.

Both these girls are having a conflict. One set of ideas fights another, and no particular ideas seem to dominate and win out. Some people experience such difficulties over many things. They have trouble making decisions and cannot decide what coat to buy, what to cook for dinner, whether to ask a certain girl for a date, what lesson to study, and so on. Matters that are ordinarily routine ones frequently raise indecision and conflict for them.

Here is Jimmie, who should be studying his lessons after supper. He knows this and wants to do so, too, for he is not satisfied with his marks in his classwork and examinations. But he has been asked to join the "gang" down at the usual corner, and thus he experiences a conflict. On one side, duty and a feeling that he must study his lessons tug at him; on the other, the desire to go and have fun with the boys fights for affirmative action. There is a cross fire of feeling and desires within him. Jimmie had better decide very soon what to do, or he will be in a bad emotional state. Of course, in this case a decision to work will produce a better feeling than a decision to play.

Much conflict centers around right or wrong. When a person has temptation before him, he is in conflict as to whether or not he should yield. A pupil knows that the teacher keeps some change in her desk. He begins thinking about it. On the one hand, he would like to have that money; on the other, he is restrained by his knowledge that it is wrong to steal and by the thought of the disgrace and punishment he will suffer if caught. He churns these thoughts over in his mind, and conflicting thoughts they are, firing back and forth. He suffers a good deal in this conflict. If he takes the money, he still suffers, because he did wrong. The only way to solve a conflict is to reach a decision consistent with what is right and good.

The persons who have conflicts are often those who are uncertain because they have feelings of inadequacy. They are worried about the outcome of their actions, and they procrastinate, putting off this

and that obligation. Not having confidence in themselves, they fear the consequences of any action and hardly know how to begin. The doing of this or that task is postponed, but the tasks remain to be done and present themselves almost continuously to annoy the person who postponed doing them. Uncertainty, conflicts, procrastination, and a cluttering up of one's activities develop emotional tensions that produce ineffectiveness and maladjustment.

The following example is that of a student who seems inhibited much of the time. Frances is so concerned about consequences that she retards herself in getting to work. She wonders whether she can do her lessons and whether she will get a poor mark if she cannot. Therefore she is slow in getting to work and wastes much time fumbling along, wondering if this or that is right. If an examination allows a choice among the questions to be answered, Frances is troubled by the thought that she is selecting the wrong questions and might do better on those which she has decided to omit. Feelings and emotions develop when she is faced with a problem, and consequently she cannot think clearly. Her judgment is impaired, and she makes many poor decisions and frets over them after they are made.

When the home and school environment are friendly and understanding, there is little likelihood that children will develop conflicts over everyday matters of ordinary concern. Of course, when there is a tendency toward behavior inconsistent with high ideals and right, it is to be hoped that conflict will set in and check such behavior. But it is better yet if a person has learned to make good decisions promptly and then goes ahead on the right course. The atmosphere of the school and home should not be a tense one, causing a child to feel that so many choices are life-and-death matters. It is the tensions, stresses, and strains that bring on a churning of the emotions or produce conflicts when options present themselves and choices have to be made. In a severe environment, children get the feeling that many relatively minor matters are of the utmost importance, and thus they soon learn to confront problems with tense feelings and conflicting questions—shall I, shan't I; yes and no; if I do, if I don't; what will happen if I do this, if I do that, and so on. Adults should permit children to make their own decisions. They should not scold them if they make what seem poor ones but in most instances should let them learn by observing the consequences of their own thinking.

To avoid conflicts, one should learn to face an issue and make decisions promptly. One should avoid the mistake of "passing the buck" or on the other hand of letting problems accumulate without considering them and if possible disposing of them. One should not make snap judgments, which are little better than guesses, but should consider the evidence, think the problem through, and then make up

his mind. It has been said that it is best not to dwell much on the reasons for a decision after it is made, for to do so merely entangles one further. Some decisions are certain to be poor ones, but there will be fewer of these if a person is not mentally bound by the cross-firing of his feelings and wants. When a poor decision is made, a person should not allow himself to be defeated by the mistake. He should move on to new problems and analyze his past mistakes with a view to profiting from them.

In a school where teachers and pupils cooperate in planning the work and making decisions about it, the children learn to face facts and arrive at conclusions. They learn to test their conclusions against subsequent experiences. The opportunity to make decisions affords a wholesome situation that contributes markedly to the mental health of children.

**Procrastination, Piling Up Troubles.** Procrastination is probably a symptom as well as a cause. Still, it is a symptom that one may attack directly as well as trying to effect a cure by getting at the causes. A person puts off his work and lets it pile up on him because he has not the drive to do his work with alacrity and despatch. Feeling inadequate and insecure, he lacks the needed confidence and eagerness that one should have for keeping ahead of his work instead of letting it get ahead of him. Probably, too, the procrastinator is thwarted and blocked by conflicts about what to do and not to do or about how to do what he has to do. All these manifestations are symptoms of maladjustment caused by inadequacies, insecurities, thwartings, and failures of one kind or another.

Ideally, a child or an adult should be helped with his adjustment and mental health so that he will not "let his anchor drag" or dissipate his energy in several directions but will have his full powers for well-coordinated efforts. Training of one's abilities, setting up attractive incentives, and channeling one's motives should reduce procrastination by increasing the volitional powers.

Getting at the causes of procrastination, which may be the causes also of laziness and much other ineffective behavior, should receive the first thought and effort of the teacher. She must try to guide her pupils so that they will work in an orderly and systematic way. With supervision and sympathetic control, children will work more effectively and will develop better work habits. Good work habits lead to improved achievement and success, which in turn are a stimulus to more effective work. In addition, if the teacher will try to improve her pupils' mental and emotional health in ways which have been suggested here and there in our discussions, she will do much to overcome laziness and procrastination in them.

**Temper Tantrums.** People generally lose their tempers when their pride is hurt or when they are prevented from getting what they

want. Temper centers in the basic wants or desires for personal worth, for personal freedom, and for freedom from pain but may also develop when other basic wants are denied.

A child becomes angry when restrained physically and psychologically. When little children are refused something such as a toy or a cookie, they sometimes lie down on the floor and go into a tantrum, holding their breath and kicking in an attempt to get their way. The teacher, especially the kindergarten or primary teacher, may encounter tantrums of this kind in her pupils. The best procedure is to pay no attention to a child having a temper tantrum. He is "acting up"; as a performer he wants an audience, but without one he will soon terminate his act. He will not injure himself, and if he is given no attention, the tantrum will dissipate itself, and he will learn that he gets neither attention nor his own way through such methods. He is likely to give up having temper tantrums when he learns that they are futile.

Temper is lost when one is minimized by insult or is blocked in getting what one wants. It is possible that getting angry served a purpose in the earlier development of man, for the emotion of anger called forth greater energy, which was needed for survival in a more rudimentary world. In our present world, bad temper arouses disapproval. It also upsets the mental processes; an angry person cannot think as clearly as he can when calm.

A person may have learned that anger helps him to get what he wants. A child often gets his way by flaring up. Usually those about one do not want any trouble, and so by being disagreeable or sharp or showing a flash of temper one may get his way. Such a situation sometimes develops in a class; when it does, the teacher should not let bad manners be rewarded favorably.

Teachers, too, must learn to be calm when conditions are most provoking. For example, the room may be too warm, the supervisor has paid a visit, the children are restless, their minds may seem most sluggish, and the teacher is tired. It is all too easy to scold, to be sarcastic and angry. One of the most unfavorable criticisms pupils have of some of their teachers is that they are "crabby" and sometimes lose their tempers. When a teacher feels that her emotional temperature is reaching the boiling point, she should call a halt temporarily, tell a story, take up different work, or perhaps walk down the hall to the water fountain for a cool drink.

Anger or bad temper is a rudimentary form of behavior and is seldom very effective. It is going back to childish ways of behaving and is a form of regression. The emotionalism of anger blocks clear thinking; it is hard to be sound and rational when one's mental processes are colored by the heat of emotion. Many bad mistakes are made by persons who are angry or bear a grudge; and, what is very

important, such persons are unhappy. Much that people do when they are angry they regret afterward. Teachers and pupils should work together and learn self-control even under the most difficult circumstances.

Rage or anger disposed primitive man to kill, as it does modern man, too. But the morbid effect of today's temper and anger is not on the other person so much as it is on the person who is angry. No matter how effectively we try to manage our affairs, we still become angry once in a while. Our problem is to manage our anger so that it does not "burn us up," as is commonly said. Anger needs to be controlled so that it does not hurt the one who is angry or anyone else either. If one is angry, he should not "hold it in" but should "blow off steam," not on someone else, but healthfully. He can do this by turning to some physical or mental activity. When anger is coming on, one should start out immediately on a walk, grab the lawn mower or snow shovel and start pushing or shoveling; or go to work on something that needs to be done. A person should study the annoyances, frustrations, and conditions that irritate him so that he can avoid becoming angry.

**Maladjustment, Psychosomatic Illness, and Malingering.** In general, mental and physical health are closely interrelated. The reader has probably heard the term *psychosomatic*, which refers to the relationship between psychological forces and the body. From experience we know how sick and tired we feel when we have been through a period of sharp emotional stress. Worries, anxieties, failures, grief, fears, bitterness, hates, conflicts, and repressions can so change the chemistry of the body that a person having these emotional stresses and strains develops a chemical composition of gastric juices which consumes the tissues of the stomach and causes a sore, or ulcer.

One can hardly overestimate the effect that the mental and emotional condition can have on the health. It is so important that it seems that the one really distinguishing characteristic of people who become very old is that they are relatively free from the tensions that accompany worry, anxiety, conflict, and other causes of stress and strain. Many ills of the flesh result from unhealthy mental and emotional conditions. The following is a list of some psychosomatic effects:

1. Chronic fatigue.
2. Intestinal disorders—diarrhea and constipation.
3. Digestive disorders—nervous stomach, vomiting, ulcers.
4. Hypertension—high blood pressure, heart trouble.
5. Urinary troubles—disease of prostate gland and of the female organs.
6. Headaches—migraine, dizziness.
7. Skin diseases—eczema and hives.
8. Bronchial asthma, sinus trouble, and allergies.



Many of the troubles and tensions which cause these illnesses probably have their roots in attitudes and habits which develop in childhood. Some of the illnesses such as headaches, fatigue, and stomach troubles which appear in early and middle adulthood may have their beginnings in the wear and tear and poisoning resulting from unhealthy mental and emotional states in childhood. An understanding of these psychosomatic effects may help the teacher and pupil deal more intelligently and sympathetically with their mental, emotional, and physical problems.

Illness, in turn, may be an escape from one's problems, which in the first place may have caused personal maladjustment. Thus, there can be a vicious circle—problems and unhappy experiences, failure and maladjustment, and illness in order to get away from troubles and problems. Feigning illness in order to avoid one's difficulties is known as malingering.

Illness not only is an escape from the hardness of reality but invites special attention. A sick child gains the sympathetic attention of his parents and friends. The doctor is called to attend him, and white-dressed nurses add to the importance of himself and his illness. Now the child is the center of attention, and his feeling of worth is increased.

A teacher should study carefully a child who gets sick because the work is hard and the tasks are unpleasant. A child who has headaches and vomiting spells and who seems to get satisfaction from his illness and from being delicate should be observed carefully. Such a child should be given a thorough physical examination, and if anything is wrong physically, it should be remedied. It may be found, however, that the child is perfectly well; in such a case he may be making a play for attention and attempting to escape tasks and duties that he does not like.

**Individual Differences in Personal Adjustment.** One person gets along well in the world, has few troubles, has a great deal of happiness, and so is healthy and wholesome. Another person, on the other hand, may seem to be engulfed in trouble, sensitive to life's situations, and always maladjusted. Those who are not sturdy enough to withstand the blows of even a simple environment are usually protected by being placed in a hospital.

These are the extremes, of course. Most adults and children fall between the extremes, most persons being halfway between. The degree of durability spoken of in the first example above consists not only in a resistance to the blows of life but also in a general all-round ability to get along in the world. For example, a child who has good native intelligence and good health is more likely to get along with less friction and difficulty than a child of lower intelligence and poor

health. The environment always tests an individual in terms of his ability to cope with it.

There are differences, of course, in people's ability to withstand the same failures, fears, and griefs, but the amount of these experiences is in turn determined by a person's capacity to deal with the problems that confront him. Most people, however, can get along if the environment is not too antagonistic to them. It is in this connection that the school has a particular responsibility in adjusting itself to the student. The work should not be too hard or too easy but should contribute to the well-being of the individual pupil.

All people fit somewhere in the wide range from the most sturdy to the most delicate, and the environment also has a wide range in the degree of its severity. One of our educational and psychological problems is to harmonize the individual and his environment in order to achieve maximum adjustment and personal happiness.

In a fifth grade, for example, is a fifteen-year-old girl who to all outward appearances is normal, being good-looking and healthy. But she is not endowed with enough mentality to do the schoolwork successfully. She has an I.Q. of 65, and although she is 4 and 5 years older than the average children of her grade, she does her lessons poorly. She feels uncomfortable because she is larger, older, and less successful than the other children, and she is developing a nonchalant, indifferent, and dreamy attitude. She is becoming depressed and tends to remain alone. It is possible that her condition will become serious.

Ideally, she should be in a special class with pupils of her own interests and capacities. An understanding teacher, specially trained for teaching dull, overage children, could keep the personalities of such pupils normal by giving them experiences that are suitable for them and that consequently will make them happy. It goes without saying that pupils of this kind will always find the world more difficult than will those with more endowment; nevertheless, if not injured permanently in school and if properly guided, they can find areas of activity where they will be successful and happy.

Every person has some complexes, repressions, conflicts, and worries, and everyone misbehaves, compensates, and rationalizes more or less. Everyone also has feelings of inferiority and escapes from the real world through fantasy. Everyone has some problems of mental hygiene, but fortunately most people do not have enough bad emotional and physiological states to influence behavior sufficiently to cause serious maladjustment. Again, of course, it is a matter of degree, ranging from the hopelessly unbalanced to those whose behavior is most effective and wholesome. A few get along in the world exceptionally well; most people are more or less well adjusted to their

busy, being negativistic, loud laughing and talking to attract attention, implying that one has strong connections and distinguished friends, and various other implications of being important are plus gestures. They are symptomatic of maladjustment because they indicate that a person is not really succeeding and therefore is trying to make a good impression in order to cover up his true inadequacy.

**Frustrations and Mental Hygiene.** John tries hard to make the football team, but no matter how hard he tries, he is never asked to put on a uniform the day of the game. He wants to be known as a member of the team and to take trips with the squad. He is stifled and thwarted, and trying harder does not seem to help. He feels inferior to his friends and is very discouraged.

Frustration, thwarting, or blockage develops from anxiously trying to satisfy our wants or from failure to achieve desired goals. The difficulty often lies in not having adequate capacities. Often the wants or goals are poorly chosen, and so the person is frustrated because he fails to satisfy wants or reach goals which he has erroneously set up for himself. One child wants to be the leader in every game, another wants to have the highest mark in every subject, a few children want spending money enough to satisfy their many whims, and many high-school students plan for professional careers for which they have not enough capacity. Many are frustrated because they want too much or want that which is wrong for them. Each person has certain basic wants, needs, and goals, and if he cannot gain reasonable satisfaction from satisfying them, he will feel some degree of painful frustration.

The following are some examples of frustrations of both children and adults:

1. Not having the money and means felt to be necessary.
2. Not succeeding enough in one's work.
3. Not having friends.
4. Not having much fun.
5. Not being chosen for a team, club, or society.
6. Being frequently sick while wanting very much to be well.

**What Are the Reactions of Frustrated People?** Reaction to frustration usually takes several forms:

1. Accepting the frustration and becoming subdued.
2. Becoming hostile and aggressive.
3. Overcoming the conditions that cause the frustration.
4. Avoiding frustrating conditions or escaping from them.

1. There are those who accept the yoke of their frustration. They bend their necks to conditions which block them and submit humbly and meekly. They accept conditions as they are and tolerate their lot

in life. The school child, for example, mildly accepts his failures and goes along quietly from day to day. When a person is subdued by his frustrations, he adjusts to a lower level and conceivably can get along if his aspirational level does not rise again above his powers of achievement.

2. There are those whose reactions are the opposite of the ones just described. They become hostile. Their feelings of hostility are against the people and things that frustrate them and also against society in general. Thus we say that frustration leads to hostility and aggression.

In this idea of frustration-hostility-aggression we probably have an explanation for a considerable amount of delinquency. The youth because of his experiences feels economically insecure, does not acquire a feeling of importance and thus feels inadequate, does not have the fun and excitement which he craves, does not have the freedom and individuality he needs, and does not obtain social security in peer groups and from a healthful family life. Because of this frustration he has many tensions and is unhappy. He strikes out to satisfy his wants and to relieve his tensions. He has a conscious and unconscious hostility toward society and acts aggressively toward it. Thus his delinquent behavior develops.

3. Frustration may lead to overcoming the conditions which frustrate one. Instead of becoming hostile, a person becomes determined and works hard to overcome the poverty, disordered home life, difficult social life, and various handicaps and difficulties that frustrate him. This is the kind of behavior characteristic of those who are stimulated by frustrating conditions and rise far above them. It recalls the idea of those who are on the grindstone: some are worn down by it, and some take a high polish. Thus some are improved by frustrations because they respond to the blockage by overcoming it and in doing so become strong and vigorous.

4. Some who are frustrated get away from the conditions that frustrate them. The unhappy boy runs away from home; the unsuccessful student quits school; the disgusted employee changes jobs; a number of people break off from a club and start a new one. In any number of ways people try to escape from the circumstances which thwart them and seek new situations where they will be successful and happy. A frustrated person gives up the activity which does not give him satisfaction and takes up something else that does. A person who has not the abstract capacity for a university engineering degree may become an electrician or a railroad engineer. A child fails and fails in school, so he quits school as soon as he can and takes a job suitable to his capacities.

In talking about the mental hygiene and adjustment of the pupil, we stress that he should experience success. We say that the work

should be organized and arranged so that every student can succeed a reasonable proportion of the time. This is another way of saying that a student should not be frustrated unduly in the school. He should learn to work assiduously and to try hard, but then his efforts should be rewarded with satisfactory achievement.

**Tensions, Their Formation and Release.** A child is under strain over an examination, and he is in suspense until he gets the results. He is under tension. When the examination has been completed, probably some of the tension is reduced, especially if he was able to answer most of the questions. If he receives a satisfactory mark in the examination, the suspense ends and his tensions are released. If the mark is unsatisfactory, his tensions will not be fully released but with time will gradually disappear.

When tension, strain, stress, tightness, or suspense is released, a person becomes relaxed and feels better. Being tense is the opposite of being relaxed. Frustrations, worries, being behind in one's work, laboring long hours, and having no fun are accompanied by tensions. Unhappiness in general is woven from painful tensions. When happy, a person is relaxed and buoyant, or, probably, the opposite is true—when he is relaxed and buoyant, he is happy.

Tensions develop and are released. A lesson has to be done, and the pupil develops tension over it. He does the lesson, and the tension disappears. There is going to be a children's party. Various children experience tension before they know whether or not they will be asked. When they are asked, the tensions go away. Tensions accompany fatigue; a person rests or sleeps, and these tensions are released. A child has a strong want to play; he plays and releases many tensions. When one is hungry, he eats; when one has a pain, he gets relief; when one has work to do, he does it; when one has been standing, he sits down; when one has been sitting down, he gets up and walks; when one is lonesome, he visits with friends. Thus in many ways one is doing things to overcome his tensions.

Much of life consists of tension cycles. The tensions form and are reduced, and they form again and must be reduced, as is evidenced by fatigue and rest, hunger and eating, body stress and change of position, feeling for status and success and recognition, and so on. Physical and psychological tensions are followed by reduction and release, and then they build up to be reduced again. This cycle repeats and repeats itself. If the tensions, stresses, strains, and suspense are not reduced or released, then poor emotional and mental health develops. Thus, to a considerable extent, the achievement of good mental health lies in the ability to reduce and release tensions.

Tensions center in our wants, needs, urges, and goals. When we achieve our goals, we are satisfied and relaxed, but if we do not, we are under stress and strain.

Tensions are also at the core of our energy, drive, and volition. Just as it is necessary for a clock, if it is to run, to be wound up so that the spring is tight, so it is necessary for a person, if he is to accomplish anything, to be "wound up" for the tasks to be done. Sustained effort and attention are accompanied by tensions, but they serve as motive forces. If one is too tense, however, one becomes confused and erratic, in a bad emotional state and ineffective. Neither does a clock run if it is wound up too tightly. A person must have some release from the tensions that accompany concentrated effort, and this results from success and progress and from rest and recreation periods.

Tensions are always building up, and they need to be reduced or resolved. If not, the individual will be under the stress and strain of many tensions which will scramble his motives, sap his energy, distort his thinking, and cause unhappiness. Consequently it is necessary to learn how to control one's tensions in order to maintain good mental and emotional health.

**Nervous Habits and Neurotic Tendencies.** Sometimes we may be disturbed when we notice how "worked down" some children's and adults' finger nails are. This biting the nails down to the quick is a symptom of maladjustment. The person who bites his nails so that they are subnormally short probably has tensions caused by unsatisfied wants. Conceivably there may be a nutritional deficiency, but more likely a frustration of one sort or another causes tensions which are partly although unsatisfactorily released by nail biting. Consequently nail biting is referred to as a nervous habit and as indicating a neurotic tendency.

Other symptoms of the tensions caused by not getting along satisfactorily and usually referred to as nervous or neurotic tendencies are vomiting, sleeplessness, tics, frequent crying, excitability, enuresis, and overconcern about the usual day's happenings and experiences. When the teacher observes some of these nervous symptoms, she should ask, "What causes the child to have these neurotic tendencies?"

Probably the trouble lies in the following places or situations:

1. The home. The child may be overpressured or erratically controlled. Perhaps he is an overprotected pet or the unfavored black sheep of the family. Possibly the parents are causing the home to disintegrate by a disharmony that churns him emotionally. In general, the neurotic tendency in the child may be caused by some condition in the home that leaves him tense and unhappy.

2. The school. The child may not get along with the other children and also may be uncooperative with the teacher. Conceivably he does not like his lessons, is disturbed by the marks he gets, and dislikes school so much that he is anxiously waiting for the day when he can quit.

3. The child himself. Let us look at the child's equipment. What is

his mental and physical equipment? Is he bright enough to cope with his tasks and problems, or does he have too much mental equipment for what the school guides him to do? His health and physical condition may be in considerable part the cause of his maladjustment. Attention should be paid to lameness, subnormal hearing or sight, lack of energy, marked over- or undersize, or any physical condition that makes him feel inadequate or inferior. Sometimes poor health is the result of poor adjustment rather than the cause of it.

It is not intended that the teacher be psychologist and case worker, but she should think in terms of cause and effect or of illness and symptom. Most likely what the teacher sees in the behavior of some of her pupils are effects and symptoms of inadequacies, frustrations, and tensions which distort their behavior. But if she understands what it is that underlies children's nervous habits and neurotic tendencies, then she can do everything possible to adjust the environment and get trained assistance in helping her pupils overcome their problems. Thus she will be doing what she can to get at the causes and will avoid the futility of treating the symptoms.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

On the average, 1 out of 20, or 5 per cent, of the population goes to a hospital because of serious personal maladjustment or mental illness. One out of 10, or 10 per cent, will have serious enough troubles to need psychiatric help. Nearly all persons have some personality problems of a more or less serious nature.

Worry, or overconcern, is related to fear and insecurity. Reasonable concern is a prerequisite to achievement, but typical worry, or overconcern, results in unwholesome tensions and loss of effectiveness. Most worries are baseless. Children worry most over school and home situations.

Complexes are ideas, thoughts, and experiences which are tinged or colored by feeling and emotion. Complexes distort thinking and behavior and cause periods of unhappiness. A common complex is the inferiority complex.

Conscience is a sensitivity to and consciousness of right and wrong. Guilt complexes are strong persistent feelings of guilt and unworthiness and are a symptom of an oversensitive conscience. The conscience should be a sound guide to healthy, wholesome behavior.

Conflict consists in a struggle of thoughts, ideas, and wants. Conflict causes emotional troubles and renders a person less effective in dealing with life's situations.

Temper tantrums are fits of temper or sharp feeling. The emotion of anger is unhealthful, and trying to get one's way by a show of temper is infantile. It is a form of regression.

Much of our illness is caused by the effect of unhealthful emotions

on the body; that is, it is *psychosomatic*. Sometimes a child becomes ill to avoid the rigors of life. The relations of emotions to health, and health to the emotions, are reciprocal. Persons differ in their resistances to the rigors of life, some being much more durable than others.

Most of the mechanisms that have been discussed may be described as escape or defense mechanisms. By escape mechanisms we mean the methods used to get away from the realities of life; by defense mechanisms, the methods used to protect one's ego and feelings of worth.

Repression consists in more or less unconsciously pushing complexes into the subconscious or bottling them up. Suppression consists in consciously keeping one's problems secret. Complexes cause trouble when stored up and influence feelings and behavior unfavorably.

The truth hurts, but confession and discussion are "good for the soul." Thus catharsis is healthful.

Rationalization consists in superficially sound but fundamentally untrue reasons or excuses. A person rationalizes to defend the self and maintain his personal worth.

Sublimation, diversion, and substitute activities are helpful in reducing tensions.

Compensation is behavior which serves to cover up or make up for inadequacies. It can be either effective or ineffective. Overcompensation is behavior which overcomes weaknesses directly but is carried to unhealthy extremes.

When it can be done, it is best to overcome weaknesses and reach a stage of healthy equilibrium.

Fantasy, or daydreaming, consists in building a dreamworld in which a person obtains for himself what he fails to get in the real world. The evil of daydreaming is that it takes one farther and farther from the real world and thus causes maladjustment.

Procrastination results from inadequacy, uncertainty, and conflict; and tensions pile on tensions. A person should plan and then plow into his work and finish it with dispatch.

Frustrations, tensions, and nervous habits are caused by failure to satisfy one's wants, and this in turn results from a lack of capacity, unfavorable home and school environments, and too high or too low aspirations.

#### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Procrastination has been described as the thief of time. Discuss it, however, as a thief of emotional balance.

2. A person should find out what is true and what is real and try to live accordingly. Comment.

3. Does it seem that many of the problems of mental and emotional health center on achieving or failing to achieve ego value, status, or a feeling of personal worth? Discuss.



4. "I could get as high marks as anybody if I'd try," said Mervin, "but I've got better use for my time than studying the teacher's lessons." Discuss this statement.

5. What ill effects are caused by repression and suppression? Maybe some suppression is both necessary and desirable. Comment.

6. List and discuss the matters that cause children to worry.

7. In terms of mental health and hygiene, what are escapes and defenses?

8. How can one control his temper?

9. A person should think over his problems, then reach a decision and go ahead on that basis. Minor matters should be decided quickly, and problems or work to be done should not be allowed to accumulate. Discuss these statements.

10. Show how guilt complexes may be harmful. What is a mature conscience?

11. Explain how unpleasant complexes can distort thinking and can also be harmful.

12. Give some examples of projection.

13. Daydreaming is probably a symptom of personal inadequacy. Explain.

14. What are good ways of handling tensions?

15. Explain how the inferiority complex is the result of experiences and how it influences behavior.

16. Some of our troubles are real, and some are not. Explain and illustrate.

17. What are the evidences of being well adjusted, and how is adjustment achieved?

18. What can a teacher do to reduce overconcern on the part of his pupils?

19. Here is a twelve-year-old student who seems to have a free spirit—he is expressive, laughs freely, makes friends easily, works hard, and plays hard. What is your explanation?

20. Mary is greatly troubled by her wrongdoings, which are actually not wrongdoings at all or at most are minor ones. Discuss.

21. Give illustrations of undesirable compensation and also of good compensation.

22. What illnesses of children may be psychosomatic? Of adults?

23. Nell pokes along and diddles and daddles. What makes her that way, and what can be done to help her?

24. What does it mean to "save face" or "lose face"?

25. The speaker said, "Give us the good old school where the pupils sat in their seats and worked silently. They learned how to work, learned self-control and how to keep their troubles to themselves." Comment.

26. What are the frustrations of grade-school and high-school students? What are the best ways of dealing with them?

27. Jim has had many ego-hurting experiences in his childhood and youth. He does not actually recall any of them, but something seems to be coloring his feelings. He seems unresponsive and unable to be cordial and friendly with others. Discuss.

28. A teacher said, "The mental health of our pupils is no concern of ours, because people usually don't have serious personal disorders until they are out of school." Comment.

## 7. Healthy Behavior and Personal Adjustment

### *Helping Students Achieve Sound Personalities*

**What to Look For.** What may be the effects on a person if his work is too easy or too hard? What can be done to adjust schoolwork for children of varying abilities?

Learn why regular habits and a well-organized program of work, play, sleep, eating, etc., are conducive to better mental health and personal adjustment.

You may be surprised when you note how overprotecting, babying, and spoiling children affect their work habits and achievement.

Give special consideration to the problem of how children can learn to associate with each other and with adults in a normal and healthful manner.

Note how the teacher's attitudes and methods influence the mental health of her pupils.

The relationship of work, fatigue, and rest to mental health is discussed, and the importance of a well-balanced program is stressed.

Several methods are suggested for improving mental and emotional health; observe that they involve doing, thinking, and talking.

Note that it is not enough to be able to identify or diagnose problem tendencies, but that something of a remedial nature should be undertaken, although such difficulties are much harder to treat effectively than to diagnose.

Several factors such as mental ability, physical qualities and handicaps, and socioeconomic status are discussed in relation to mental health and personal adjustment; the reader should understand how they influence mental health either favorably or unfavorably.

It is pointed out that the individual should not be lost sight of in the study of trends and general relationships and that each child should be considered individually.

It is pointed out that good school discipline is achieved through successful democratic and cooperative methods and that the tradi-

tional autocratic methods do not develop capacity for self-discipline and are not sound in terms of emotional and mental health.

The point is made that a teacher's ability to control her pupils has its roots in her basic qualities and capacities but that following the suggestions which are given should be helpful.

Note how teachers deal with their pupils' behavior problems according to whether they use positive methods or not.

Behavior problems and problem tendencies differ in their effect on the personal development of the child and in respect to the seriousness of the behavior that may follow. The reader should learn the relative seriousness of various forms of misbehavior and the principles and reasons for the classification of various problems according to seriousness.

Try to understand the kind of behavior that is healthy and is evidence of good adjustment.

**Introduction.** Wallace Norton is a healthy, happy high-school boy. He is friendly with his teachers and classmates and gets along well at home. He will not be the valedictorian, but he classifies as a good student. He participates in school activities and is known as a good fellow. Wallace likes people, and people like him. He dates a few girls, who consider him a desirable type of boy friend. In general, Wallace is a well-adjusted high-school boy in good mental health.

On the other hand, Rudy Pyle, a classmate of Wallace's, is a mal-adjusted boy in poor mental health. He is barely a fair student, and he feels that his teachers do not treat him justly. He is antagonistic toward his teachers and jealous and suspicious of his classmates. Rudy is quick to find fault and rarely speaks well of anyone. He probably has a feeling of inadequacy and general insecurity.

Rudy worries about almost everything, and little things upset him. School activities interest him very little. Some of Rudy's classmates call him shy because he tends to go off by himself and remain quiet. Others say he is unsocial. Rudy will leave school as soon as he graduates and possibly before, even though he does not know what job he would like to have.

**Harmony of the Individual and His Work.** Work is a big factor in life. One is not very old before he is given some tasks to do. The school years are filled with tasks and duties which test the mind almost hourly. The consequent successes and failures control our mental hygiene to a large extent. In adulthood, happy living depends considerably on having a good job.

The person equipped with a good mind and body is prepared to cope successfully with the problems that face him and consequently is likely to be in good mental health. He has the qualities that will help him adjust to other people. His good mind and body are no guarantee

that he will adjust well, but at least he is not handicapped for doing so. On the other hand, the person who is dull mentally will find the world harder to get along in. The many rebuffs and failures of life he experiences tend to induce poor mental health and maladjustment.

Studies have revealed that children of low mental abilities, those with I.Q.'s under 90, tend considerably more toward maladjustment than do other children. In the adult world there are more criminals, beggars, prostitutes, and insane and in general more socially and economically inadequate persons among those with I.Q.'s under 90 than among those who are brighter. Intelligence is a big factor in adjustment. This is obvious enough, for a person who can think better gets along better and so is better adjusted.

There are, of course, many with enough general intelligence to get along well who for other reasons do not do so. There are also many with limited intelligence who do get along in the world even though they are sailing rough waters in a very small boat, for they often find a calmer surface where they can stay afloat without too much trouble.

A person is not in harmony with his work if it is too hard or too easy. If it is too hard or if the student has too little capacity, excessive failure is experienced; if it is too easy or if the student has too high ability for his tasks, the work is dull and deadening. Children of a given age vary greatly in abilities and interests, with the result that they differ in the amount of success and failure they experience. When the work is too hard, the frustration and failure that pupils experience cause them to develop feelings of inferiority. Their mental health and personal adjustment are impaired, and they may display unsocial behavior.

The following is an illustration of the effect of the blocking that hard lessons cause: A teacher asked a boy, who annoyed the class a good deal by his bad behavior, the reason for his conduct; he answered, "I can't get geography. I try and try. First I get warm, then I get hot, and then everything busts open."

It has been explained in a previous chapter that children who fail in their work often compensate by being mischievous. As problem cases they attract the attention of the teacher and gain recognition from their fellows, and sometimes admiration, for their bravado.

Others try to escape by withdrawing as much as possible. This is very serious, for a child's development is greatly retarded by withdrawal from the activities about him. It may also happen that a fearful retiring person may break out in the most unexpected manner, for in the secrecy of his own private world he may acquire vicious ideas and behavior patterns.

The marking and promotional system stigmatizes pupils. Those who get failing marks on their report cards and are retarded are very likely

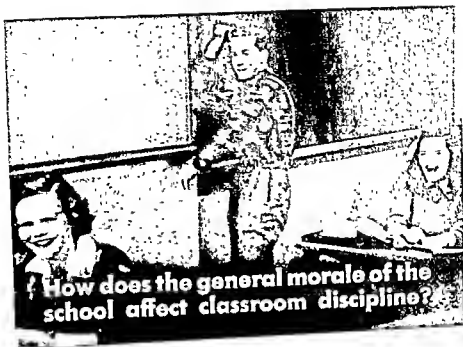
to develop behavior-problem tendencies, and a large number of them do so. In many schools there are children who are retarded 1 to as much as 4 years or more. Visualize, for example, fourteen-year-old boys or girls in the fourth grade with children who hardly reach to their shoulders. Of course, the big children hate such a situation, and they skip school, violate the state compulsory-attendance law by staying out of school, or leave as soon as the law will allow them to do so. They have tasted little but failure and humiliation, and they leave with a permanent distaste for school and learning.

It is doubtful that children should be failed of promotion even once. They should be kept with children of their own age and size so that they will be in a suitable social group. When possible, classifying children into ability groups may help. When this cannot be done, the dull and slow-learning child should be given special work which he can do within the group to which he belongs socially. Failure and retardation do not improve the learning ability of the child. That has been thoroughly proved long ago. The mental health of the child is a first consideration, and the teacher and school can afford to be somewhat unconventional and forget the so-called "standards of achievement" in order to help him to be happy and successful within the framework of his capacities and interests. Keep a child in his natural social group and give him work he can do successfully, and he will achieve what is for him maximum personal and academic development.

The schoolwork may be too easy, for very high intelligence can be a factor in maladjustment, too. It is a common notion, for example, that geniuses and very gifted persons are maladjusted. They are occasionally, it is true, although not so often as is commonly thought. In the first place, a small proportion of the very highly gifted may inherit a nervous, glandular, and organic system that predisposes them to instability. Also, it is conceivable that a very gifted person is sufficiently out of line with other, more ordinary people so that he is maladjusted in his relation to them.

In school, for example, the very bright child may be bored with the mediocrity of his companions and also with his lessons. He will turn to his own interests and on becoming absorbed in them may soon be regarded as different from other children. Moreover, a very bright person may see so many weaknesses and defects in the world and its people that he criticizes sharply or turns to a world of his own making. This may result in poor mental health and maladjustment.

In this tendency of the bright child to enter his own world when school does not interest him is the answer to the statement that some very brilliant men were dull students. They were not dull at all; they



**How does the general morale of the school affect classroom discipline?**



**What can you do for the isolated child?**

were so bright that they found school boring, and their lack of interest was interpreted by the teacher as dullness.

A bright child will not be alert unless the school stimulates him, which it will do if the work is new to him and up to his capacities. When it is not, the bright child loses interest.

Such was the case with Harold, a sixth-grade boy who had an I.Q. of 146 and therefore would usually be classified as the brightest pupil in about 400. He did not get good marks; in fact, he just barely passed. He was not interested in reciting, and his written work was hastily and carelessly done and was seldom completed. The teachers called him a dreamer, and a few thought him dull. For all teachers he was a problem.

He was under special observation and study, and in a class the observer noted that he failed to define declarative, exclamatory, and interrogative sentences when the teacher asked him to. After class he was asked by the observer to give these definitions, and he gave perfect answers. When asked why he had not done this in class, he said, "This is the third time in my school experience that we have been asked to define the different kinds of sentences. I could do it the first time, and I see no point in doing it again."

Bright children are often problem cases, as dull children are, although the problems are of a different nature. A study which revealed that dull children had the largest number of behavior-problem tendencies showed that bright children had the second largest, and average children the fewest. This indicates that the school environment particularly and the general environment to some degree are more suitable for the average child and less suitable for the dull and the bright. The teacher should discover her bright children at the start of the term. The intelligence-test results will indicate the intellectual levels of the individual pupils, and the teacher should evaluate these results in terms of the behavior of her pupils. The bright pupil should have special opportunities afforded him, such as good supplementary books and considerable chance to work independently.

Again we must hasten to point out that very bright children turn out very well in adult life. It is true that some studies indicate that, in school, bright children do show problem tendencies next to the dull in frequency, but the records of gifted children in college and in adult life show that they get along very successfully. There are fewer criminals, vocationally unsuccessful, and emotionally disordered among adults who were gifted school children than among those of less capacity. Gifted children live up to their potentiality.

It must be remembered that mental capacity is not a single factor that operates consistently to influence mental hygiene and adjustment.

People of all mental abilities have their problems of personality and behavior, but those of less than average intelligence have the greatest number. Mental ability must be considered in connection with personality and adjustment.

In speaking of work being too hard or too easy and in emphasizing the importance of success, it is not contended that a child should experience all success and no failure. It is impossible to control a child's environment so that he will succeed always. Actually, the general idea of whether or not a child should be successful in all that he attempts is of considerable psychological importance. For the best personal development and for the achievement of a wholesome personality a child should taste failure when he has not earned success. If a child has not done his best or if he has been indifferent, he does not deserve success. In general, the work should be adjusted to the capacity of the child so that when he tries sincerely he is rewarded with success.

Life should be neither too difficult nor too easy. If it is too hard, continued defeat results in a feeling of uselessness; if too easy, enthusiasm is dulled and efforts become languid and aimless. A person maintains the best-balanced personality if successful most of the time, but occasional grapple with a problem that he cannot solve until he is given help can be healthful also.

**Definite and Orderly Methods of Working and Playing.** One of the best friends of mental hygiene is good and regular habits. Much in life depends on regularity and system. One child can go about the day's activities, from getting up in the morning to going to bed at night, with complete dispatch and with no delay or lost motion. Other children waste time here and fritter it away there. They are not sure whether they should do this or that and are uncertain and confused much of the time. The lack of definite and orderly habits is conducive to bad mental health.

Here was James, a pupil who seemed always to forget to bring his books to school. His pencil and paper were often where he could not find them, he did not know what to do next, and apparently he could not "get down to work." He was very unreliable.

On the other hand, Ann Marie had a definite program for the day. She got up at a given time. She practiced the piano for an hour before breakfast, which she had each morning at the same time. Throughout the rest of the day she proceeded systematically with very little lost motion. Every important activity had a definite time and place. As a result, she accomplished a great deal, was happy, and had ample time left over for play and recreation.

One should not be a devoted slave to habit but should have definite procedures in order to accomplish his work and maintain his peace of



mind. The teacher can make an important contribution to her own mental health and that of her pupils if she is systematic and orderly herself. She should be clear and definite in giving directions or making assignments. The pupils should know exactly what the problems are that face them. When a pupil says, "I don't know where we are at and what we should do," an unwholesome situation exists. It is desirable that the teacher not be dictatorial and autocratic but that her leadership be so clear and positive that the pupils go about their work in an orderly manner.

#### **Overprotection of the Child and Maladjustment in the Home.**

One of the factors that we have considered in relation to mental hygiene and personal adjustment is the situation where life is too easy or where one is able to do all one's tasks without much effort. The phrase "all success and no failure" was used in this connection, although in a true sense the doing of tasks that are too easy for one is not real success.

Related to this factor in mental hygiene is the factor of overprotection of children by their parents. In an attempt to help their children, parents will baby them and overprotect them from the experiences they normally would have. Such children, indulged and pampered, are sometimes described as being raised in a hothouse environment.

Overprotective parents keep their children from playing much with other children, especially if the playing is vigorous. When their children have a dispute with others or come home crying, such parents take the side of their own children whether they are right or wrong. Overprotected children have few, if any, duties to perform; figuratively speaking, they are raised on bonbons and never learn to stand alone. In short, such children are spoiled, with the consequence that they are overdependent on their parents and never become emotionally mature.

A study was made of the work habits and social adjustment of children from homes (1) in which the children were babied and (2) in which they were well adjusted and treated wholesomely. These homes were well known, for a close relationship with the parents was maintained, and extensive records were kept.

Included here were two groups of children:

1. Those babied by the parents, with records as follows: "youngest child of family and is spoiled"; "child is indulged and pampered."
2. Home well adjusted: "ideal home with interested and understanding parents"; "home normal and cooperative."

The children were evaluated according to their work habits as being good or poor. The results are startling. Two sets of records were used.

On the basis of these it was found that of the babied or overprotected children about three-fourths to four-fifths had poor work habits and thus only one-fifth to one-fourth had good records. But with children from the wholesome, well-adjusted homes the situation was almost exactly the opposite: about three-fourths had good work habits, and only one-fourth had poor records.

These children were also evaluated for the effectiveness of their social adjustment, and about the same differences were found between the babied and the wisely treated children. About 80 per cent, or four-fifths, of the babied children made a poor social adjustment or did not get along very well with others, but a little over 70 per cent of the children from well-adjusted homes were also well adjusted socially and a little less than 30 per cent were not.

Such findings are most important in showing the effect of the home on the work habits and social maturity of children. These data show convincingly that the home contributes most significantly to the work habits, social maturity, and general mental hygiene of the child. When the teacher is trying to understand the child, she should look to the home for an explanation of why a child is as he is. Both the heredity and the home environment of the child will help the teacher interpret his behavior.

The babied children's poor work habits required that the teacher encourage and supervise them and also exert pressure in order to induce them to work. The babied children did not work up to their capacities, and their progress was slow. Their work was done carelessly, and their methods of work were irregular. This applied to the schoolwork of 60 to almost 100 per cent of the babied children but was true of the schoolwork of less than 25 per cent of those who came from well-balanced homes.

**The School and Personal Relationships.** The school, of course, is only one part of the child's environment. The home has influenced the child for 5 or 6 years before the school has any influence on him. The child has playmates outside of school and home, and they influence him, too.

Mental health and hygiene are concerned also in how boys and girls get along with each other. Friendly and natural relationships between members of opposite sexes is a healthful symptom. When a girl and boy are ill at ease in each other's presence, we have a symptom of maladjustment. It may not be serious, but attention should be directed toward bringing about relationships that are free of shyness.

In connection with the problem of training children in cordial and wholesome personal relationships, free of feelings of personal inadequacy, it should be noted that talking to and lecturing the individual about his weakness will be of little help and in fact may even

increase his inadequacy. But teachers and parents can help by teaching children what to do in social situations and particularly by affording them social experiences. There is a body of knowledge pertaining to social etiquette and manners that children should learn; acquiring that knowledge and applying it in actual situations will put many children at ease. Some children feel uneasy in social situations because they have not learned certain mechanics of behavior. Anything the teacher can do to inform young people what to do in social situations will contribute to their mental health and social adjustment.

A program of physical education beginning in the kindergarten or the first grade and continuing through the grades will develop children socially. Such a program provides that they play together under supervision, that they learn to talk to each other and give and take, and that they have common interests and so acquire the ability to deal with each other and get along in a group.

In many schools the opportunity for training the pupils to get along in a group and with members of the opposite sex is lost. Worse still, social isolationism becomes a habit. This was true in a school of about 350 elementary-school pupils which had a good playground and gymnasium, both near the school building. Before school began in the morning and during recesses and the noon hour, the children were not on the playground. A few wandered aimlessly in and out of the gymnasium. Some ran back and forth through the halls, up and down the stairs, and in and out of the toilet rooms. Others stood in the corners, showing each other their jackknives and toy pistols. A few scampered about the school grounds. There was no organized group activity, no learning to play together, no development of wide friendships and team play. There was a minimum of learning how to get along together in a group.

It would have been easy to organize the activities of these children into group games. The children who were transported by busses to the school from different parts of the neighboring rural section could have become better acquainted. They would have learned to get along in a group instead of splitting off into little segments as they did.

Strong competition in games involving all the children is often not good for mental hygiene, for only the best succeed, and many feel inadequate. When children are definitely ranked for their playing abilities, many of the less able ones will lose interest and drop out. The games and activities of the school should be for the fun there is in them and for the health and social development of the children.

**The Teacher, a Friendly Atmosphere, and the Mental Health of the Pupils.** One of the chief concerns of the pupil is about his relationship with the teacher and how he is getting along in school. The worries and fears and the stresses and strains of the school child con-

stitute bad mental health, which is not conducive to the development of a healthful personality.

The teacher can do much for the mental health of the pupils, for she creates the atmosphere that exists in the classroom. If she is friendly, sincere, and sympathetic and encourages her children, fills in their weaknesses, and expands their strengths, she will develop a classroom atmosphere in which the shy will be less sensitive, the inadequate will feel more able, and the strong will grow wholesomely.

The good teacher shows her appreciation of the efforts of her pupils by praising sincere work, by recognizing improvement, and by never allowing to go unnoticed the contributions that individual children make to the progress of the class. Such a teacher can help satisfy the wants of her students for worth, for security, for activity, and for freedom.

Usually the poor teacher is one who teaches neither the pupils nor the subject matter well. She leaves her pupils dissatisfied, thwarted, upset, and overconcerned. They do not master the subject matter satisfactorily and are frequently in a state of confusion.

There are other teachers who in the traditional sense are good teachers of subject matter but who are not good for the students because of ill effects on their mental hygiene. Such a teacher was Miss A., a seventh-grade teacher, who was a taskmaster and "got the work done." Assignments were definite, and during recitation the achievement of the pupils was thoroughly tested by the teacher's questioning. Examinations and written work covered the facts of the lesson and were carefully marked. There was nothing slipshod about Miss A. Her discipline was strict, she was stern and sharp, and "one of her looks" would freeze almost any child in his seat. She was not imaginative but got results by "hammering away" at the lessons and pupils.

Children in her room were not happy. It was in her grade that the older boys dropped out of school. The atmosphere of the room was not conducive to good mental hygiene. Even though parents did not like the effects of Miss A. on the personality of their children, they did concede that perhaps they were getting a thorough training in subject matter.

Teachers should be relaxed in dealing with their pupils. Friendliness will accomplish much more than authoritarianism. A teacher who has the good will of her pupils is contributing to their emotional well-being and also has a relationship with her pupils that is conducive to their learning to think better and learn more.

It is said that teachers should teach children and not subjects. They must do both. Good education is not a matter of the one or the other. A teacher can be so dominated by a desire to teach the subject-matter content that she does not sense what she and her methods are doing

to the feelings and attitudes of the children. The teacher should be effective not only in equipping the children with skills and knowledge but also in developing them emotionally. It is also possible for her to be skillful not only in developing the children's ability to get along with others, to overcome their fears, and to be happy but also in teaching the subject matter. In practice, subject-matter teaching and child teaching can go hand in hand; and it is more usual for a teacher to be successful in both than in one alone. One can be distrustful of an educational situation in which, figuratively and literally, the pupils are on one side of the desk and the teacher on the other. If children feel that the school situations are fair and impartial, that working diligently is worth while and satisfying, and that the teacher is their friend rather than a taskmaster, one may be reasonably sure that they are in an environment conducive to good mental hygiene and good personal development.

**Work, Fatigue, Rest, and Mental Health.** A child may be tired for many reasons. His diet may not be good, being too starchy and sugary, for example, and deficient in vitamins and minerals. He may be going to bed too late at night and not getting enough sleep.

It is possible that his schoolwork keeps the child highly keyed up emotionally. Such an emotional state induces fatigue. But usually a child is not overinterested in his work, and taut states are not ordinarily the result of such emotional keying up. Yet it can happen that very stimulating teachers overstimulate their pupils.

Because in some instances this is so, a psychologist suggested that it might be desirable for students during the day to have one dull, uninteresting teacher. Then they would pay only indifferent attention, their minds would wander, and they would have a period of rest. Even though dull teaching spaced in this way might contribute to mental health, a better approach is to schedule a physical-education period when pupils could best use a change of activity.

More often, children become fatigued from the boredom of the work. Many find it too difficult, others uninteresting, and some dislike their schoolwork for other reasons. Whatever the reason, some children are tired of their schoolwork.

Work pitched either very high or very low causes fatigue and boredom and contributes to poor mental health. Periods of play and recreation interspersed with the traditional schoolwork will relieve tension and cause the pupils to be rested. The teacher should watch carefully for signs of fatigue in her pupils. It may be desirable when a child seems fatigued to consult the school nurse. If no school nurse or doctor is available, the teacher can talk with the child, try to find the cause of his fatigue, and then attempt to remedy his situation and condition.

The problem of successfully helping maladjusted school children is not at all insurmountable. In schools where the teachers are conscious of and intelligent about the personality difficulties of their pupils, most of the problems are successfully solved. In one school where a specialist was employed to guide the teachers in trying to solve the pupils' personality problems, the specialist was not needed after a relatively short time because of the teachers' effectiveness in dealing with the problems of their pupils. The teachers cooperated with the children's parents and, by controlling the conditions at school, successfully solved the personality problems of their pupils. The reason much more is not accomplished in this field lies in the failure of the average school faculty to be actively conscious of their pupils' problems and in their not knowing enough about mental and emotional health to help solve these problems.

#### HOW TO IMPROVE MENTAL HEALTH

What can be done about the mental health of ourselves and of others? A number of things can be done, and what a person does for and to another he will to some degree at least do for himself. If a person improves his own mental health, he will have better effects on others, too. In a related sense one can expect that personal relationships develop on the basis of action and reaction. In other words a person gets back what he gives. If he is courteous, friendly, and helpful, others will be so to him. On the average and over a period, a person is treated the way he treats others.

This point of view is a healthy one because it does not permit the projecting of alleged reasons for one's troubles on everyone but himself—a practice which has a more corroding effect on personality than possibly anything else. In the smoke screen of projection no personality problem can be cleared up.

What has been said can hardly be applied to infants and little children, however, because they cannot be held responsible for their behavior. Their living is in the hands of others, and whether or not they are emotionally healthy depends on the physical care they get and the emotional climate in which they live. But when a child reaches an age when he must assume some responsibility for his own behavior, he must begin to learn that the personal relationships of life operate to a considerable degree on the principle of action and reaction, that is, what others do to you is largely in terms of what you do to them.

**Recognizing, Admitting, and Dealing with One's Troubles.** It is not easy for us to face our troubles because doing so tends to make us feel inadequate. So we repress or suppress them with the none too clear hope that our painful problems will get out of our way. Like a

toothache which we hope will go away but which, also like a toothache, does not, it is necessary to face the trouble and cure it.

Troubles are of all kinds: social, such as not getting along with members of the opposite sex; financial; not understanding certain parts of one's lessons; being short-tempered; feeling self-conscious; and any number of personal difficulties and troubles. Troubles have their distorting and erosive effect on one's personality and emotional health if not recognized and dealt with effectively. It is therefore healthful to recognize them by trying to see clearly what the problem really is, admitting fully to oneself that he has this problem, and then setting out to solve it. If a child or adult does not have friends and people turn away from him rather than toward him, the first step is to acknowledge the problem and try to analyze what there is about himself and his actions that people do not like. When that has been done, he must set about changing his behavior. Obtaining help from a trusted friend and counselor is a very effective step in this whole process.

**Develop Effectiveness and Competence.** One should learn to be good in a number of things. It is not necessary or always desirable to be the best because then a person will not fit into the activities of his peers as well as one who is about equal to those he plays and works with. One should have enough skills and interests so that he can participate happily and fully in many social activities. If a person has not acquired social techniques or manners, he will avoid group activities. If one has not learned to dance, he stays off the floor; without the ability to play cards, he cannot play with his fellows; and with little athletic skill, he does not join in the playing of many games. Thus a lack of skill and competence keeps one from enjoying many social activities, and this is very unhealthy. One of the surest ways of inducing poor emotional health is by social isolation. The school as an effective social unit can prevent a person from becoming a social isolate.

Effectiveness and competence on the job are needed by everyone—be it the child in school, the worker on the assembly line, the farmer in the field, or the white-collar worker in the office. Without competence a person is under the strain of being threatened by the loss of his job and is depressed by economic insecurity. Just as the school should make healthy social beings out of its students, it also must attempt to develop in them the skills and habits which will make them successful workers.

**A Knowledge of Mental and Emotional Health.** Having a knowledge of the principles of mental health does not assure better mental health, for mental content frequently does not become behavior content. In other words, knowing what one should do does not assure that it will be done. Nutritionists may actually have poor eating

habits, doctors often live unhealthily, and surely psychiatrists are not uniformly good examples of healthy personalities.

Still a knowledge of how to prevent frustration by satisfying one's basic needs and how to reduce tensions which do develop should help teacher and pupil if they try actually to use and apply this knowledge. In fact there is no knowledge which teachers and pupils have as good an opportunity to apply as information about how to develop a healthy emotional life. Teachers and pupils live together 5 to 6 hours every day, and during this time they experience innumerable situations which if wisely handled will develop a healthy emotional climate. Discussion at the right time may give the pupils a foundation of understanding. When pupils take up their personal problem with their teachers, a knowledge of mental hygiene will help both pupils and teachers.

**Physique, Health, and Adjustment.** Size and shape influence personality. If a boy or man is large, of good physical proportions, and well muscled, his personality is likely to be affected favorably. He may, of course, be a bully or overaggressive, but it is more probable that he will have a feeling of wholesome confidence and will be socially acceptable. He is likely to be respected by his fellows and popular with them and attractive to the feminine sex, who generally favor men who are strong and "manly" in appearance.

Girls of attractive physique have comparably the same advantages. They usually are well adjusted emotionally and socially and evoke more favorable responses from others than do the less attractive. Consequently, they are likely to be more successful socially than those of poorer physical development.

A feature of physical growth that may influence the emotions and thus the personality of some adolescents is the acquiring of proportionally longer legs during that period. During the adolescent spurt, some boys and girls, especially those who are slender or underweight, may appear to be leggy. The arms, too, seem long and dangling. These effects are accentuated if outgrown clothes are worn during the years of rapid growth.

The adolescent years have been referred to as the "awkward age." Actually, such awkwardness is not the result of a lack of physical or athletic skills, for adolescents are really very capable athletes. The occasional awkwardness of adolescents is evident in situations where they feel self-conscious or sensitive about themselves. Their bigness is new to them. Because of their recent sexual development, they have new interests, which they are awkward in expressing. Thus in a social situation the adolescent may trip or stumble, become "tangled up in his feet," and withdraw awkwardly. Rather than a deficiency in



physical coordination, the emotions and feelings of self-consciousness in large part are the basis of this awkwardness. It should be added in this connection, however, that the often mentioned awkwardness of adolescents has been greatly overemphasized and overdramatized.

The comparative size of a person reflects itself in his attitude. A child may feel inferior in the presence of adults because they are so much larger than he. Consequently, it is not well for children to be with adults most of the time. A child who is only with adults may show the effects by being docile and by being influenced by feelings of inferiority. One child on growing up said, "It feels so good to be as large as the people I am with."

A child small for his age often develops feelings of inferiority. Others of his age group are bigger and stronger than he. As a consequence, he may seek the company of children younger than he is but who are his own size. He may isolate himself and thus avoid the give-and-take with boys and girls his own age. On the other hand, a small person may seek his satisfactions in his studies and in music and reading. He may try to surpass his fellows in school and gain satisfaction in this way. He may compensate for his lack of physical size by being aggressive and pugnacious and by gaining the reputation of being "a fellow who isn't afraid of anyone." He may laugh and speak loudly and be a troublemaker in school so that he will be thought of as more than making up for his smallness. He feels inadequate because he is small, and he tries to make up for this in other ways.

It should be noted, however, that not all undersized persons reflect the fact in having skewed personalities. Many small persons are happy and well adjusted. We must not generalize too readily. For example, to attribute Napoleon's aggressiveness and desire to conquer all Europe to the fact that he was a small man and therefore sought to demonstrate to the world that he was a most powerful man is probably carrying an idea too far.

What we are speaking of now is people who are physical deviates. By a deviate we mean someone who varies, or deviates, considerably from the average. A person who is very small, very large, too fat, or too thin or who has obvious physical defects is a deviate.

Those who are very fat may have personality problems. They sense the attention they attract because their clothes are too small, because they have difficulty in getting into their school seats, or because they are not alert on the playground. They are nicknamed "Fat" or "Punk," "Lard" or "Tubby"—names that are unwelcome because unpleasant and derogatory.

The personality effects of being tall and very thin are also not good.

Thinness is symbolic of weakness, and tall, thin people feel this. They are called "Skinny," "Spike," or "Slim" and are referred to as "string beans." All this lessens the feeling of confidence and personal worth.

Girls who are considerably taller than average seem overconscious of their height, no doubt because they regard tallness as undesirable. The average height of women is about 5 feet 5 inches. Girls and women who are, for example, 5 feet 9 inches or 5 feet 10 inches and taller may feel that they are extremely tall, especially if they are very tall and "gangly" during adolescence.

Girls possibly feel that being tall is a social disadvantage which reduces matrimonial opportunities. Some may stoop in order to lessen their height. Actually, what a tall girl should do is to take advantage of her height and stand erect, stately, and handsome. Most people think highly of a tall, stately girl. In fact, she has many social advantages, and she should capitalize on them.

Sickness and organic weakness in themselves constitute maladjustment. A sick person is unable to live normally, he is deprived of his freedom, and his sickness tends to undermine his emotional health. There are the ill who are cheerful, but morbidness is more often the case.

Persons who are afflicted with many colds, who have poor digestions, or who have very little energy are handicapped in getting along with people and are prone to maladjustment. Their pains and weaknesses make them feel inadequate, sensitive, and irritable. They expect to be pampered because they are not so strong as others. A person in poor health tends to be in bad mental health directly because of his weakness, which in turn makes it difficult for him to contend with the rigors of life, and this accentuates the maladjustment.

A teacher should look for unfavorable behavior symptoms among those of her pupils who are not in good health or who deviate considerably from the average in size and shape. She should also look for avoidance tendencies and compensatory behavior from pupils who are unattractive in face and figure. Not all will show poor mental hygiene because of their appearance, but some will. Sympathy, kindness, and special attention will help. If the teacher earns the confidence of her pupils, she can help them groom themselves and in some cases improve themselves physically so that they will look better. The teacher can show the child the need of developing a good personality and how to do so. Such compensation is very desirable.

There is no rule to follow, there are many exceptions, and some persons who have the natural equipment for being well adjusted are not. For example, Mary J. was such a girl. She was fifteen and a high-school sophomore. She was bright and did well in her lessons, being one of the best students in the sophomore class. She was slightly

over average height and good to look at. Her hair was the kind that poets rhapsodize over. Yet she was stiff and ill at ease with people; she had no close friends and seemed burdened with worries and complexes. She was not happy. Apparently she had the capacity to get along well in the world, but she did not know how to use it. Careful analysis of her situation revealed that she had been pampered and spoiled by her mother and had been shown little attention by her father. She had been monopolized by one parent and left stranded, so to speak, by the other. This lack of equilibrium in her bringing up caused maladjustment in a child who had the natural endowments that constitute a head start in getting along with people.

**Physical Handicaps and Adjustment.** Some children are physically handicapped, being crippled or suffering from sensory defects. The child with a hunchback, a crippled leg, a shriveled arm or an arm missing, a conspicuous birthmark, a spastic condition, poor sight, or defective hearing is handicapped in getting along successfully. He is likely to develop a feeling of sensitiveness and inferiority and a tendency to withdraw from relationships with people. The bad mental attitude of the physically handicapped can be made wholesome or can be much improved if the teacher works with them and tries to build up their morale. The procedure has much in common with the treatment of children who are very tall or short or fat or thin.

That the physically handicapped can make a good adjustment was demonstrated in the case of Fred B., who was small and had a conspicuous curvature of the spine. In the first place, he acquired a good education, and he always tried to be especially courteous and agreeable. The result was that people treated him with friendliness and respect, and he developed many happy relationships. He showed a slight tendency to compensate for his physical weakness by attempting to give the impression that he was an outdoor man with a liking for fishing and hunting and that he drove his car 80 miles an hour. The tendency was very slight and because of his friendliness and kindness was hardly noticed. The fact was that he had many friends and was successful and essentially happy.

There is a tendency for the physically handicapped to pity themselves—almost everyone practices some self-pity. A consideration of the futility of feeling sorry for oneself as being the victim of hard luck can help give one a better orientation to life. It is desirable to develop the attitude that happiness does not just happen but is the result of definite behavior. Each must behave in the way that causes others to react favorably and should adopt the attitude expressed in the words, "I shall try to earn happiness for myself."

**The Social and Economic Conditions of the Child.** The homes of children differ as greatly as the children themselves. The usual

home gives the child both his heredity and environment, and consequently it is of first importance in determining what a child is and what he is going to be.

In some homes the parents are well educated, have wholesome personalities, and are leaders in the community. They have good incomes so that the houses they live in are modern, attractive, and well furnished, and there is plenty of money for food, clothing, recreation, and cultural activities. In such homes the children have many advantages and tend to develop confidence and a feeling of worth.

In other homes the parents are poorly educated and because of poor incomes can provide only poor houses and the barest of necessities. They are harassed by the needs of their children for food and clothing, and the children are raised in an atmosphere of anxiety and fear about the father's holding a job and his ability to provide food, clothing, and shelter.

In the one home the children are never embarrassed because they cannot have skates, tennis rackets, or money for the school party or dance. Their clothes are good; they are never ill at ease because of their clothing, as are the children from the other type of home.

Homes range in the socioeconomic level between these extremes, and there are some home situations that extend beyond the types of homes described. The socioeconomic status of the home influences a child's personality. Fortunately, in American schools a pupil can exercise leadership according to his capacity, largely independent of his home background. Thus many pupils overcome the psychological effects of the home situation.

However, in trying to understand a child and interpret his feelings and attitudes, the teacher should inconspicuously look into his socioeconomic status. Perhaps a pupil has not been invited to parties because he has poor clothes and little means. Perhaps he does not get acquainted with other children for the same reason. Children may be so conditioned by the home background that they tend to retreat from social situations. Some are unfavorably developed socially because they have had too much ease and luxury. Both extremes are likely to have unwholesome effects.

**Need for Individual Case Study.** The teacher must always remember that there are no rules to go by in judging who will be maladjusted and why. It is well to keep in mind that children who are dull or exceptionally bright, those who deviate physically a good deal from the average, those who are physically and mentally handicapped, and those with unfavorable home background and poor socioeconomic status are likely to have problems of personality, though they may not. Problems may show up where least expected, however.

The teacher should regard the pupils as individuals. When mis-

behavior or an unfavorable personality symptom is noticed, she should study the child in question, take an inventory of his assets and liabilities, look into his home background, and try to arrive at a conclusion as to why he is as he is. Then, after identifying the causes as best she can, she should set up a remedial program. If special attention and changing the child's school program do not work, something else should be tried. At all times, an experimental point of view should be maintained. Ordinarily some method will be hit upon that works.

### BEHAVIOR PROBLEMS, DISCIPLINE, AND GUIDANCE

Certain behavior is considered acceptable because it is thought to contribute to the progress and happiness of the individual and the group. Other behavior is considered undesirable in that it is disturbing, wastes time, and prevents healthy development. The teacher is usually most sensitive to student behavior that causes disturbance, such as noisiness, whispering, talking out loud, and general disorder, for if she can maintain a quiet, orderly room she is generally regarded as a good disciplinarian. Most principals and teachers feel that the behavior of the children is being properly developed if the pupils cause no disturbance.

Neither teacher nor principal, however, should regard the problem of child behavior as being solved by merely maintaining order. Earlier discussion indicated that emotions, feelings, and motives are the bases of maladjustment. Good mental health lies much deeper than external order and discipline. In fact, the kind of quiet that results from a teacher's vigilance is often conducive to poor mental health. By acting as both foreman and policeman the teacher maintains order but suppresses her pupils in doing so. The result is not conducive to natural and wholesome development. A child does not learn to be truthful and self-reliant in such a situation. Character does not develop in an environment in which the child is completely ruled by the teacher. A wise observer said, "A liar is born of fear on the one hand and tyranny on the other; truth comes from the lips of courage. It is born of confidence and honor."

A child grows best in an environment where he is free to express himself in socially useful ways. Freedom of this sort does not mean that control and guidance should be abandoned but rather that they should be used with the purpose of stimulating the child to increase the variety of his independent responses. Teacher control of the typical sort that maintains order and established procedures by the rigorous compulsion method does not develop the independence, initiative, and self-control of the pupils. Their overt behavior in the classroom may not be disturbing, but they will not have learned how to conduct themselves without supervision.

An illustration of this point is the following: A young man became the principal of a small school where the pupils' misbehavior had interfered seriously with the school's effectiveness. The discipline had been so poor that the school situation was described as chaotic. If complete self-expression and lack of inhibition contribute to mental health, then these children were in perfect mental health. Actually, it is possible that they had better mental health during the year of extreme disorder than they did after the new principal took charge with a firm hand.

The school was transformed from a chaotic state to a very orderly one. The children marched into the school building and out of it in lock-step fashion. No talking or whispering was allowed. The pupils were not permitted to enter or leave the schoolhouse informally, quietly talking to each other as people usually do when they enter or leave a public building. Even the activities on the playgrounds were closely supervised. The principal or another staff member was always on the grounds with the children to make decisions and to prevent any possible confusion.

To the townspeople it appeared that the school was very well operated. As they expressed it, "Everything is running smoothly." There was no disobedience, and the teachers were in control. State inspectors, too, regarded the school as maintaining good standards of behavior and achievement.

The test, however, of the effectiveness of a method of control and discipline is the behavior of children when the supervision of the teacher is removed. Will the children carry on by themselves? Have they learned to be self-reliant and to exercise self-control? In the present illustration, the method was found to be a failure when the children were left to themselves. During one recess the members of the staff were called to a meeting, and thus the children were left on the playground without supervision. They did not engage in organized games, as they always had under the direction and guidance of a teacher. Instead, they ran about the grounds helter-skelter, throwing missiles at each other, the bigger boys tossing the smaller boys on top of each other in great piles. There was complete disorganization, complete breakdown—a discipline that had seemed good went to pieces when the control was removed. The children had not learned to govern themselves, for the restraining force was imposed upon them from without. The strict methods employed by the teachers and principal made the children like horses which could be driven but which ran away the moment the driver dropped the lines and left the wagon.

This illustration brings to mind an attempt to solve the problem of the sharecroppers by putting them on 40-acre farms to operate in-

dependently. The plan did not work because the sharecroppers had always been under strict supervision. Someone else had always made the decisions for them, decided what to plant, when to plant, when to harvest, and when to plow. These same farmers on farms of their own did not succeed because they could not do anything independently. They had never been trained to carry on alone or to control themselves.

In a country with a strong dictator the people may seem well behaved and satisfied. Generally, however, the time comes when the force of the dictator fails to suppress the people and they break out in serious disorder. The power of good behavior develops best in a democracy, and this principle applies to a school as it does to a nation. If the teacher wants to develop in her children the power to behave well when they are out of her sight, she must teach them to share with her the responsibility of control.

The school should try student government. Experience has indicated that, if student government is carefully established and pupils are trusted by the teachers and principal, the children will assume responsibility and discharge their duties creditably. When the students realize that their own welfare is in their own hands instead of in the teachers' alone, they take an entirely different attitude toward their behavior and that of their fellows. Furthermore, children should be learning the democratic processes, and there is no better place and way to learn them than in the school through representative student government.

### **SCHOOL DISCIPLINE AND HOW TO OBTAIN IT**

It is usually pointed out that more teachers fail because they are unable to maintain order in their classrooms than for any other reason. This is probably a fact, and after having stated it, we jump to the conclusion that if teachers could learn to keep order they would be successful. Actually, they might not be successful, but they would not lose their jobs because of the pupils' taking over and creating excessive disorder. It is essential, of course, that teachers maintain order. One of the first questions superintendents of schools ask when they are considering candidates for elementary- or secondary-school teaching is whether or not the candidate can control the pupils.

The ability to discipline or control the class is not to be acquired merely by learning some methods and techniques. The matter is not as superficial as that, for the ability to deal with students effectively is the reflection of certain basic qualities and abilities. The control, which is evident, is comparable to the part of the iceberg we see above the surface; below this top is seven-eighths, which is submerged. (We do not imply that a good disciplinarian is like an iceberg—cold,

hard, and glassy.) This power to handle a class effectively is an expression of a combination of several qualities which center on the teacher's personality, knowledge, skills, and ability to teach. Thus, in effect, when we say that a teacher can or cannot keep her pupils industrious and orderly, we are actually evaluating her personal and professional qualities.

There are ways of dealing with students that are conducive to diligence and discouraging to behavior-problem tendencies. These will be discussed as helps and principles, but they will not enable teachers to become effective leaders of their classes unless the teachers themselves possess at least a fair measure of good personal and professional qualities. This discussion should help, however, in enabling teachers to utilize fully the qualities they possess.

**Degrees of Authoritarian and of Cooperative Control.** The old concept of a good disciplinarian is a teacher who controls her students with strict, stern methods. She quickly nips in the bud any incipient misbehavior, and fear and discomfort are the sinews of her control. This teacher maintains a room so quiet one can hear a pin drop. Such discipline is authoritarian and of course varies according to the degree that children are ruled and regimented.

The cooperative, or democratic, kind of classroom discipline is not discipline at all in the traditional sense but a kind of control that emerges from pupils and teachers working together on their problems. The students are controlled not by the dominative, coercive force of their teacher but largely by the situation and developments of the classroom. The school situations if skilfully managed by the teacher result in pupils' learning self-control because they share in the responsibilities of planning and directing their own work. There are, of course, various degrees of cooperative, or democratic, control, too, just as there are of the authoritarian.

In an authoritarian and autocratic situation a child feels frustrated and often shows hostile behavior. He is not inclined to be cooperative and does not have a feeling for group welfare or a sense of loyalty to the group. The autocratic teacher offends the pupil's sense of personal worth and individual dignity, and so the child acquires rebellious tendencies.

The authoritarian teacher may be frustrated, also—frustrated by the restrictive, tension-producing methods she uses. Or she may be frustrated in her personal life, and thus autocratic, coercive methods serve as an outlet for her own frustrations.

In a democratic, cooperative atmosphere the students are not under the pressures that bring on anxiety and fear. Therefore they are friendly and more conscious of group needs and welfare. In such an atmosphere initiative and cooperation develop, and when troubles



do arise or blockages occur, the students possess more patience and tolerance than they have in authoritarian situations.

Some of the characteristics of democratic control are the following:

1. The pupils help plan the class activities.
2. The pupils and teacher evaluate the class activities.
3. The teacher asks pupils for their opinions and judgments.
4. Some form of student government is in evidence, but more important than the forms of democracy is the spirit.
5. The teacher is a leader and a friend.
6. Every individual is important, and the atmosphere contributes to his scholarship and mental health.

It will be observed that the cooperative or democratic method puts the responsibility on everyone in the classroom, teacher and pupils alike. The democratic teacher is no less responsible than is an authoritarian or autocratic teacher. In fact she has to be more skillful and have much more understanding in order to be effective.

**The Punitive versus the Mental-hygiene Points of View.** Discussions of school discipline include some consideration of what should be done to children because they scuffle, pass notes, swear, write obscene words, tell falsehoods, skip school, or do what is considered wrong. Shall children be punished for their misbehavior? Firmly established in the minds of many teachers is the notion that wrongdoers should be punished so that they will learn to do what they are supposed to do.

Let us consider what teachers actually do in dealing with behavior problems among their pupils. Slobetz investigated the methods of a number of elementary-school teachers, and the following gives the pattern of their treatment of problem situations:

<i>What the Teacher Did</i>	<i>Per Cent</i>
1. Used physical force—spanked or shook.	1
2. Censure—scolded, commanded, warned, demanded apology.	11
3. Overtime or extra work. Repeat work, kept in.	5
4. Deprivation—of recreational time, new seating, privileges.	10
5. Sent or referred to office.	0.6
6. Penalties—demerits and money fines.	1
7. Reparation, replacement, payment.	2
8. Ignored or did nothing.	5
9. Verbal appeal, reasoning, inquiry, and request to stop.	25
10. Group reaction.	1
11. Constructive assistance—created opportunity for successful participation, pupil assistance, incentives, and special responsibility.	31
12. Commendation, personal and public.	0.6
13. Searched for reasons of behavior.	6
14. Tried many things unsuccessfully.	0.3

It will be observed that about 30 per cent of the teachers' responses to misbehavior or problem situations are punitive. Thus about 70 per cent of the teachers' reactions exclude punishment and are constructive and remedial instead. Most teachers do not try to improve their pupils' behavior by resorting to pain and penalty. Instead, they sympathetically try to understand the child, and patiently work to change his point of view and to bring about situations which influence children's behavior wholesomely.

**Some Disciplinary Methods and Procedures.** The purpose of school discipline is to create conditions which are most conducive to the intellectual and social development of the pupil. Good discipline is not an end in itself but a means for helping pupils develop intellectually and achieve the best possible mental health. In this sense the term *school discipline* can be dropped because its old traditional meaning does not fit.

It is almost certain that punishment does not help to achieve these purposes. In fact punitive methods indicate that there has been a failure to use positive and maturer methods. Let us therefore give attention to constructive ways of bringing about a healthful classroom climate. The ideas and concepts presented range from mere technique to principles embodying basic psychological and philosophical meanings.

1. The teacher should learn the names of her students as soon as possible and be sure of their pronunciation. This will be hastened if she studies the names of her students before she meets them. Knowing students by name helps the teacher in developing a good rapport with them and thereby a better social atmosphere.

2. The teacher should begin teaching when the children are ready and willing to pay attention. She should wait a short time until the room has settled down and if necessary make a pleasant comment to the children whose attention is wanted.

3. The teacher should know what she wants to do and how to do it and then teach with vigor, confidence, and enthusiasm.

4. The teacher should change activities before interest begins to drag. She should keep the class busy and the work and play moving.

5. Rewards are much more effective than punishments—praise and commendation rather than scolding and reproof, freedom and expression rather than restraint and suppression, a prize rather than a penalty, in general the positive rather than the negative.

6. The teacher should be tolerant and patient. There is danger of being too quick in making an issue of some incidental disturbance which may blow over and never occur again. This does not mean that one should overlook the danger of allowing trouble to develop.

7. The teacher should avoid an issue with a student in front of a class, such as "We'll hold up the class until you tell" or "You apologize now, or I'll

keep you here in this room until you do." Tempers get hotter and embarrassments are the rule when ultimatums and sharp issues come to the fore.

8. A student should not be allowed to become a hero because he stood up against the teacher. This is related to the previous point; the difficulty can be avoided in part if problems are handled privately.

9. The teacher should carry out routine tasks efficiently. For example, the passing out of books and papers, if done awkwardly, may stir up disorder. Classroom mechanics should be handled in an orderly fashion.

10. The teacher should use supplementary materials and equipment such as reference books, globes, maps, motion pictures, and other teaching aids.

11. The teacher should always be ready to help the individual student. She should be patient in her explanations and friendly in her manner, thus making the student feel that she thinks he is important and that he is wanted.

These items are helpful in managing a classroom and developing conditions which will give everyone more freedom, but the greatest asset a teacher can have in dealing effectively with his students is to have their appreciation and respect. If students feel that their teacher is "smart," knows his subject well, and has a wide range of knowledge besides, they are much more likely to respond to him favorably than to one who "doesn't know his stuff." The teacher of mature personality of whom his pupils think as a "real person" is likely also to command a much readier cooperation from them. Respect for a teacher increases, too, if he is a good athlete (if a man) or can dance, make a good speech, play a musical instrument, or give a good account of himself in other ways. The points given should prove helpful and if utilized will add to the effectiveness of the person who has the basic qualities of a good teacher. Needless to say, however, they will not make up for the lack of fundamental equipment which a teacher should have.

The preceding is useful for both the experienced and the beginning teacher, but something more may be said to help the beginning teacher over the first few minutes, hours, and days:

1. The beginning teacher should know thoroughly the subject matter of the lessons and the various points he expects to cover. His procedures should be carefully planned.

2. The beginning teacher should give directions and assignments fully and clearly and not let any misunderstanding or confusion develop.

3. When deliberate misbehavior becomes evident, the beginning teacher should approach it in a firm, friendly manner. Tendencies to disorder should not be allowed to develop; therefore the teacher should be quick in reacting to them.

4. The beginning teacher should not approach his first classes as an over-friendly, easygoing Joe or Jane.

5. Conversely, the beginning teacher should not approach his first classes in an overserious and suspicious manner which gives the impression that he is looking for trouble.

If one is effective in his personal relationships, the likelihood is that he has the qualities that will prove effective in the classroom. After all, good school discipline is achieved by knowing how to deal with others—in this case, children and adolescents. A teacher must deal with subject matter, too; what she needs in addition to understanding children and how to handle them is a thorough knowledge of her subject matter and how to present it.

In connection with classroom control we might recall a quotation to the effect that if the bugle gives an uncertain sound, who shall answer the call to battle? If the teacher shows uncertainty—uncertainty about her subject, her procedures, her reactions to her pupils' behavior and uncertainty in general—her pupils will quickly draw up their forces and she will soon be conquered. The teacher's best defense is a good offense in the form of effective teaching.

#### MISBEHAVIOR AND ITS SERIOUSNESS

There is much behavior among school children that is considered undesirable and that is often referred to as *problem behavior*. In the adult world, there are many whose behavior is unsocial in various degrees. When such behavior is serious enough in its effects, the offending person is arrested, tried, and if found guilty given a jail or prison sentence. The purpose of the sentence is twofold: (1) to protect society from the criminal's unsocial behavior; (2) to reform the guilty person so that he will not again thus offend.

In school, children misbehave in many ways. What constitutes misbehavior varies according to the standard of the teacher and the school. In some schools the teacher stresses that the pupils must not whisper. In others the pupils work together, talking and exchanging ideas, and whispering is not a problem. Usually a teacher is concerned about behavior that disturbs the class or causes disorder.

Another type of behavior which should receive the special attention of the teacher, although it may cause no disturbance, is the type of behavior and attitude incompatible with the wholesome growth and development of a child's personality. Such behavior and attitudes are unhappiness, depression, being unsocial, withdrawing, and becoming easily discouraged. These characteristics do not cause the teacher and the class much trouble but are very serious in terms of the child's personal welfare because they indicate poor mental and emotional health.

In 1928 a study was made by Wickman of the seriousness of behavior problems as rated by teachers and mental hygienists. It was

discovered that teachers and hygienists showed very little agreement. In more recent studies teachers and hygienists show much more agreement. What has probably happened is that, with psychological training, teachers have taken a different point of view toward behavior problems. Also, hygienists have probably a greater appreciation of the teachers' point of view.

Various types of behavior of fifth- and sixth-grade children, ages ten to thirteen, were rated by 395 teachers and 63 hygienists (34 psychologists and 29 psychiatrists) who worked in child-guidance clinics, psychiatric hospitals, mental-hygiene clinics, courts, welfare bureaus, and personal-adjustment services in colleges and universities. It should be noted that these teachers and hygienists interpreted behavior from a wide range of background and experience.

The following are the characteristics of behavior or manifestations that are considered most serious:

Unsocialness—withdrawal.	Resentfulness.
Cruelty—bullying.	Suspiciousness.
Unhappiness—depression.	Nervousness.
Fear of persons and situations.	Unreliability.
Stealing.	Overcriticalness of others.
Becoming easily discouraged—giving up easily.	Cowardice, physical.

Some behavior that the teachers thought serious the hygienists did not think of as very significant. These were heterosexual activity, obscene acts and talk, untruthfulness, masturbation, and destructiveness.

It will be observed that the traits and behavior considered most serious are those having to do with mental hygiene and personal qualities rather than overt, troublesome behavior. Cruelty and stealing are exceptions to this in that they represent outgoing behavior, so to speak.

Such traits as unsocialness and withdrawal, unhappiness, fear, and nervousness are introversions of feeling largely. This is also true of suspiciousness, resentment, and cowardice. These are personal qualities that handicap one very seriously in getting along with people and are also evidences of a failure to do so. They are qualities saturated with unwholesome emotions that prevent good personal development and may lead to very serious maladjustment. They are not so easy to detect by the teacher as more overt behavior, which impinges on group consciousness. The teacher must be on the lookout for these serious symptoms of poor mental health and maladjustment. When she discovers these serious problem tendencies, she has the task of trying to set up remedial influences.

The phenomena that are considered least important are as follows:

Whispering.  
Disorderliness.  
Restlessness.  
Inattention.  
Profanity.

Interrupting.  
Thoughtlessness.  
Tardiness.  
Smoking.  
Slovenliness.

Shyness and sensitiveness are still considered less serious by teachers than by mental hygienists. On this point the mental hygienists are probably sound. Teachers rate shyness and sensitiveness as less significant because a child with these characteristics causes no disturbance. But they are an introversion, or moving inward, of very unwholesome emotions that hinder the growth and development of a healthy personality and consequently are very significant.

Note that the pattern of the less important traits includes behavior in relation to others. While annoying, such behavior is not symptomatic of very bad mental hygiene and does not have a very adverse effect on the growth and development of personality. The less important traits are not emotionally introverted, and they are not saturated with unwholesome emotional states as are unsocialness, cruelty, unhappiness, fear, and others that are considered most significant by both teachers and hygienists.

The teacher is often most troubled by the children who are high-spirited, lively, and likely to engage in mischief and play pranks. Children of this kind are truly wholesome. If the teacher treats them with a little patience and humor, she will find that they almost always are easy to become friends with and that they respond readily to guidance.

On the other hand, the child who stays by himself, who does not laugh and play but seems unhappy, who is shy and fearful, and who becomes resentful even of well-intentioned treatment is hard to reach. Such a child does not respond readily to friendliness, and his good will is hard to gain.

The way the boys were being raised in a certain family was a source of great worry to their neighbors. The boys were very active in the house and scrambled and jumped about almost as they might in a gymnasium. But their parents were patient and sometimes even joined in their vigorous play. The house and furniture suffered, and when the neighbors dropped in, often they did not find the house in as good order as it should be according to the typical housewife's standard. The neighbors predicted that the boys would turn out to be hoodlums and ruffians, but they did not. They became as fine young men as parents could hope for, and incidentally, now that the boys have grown up, the house has been completely redecorated and equipped with new furniture.

presented will help teachers in guiding their pupils and will also help teachers in their own lives. A great amount of research and clinical experience indicates that the following conditions, attitudes, and behavior are evidences of healthy living and suggest what one should do in order to achieve good mental and emotional hygiene.

**Good Health.** Having one's physical equipment in good working order is conducive to good emotional health. The action of the body on the mind is indicated by the term *somatopsychic*. Weakness, pain, and illness are incompatible with successful adjustment and result in poor emotional health.

**Good Social and Personal Relationships.** If a person is a social isolate, he is living unhealthily. Perhaps, too, he is a social isolate because of poor mental health. (One should always look for the cause-and-effect relationship, which in this case is perhaps reciprocal.) If a person does not have a number of good friends, he should be guided in his behavior so that he develops a better personality. In order to improve one's social acceptability and to be better liked, one must be cooperative, flexible, and adaptable, must be worthy of trust and confidence, must show affection and loyalty, and must have a sense of humor, and accept criticism in good spirit and set about to utilize it. In other words, the give-and-take of personal relationships, if healthful, will increase the feeling of well-being on both sides.

**Being an Effective and Efficient Worker.** It is a bit old-fashioned to point out that there are virtues and values in hard work and being able to accomplish a good deal. However, hardly anything contributes more to satisfactory personal adjustment than having control of one's energies so that one's output is good. Through the efficient use of his faculties and capacities, a person achieves maximum successes which are very healthful experiences. Furthermore, when one works effectively, he deals realistically with tasks which have to be accomplished. We live in a realistic world in which work has to be done; if an individual cannot work effectively, some degree of maladjustment is the result.

In connection with effective work habits a number of concepts should be mentioned, including initiative, ambition, energy, persistence, and a drive to finish the job. A symptom of a serious basic weakness is the practice of talking and talking about what one is going to do and of starting many tasks or projects but leaving them unfinished. Persons with such habits lack the energy and perseverance to finish what they undertake, and the result of their distorted efforts is incompleteness and failure, which lead to frustration and a feeling of inferiority. Underlying these unhappy results are probably a lack of motivation and conflict and personal insecurity. The causes of poor work habits lie in an unhealthy personality, and the effects are decidedly unhealthy, too.

**A Sense and Observance of Reality.** It may be surprising to bring up the point of whether or not we sense things as they really are and whether or not we deal with our environment realistically. Actually it is a vital point, for we do tend to see things as *we* are instead of as *they* are. But if we are in a state of good mental and emotional hygiene because of a sound body and healthy, happy experiences, we are likely to visualize ourselves and the world about us more accurately than if we are depressed by illness and distorted by complexes, conflicts, fantasy, wishful thinking, depression, feelings of inadequacy, elation, and various other unhealthy mental and emotional mechanisms and conditions.

We have spoken of having a correct self-image or of realizing accurately what one's strengths and weaknesses, virtues and faults, assets and liabilities actually are. This is a task that involves both the intellect and the emotions; having a true picture of oneself reflects good, healthy adjustment. Normal people occasionally wish and dream of themselves as being something they are not, and some psychotic individuals actually think they are somebody else, usually a world-famous character.

Besides having a true picture of oneself, one needs to perceive accurately the world about one. Actually a person needs to understand himself in terms of his environment, and vice versa. It is in the area of personal relationships that one needs especially good perception so that one can understand how he can get along effectively and enjoy the healthfulness of happy companionship. It is quite common for people to be in error over how others feel toward them. We often fail in knowing what is the best way to deal with others. It is in the realm of personal relationships that we are disposed to see things as we are rather than as conditions actually are. For example, some children may feel that they are not wanted, others that they are inadequate or that people are against them. In many instances this feeling is unwarranted, and these children need a new orientation and clearer perceptions.

A wide variety of experiences, stimulating living in fact, is the best means for getting accurate perceptions of oneself and of others. If an individual "walks into" as many situations as possible and makes it a point to get around a good deal, he will acquire a clearer understanding of the world about him. Reading is also helpful. Too much vicarious experience through reading may distort one's sense of reality, however, and this must be balanced with a rich variety of actual experiences.

If parents and teachers provide many healthful activities for their children, they will sense the world more realistically and healthily. Overprotection, of course, deprives children of the experience from



which they acquire a more realistic sense and accurate perception of the world about them.

With a true sense of reality a person will have goals that are consistent with his capacities. Underrating oneself because of a feeling of inadequacy which is actually unwarranted or having an ambition that far outstrips one's true capacities leads to maladjustment and unhappiness.

Many things in life are not the way we want them. Perhaps we do not like the way the government is run; our party's nominee for president strikes us as being a mediocre man; or we may think we should have had a certain job which we failed to get. The student in school is disappointed over his not making the team, or he feels that he never gets a square deal from his fellow students and his teacher. About such things and scores of others, we can take unrealistic attitudes. We can develop many unhappy emotions over them after we have failed to get our way. We may refuse to accept things as they are and keep fighting the past.

It is desirable, of course, to have good convictions and healthy ambitions and to try to accomplish as much as one can. Still, after one has tried or when things are out of one's hands, one should recognize things as they are. That is only realistic. In this connection the following statement is appropriate: "Give me the serenity to accept things I cannot change, courage to change things I can, and the wisdom to know the difference."

**Balanced and Orderly Living.** Not too much work, not too much play, but moderation and balance, for one-sidedness is not characteristic of good adjustment. Human needs and wants are varied and can be fulfilled only by a variety of suitable experiences. In school, not books alone, but sports and play, parties and games, visits and excursions. In personal relationships, not just one friend or two, but association with a number and also in groups and crowds. One's work should be both mental and physical; one's recreation, sedentary and active. Variety, orderliness, and balance are characteristics of happy, healthy living.

**A Healthful Outlook and Wholesome Philosophy of Life.** Coupled with such living, a sound philosophy should help to give direction and meaning to existence. Often the outlook and sense of values are a symptom of healthy living, but they can also contribute to such living. Ideas can bring about good mental health as well as being an effect of it. If the ideational is integrated with need-satisfying behavior, mental and emotional healthiness should result.

**Further Evidences of Mental and Emotional Healthiness.** The following evidences of adjustment have been mentioned: (1) good physical health; (2) happy personal and social relationships;

(3) orderly, effective work habits; (4) dealing with situations realistically; (5) balanced and orderly living; (6) a healthful outlook and wholesome philosophy. In addition, a child or adult who is getting along well shows further marks of his adjustment, as follows:

1. He is relatively free of worry, anxiety, and other tensions.
2. He is calm and self-possessed.
3. He possesses confidence, self-respect, and a feeling of worth but shows wholesome humility.
4. He shows tolerance and self-control.
5. He has convictions on what is good or bad, right or wrong, and works consistently for what he thinks is good, but not fanatically and unsympathetically.

All these evidences of adjustment are probably both causes and symptoms, as we have indicated before, though it is very difficult to tell where symptoms and effects begin and where causes end. However, much can be gained by assuming that a motivated and conscious practice of healthy behavior will help in improving one's emotional and mental health. Teachers and parents, if they have these evidences in mind, can also help their children and youth live more healthily.

## SUMMARY AND REVIEW

When a person is happy and satisfied in his environment, he will be in good mental health. A pupil should fit the work he has to do, and the work should fit the pupil and therefore should be the kind of work in which the pupil can succeed and make progress.

Following a well-organized program of work, play, and rest is conducive to better mental health. Irregularity, procrastination, uncertainty, and conflict contribute to maladjustment and, in fact, are symptoms of maladjustment.

Seventy-five per cent of the children from homes where they were treated in a normal and healthful manner had good work habits, but only about 20 to 25 per cent of the children from homes where they were babied or spoiled had good work habits. Nearly 4 out of 5 of the babied children made a poor social adjustment in school, but a little more than 70 per cent from well-adjusted homes made a good adjustment in school.

If a child is shy, overaggressive, or in general ineffective in his relationships with others, he should be skillfully guided into social activities and helped to make a good adjustment.

The teacher should develop a healthful, wholesome atmosphere in the classroom and should teach both pupils and subject matter

with a view to maximum individual development, both personally and scholastically.

A child's physical and psychological condition should be under observation in order to detect fatigue. Work and rest should be varied and alternated so that fatigue will be prevented if it does not exist or cured if it does. Attention should also be given to the diet.

It is comparatively easy to diagnose problem cases but hard to cure them. The teacher should take a professional attitude toward her problem cases and should help rather than punish them. Each child should be studied individually.

A person's mental health will probably improve if he faces his difficulties squarely and discusses them fully, if he develops competence and interest in a number of activities including his work, and if he has a knowledge of the principles of mental health which he tries to apply to his living.

Factors in personal adjustment are mental ability, physical traits and handicaps, and the social and economic status of the child and his home.

School children should be taught self-control by being guided in the principles and practices of self-government. Discipline and control maintained by the "strong arm" of the teacher do not teach self-control.

Modern school discipline consists in controls and the creation of an atmosphere and morale that are conducive to good feeling and industry. This is achieved best through cooperation. Autocratic discipline will not develop self-control and cooperation.

A number of guides for stimulating good pupil behavior have been set forth. In general, these suggestions can be reduced to the necessity for good teaching and for the teacher's being socially and personally appealing to the pupils.

Behavior problems are treated by about 70 per cent of teachers, according to one study, from a constructive, mental-hygiene point of view, while 30 per cent use punitive methods.

Behavior traits and manifestations such as unsocialness, cruelty, unhappiness, fear, stealing, resentfulness, suspiciousness, and over-criticalness result from social immaturity and represent personal maladjustment that may end in serious illness. On the other hand, whispering, disorderliness, restlessness, and various troublesome activities in the classroom of a similar nature are not serious, for they are not symptoms of poor mental health and do not interfere seriously with the development of a wholesome personality. The teacher should interpret behavior more in terms of the pupil's development and less in terms of the extent to which it disturbs traditional classroom procedures.

Mental and emotional health is furthered by good physical health, companionship, being a good worker, a true sense of reality, well-balanced living, and having a wholesome philosophy.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Try to generalize or express as principles what a teacher can do to achieve good discipline or a classroom situation conducive to the best development of the students.
2. In dealing with problem children, discuss whether or not you think each child should be studied as a separate case.
3. Handicaps of various kinds—social, economic, and physical—generally influence mental health unfavorably, but sometimes not. Explain.
4. Give the fundamental reasons why the characteristics listed in this chapter as serious are serious and why those listed as not serious are not so.
5. Schoolwork as now graded is too hard for probably as high as 25 to 30 per cent of the pupils. In terms of mental health, what develops from this situation?
6. The school ought to be a laboratory for practicing ideas and methods of effective, healthy living. Comment.
7. Jane is irritable. Her mother says that this is because she does not get the right foods and is tired. Comment.
8. Describe the characteristics of a wholesome and an unwholesome home, and show how they influence the personality of the children in these homes.
9. What are some specific activities that are conducive to developing mental and emotional health?
10. "He's got brains; he is healthy, has a nice appearance, and has a good family background. He has the makings for good personal adjustment." Comment.
11. How can children learn in the school to deal with each other in a way that is typical of healthy, wholesome personal adjustment?
12. Discuss whether or not students should spend as much time studying and discussing how to develop a healthy personality as learning history, for example, or any other subject.
13. "Oh, Clarence has an inferiority complex. We'll get him over that by a little readjusting." Comment.
14. Just as schoolwork is too hard for the duller students, it is also too easy for the brightest ones. How is the personal adjustment of the latter affected by this situation?
15. Describe a teacher whom you think ideal in her influence on pupils in terms of their personal adjustment, and describe another teacher at the opposite extreme.
16. Show how a regular and clean-cut system of work and play is conducive to good mental health.
17. Why doesn't "ruling with an iron hand" produce healthy personalities in children? What are the best ways of dealing with pupils and students?
18. What personal relationships between teacher and pupil are conducive to mental health?

## 8. The Personality and Mental Hygiene of the Teacher

**What to Look For.** Note the proportion of teachers who are mentally ill and the proportion who need psychiatric treatment. Also, note the proportion of teachers who have had nervous breakdowns and the proportion who have worries and tensions so serious that their health is impaired. What proportion of long absences from school is caused by emotional and mental difficulties?

Observe the characteristics of behavior which precede serious mental illness.

Explain why it is of the utmost importance for a teacher to have a wholesome personality.

What is the relationship of teacher popularity to interest in school subjects?

Teachers should have about three fundamental qualities. Learn what they are. Also, be able to describe the annoying habits of teachers.

For a number of reasons, which should be understood, the life of a teacher is often described as being difficult. It is contended, however, that if a teacher, or anyone else for that matter, finds her work and her community a threat to her emotional health, the probabilities are that most of the fault lies in the teacher herself.

The teacher can have good mental health and can develop a wholesome personality. A number of helps are given which should be understood and remembered.

**Introduction.** The children consistently disliked their sixth-grade teacher, Miss F. She was severe and inflexible and rarely if ever smiled or laughed. The children were expected to behave like automata and were continually scolded and threatened with punishment. Both children and teacher were under constant strain and tension. Much of Miss F.'s unyielding and arbitrary procedure stemmed from poor scholarship, a limited imagination, and ordinary mental powers. Possessing only the barest intellectual necessities for

teaching, she kept the work under strict control so it would stay within her narrow range.

Miss F. had few personal interests and fewer friends. People thought she was odd and never considered her as a person they would like to know. Miss F. was a chronic faultfinder. She was critical of everyone and everything and was never pleased or satisfied, it seemed.

If a psychologist had observed her, he would soon have learned that she was in poor mental health. In other words, she was maladjusted, did not have a healthy personality. Miss F.'s condition was not unique, for there are thousands of people who have unwholesome personalities.

**Frequency of Mental Disorder.** Teachers are no "crazier" than other people. In fact, the evidence indicates that there are fewer teachers proportionately, or in terms of their numbers, in hospitals for the mentally ill than from the population as a whole.

But there are many teachers, and a distressingly large proportion, who have personalities that are a serious handicap in their work. These are the teachers who are so worried about so many things that they lose sleep, are so sensitive that they frequently get angry, are often sarcastic and unfriendly, and live isolated and narrow lives. Their personality weaknesses are not serious enough to warrant hospitalization, but still their effectiveness as teachers is impaired.

Dr. E. Altman, former chief medical examiner of the New York City schools, stirred up much discussion as well as the emotions of a considerable number of teachers when he said that of 37,000 teachers in the New York schools 4,500, or about one teacher in every eight, needed psychiatric treatment and that of the 4,500 a total of 1,500 were definitely mental cases. Other investigations substantiate these data and, in fact, indicate that Dr. Altman was probably conservative.

Dr. Altman tells us of teachers who were definitely psychopathic. One teacher said that it was freezing cold and sat in her room wearing her coat even though the temperature was 70 degrees. She also said she smelled ether, and soon some of the children believed, too, that there was ether in the room. Another teacher told her pupils that everything in the room was charged with electricity. She threatened her pupils that if they did not behave she would pull a switch and electrocute them all. Another used a different method to discipline her pupils. She threatened to move the floor and ceiling together and thus crush them all to death. Another had poison gas on her mind.

One teacher called in a policeman to complain about the electricity that jeopardized all in her classroom. In his own vocabulary he correctly diagnosed her condition by the ejaculation "Ah, nuts!"

It is a tragedy, of course, that people have distorted imaginations and are morbidly unrealistic, but a greater tragedy is that some

teachers who are positively insane continue in the classroom year after year when they should be under the care of a doctor. However, we shall not dwell on the extreme cases but shall consider those teachers who have emotional difficulties serious enough to lessen their competence but not serious enough for isolation and treatment. The teachers we wish to discuss more fully are those with personalities that cause them to be thought of as difficult, odd, unsocial, or not quite normal.

Let us consider some more information about the mental hygiene of the teacher. Probably as high as 20 per cent of teachers, or one in five, have a real need for improving their emotional and mental hygiene. Because of deficient personalities, many teachers do not deal successfully with their pupils and with adults. They need stimulation and successful experiences for improving their personalities and making them happier.

Information at hand is to the effect that one teacher in ten has had a nervous breakdown. This means that 10 per cent of teachers have been ill for a long time, not because of infection or an accident, but because of failure, worry, stress, strain, unhappiness, or difficulties in getting along with others.

The National Educational Association has reported that 37.5 per cent of teachers have stated that they are so worried over various matters that their sleep, health, and efficiency are affected. This means that three out of eight teachers have personal problems that seriously trouble them.

Closely related to this is the fact that about 30 per cent of teachers are emotionally and socially maladjusted, to a recognizable degree. This is a little higher percentage than the 20 per cent who need special help for improving their mental hygiene, but it is probable that about 30 per cent of teachers experience much unhappiness and do not get along with people easily.

Like most employed people, teachers are absent from their work because of illness. Some of their illnesses are somatic, or of the body, such as pneumonia, influenza, heart trouble, tuberculosis, and other infections and organic weaknesses. Others are psychogenic or psychosomatic. Evidence seems to indicate that between one-third and one-half of the teachers' long absences are caused by emotional and mental difficulties.

Data and information of the kind presented here are certain to arouse discussion. Some will probably contend that there is not that much maladjustment among teachers. Others may say that the situation possibly is even worse. All that need be stated at this point is that the data presented are taken from the most reliable sources we have and that they can be depended upon. The important fact

to recognize is that the mental hygiene and personality of the teacher constitute an exceedingly important problem.

**Characteristics of Teachers Who Become Severely Maladjusted.** The personalities of teachers who became so mentally ill that they were hospitalized were analyzed with the purpose of finding out what teachers who become psychotic are like. Characteristically they were found to be

1. Introverted, quiet, and retiring.
2. Overambitious and selfish.
3. Anxious, irritable, and hyperactive.
4. Neurotic and eccentric.

Introversion, as used here, indicates self-thought and self-feeling, and this correlates with being with oneself rather than with others. Such people prefer to be alone, and thus they are starved socially. They are usually engaged in solitary activities rather than in sports and games with others. This kind of behavior is only a short step from being neurotic and eccentric.

It may be surprising to find that teachers who become psychotic tend to be overambitious. But a person may be overambitious as compensation for serious weaknesses. Also, an overambitious person is under great stress and strain; he is intensively seeking rewards for himself and is selfish about it. Consequently he is egocentric, which in itself is a very unhealthy condition.

Anxiety, irritability, and hyperactivity are a constellation of weaknesses that are symptoms of maladjustment and that also cause worsening disorders. They are part of the whole pattern of unhealthy symptoms of schoolteachers who become so emotionally ill that they have to be hospitalized.

In general such teachers are not sociable and friendly and do not have fun with others. They are social isolates and may seem eccentric and odd. What they need most is happy personal relationships and a lot of play and fun. The problem for them is actually to change their mode of living so that they can live happily. Some specific recommendations are made later in this chapter.

The various characteristics which have been given of those teachers who have been hospitalized for mental and emotional illnesses are useful criteria for evaluating the adjustment of any individual. Maladjustment is a matter of degree; anyone can be characterized in part, at least, by the items which have been given. Thus, in trying to understand the healthiness or unhealthiness of one's own living and that of others, a consideration of introversion, withdrawing, overambitiousness, selfishness, anxiety, irritability, and the other qualities will give a reliable index.



**Why the Personality and Mental Hygiene of the Teacher Are So Important.** Even though teachers have serious personality disorders to no greater extent than do adults in general; the problem in their case is of greater importance. For 6 to 7 hours each school day the teacher is closely associated with her students. The pupils look at the teacher for many minutes each day. They are affected by her taste in clothes, by the expression of her face, and by her mannerisms. The pupils hear for hours each day the voice of their teacher, which may be pleasing or strident. Teachers may be friendly or unfriendly, tolerant or overcritical, generous or severe, calm or nervous. These emotional and personal characteristics influence the children. In fact, it is possible and even probable that some weaknesses and illnesses of personality are as contagious as are some physical diseases. The teacher creates the emotional climate in the classroom. If it is unhealthy, the pupils will be fearful, shy, confused, and frustrated. If it is healthy, the pupils will be confident and happy.

It has been mentioned that in the schoolroom where a psychopathic teacher complained of the smell of ether, some of the pupils thought they smelled it also, although, of course, there was none to smell. The power of suggestion is very strong, as is the power of example. It is not difficult to understand how a neurotic teacher can induce fear, worry, distastes, insecurity, and nervousness in her pupils.

Teachers are continually in relationship with each other. They share offices and classrooms, plan together, and teach the same pupils. There is competition for professional standing, but also there is cooperation in carrying out the school program. There is opportunity for helpfulness or injury and for friendliness or antagonism. The quality of teacher relationships determines to a considerable extent the morale of the school, and, in general, the success of the school depends on the personalities of the teachers.

The personal relationships of teacher, supervisor, principal, and superintendent are also extremely important. Those in a supervisory capacity should be able to maintain pleasant relations with the teachers, and vice versa. Some teachers resent authority and guidance of any kind, and some in a supervisory capacity are very arbitrary and unsympathetic.

There probably is no situation in which wholesome personality is as important as it is in the school, with its continuous personal interchange. The teacher's personality is being tested in one way or another every moment of the school day. In factory and on farm, personality is not thus on trial. It is important in every situation, but not so important for a worker tending a machine or a farmer plowing his fields as for a teacher living with a roomful of pupils. A teacher during working hours is rarely alone. She is with pupils, fellow teach-

ers, principal, supervisor, or parents. Occasionally a salesman adds to the surfeit of personal relationships.

One of the objectives of education is to instill in pupils a love for learning. A teacher strives to interest her pupils in the subject she teaches, and she hopes that they will acquire a lifelong interest in the subject matter to which she has introduced them. In this connection the personality of the teacher is fundamental, for a pupil's interest in a subject is determined largely by whether or not he likes the teacher. Pupils like a teacher on two grounds primarily. (1) They like the teacher who teaches well. (2) They like the teacher who is friendly and has a pleasing personality. These two qualities, teaching ability and personality, go together more often than not.

It has been discovered through systematic investigation that people who are asked to recall their school days and indicate which courses they liked and which they disliked base their preferences according to which teachers were best informed in their subjects and were interesting and stimulating. It has also been learned that students in college seldom continue study in fields or subjects which were taught in high school by unpopular teachers but do continue study of subjects which were taught by popular teachers. If, in high school, students had history or algebra or other subjects with well-liked and appreciated teachers, they tend to select history, mathematics, and those other subjects in college. In other words, effective or ineffective teachers, with correspondingly good or poor personalities, condition their students to have a taste or distaste for the subjects they teach.

In a certain college is a teacher who has been on the staff for a quarter of a century. During this time he has had many students, for his courses are required. The subject matter is intrinsically interesting, but he devotes most of his time to lecturing on everything but the subject. One student reported that it is doubtful that the instructor spends as much as 15 minutes a day on the subject, and even these 15 minutes are wasted, so ineffective is the teaching. To make up for this, the teacher is fanatical on topics entirely irrelevant to the course; about these, he lashes himself into a frenzy.

Now the point is this: of the hundreds of students he has had in class, not one who has gone on to graduate school has chosen to major in the field in which he taught. It is almost unbelievable that he could so completely kill the interest of his students in his subject, but he has done so.

The foregoing illustrates how a maladjusted and disliked teacher, one who may be considered to be slightly "off," can kill an interest in learning. Conversely, good teachers, those who know their subject and how to teach it and who have mature and friendly personalities, stimulate in many of their students a lifelong interest in their subjects.

## THE CHARACTERISTICS OF GOOD TEACHERS

The teacher and prospective teacher should know the facts that have been presented about the prevalence and importance of neurosis and personal maladjustment among members of their profession. But it is even more important for them to know the facts that will help them to develop professional and social competence. It is not enough for a teacher to be professionally good; he must also be good socially. The two qualities, of course, are usually related.

We shall discuss (1) the characteristics of a good teacher and (2) what one can do to be as wholesome a person and teacher as possible. The characteristics of a good teacher will be discussed from the standpoint of professional and personal qualities. It should be mentioned again that the professional and personal are closely related and that there are cause-and-effect relationships between them. This will be illustrated later.

**Professional Qualities of a Good Teacher.** Many inquiries have been made into the qualities of successful teachers. Students have been asked to tell what they like and dislike about their teachers. The following are some of the major characteristics of good teachers:

*Knowledge of Subject Matter.* The first requirement of a teacher is that he know his subject. Knowledge or ignorance of subject matter reflects itself in a teacher's personality and professional effectiveness more in college and high school than in kindergarten and the lower grades. At all levels, however, it is important that a teacher know his subject. In the lowest grades the teachers should at least have a sound body of knowledge about the child, his physiology and psychology, and should also know the theory and practice of teaching methods. Thus, at all levels, good scholarship is a first requirement.

One cannot teach what he does not know. Nor can he teach with enthusiasm unless he knows so much about his subject that he is interested in it and enthusiastic about what he knows. Ideas, facts, and inspiration flow from a mind that is full.

One of the worst effects of not knowing the subject is the influence of this deficiency on the personality of the teacher. Some become harsh and uncompromising, while others are sensitive and overcritical. As an illustration of this, a man who is a college teacher of English will be described. He had been a weak student in college, not once having earned an A or the highest mark in a single subject for a single semester. He attended different graduate schools and obtained the master's and finally the doctor's degree, but his marks barely satisfied the minimum requirements.

He had little interest in his subject and did little studying. His teaching was of a routine nature, and he wasted a good deal of time

on this and that which had nothing to do with the subject. He was irritable, faultfinding, and a troublemaker. Not having succeeded himself, he was jealous of his fellow teachers who did well. He did not have the capacity for what he was doing, and he reacted unhappily. Because of his emotional experiences, he developed ulcers of the stomach—a development that suggests the psychosomatic, or mind-and-body relationship.

Here, then, is an example that is typical of some teachers at all grades and levels. First there was lack of capacity, then lack of subject matter, followed by lack of success, with the accompanying development of poor personal qualities.

*Capacity and Willingness to Teach Effectively.* It is not enough to know the subject—many teachers know their subject but do not know how to teach. To be successful, a teacher must also be able “to put the subject across,” as the students say. He must know how to teach and must do it enthusiastically.

Teaching ability depends on a large number of factors but primarily on scholarship, or knowing the subject, on good personal qualities, and on the possession of teaching skills and a good educational philosophy.

Students prefer teachers who explain the lessons clearly and make the assignments thoroughly understood. They want a teacher to be willing to help them with their schoolwork and to do so when necessary.

Teachers who can make class lessons interesting and lively are liked by students, and most students enjoy the use of examples and vivid illustrations. Pupils do not like dull and boring class periods. A teacher should be able to command the attention of his pupils and also make it much worth their time to listen.

*The Personal Qualities a Teacher Should Have.* Whatever constitutes a good personality is what the teacher should have, and it is what the best teachers do have. Everyone wants a good personality because it generates pleasantness and happiness. Thus the personal qualities a teacher should possess are those which a lawyer, doctor, pastor, clerk, or mechanic should possess also. Everyone tries to acquire the ability to maintain natural and pleasant person-to-person relationships. A person who has a history of getting along well with people and of having friends probably has the general personal equipment for being a good teacher.

But there are certain specific qualities that pupils want their teachers to possess. In this connection, a long list of good personal traits could be given, but little of value would be gained thereby; we can dispose of such a potential list by saying that probably only Roy Roger's horse Trigger or the great Lassie possesses these qualities.

about their weak and strong suits, then they should have their students evaluate them. The process should be anonymous, of course. We who have had our students express themselves, on rating and evaluation forms, about our teaching have not always been pleased, but at least our annoying habits and other weaknesses have been clearly and unmistakably pointed out. Teachers are often not conscious of such faults, but when they do learn about them, they can set about overcoming them. Doing so will contribute to their happiness and mental health.

#### UNHEALTHFUL CONDITIONS THAT TEND TO MAKE THE TEACHER UNHAPPY

Certain writers, usually educators, emphasize the conditions that tend to make the life of the teacher a hard one. They point out that there are special circumstances that induce neurosis and personal maladjustment. Believing what some of these writers say is to accept the attitude that society has conspired against teachers and imposed conditions upon them that will inevitably make many of them unhappy and distort their personalities.

One of the yokes usually first mentioned is the restrictions that communities impose on their teachers. Teachers are looked upon as being examples for the young and are expected to be paragons of ascetic living. Some communities frown on teachers who dance and play cards. In a few communities, a teacher must sign a promise not to drink, smoke, or dance and, if she does these things, is discharged from her job. Teachers are expected to buy clothes and supplies in the community in which they work. Week-end absences are discouraged. Attendance at church is taken for granted, and, in addition, teachers are often urged to teach Sunday school.

Comparatively few schools favor married women as teachers. In many schools, when a woman teacher marries, she loses her position. The premarital and romantic interests and activities of teachers are subjected to the community's severest scrutiny.

Yet the community regards teachers as strangers and transients and not an integral part of the community. Correspondingly, they are not held in the esteem they deserve. A feeling of belonging is not developed, and consequently they feel socially insecure.

All this has a repressing effect. The public attitudes described cause teachers to live such narrow and unnatural lives that their personalities are blighted and neurosis is fostered. In training institutions for teachers and in the communities where they work, so much emphasis has been placed on the narrow ideals of "being good" and on their special responsibilities that many of them turn out to be nobodies—no hits, no runs, no errors.

Working conditions, too, maladjust the teacher, who is overworked, underpaid, insecure, oversupervised, autocratically controlled, under a low ceiling of fear, and hopelessly entangled in minutiae, trivia, and meaningless detail.

The work of the teacher, it is pointed out, is one of great strain, and children, principal, supervisor, superintendent, and parents contribute to this situation. Her salary is not large enough to enable her to maintain the social and professional status that her position demands. There is the constant danger that she will lose her position, and she feels insecure. Dealing with the immature minds and the unsocial behavior of her pupils depresses her, both mentally and emotionally. There are so many things she has to do in the school that she is in a state of turmoil and confusion.

It is probably true that in some communities the teachers are expected to live very restricted and unnatural lives. On the whole, however, the points of view that have been expressed are extreme and reflect the incompetence and inability of teachers to cope with their situations. Teachers should look to themselves and study their own problems so that they can solve them successfully themselves. Let us see what teachers should do to develop and maintain a wholesome personality and good mental health.

### **GOOD MENTAL HEALTH AND A WHOLESOME PERSONALITY FOR THE TEACHER**

Personality cannot be pasted on the teacher by himself or by anyone else. Personality is not a veneer. Nor is it something one can turn on or off like an electric current. Personality has its roots in one's physical health, knowledge, skills, and ideals. In general it stems from one's all-round capacities and abilities, from all that a person basically is.

**Developing a Wholesome Attitude.** First the teacher must assume the attitude of being individually responsible. He must regard himself as responsible for his own well-being and not blame his salary, the community, his supervisors, or the school. To a very great extent a person is responsible for making his own way. If his salary is too small, he is free to try to earn more elsewhere. If the community is not friendly, possibly this is because he is not friendly. If he does not get along successfully in the school, perhaps this is more than 50 per cent his own fault.

The tendency of teachers to blame everything but themselves is the worst kind of rationalization—projection, more specifically. One is more likely to develop a better personality if he is governed by the belief that within reasonable limits he gets what he earns. Any teacher who serves the students well will have them singing his praises at home and throughout the community, and it will not be long before he has a

very high standing and all the prestige he cares for. A teacher who is friendly, helpful, and competent will accomplish his work without much difficulty and will not feel that the duties are too great a burden.

**Achieving Competence.** There probably is nothing that keeps one as sound and healthy as success. The person who is successful, who does his job well, is stimulated by happy and satisfying experiences that keep his personality wholesome.

In order to have good mental health, a person must feel that he is achieving, and a competent person lives in the healthful warmth of achievement. One who cannot cope successfully with his work and drags himself through it day after day with a feeling of failure or inferiority soon develops compensations for his weaknesses and consequently an unwholesome personality.

Symonds, in studying the needs of teachers, found the need for achievement the one most keenly felt. Closely related to this was a desire for recognition and for friends. Achievement and recognition tend to go together; a teacher or anyone else, for that matter, is certain to obtain more favorable recognition if he is successful and is more likely to have friends. Everyone wants a feeling of personal worth, which is obtained in large measure through achievement.

In order to achieve competence and be a successful teacher, one should:

1. Keep studying the subjects he teaches. On graduating from college the teacher has just begun to master his subject matter. Year after year he should study books and magazines in his field and related fields and continuously introduce the new material into his classes.

2. Keep studying professional books and magazines that develop ideas about teaching. Some teachers scorn books on psychology, philosophy, and methods, but this reflects a serious weakness. What would anyone think of a salesman, musician, storekeeper, or manufacturer who poked fun at newer and better methods of doing his work? A progressive, professional attitude is most healthful; there is only a dull outlook for those with the kind of viewpoint exemplified by the teacher who said, "Why should I study any more? I already know how to be twice as good a teacher as I now am."

Continuous professional study should be combined with an experimental attitude. Knowledge about pupils and how to teach them should be supplemented by trying out new ideas. The teacher by trying out different ways of teaching can avoid the rut of routine. He will find certain methods more suited to him than others, but he should be flexible in the use of the methods he finds best.

**Developing a Good Personality.** Competence in itself is an important factor in developing a good personality, and in turn personal-

ity is an essential element in competence. There is a mutual cause-and-effect relationship between personality and competence.

Many books on personality development are available. The teacher should be familiar with their content. The knowledge so acquired may prove useful; but, in order to be effective, knowledge must be translated into behavior.

The teacher can do much to develop a good personality by cultivating the attitude that schools exist for the students and by trying always to be helpful to the students and to his fellow teachers. If he submerges himself in the service of his students and his colleagues, he will soon learn the truth of the words that the way to find himself is to lose oneself.

Teachers must deal with pupils and students whose educational and intellectual levels are far below theirs, and this tends to sustain stresses and strains. To compensate for this, teachers should seek out and find stimulating contacts with persons at their own level, or their teaching experiences may tend to influence them unhealthfully.

The preparation for teaching stresses mastering the subject matter and acquiring skills in teaching. Usually omitted is the development of personal and social resources for living healthily. This is ordinarily left to chance, although there are many opportunities in college and university for developing the social patterns of living that are conducive to good mental health. In view of the emotional troubles which teachers have, it should be considered a joint responsibility of the college and the student that he be equipped with the personal and social attitudes, skills, and habits requisite for healthful living when he becomes a teacher.

**Successful Teachers and Their Attitudes.** An inquiry into the experiences and attitudes of a number of teachers who had gained the reputation of being unusually successful indicated that the answers to most of the teacher's difficulties and frustrations lie within herself rather than in the school and the community. It was discovered that these teachers valued their schools and communities highly and were enthusiastic about them. They found no occasion to blame others or to indulge in faultfinding criticism.

Another characteristic of these very successful teachers was that they were not ambitious for another job. The elementary-school teacher was not trying to become a high-school teacher, the high-school teacher a principal, or the principal a superintendent. Each was happily and successfully concentrating his energies on his work and not setting up frustrations by trying to get a "better position."

It seems from this that if a teacher is clearly successful, many of the conditions that are considered so oppressive and therefore so damaging



to mental health do not exist at all. Apparently if a teacher develops a good personality and achieves a high order of competence, most of her troubles will be solved.

**Having a Social and Recreational Program.** Studies have shown that well-adjusted teachers have more hobbies and out-of-school activities than the poorly adjusted. Phillips and Greene discovered that about four times as many well-adjusted teachers were engaged in outdoor sports and were active socially as were teachers with neurotic symptoms. On the other hand, neurotic teachers in the ratio of 6 to 1 spent their "recreational" time in activities that resembled their teaching activities.

No one can be sure of the cause-and-effect relationships of personal hobbies and mental health, but it seems clear that it is wholesome for teachers to mingle with other people and be physically and socially active. Games, hunting, fishing, camping, hiking, and dancing are healthful activities. If one lives a sedentary life and is a social isolate, the likelihood is that one's mental health is not good and that it will grow worse.

Thus the teacher must be sure to reserve some time for outdoor and social activities. A person must have some fun if he is to be healthy. A little recreation should be had every week. Annual vacations that take one into a new environment with its different personalities and interests are a requirement for good living.

The histories of the emotionally and mentally ill show in many instances that they were socially inactive and lived in isolation. These are both symptoms and causes of maladjustment. If there is one thing that we can learn from the experiences of those who have become mentally ill, it is that it is necessary to get out with people and have good times. Social isolation is not pleasant, and it is destructive to good personality development. Teachers should plan, as an absolute must, an active program of social recreation.

**Keeping Out of Debt.** It is true that teachers' salaries are not large, but to spend more than is received will not help matters. Hardly anything can harass and undermine one as chronic debts do. There are times when one should "take a chance" on going into debt, as in the case of a young person, for example, borrowing to continue his education and consequently increase his earning power. But ordinarily one should avoid debt as one does imprisonment. Debts climb onto one's back very easily, but they are got off with great difficulty. They are like a warm, comfortable bed, easy to get into but hard to get out of.

No one is free when he is under obligation to relentless creditors. Worst of all is the situation that develops when resort has been made to the loan sharks, those who send out the sweet-worded folders about

how easy it is to borrow for vacations or any other personal needs but who charge interest rates over 30 per cent. Many teachers allow themselves to be made unhappy victims of these moneylending sharks. One should not add to his personal problems by getting into financial trouble. The number of teachers troubled by badly managed financial affairs is discouragingly large. Much stress and strain can be avoided by waiting to have the cash in hand when purchases are made rather than buying on credit.

On this matter of teachers' finances and mental health, the amount of teachers' earnings provides another orientation. If teachers' earnings were larger, there would be less debt. There is considerable validity in the viewpoint of the young bride who, at the end of each month, always found herself overspent and who said to her husband, "Henry, you'll have to earn more than we spend."

Teachers should carry on a sustained, militant campaign for higher salaries. A 50 per cent increase in the purchasing power of teachers' incomes would not be out of order in a country that wastes billions each year and accumulates vast debts for other purposes. It would do teachers good emotionally to fight for more purchasing power and even more good to achieve it.

**Good Living Quarters.** When friends who have taken teaching positions in different communities first get together again, one of the questions they invariably ask each other is "Do you have a good place to room and board?"

Unfortunately many communities do not provide their teachers with living facilities that give them the privacy and comfort that a professional person needs. The discomforts and frustrations caused by unhappy living situations distress teachers and make them less healthy emotionally. If satisfactory quarters are available but are somewhat too costly, teachers still should try to afford the better accommodations, for the dividends in terms of emotional health will be rewarding.

**Keeping Physically Fit.** Many of the points already mentioned contribute to general health. In addition one should have a medical examination frequently enough to check any unfavorable developments.

**Maintaining a Good Personal Appearance.** Good grooming contributes to personal morale, for one feels more worth while when he looks his best. A trim, neat appearance helps morale. The girl who said, "When I feel a little depressed, I spruce up and walk down the avenue" was practicing good psychology. The reference to good clothes as "glad rags" has a true psychological connotation.

Pupils like to have their teachers neatly dressed, and their approval is healthful for the teachers.

Consulting a Counselor. If one is in need of special aid, he should consult a professional counselor. The advice of good friends often helps, and one's pastor frequently can solve many personal problems.

One should not try to kill his troubles by burying them either consciously or subconsciously. The troubles will not die but will lie there awkwardly, or kick and jump around, thereby keeping one frustrated and confused. Discussing a problem brings it out in the open; one can often then perceive the solution oneself, or one may obtain advice that will lead to improvement and probably the answer to the difficulty.

**Avoiding Neurotic Perfectionism.** There are teachers who insist that everything must be done "just so," who are overfastidious and very formal, who try to compress every pupil into a rigid, set form, who demand that their pupils sit, pass, and do their work exactly as they dictate. Such teachers are neurotic perfectionists.

We can illustrate this by the case of a second-grade teacher who was a perfectionist and worked endlessly over the details of her teaching. She spent long hours, after school and during the week ends, getting busywork ready and going over and over lesson plans and the written work of her students.

Not much was accomplished, for she regimented her pupils with her small tasks and failed to sense their feelings and wants. She was drowned in detail and entangled in the meshes of minutiae. All the pupils' work, down to the smallest point, had to be executed according to precise forms. There was littleness and constriction about her work, instead of imagination and expansiveness. She failed to see the sun because of the pennies in her eyes.

This teacher had very little social life. She rarely left the area marked by her classroom, her apartment, and the route she walked between these two points. She said she was glad when she could close the door of her apartment and be alone.

Here was a teacher so involved in her narrow perfectionism that she lived a very restricted and unimaginative life. Her insistence on all pupils doing their work exactly as she prescribed it caused unhealthy tensions in her pupils which in turn tightened the tensions she already had. She was rigid, unrelaxed, and inflexible, but she carried on in the belief that she was teaching well.

A teacher should be earnest and conscientious and should do her best, but she should not be overcritical. She need not demand that every *t* be crossed and every *i* be dotted at all costs. She should regard details and form as means and not the end. She should not be so fascinated by the small wheels and gears of the educational machine that she overlooks the purpose of education, which is to help the student develop optimally.

**Making the Best Adjustment Possible.** The conditions surrounding an individual, and the individual himself, are responsible for his mental health. The teacher should try to ensure as good conditions for herself as possible. One step she should take is to join a local, a state, and a national teachers' organization. Just belonging has a good effect. Moreover, through such organizations, teachers can work for tenure, better working conditions, and higher income. Teachers should try to improve their profession or craft, just as doctors, lawyers, engineers, musicians, miners, carpenters, and other working groups do.

As an individual, the teacher has a rich opportunity for happy relationships with her pupils and fellow teachers. No one has as great a chance for personal rewards as the teacher. Pupils wish to be on good terms with their teachers and are very appreciative of what they do for them. Parents, too, value the teachers who earn the respect and appreciation of their children. Within the profession itself, teachers have opportunity for companionship with their colleagues. Such a fellowship can be very rewarding.

Every vocation offers some kind of special opportunity: the teaching profession most certainly does, since the range in teaching positions is from those in shedlike schoolhouses in barren rural communities to distinguished professorships in leading universities or from principalships in small semigraded schools to large-city superintendencies and university presidencies. There is great opportunity to progress professionally, but what should be stressed here is the opportunity either to grow or to degenerate personally. A person can become sweet or sour, elastic or brittle, optimistic or pessimistic, and animate or insensate.

The most worthy objective a person can have is to develop into as fine a person as it is possible for him to become. Optimum growth and development is the individual's highest ideal. This goal can be achieved best by helping others grow and develop, the very opportunities that teachers have in the fullest measure.

All in all, the teacher is in a position particularly favorable for developing a healthy personality. Her situation in the midst of pupils, parents, and fellow teachers is especially conducive to being respected and appreciated. She is working in the midst of a human gold mine, and great personal wealth is there for those who will earn it.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Possibly 4 or 5 per cent of the older, more experienced teachers are actual mental cases, and at least 10 per cent need some psychiatric help. One teacher in ten has had a nervous breakdown, 37.5 per cent have serious troubles that affect their sleep and health, and nearly half

of teachers' long absences from school are caused by problems of mental hygiene.

Teachers who are predisposed to serious mental illnesses are not extroverted, sociable, cooperative, unselfish, calm, and well balanced in their behavior. They are the opposite.

The personality of the teacher is especially important. The teacher while in school is in almost constant association with pupils and colleagues, and her personality is always in action, so to speak. Pupils learn to become interested in subjects or develop a love of learning largely in terms of the teacher's personality.

In order to be most successful, a teacher must know the subject matter, must know how to teach it, and must have a good personality. Students regard as having a good personality the teacher who is patient, kind, sympathetic, fair, and friendly and who has a sense of humor.

Some habits in teachers that annoy pupils are straying from the subject, using favorite catchwords and well-worn jokes, pacing the floor, staring out of the window, and using the voice poorly—in short, not concentrating effectively on the teaching to be done.

Conditions that make life hard for the teacher are low salaries, an unsympathetic public, artificial standards of behavior, overwork, supervision, fear of dismissal, and the burdens of endless detail.

Highly successful teachers have high praise for their communities and their schools.

Blaming one's troubles on everything but oneself is rationalization (projection). This is an unhealthful practice. The teacher can maintain or achieve mental health by feeling responsible for her own welfare, by becoming competent through sustained study and thoughtful experimentation, by having social and recreational experiences, by keeping out of debt, by securing comfortable living quarters, by maintaining her physical health, and by not being a perfectionist.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Teacher Smith knows his subject well, presents it systematically and interestingly, and is liked by his students. What is the likelihood of Mr. Smith's becoming mentally and emotionally ill?
2. Why does blaming everything or everyone but oneself probably increase teacher problems rather than diminish them?
3. Interpreted in terms of our basic motives and wants, what can the teacher do to achieve good mental hygiene and personal adjustment?
4. Does the number of teachers estimated as mental cases correspond to the experience that about 1 person in 20 will at some time be seriously ill mentally?
5. Describe the characteristic behavior of a person who is headed for mental and emotional illness.

6. Discuss the importance of the personality of the teacher from the point of view of the pupil's personality and his love for learning.

7. What should a teacher do so that she will be happier? Make a number of suggestions.

8. How do the personal qualities which a teacher should have differ from those which a doctor, lawyer, clerk, or policeman should have?

9. Show that the professional qualities of a teacher may influence his personality.

10. What do you think of the idea that students who are preparing to be teachers should learn in college how to have fun?

11. List annoying habits in some of your former teachers.

12. Do you believe that the individual teacher has to assume most of the responsibility for her own adjustment? Comment.

13. Discuss what effect the perfectionist has on the creativeness of her pupils.

14. Discuss whether or not you think that the life of the teacher is a hard one.

15. List the data which indicate that teachers have serious problems of mental health and personal adjustment.

## 9. Social Growth and Development

### *Maturing Socially*

**What to Look For.** Be able to describe a person who is well developed socially and one who is not.

What is the meaning of social growth?

Be able to explain the relationship of age, physical maturity, and mental level to social development.

How do growth and improvement of a child's physical equipment and structures influence social development? Weaknesses and defects?

What experiences should a child have in order to develop socially? What experiences should be avoided?

Trace social development from infancy to adulthood.

Note the relationship of egocentricity and social development.

Learn the facts about adolescence and delinquency or antisocial behavior. What are the symptoms and causes of undesirable behavior?

Induction of the young child into the school and the social effects of school experiences on the child are explained.

Acquire the theories and facts about the teacher's procedures as conducive or not to social development in her pupils.

The effects of authoritarian and democratic control on social maturity are described.

Leadership is an evidence of social development. Learn what the characteristics of leaders are.

Why are experiences in general and home environment in particular so important to the social development of a child?

There are a number of factors that cause people to be friends. Learn how these factors influence the formation of friendships.

The topic of sociometrics is discussed. The term refers to social acceptance and rejection. The techniques of sociometrics are described, and what the teacher can do about the social pattern in her classroom is also described.

The value of the sociodrama for developing social understanding is set forth.

almost hourly care. When they are growing up, this dependence should decrease. When they are grown-up, they must know how to take care of their own needs. They should be independent.

To illustrate further what is meant by social development, let us consider the case of a young woman whose social behavior shows a high level of maturity. She cooperates with people rather than opposes them. She rarely, if ever, is bad-tempered, is always well mannered, is kind to people, is friendly, and consequently has friends.

She has good taste in art and in her reading and play activities. She can tell good color and design from poor, and she reads books of fiction, travel, and biography by the best authors. Her play and recreation are sensible and consist in dancing, cards, golf, "hiking," and activities suitable to her age and sex. She is at home in a group, associates happily with various companions, and also likes to be alone occasionally.

The opposite of good social adjustment is illustrated by the young man who is shy and bashful. He avoids people when he can, for he is uncomfortable in their presence. He is dependent on his mother, relying on her for advice and companionship. It is said of him that he is tied to his mother's apron strings. As a boy, he played little with other children; people always regarded him as odd; and he never became sociable or friendly.

These are just two examples to illustrate social adjustment in one case and lack of it in another. There are many other elements involved in various degrees of social behavior; these elements will be mentioned later.

Social growth and development are not independent of other growth and of other characteristics. They are not separate from and independent of human development. On the contrary, they are related to and are in fact a part of physical growth, mental development, personality, the emotions, and mental health. In fact, social growth and development are largely a composite of all these factors. Therefore, social maturing has to be considered in terms of physical and mental status, personal qualities, and the emotions.

**Social Development and Age.** Children grow socially as they increase in age. A child of two reacts differently to people from the way he will when he becomes twenty. Some of the reasons for this change in behavior are the increase of body size, growing mental power, and the cumulative experience a person acquires as he grows older. He learns to deal with people because as he grows older he has more personal equipment for doing so and the advantages of many experiences in dealing with people.

**Social Maturity, Physical Development, Mental Ability, and Experience.** As a child grows older, he increases in both physical



and mental stature until maturity is reached. Such growth can be represented by curves and charts, but the social development that takes place with the maturing of the individual cannot. The best we can do is to describe and discuss play interests, social activities, personal relationships, and other behavior that indicates social growth and development, or the ability to get along with others and to be happy.

A large, well-developed child tends to be more adequate socially than a smaller one, for the former can cope better with people and things. Being bright or having a mental age in advance of one's years also tends to make one more mature socially, for mental maturity beyond one's years likewise helps one get along better. Just as good physical and mental development usually contribute to social maturity, underdevelopment physically and mentally tends to retard a child socially. Undersized children tend to play with children younger than themselves in order to achieve social adjustment.

School children who have low I.Q.'s and therefore learn slowly are socially handicapped. They are easily recognized by their classmates as inadequate and often are rejected by them. The mentally retarded are usually older and larger than their classmates and are known as academic failures. Being rejected socially and being frustrated in their schoolwork are good explanations why mentally retarded children often are behavior problems. The teacher can help mentally retarded children by discovering what they can do fairly well and making use of their best talents as frequently as possible.

Social development depends not alone on physical and mental development but also on experiences, on how one is taught, trained, and educated. Here is an example of a bright boy of good appearance who has the equipment for being well developed socially. He was reared on a farm and lived apart from other children much of the time. In high school he walks down the hall, hardly looking right or left. There is nothing wrong with him physically or mentally—in fact, he is superior in both respects—but his home life on the farm during childhood and the experiences he had in a one-room rural school tended to make him shy and recessive. Of course, there are many boys and girls raised in similar environments who have become cordial, friendly persons, but some are so constituted that they do not become very sociable. This boy had physical and mental advantages, but unsocializing experiences have left him inadequate in getting along with his fellows.

**From Individualism to the Social Group.** There is a gradual evolution in the person, from the extreme individualism of the infant and dependency on a few persons, largely the mother and father, to being socialized as a member of a group and usually depending on its

many members. The individualistic infant, when nearly a year old, does pay some attention to other children of the same age to the extent of reaching out and taking hold of another child's foot or hair or arm or some other part of the body. If there are toys within reach, one-year-olds will often try to pull the toys toward themselves and sometimes little children may be tugging on the same toy. But there is no evidence of sharing and cooperation at this time.

In the preschool age, children play together, the play being largely individualistic, with occasional examples of "You may have this" or "You may use this." There is, however, a strong tendency for some to dominate others. Definite evidence of ascendancy and leadership shows itself during the preschool years and even somewhat in early infancy, for some infants are more aggressive and assertive than others.

When children begin school, they enter an environment that tends to socialize them. They are members of a group, they work on projects together, and the games they play call for some teamwork. They borrow and share, and any antisocial and overindividualistic behavior is reproved by the teacher and frowned upon by fellow students. These are the experiences that cause children to become more group-minded.

In the intermediate, or middle, grades, groups and teams are formed. Children of these grades join girl and boy scout troops. The boys, especially, have their little neighborhood gangs, and they organize themselves into football and baseball teams. Extreme individualism has now been overcome by this banding together for work and play.

It is during the high-school age that boys and girls are more organized into teams and clubs than at any time previously. Boys have their football, basketball, and baseball teams, and both sexes have their many school clubs. A look at the high-school bulletin board will show how the student council, the drama club, the literary organization, the religious group, and so on, have scheduled their meetings and how the members are urged to attend.

In connection with this socialization the fact must not be overlooked that during infancy and the preschool age and in the primary grades there is not much consciousness of sex. Boys and girls play together on equal terms. Shortly before puberty, boys become more conscious of girls but look down on them. It is "sissy" to play with girls, they feel, for they regard them as being the weaker sex. During early adolescence, girls are fully up to boys in size and are more mature socially, for they reach puberty earlier. During adolescence a major problem in social adjustment and maturation is faced: boys and girls become interested in each other, seek each others' company, and have dates, and many romances begin. Boys and girls who are neither

shy nor overaggressive, who know how to converse effectively and "get along" have achieved considerable social maturity.

During adulthood, social effectiveness continues to be as important for happy and successful living as it ever has been. Almost everyone has many face-to-face relationships with others every day. It is essential to be courteous and fair, to show no unpleasant feelings, and in general to be friendly. The person who does not get along with people or who is not socially mature will have many unhappy experiences.

In adulthood there is probably less social isolation than at any age. Men and women join in marriage and thus form the family unit. Business is organized into corporations and cooperatives. Churches, lodges, clubs, and societies are symbols of the social development of adults who are "joiners" and band together for security and for social purposes. Both children and adults are gregarious. They like to be together for the purpose of worshiping, doing business, playing, and visiting. In the process of growing up, we become social beings, finding many advantages in being together.

**Egocentricity and Social Development.** It is probable that becoming less and less egocentric is a reliable symptom of social maturing. Possibly the relationship could also be stated by saying that as a person matures socially and develops a progressively mature personality, he becomes less and less self-centered. What does this mean? It means that a person's interests, thoughts, and expressions are increasingly less on self and more on others and on the world outside of himself. When a person is egocentric, he tries to have the spotlight on himself, he wants everything to come his way, and in short he wants to be served. When a proposition comes up or a matter develops, his attitude toward it is shaped by the thought "What is there in it for me?"

In the conversation of the egocentric person the vertical pronoun is featured and is used in almost every sentence. When the egocentric is with others, he tries to attract attention to himself rather than concentrating on them. His interest and concern center on himself. In other words, he is self-centered and selfish.

The infant is sometimes referred to as being very egocentric because he must be given painstaking care and "gives out" little if anything. He is a little tyrant demanding almost constant attention, which of course is as it has to be because of his helplessness. But the infant soon responds to people by kicking, waving, and holding out his arms and trying to move toward the members of the family who approach him. At six months, when the mother holds her baby, he may reach for her face and smile while he tries to grasp the face or pat it. These are the beginnings of outgoing behavior.

As the child develops, he plays and shares with other children, he does things for his mother, and he learns to give and take in many ways. He is learning to be less self-centered. However, some children always remain very egocentric and consequently have poor personalities and remain socially immature. Children, teen-agers, and adults become less selfish and egocentric when they learn to reciprocate, cooperate, and give service to others with little conscious or unconscious thought of what they "get out of it" or what they "can corner for themselves." A person shows personal and social maturity when he is so absorbed in his activities and is so outgoing that selfish, egocentric interests are at a minimum.

Yet a person must have intelligent self-interests. Not to have them would be most immature, for if one does not take care of himself, he will be dependent on others. But intelligent self-interest is generally based on cooperation with others; the oft-quoted adage about the person who serves others serving himself best is basically true from the viewpoint of social maturity. The highly egocentric person does not usually get along successfully, and the reason lies in self-obstruction caused by the ego being in the way. One can overcome that obstruction by externalizing his interests, which is done by working and playing with people and by participating in the many interesting activities that take place within a very short social distance of every individual.

**Adolescence, Independence, and Delinquency.** As a child grows socially, he becomes more independent. During the teens, boys and girls tend to leave the parental roof, and in the late teens and early twenties they become self-supporting, marry, and establish their own homes. This is the normal order of events and represents good social development.

But an apparent by-product of this growing independence—this social development—is not good because it is antisocial. This period of growing independence is marked by a great increase in delinquency and crime. During the transition from childhood to adulthood and in the achieving of independence, there are those who show their independence by breaking laws and regulations. It is during the teens that antisocial behavior of a serious nature manifests itself and even reaches very serious proportions.

An adolescent is not a delinquent because he is achieving his independence but because in his teens he is mature enough to strike out against society. Now he is big enough to express himself so that society will take serious notice. Most teen-age delinquents showed problem tendencies during their childhood years, but then the home and school were able to cope with them. The causes of problem tendencies often are the frustrations and tensions which result from below-average

through making school interesting to his pupils, by recreational programs, by pointing out good and poor ways of behaving, and sometimes by judicious punishment. By studying a pupil and learning what his assets and liabilities are, the teacher can guide him so that he will experience success. A student who is successful is rarely a delinquent. The teacher's attitude should be not that of being against the child but that of wanting to help him.

The teacher should not be disturbed by whispering or by mischief and pranks. Often such behavior is the result of surplus energy and an alert mind. The teacher in such instances should be tolerant and should try to divert the child's activities into forms of leadership that will help the child and the school.

Education and training should not stop with attempts at keeping behavior from being antisocial. The development of good deportment is desirable, of course, but it is not enough. There should be a positive program. Manners, personality, gracious behavior, and in general the art of getting along with people should be made a special objective of the teacher and his pupils. At certain ages, we are satisfied if children are refined little savages. In their later teens, we expect them to be refined. That is the order of social development.

**Starting School and Social Adjustment.** Children are anxious to grow up, to become bigger and more important. A significant step in this process is to start school, for then the child becomes identified with the school and all the important work the school does. The child learns to read, write, and do some arithmetic. He has books, paper, pencils, and lessons the same as older boys and girls.

Most but not all children look forward to beginning school with keyed-up anticipation. Some are not prepared for the new life of the first few days in school and are often ill at ease and unhappy. Most of this can be prevented by having the child visit school a few times as a guest of a sister or brother. A good project is to have special visiting days in the first grade for children who will begin school the following year. Members of the first grade might each have someone of next year's class as a guest. Then the prospective first-graders will spend a day in the first grade under supervisory control and get some orientation to school life. Both the first-graders as hosts and the prospective first-graders as guests will have good social experiences, and next year when the latter begin the first grade they will find it much easier to make an adjustment.

At school, children soon learn to evaluate themselves in terms of their classmates, and they are motivated to socialize themselves so that they will be accepted by their classmates and the teacher. Having a teacher to adjust to as well as parents sometimes produces a conflict over "who knows best." Probably the adjustment of children to each

other in the school is the more pressing problem, although pupils are very concerned about how they are getting along with their teachers.

In a study by Stendlar, Burns, and Young, they stated that 86 per cent of the parents reported a change in the behavior of their children when they started school and, of these, 78 per cent indicated improvement and 22 per cent felt that the behavior had become worse. The improvement consisted in being more independent and responsible, showing better self-control and improved work habits. The less desirable behavior chiefly in evidence was smartness, whining, aggressiveness, and irritability. Ninety two per cent of the first-graders liked school, although there were particular days when they did not. Those who did not like school no doubt had some days, too, when they did like school. All in all it seems that first-graders become better social beings because of their experiences.

**Schools and Social Development.** In order to gain some insights into the socializing effects of the school, let us turn to a classroom where the teacher is an autocrat. She says to her pupils, "I'm the one who asks the questions, not you." The pupils are forced to sit stiff and still. If they show any evidence of curiosity, originality, or initiative, they are shooed back to the textbook where the assignment is to be found. The assignment usually consists of "the next 10 pages in the textbook," and at recitation time the teacher asks specific questions on the details of the lesson. She gives no opportunity for speculation or intellectual exploration. She centers attention always on the content of the book by questions designed to evoke answers in terms of what is in the book. She is especially pleased when the exact words of the text are used.

When it is time for the children to leave the room, they must first sit in rigid position and then, in response to signals by the teacher, they turn, stand, and pass. In passing the children are equally spaced and march in step. If they talk or whisper before they get out of the building, they will be punished by having to stay in during recess or after school or to write a hundred times, "I shall not talk or whisper when marching out of the building."

The reader no doubt sensed, after reading the first line of description of this teacher and her practices, that there can be little social development in a situation like this and that it is likely that antisocial attitudes and behavior will develop. We might say that in this classroom the teacher's method brought on social and intellectual *rigor mortis*; there are almost certain to be strong negative effects, too. But before going into this, let us consider another classroom.

Here the teacher is entirely different. She is not formal and unbending. Instead of confining the lesson to the next 10 pages in the textbook, she and the children work on topics or areas of learning. When they take up the topic of American colonization, for example, the

teacher and pupils together spend time in planning how they will study it and the teacher welcomes suggestions by the pupils. A list of references is similarly prepared, and when further study and illustrative materials are found, they are added to the list.

The children work in groups, several children acting as leaders. They are encouraged to bring to school pictures, art objects, small pieces of furniture, and other material that helps them to understand more fully the colonists and their life. Before the class has finished studying this topic, there are many evidences in the room of their interest and work. Posters, murals, pictures, and collections are arranged to illustrate how the early American colonist adjusted to his environment. The pupils consult with persons in the community whose ancestors were colonists. They take trips to museums. They move about in a natural and informal manner. There are guidance and control, of course, but these are the outgrowth of group planning and organization, not of "strong-arm" methods applied by the teacher.

The descriptions of these two classrooms could, of course, be more detailed and more extended but are probably adequate to give an idea of the nature of the two teachers and their methods. The reader may ask if there actually are teachers like the unimaginative, formal, and formidable one first described. Oh, yes, there are—many, in fact, although it can be hopefully said that their number is decreasing. The number of teachers like the second—the classroom leader who worked cooperatively with her pupils—is increasing. Of course, teachers are distributed between the extremes in the extent to which they are dictatorial and coercive on the one hand or democratic and informal on the other.

The purpose of this discussion is to direct attention to the social training afforded by the two situations. The classroom of the compulsion-type teacher furnishes the pupils no experiences in exchanging ideas, in consulting with each other, or in group work. Each child sits at his desk, and all intellectual and social traffic, limited as it is, is between the individual pupil and the teacher. Consequently, social development is at a minimum. There are, in fact, negative reactions. Children learn to be afraid and recessive and to think up artifices for pleasing the teacher.

In the second schoolroom the social situation is excellent. Children have an opportunity to confer with each other; they have experiences in give-and-take and in seeking cooperatively the answers to common problems. Individual children have an opportunity to exercise leadership. At one time, this child is the leader; at a different time, another child takes the initiative. In one situation a given child has more ability and interest and consequently is in the ascendancy, the others responding to his leadership. And so it goes. The children are rubbing

intellectual and emotional shoulders and are learning to work together in many situations.

The social climate of the classroom reflects the personality of the teacher and her methods. Every teacher fits at some point on a scale of which one end is extreme authoritarianism and the other effective cooperation and democracy. When a teacher is extremely authoritarian, she controls her students figuratively as if she had each in harness and had reins controlling each of them. The teacher who uses cooperative and democratic methods guides the students in committee or group attack on problems, and all work together, each contributing his bit in formulating problems, deciding on procedures, helping the other to solve difficulties, and then moving on together to new fields to work in.

Authoritarian teachers stimulate competition and cause self-concern, frustration, and unhappiness to develop, but democratic and cooperative methods arouse group concern, reduce frustration, and create harmony among the pupils. The contribution of democratic and cooperative methods to social development lies in the extensive practice which students get in playing and working together. This they do not get when taught by the traditional authoritarian methods.

Careful investigations have been made of the effects of these more modern methods on the learning abilities and personal characteristics of pupils. This topic is discussed at considerable length in Chap. 22; suffice it to say here that children educated in the type of school suggested by the description of the second teacher know better how to undertake problems, are able to get along better with their fellows, show more initiative, have better personalities, and are better adjusted.

**Leadership and Social Maturity.** One evidence of social ability is leadership. It is usually the better adjusted socially, those who know how to get along with their fellows, who are selected as leaders of gangs, captains of teams, chairmen of clubs, or class presidents.

In early childhood there is little formal recognition of the leader. Children are not highly enough organized to select a captain or a president. A leader is selected when there are group organizations that require a leader. In childhood, some children are larger, stronger, and more assertive and have more ideas and thus gain a certain measure of ascendancy and control. The older and more capable children tend to be the leaders, for they are more likely to have these characteristics.

A physical characteristic that should be considered in connection with social development is early and late physical maturing. The degree of maturity is determined by studying X-ray pictures that are made of the knee and hand. Skeletal age can be estimated from the maturity of the bones and joints. Earlier maturers are larger and also more "grown-up-like"; late maturers tend to be more "kidlike."



Boys who are strong and sturdy for their age are comparatively more mature skeletally than are physically weaker boys.

Jones and Bayley discovered that early physical maturers are more popular, display more leadership, have older friends, and are more attractive in appearance. Of 16 early-maturing boys of high-school age, 2 became class presidents, 1 the president of the boys' club, several were on committees, and 4 were prominent athletes. Of 16 late-maturing boys of the same age, social and athletic leadership showed itself by there being 1 vice-president and 1 athlete in this group. Thus it is apparent that the degree of skeletal maturity is associated with social and athletic qualities.

Leaders have certain qualities, varying according to the kind of group which selects the leader. The person selected as captain of a team is generally a player who, if not the best, is one of the best. In addition to the respect the players feel for the playing ability of the person they choose for captain, they generally regard him as being friendly and fair, a person whom they all like and with whom they can get along.

Class presidents and presidents of student councils tend to be above the average in size, although size is not an important factor in itself. It is also true that business executives, school superintendents, political leaders, and all in positions of leadership tend to be above average in size. There are many exceptions—size alone is a poor guarantee of leadership. Among the important characteristics taken into account in the selection of class presidents and presidents of student councils are intelligence and scholarship. Students who are bright and have good marks are most likely to be selected. One can be reasonably sure that a dull student will not be selected as class president. As is true in the selection of all leaders, friendliness and the ability to get along with people are major considerations, too.

A characteristic of leaders that is to be expected, since it is consistent with the very idea of leadership, is extroversion. Just as we should expect to find that leaders usually have good personalities and are intelligent, so we should expect that they would be extroverted persons; that is, persons whose thoughts and interests center in others. Leaders have outgoing personalities. The person whose thoughts and interests are centered in self and who is self-conscious can hardly be a leader. Leadership falls to the person who likes to be with people and knows how to work with them. Such a person lives outside of himself, so to speak—in other words, is extroverted.

A willingness to work and the habit of industry constitute a very important factor in leadership. A lazy person is seldom selected. It is not the purpose of the author to moralize, but this is an opportune time to point out that leadership, like success in any field, is to be had

only at the price of hard work. Talent and good ideas are barren if not nurtured and developed by sustained and occasionally by distasteful effort.

Among senior high-school and even junior high-school and grade-school children, socioeconomic status is taken into account in choosing a leader. Students with better clothes, more pocket money, parents with more education, and a better home have a prestige and standing that work to their advantage. A person having these advantages at least symbolizes leadership and therefore has a head start over a person of lower socioeconomic status.

All in all, the factors that make for leadership are good personality (being a "good fellow"), intelligence, size, success in a special field (athletics, art, or dramatics), being extroverted, being a hard worker, and good socioeconomic status. Most of these qualities or factors are usually found in the person who is a leader. In the first place, these qualities tend to go hand in hand. In other words, a person who is a good fellow is more likely than not to be intelligent, of good socioeconomic status, and a hard worker. Similarly, if one takes a person with intelligence or high socioeconomic status or any other of the above qualities, one will find that the other qualities tend to accompany that quality. In other words, they tend to appear in combination in the same person.

**Friends and Friendship.** Social development and the making of friends are accelerated when children learn to talk and to understand what is said. Communication is the core of social relationships. When people speak with each other and have conversation, the beginnings of friendships are formed. The person who can speak well and express his thoughts and ideas has an advantage in making friends.

People need friends and companions. In fact, the capacity for friendship is a valid index to the level of a person's social development. We shall consider the factors that result in friendships. Specifically, why should Bob and Bill, Mary and Jane, Fred and Lillian be friends?

The factors that make for friendships are as follows:

- Going to the same school.
- Being in the same classroom.
- Living in the same neighborhood.
- Similarity in mental abilities.
- Similarity in recreational interests—interest and ability in play, games, and recreation.
- Similarity in age.
- Similarity in socioeconomic status.
- Similarity in religious background.
- Similarity in type of personality—*e.g.*, extroverts tend to select extroverts and introverts tend to select introverts as friends.

The factor of propinquity, or being near, is an obvious cause for the formation of friendships. Not all persons who are near each other in one place or another become friends, but people cannot become friends unless they get a chance to see each other. Children of the same neighborhood, those who go to the same school and are in the same classroom are sure to get acquainted, and those who like each other become friends. A person's situation, the places where he finds himself are the places where he meets the people from whom he selects his friends. A person makes new friends as he grows older and finds himself in different situations, but he seems to remember always his school and neighborhood friends.

Besides propinquity, the other important factor in determining friendships is similarity. Birds of a feather flock together. Bright children tend to associate with bright, average with average, and dull with dull. It is rare that a bright child and a dull child are companions. They do not enjoy each other because they do not find each other interesting. Children of about the same chronological age and about the same brightness are "birds of a feather" and tend to be companions.

Age, of course, is a basic factor in friendship. Children of the same age tend to be the same size and in the same grade and to have the same interests and the same mental development. There are wide ranges, of course, for each age; but, during the childhood, adolescent and early adult years, companions usually differ very little in age. In the thirties and forties and at older ages, there is greater variation, though even then friends and companions usually do not differ very much, chronologically.

In friendships and romances between the sexes, the ages are usually about the same. Here, too, in the late teens and twenties there is a closer correspondence in age than later. Usually the young man is a year or two older than the young woman, but often they are the same age, and in some instances the fiancée or wife is a little older. At the older ages a man may marry a woman considerably younger, and once in a while a man will marry a woman 10, 20, and more years older. Marriage should be regarded as a permanent companionship and partnership, and consequently it is usually thought unwise for two people who vary much in age to marry, for they differ so much in their interests and abilities that the bond between them is weakened. When the young wife wants to dance, the old husband wants to sit in the easy chair and read the newspaper.

One of the reasons advanced for not giving very bright children too much extra promotion is that they will then be in a grade with children 3 or 4 years older than they are. This would not be important in a graduate school, where, for example, a person of twenty-two may be in classes with persons of twenty-five, but it does matter in the seventh

grade if children nine and ten years old are with children of twelve and thirteen. Very bright younger children can do the schoolwork satisfactorily enough, but sometimes they are not big enough physically and old enough socially to cope with the larger, older children of their grade. Consequently, they may develop attitudes of insecurity and inferiority that may handicap them socially as long as they live.

Persons of the same play and recreational interests and activities tend to be friends. We may ask the question whether people become friends because they play together or play together because they are friends. There is no doubt that each situation influences the other, but probably the cause-and-effect relationship in this instance is to be found in similar interests, which cause people to get together for their activities. Playing together at what they like—ball, cards, dancing, etc.—causes them to enjoy each other and thus develop friendships.

Because friends tend to have a common outlook and comparable mental abilities, it is not at all surprising that extroverts favor extroverts as friends and that introverts favor introverts. There is a theory, and it is commonly held, that opposites attract each other. Of course, this is true in many instances, but more often it is the likes who attract each other. Friendship is based on common tastes and interests. Naturally, persons who are socially inclined and happy with people are likely to strike up friendships with each other. Similarly, those who are less social and more retiring will find greater satisfaction in each other.

Socioeconomic status refers to social and economic standing. A person who has high standing in the community and a good income and who lives in a well-furnished house of good quality and ample proportions is said to have good socioeconomic status, while a poorly educated day laborer of small income who lives in a small, dilapidated house in a section of town known as Shackville has low socioeconomic status. These are the extremes, and between these most persons can be classified.

Children and adults of the higher socioeconomic levels associate with others of the higher levels, those of the average levels with others of the average levels, and those of the low levels with others of the low levels. There are exceptions, of course, but society is so alert to observe the exceptions as to constitute a form of censorship causing a reduction in the number of exceptions that might occur.

Parents of children on the "right side of the tracks" discourage their children from striking up friendships among children on the wrong side. It is a rare mother or father of children usually dressed in clean, white collars and blouses, pressed trousers or dresses, and shined shoes who is not upset when their children take up with some little ragamuffin.

The factor of propinquity, or being near, is an obvious cause for the formation of friendships. Not all persons who are near each other in one place or another become friends, but people cannot become friends unless they get a chance to see each other. Children of the same neighborhood, those who go to the same school and are in the same classroom are sure to get acquainted, and those who like each other become friends. A person's situation, the places where he finds himself are the places where he meets the people from whom he selects his friends. A person makes new friends as he grows older and finds himself in different situations, but he seems to remember always his school and neighborhood friends.

Besides propinquity, the other important factor in determining friendships is similarity. Birds of a feather flock together. Bright children tend to associate with bright, average with average, and dull with dull. It is rare that a bright child and a dull child are companions. They do not enjoy each other because they do not find each other interesting. Children of about the same chronological age and about the same brightness are "birds of a feather" and tend to be companions.

Age, of course, is a basic factor in friendship. Children of the same age tend to be the same size and in the same grade and to have the same interests and the same mental development. There are wide ranges, of course, for each age; but, during the childhood, adolescent and early adult years, companions usually differ very little in age. In the thirties and forties and at older ages, there is greater variation, though even then friends and companions usually do not differ very much, chronologically.

In friendships and romances between the sexes, the ages are usually about the same. Here, too, in the late teens and twenties there is a closer correspondence in age than later. Usually the young man is a year or two older than the young woman, but often they are the same age, and in some instances the fiancée or wife is a little older. At the older ages a man may marry a woman considerably younger, and once in a while a man will marry a woman 10, 20, and more years older. Marriage should be regarded as a permanent companionship and partnership, and consequently it is usually thought unwise for two people who vary much in age to marry, for they differ so much in their interests and abilities that the bond between them is weakened. When the young wife wants to dance, the old husband wants to sit in the easy chair and read the newspaper.

One of the reasons advanced for not giving very bright children too much extra promotion is that they will then be in a grade with children 3 or 4 years older than they are. This would not be important in a graduate school, where, for example, a person of twenty-two may be in classes with persons of twenty-five, but it does matter in the seventh

grade if children nine and ten years old are with children of twelve and thirteen. Very bright younger children can do the schoolwork satisfactorily enough, but sometimes they are not big enough physically and old enough socially to cope with the larger, older children of their grade. Consequently, they may develop attitudes of insecurity and inferiority that may handicap them socially as long as they live.

Persons of the same play and recreational interests and activities tend to be friends. We may ask the question whether people become friends because they play together or play together because they are friends. There is no doubt that each situation influences the other, but probably the cause-and-effect relationship in this instance is to be found in similar interests, which cause people to get together for their activities. Playing together at what they like—ball, cards, dancing, etc.—causes them to enjoy each other and thus develop friendships.

Because friends tend to have a common outlook and comparable mental abilities, it is not at all surprising that extroverts favor extroverts as friends and that introverts favor introverts. There is a theory, and it is commonly held, that opposites attract each other. Of course, this is true in many instances, but more often it is the likes who attract each other. Friendship is based on common tastes and interests. Naturally, persons who are socially inclined and happy with people are likely to strike up friendships with each other. Similarly, those who are less social and more retiring will find greater satisfaction in each other.

Socioeconomic status refers to social and economic standing. A person who has high standing in the community and a good income and who lives in a well-furnished house of good quality and ample proportions is said to have good socioeconomic status, while a poorly educated day laborer of small income who lives in a small, dilapidated house in a section of town known as Shackville has low socioeconomic status. These are the extremes, and between these most persons can be classified.

Children and adults of the higher socioeconomic levels associate with others of the higher levels, those of the average levels with others of the average levels, and those of the low levels with others of the low levels. There are exceptions, of course, but society is so alert to observe the exceptions as to constitute a form of censorship causing a reduction in the number of exceptions that might occur.

Parents of children on the "right side of the tracks" discourage their children from striking up friendships among children on the wrong side. It is a rare mother or father of children usually dressed in clean, white collars and blouses, pressed trousers or dresses, and shined shoes who is not upset when their children take up with some little ragamuffin.

It is not implied that there is a caste system based on socioeconomic levels. Nevertheless, income, position, social standing, the house and the part of town in which it is located—these are strong factors in determining a person's associates. It is the hope, of course, of American democracy that everyone has the opportunity to obtain a good education, to receive a position and income commensurate with his value, and thus to raise himself to a good socioeconomic level. Experience has proved thousands of times that people can change their socioeconomic levels from one extreme to the other in one generation and that social status is determined in a general way by individual merit.

It is unnecessary to say much about religious background and friendship except that the same principles apply as for other factors. Sharp differences in religious points of view are not conducive to friendship. Generally, Jews get along better with Jews, Catholics with Catholics, and Protestants with Protestants. Also, those who are conservative and orthodox have more in common with each other than they would have with those who are progressive and modern in their religious points of view.

Here again we have a problem. People must learn to become sufficiently mature socially to be sympathetic with and tolerant of conflicting points of view. A socially mature person possesses the ability and has the habit of trying to be understanding of other people and their attitudes and beliefs.

**Family Influences, Social Status, and Social Development.** Not all the factors mentioned influence the formation of friendships and social attitudes at all ages. In childhood, especially in earlier childhood, socioeconomic status and religious background play little or no part in influencing the development of friendships. Children are not conscious of these factors until taught by older children or, especially by their parents. When they acquire prejudices from their parents or are taught that it reflects on their personal worth to associate with the "wrong" children, then are children influenced by the standing of other children's parents. Of course, we should hasten to add that parents should be careful to see that their children do not play with children who do not exert a good influence. This is only good sense. Parents can hardly be too vigilant in observing the companions of their children from this point of view.

The child is nurtured and shaped by family and home influences for 6 years usually before he begins school. He may be an only child or the oldest or youngest; he may have democratic or authoritarian, harmonious or contentious parents; he may have moved frequently within the community or from one community or section to another; he may live in the tenement, middle-class, or upper-class section. All these conditions influence social development.

In homes, for example, where parents agree on the control and discipline of their children, the latter are better adjusted than are children from homes where parents are in conflict over methods of their management. Where parents are democratic rather than authoritarian, children tend to be more active, aggressive, and curious and exhibit more leadership. Children from authoritarian homes tend to be less aggressive socially, not as curious or original, but quiet and submissive.

Some children are moved about so much that they do not have their home in one place for more than a comparatively short time. Therefore they frequently become strangers in new communities and have to break into established friendship groups in order to have companionship. These experiences are sure to affect their feelings, attitudes, and social responses. Some evidence indicates that considerable mobility causes feelings of isolation, uncertainty, and insecurity. This, of course, is what can logically be expected from not having a chance to grow deep roots of friendship in any particular place.

Most children are not conscious of their socioeconomic status until they have been in school a year or two. This consciousness is awakened by apparent differences in socioeconomic levels and the various experiences which prompt children to be conscious of better and poorer homes and the status of their fathers' work. They sense, too, that the amount of their parent's education influences their standing. Children of the higher socioeconomic levels obtain more nourishment for their egos and feel more confident. They are socially and economically more secure and have fewer worries. They are also more aggressive and dominant on the average than children of the less favored socioeconomic levels. The socially and economically favored children have more social poise and more interest in music and other arts. They tend to have more conservative viewpoints politically than do the underprivileged. There are, of course, individual differences, but the trends or general differences have been indicated.

The child is affected socially in a situation, on the one hand, where the parents are college graduates, the family visit with relatives and friends in various parts of the state and nation, the mother has household help, the father is a successful professional man or businessman wearing "Sunday clothes" or, on the other hand, where the home is an old house in a dilapidated neighborhood, money is often short, the language slangy and profane, neighbors or friends seldom drop in, and the father's clothes are stiff and smelly from the grime and dirt of his prestigeless job.

From childhood, through adolescence, and throughout adulthood, class consciousness develops from admission to play groups, gangs, cliques, fraternities, and societies. Those who are not favored by their



social and economic backgrounds have greater need for social participation but still are denied many opportunities that are readily granted to those reared in more favorable circumstances.

In many classrooms the children may come from homes of the same general socioeconomic classification, but in others the children come from a wide range of homes. Children soon become aware of their socioeconomic status and standing, and they consequently tend to associate with each other according to these standings. Children with the higher standings acquire prestige and pride thereby, and this tends to give them more authority to choose their own friends and greater potentiality for leadership. Still a child with more capacities and better personal qualities can overcome in part at least his socioeconomic handicaps. Although the child's background may be a penalty or advantage, individual merit will be recognized to a considerable extent usually.

**Interrelation of Factors for Friendship.** As with most factors, the factors for friendship are not separate or discrete, but related. For example, age between birth and twenty relates closely to mental abilities, for mental powers increase with an increase in age. From birth to death, play and recreational interests correspond to age. Boys in their teens play strenuous competitive games that are not played by men in their thirties and forties. There are sports, games, and recreation that are appropriate, within limits of course, to every age.

The neighborhood one lives in and socioeconomic status are related, for neighborhoods tend to be fairly homogeneous according to type of houses and education and vocations of persons living in them and also according to facilities such as parks, saloons, churches, and school grounds.

The school also tends to reflect the socioeconomic levels of its neighborhood and thus to characterize it. The better and more modern schools are more likely to be found in the newer districts of higher socioeconomic status and the older, poorer schools in districts of poor homes at lower socioeconomic levels.

In general, then, many of the factors and their influences in the making of friends tend to be interrelated. Consequently, it is rarely one factor that influences the social development of a person, but several in combination.

The effect on the teacher of the foregoing discussion of social development should be to arouse in her an intelligent consciousness of why some children are leaders, why some children are friendly, and others are not. The teacher may in her efforts to "put over" a subject or topic forget the social forces that influence the child. Sight must not be lost of the school's part in forming friendships and its opportunities

for training leaders. The forces in school that make for good and poor social development should be differentiated. The teacher should be greatly concerned if a boy or girl is shy and retiring, if he does not seem to be conversing with his classmates, or if he walks about without noticing his fellows. If a teacher is alert to the problem of social development, she can provide opportunity for conversation or a chance for leadership, can stimulate play during recess, and encourage wholesome activity.

Some children do not have a true image of their actual popularity or potentiality for achieving a favorable standing among their fellows. A student may underestimate himself and may not appreciate some of the personal qualities he possesses; or he may be unaware of annoying mannerisms and habits that characterize him. By means of discussion and encouragement, the teacher can help the student obtain a truer perception of himself. Then he may gain the confidence he needs and achieve happier relationships with his fellows.

**Sociometrics, Social Acceptability, and Popularity.** When a pupil is named by many classmates as a "best friend" or as someone whom they would like to play and work with, this is evidence that he is popular and well accepted socially. On the other hand, those pupils who are thus chosen least often or not at all are least accepted by the group. Other evidences of friendship, popularity, and social acceptance are selection for class offices and other positions of leadership and the number of valentines and presents received.

In order to evaluate such popularity and social acceptability, pupils are asked to list the names of other pupils they would like to have work or play with them. Selection on these bases and others similar to them indicates the extent of social acceptability of individual pupils. Pupils are also asked to name those they would not select. This method of measuring acceptance and rejection is called *sociometrics*.

Another method of getting an evaluation of pupils' social and personal characteristics is to use a "guess who" test. This consists of descriptions of people who are happy and unhappy, friendly and unfriendly, and so on. The descriptions are in pairs as indicated, and the pupils of a class name the pupils who fit the descriptions. When several children pick a classmate as having certain characteristics, it is probably a fact that such characteristics are true ones.

A teacher should study the personal qualities of her pupils and note the extent to which they are accepted or rejected, the extent of their popularity, and evidences of leadership. The teacher will also note the social pattern of her class if she observes carefully. There are small cliques or groups within the class, and some children who do not belong to a group have very few, if any, friends. The teacher, if she

studies the characteristics of her pupils and the social and economic forces to which each is subjected, may find some causes for the extent of their social acceptance or rejection.

A knowledge of certain factors related to popularity and social acceptance may help the teacher understand the social life and mental states of her pupils. Friendship and popularity tend to come to those who are cheerful, happy, enthusiastic, friendly, good-looking, and active, who enjoy a joke, and who initiate games and activities. The pupils who enjoy the friendship of their fellow pupils are extroverted and wholesomely aggressive socially. Friendship, it seems, is based on sound personal qualities and is not fostered by superficial tricks and artificially induced relationships.

There is some relationship between intelligence and social acceptance and between scholarship and social acceptance. The correlation is not high, but the children with most friends tend to have higher I.Q.'s and also higher achievement in school subjects. Although the average intelligence and achievement of the most popular are higher than those of the least popular, still there is considerable overlap in the I.Q.'s and achievement in the two groups.

The greatest change in the social interests of pupils which takes place from the fourth to the twelfth grade is the interest in members of the opposite sex. In the sixth grade, which is the prepubescent period, we have the gang age; at this time only about one-third of the boys and girls choose someone from the opposite sex. But in the twelfth grade about two-thirds of them do, and most of this change has taken place by the time the ninth grade has been reached. The social change exhibited follows closely the physiological changes that have taken place in the transition to adolescence. Girls change by being less interested in active games, but both boys and girls grow socially through their junior and senior high-school years.

In Figs. 8 and 9 are two sociograms or sociographs which show the designation of best friends (Fig. 8) and those liked least (Fig. 9). There are 25 eighth-grade pupils, 14 girls and 9 boys. In Fig. 8, the sociogram is arranged in parallel columns and rows with the circles representing the girls and the squares representing the boys. Separation according to sex is useful because it makes interpretation of the patterns of selections and rejection much easier.

In Fig. 8 it will be observed that 14, 18, and 22 are the most popular and that some of the girls are not chosen as best friends. Among the boys, 1, 7, 3, and 6 are named most frequently as best friends. It is interesting to note that 1 is popular with both boys and girls. Only one boy, 10, designates a girl, 21, as a best friend, but three girls, 13, 22, and 25, named boys as their best friends. It will be observed that there are some mutual designations. These are 17 and 18, 12 and 14, 1 and

3, and 6 and 7. No boy and girl designated each other as best friends. Such mutual friendships will develop later in high school. If no boys designate girls as best friends or girls name boys as best friends, such separation of choices by sex is called *cleavage*.

In Fig. 9 another arrangement is illustrated, and in this case the most disliked are indicated. The purpose of the concentric circles is to permit a separation into four groups according to degree of acceptance

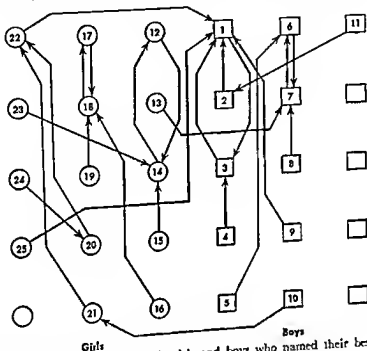


Fig. 8. Sociogram for eighth-grade girls and boys who named their best friend. (Adapted from Clark, R. A., and C. McGuire: *Sociographic Analysis of Sociometric Valuations*, *Child Development* 23: 129-140, 1952.)

or rejection. In Fig. 9 the least liked are placed in the center, and the rest are located according to the concentric circles on the basis of the amount of rejection, the least disliked or rejected being placed in the outside ring. In this example there is not a clear-cut division into fourths because it did not work out that way. The boys and girls are separated as before, and the pupils represented in Fig. 9 are the same as those in Fig. 8.

It will be observed that girl 25 is very much disliked and certainly needs help in learning how to reorganize herself and in changing her behavior so that she will stimulate her classmates more favorably. Even two boys designated girl 25 as least liked by them. Boy 10 is most disliked, and a girl, 23, expresses her dislike for him. Observe that boy 1, who is very popular, is named as being disliked by boy 6. It

will be noted that there is no cleavage in Fig. 9 either, although, there often is in the sixth grade and lower.

A number of terms are used to describe students according to degree of acceptance and rejection. Those who are most wanted or have greatest acceptance are called *stars*. *Rejectees* are the opposite of stars and

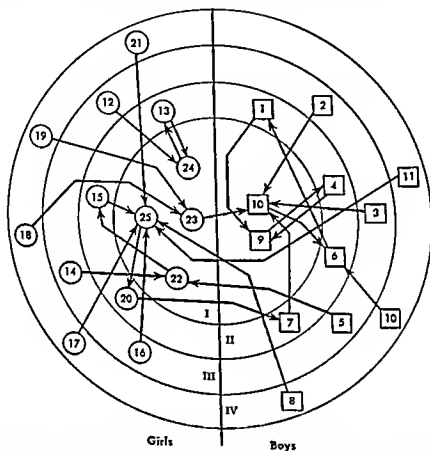


Fig. 9. Sociogram for eighth-grade girls and boys who indicated whom they liked least. (Same boys and girls as in Fig. 8.) (Adapted from Clark, R. A., and G. McGuire: *Sociographic Analysis of Sociometric Valuations*, *Child Development* 23: 129-140, 1952.)

are those who are least accepted or most rejected. *Isolates* and *neglectees* are those who receive fewest favorable choices and also fewest designations for not being wanted. An examination of Figs. 8 and 9 will show that there are a number of boys and girls who are mentioned neither as a best friend nor as being least liked.

**The Sociogram and Social Development.** The sociogram tells the teacher what the social structure of her class is. By its design she locates the selectees, rejectees, and neglectees. The degree of social valence ranges from the most wanted person, who is chosen by many in his class, to the rejectee, about whom a considerable number have expressed a don't-want-him-around attitude. The sociogram locates the constellations of social relationships.

By carefully observing her pupils with the facts of the sociogram in mind, the teacher can learn why each pupil has the social status he has within his class and then set about to improve the personality of various individuals and the social climate of the group. When committees are formed, it is well ordinarily to put compatibles together, with the addition of an isolate (neglected or rejectee) with a view to his being integrated into the group activities and effectively socialized. Children who have tensions in their interpersonal relationships are discovered and can be guided in their association so that much of their tension will be released.

If teamwork is lacking, the pupils may be arranged and organized so that they will give and take, will cooperate with each other, will make group decisions, and will adjust to different personalities. It is of particular importance that teacher and pupils be as conscious of the problems of social development as they are of subject matter and that they try to help each other achieve healthy personalities and social maturity.

Sociometric methods can be used to help individual pupils. A sociogram reveals, for instance, that a certain child is not selected by a single classmate but is rejected by many. Zola Rasner, a teacher of a sixth grade, tells of Mary, who was not chosen by anyone and who was a social isolate. She had no friends in her class and kept near the teacher in order to acquire some social security.

One day when Mary was absent, a classroom discussion about how anyone left out of the group is bound to be unhappy and how everyone has some talent that can enrich the work of the group led to the suggestion that Mary care for the classroom flowers during the following week. Being good in arithmetic, Mary was also encouraged to help her classmates who were having difficulty with their problems. Later, Mary was selected for traffic duty. The teacher had an opportunity to discuss with Mary how she could help her classmates while working with them. Stress was laid on how to be courteous and friendly. Thus Mary sensed that there were ways of making friends.

Her negativism diminished, and she became cooperative instead. Because participation had replaced isolation, Mary acquired a feeling of belongingness and therefore a social security which was missing before. "Subsequent sociograms showed that Mary was increasingly accepted by her classmates, and finally she was elected chairman of a committee."

A person can learn to be more effective socially or how to get along more successfully with others. There are social learnings as well as academic ones. The case of Mary is an illustration of how a pupil learned to deal with her fellows and overcome her unfavorable social attitudes and responses. A continual and sustained study of children's

emotional and social health is needed so that they can be guided and instructed with the purpose of helping them to live successfully with others. Probably the best procedure is to guide a child so that he will have good experiences, but ideas about dealing with others should help, too. It is desirable to conduct class discussions on how to behave so that one will be friendly and have friends. Often a child is not aware of what he should do and can do to be an effective and happy member of a group; a few ideas brought out in a general discussion may set him thinking about his personal relationships, and he may learn to find solutions to his social problems. Probably if a pupil worked on his problems of personal relationships half as much as on his arithmetic or chemistry problems, he could solve most of them and learn to be a very successful group member. The old traditional concept of "behave yourself" would then be replaced by social learnings which would enable one to be a highly socialized person.

**Sociodrama and Social Understanding.** *Sociodrama* refers to dramatizing social behavior or those situations involving intergroup relations. For example, the problem of a new student comes up. The discussion centers on being a transfer student from another school and therefore having to enter a school where everyone is a stranger to him. Many problems of learning how to get along arise especially for the new student, but also for fellow students in his classes who must or should deal with him.

So the students and teacher propose that they dramatize the situation of a new student in a new school environment. They plan the general structure of the sociodrama and decide on the roles to be taken. In this sociodrama the characters would be the new student, the teacher, the students in the classroom, and whoever the group thinks should be included. Then they dramatize the various events and situations that might occur or develop when a student transfers to a new school where he is a complete stranger. The lines are not written but are spoken spontaneously as various scenes develop consistent with the experiences which new students have.

After the various relationships between and among the members of the groups are shown, it is desirable to discuss the sociodrama with a view to increasing social understandings. In this case the discussion would center on what the new student, the teacher, and the class could do to be socially intelligent. If the group thought it desirable, the various roles could be taken by different students and the sociodrama played again. It would be sure to develop differently, and new aspects would be brought out.

Many social and personal problems can be dramatized in this fashion. Some other examples are problems pertaining to dating, loneliness, aggressive behavior, withdrawal, being friendly, and use of

the family car. By playing and developing various roles in socio-dramas, the players as well as the observers and discussants gain sympathetic and understanding insights into personal and social problems, the meanings of which would otherwise escape them. Thus there will be much social learning.

In frequent instances a direct therapeutic gain from role playing in the sociodrama is the release of tensions. Many people have tensions over their personal relationships which would be released by dramatizing the social situations that cause those tensions. Their release results from gaining social understanding and skill, from expressing oneself in situations where tensions had choked off expression, and from developing a feeling and sympathy for others.

**Some Evidences of Social Maturity.** Only a brief discussion of the symptoms or evidences of good social development will be presented here. The teacher should understand these symptoms, and she should be at least as conscious of the social development of her pupils as she is concerned about their learning of subject matter. She should also be concerned about her own social maturity, for she is the key person in developing the socializing forces of the classroom. Furthermore, if a teacher can achieve a high order of social maturity herself, which is largely a matter of achieving a good personality, she achieves a fuller and happier life for herself, which is essential if she is going to do the same for her pupils.

Evidences of social maturity should be considered in terms of age. Some apply to all ages, but others are characteristics of certain ages. For example, in achieving social maturity, a time is reached when a person must become economically independent. He cannot always depend on his parents for support. Obviously, that time is not at the age of five or ten. At some time during the teens, however, persons either should become economically independent or should be preparing themselves for economic competence. Some qualities or habits should be characteristic of all ages. For example, the control of one's temper and other unbecoming emotions should be expected of persons of all ages.

The socially mature person:

1. Has a capacity for friendship and rarely makes enemies. This capacity develops rapidly after language ability is acquired. He has friends and likes to be with people.
2. Has good control of his emotions, has a pleasant disposition and a tolerant and understanding attitude, and rarely shows offensive feelings and emotions.
3. Has the power of leadership. Rudimentary forms are evident in early childhood, and this power becomes more articulate with increase in age.
4. Has the ability and desire to cooperate with others. Some are leaders



in certain activities, some in others, but all should be disposed to cooperate and learn to follow the leadership.

5. Learns to become economically independent. In the teens a person should be acquiring his own economic wings and be learning to earn his own living.

6. Becomes weaned away from the parental roof and establishes his own home and family. This parallels the achieving of economic independence.

7. Has play interests and engages in recreational activities suitable to his age—random activity in infancy; individual and imaginative play during early childhood; then individual play; strenuous team games during the pre-teens, the teens, and the twenties; and the recreational activities suitable to later ages. During adulthood, a person plays to live and does not live to play.

8. Lives according to high social and moral standards and is not delinquent. During childhood and youth, delinquency increases with age and reaches its greatest frequency during the teens and twenties, after which it declines with age.

9. Is mannerly, courteous, and gentle in personal relationships. During childhood and the teens a tendency to be boisterous and of a rough-and-ready nature may be evident. During the later teens this surplus and randomly used energy is redirected, and the "roughneck" or tomboy tends to become a young gentleman or young lady.

10. Achieves good heterosexual relationships. Gets along well with members of the opposite sex.

## SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Social growth consists in improving one's personal relationships, in learning how one gets along with people successfully.

Physical and mental growth contribute to social development in giving a person more capacity for dealing effectively with social situations. Physical and mental weaknesses and defects tend to maladjust a person.

A child is very individualistic in early childhood, but living with people socializes him so that he evolves from extreme individualism to being a socialized person.

Experiences in home or school develop feelings, attitudes, and habits that either facilitate or block social maturing.

A person who is self-centered, egocentric, or introverted, in that sense, cannot be a socially mature person. To be truly socialized, one must be outgoing and interested in other people.

With the independence of adolescence there is a great incidence of delinquency, most of which manifests itself for the first time before the age of twenty-one, although crime and delinquency reach their high point in the twenties.

Children should visit school a few times before they are old enough to enroll.

The old-fashioned question-and-answer type of teaching, the

authoritarian method, is not conducive to the social development of the child. Methods evoking cooperative effort socialize the pupil.

Leadership is an evidence of social maturity. Students who are school leaders tend to be characterized by better scholarship, higher intelligence, more attractive physique, good work habits, success in extracurricular activities, and higher socioeconomic status.

Home and school environments can make a child feel frustrated, resentful, overdependent, inferior and insecure in many ways, or the opposite.

A number of factors contribute to the formation of friendship, such as being in the same schoolroom and living in the same neighborhood. Personal factors are similarity of mental abilities, age, recreational interests, socioeconomic status, and religion. Also, extroverts favor extroverts, and introverts favor introverts. Several of these factors tend to be interrelated.

In school, children are accepted or rejected by others. Sociometric methods may be used to determine the social acceptance and rejection of children within a group or class. In some classes there are cliques. Some pupils enjoy wide acceptance; others are unpopular. The teacher should know the social pattern of her room and treat her pupils accordingly.

The sociodrama is designed to develop social perceptions and understandings and also to release tensions and resolve conflicts.

Persons are socially mature who can make friends, who are leaders, who have good emotional control, who cooperate with others, who become economically and socially independent, who have wholesome recreational interests, who maintain high moral standards, who have good manners, and who get along with members of the opposite sex.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. What can be done to help beginning pupils get started in school so that they will make a good social adjustment?
2. Some children in a classroom are popular. Others are neutral in their appeal to others, while some tend to be rejected. What problems result, and what can be done about them?
3. Describe the socially best developed person whom you know; the most poorly developed.
4. What use can a teacher make of the sociogram? Of the sociodrama?
5. Nancy and Bill are going together. Nancy is bright, likes to be with people, is a leader, has rich and well-educated parents, and appreciates her church experiences. Bill is rather dull; he says he likes to be with Nancy alone and does not care to be with other people; his socioeconomic status is low; and he does not care for church. They are likely to become very good friends and then fall in love and stay in love forever. Do you think this statement true or not?

6. Describe what you think is an ideal school for the social development of the pupils. What are the practices of a school that overlooks its opportunities to develop its pupils socially?

7. A certain child is bright, is well developed physically, and has wholesome, well-adjusted parents. The child is likely to be well adjusted. Do you think this statement true or not?

8. What does it mean to be egocentric?

9. Do "birds of a feather flock together," or are unlikes attracted to each other?

10. Why do people who associate with each other extensively tend to be of the same age?

11. Take a sheet of paper, and draw a line down the middle of it. On the top of the left half, put down the name or names of one or more of the most prominent school leaders in your school. On the top of the right side put the names of those who show the least leadership. List the characteristics of each.

12. "In order to get along in this world, a person has to be individualistic and very aggressive. Staying away from others and working alone is best, for after all a person has to depend on himself." What do you think of this statement?

13. Discuss the relation of home situations to social development.

14. Knowing that the adolescent ages are the years when antisocial behavior seems to come to the fore, what do you think can be done to bring about better social development of the adolescent?

15. What are stars, neglectees, isolates, and rejectees?

## 10. Measuring the Capacity for Learning

### *Using the General Intelligence or Mental Test*

**What to Look For.** Learn about Binet's development of the individual examination and why his method succeeded and Cattell's effort's failed.

What are the characteristics of the Stanford-Binet intelligence test—nature of test materials, age-scale organization, and basal age?

Group tests followed the individual mental examination. Try to comprehend the nature of material in group tests, the mental processes tested by such material, and how age norms are established.

It is pointed out that the abilities tested by the different types of tasks and test materials are related to a considerable degree or have a common core.

The two terms *mental age* and *intelligence quotient* are explained.

How is the intelligence quotient calculated?

Study carefully how children may have the same intelligence quotients but may differ in their mental ages and how they may have the same mental age or mental level but may differ in their intelligence quotients.

Observe that children of the same C.A. and I.Q. and thus the same M.A. are of the same intelligence and also tend to be similar in physical and social maturity.

The way the intelligence of people is distributed is a basic fact that should be studied carefully. Note the different classifications according to I.Q.

The concept of feeble-mindedness should be understood in terms of I.Q. and effectiveness of behavior. Note the three classes of feeble-mindedness.

The very superior group have a very wide range of ability, but all are exceptionally well endowed intellectually.

**Introduction.** Anna and Paul were 2 pupils in a Minnesota rural school who stood out by contrast among the 33 pupils of that school.

Anna was six years old, an industrious little pupil who sat in the left outside row, the row for the first-graders. Paul was a tall adolescent boy of fourteen who occupied a desk in the other outside row. Paul was only a fourth-grader, but he sat in the eighth-grade row because the seats were larger. To that extent, at least, an adjustment had been made for him. The teacher could readily see that Paul was a big boy and that he needed a larger seat than the other fourth-graders.

The teacher, however, could not see so definitely the degree of Paul's mental capacity. She knew that he had not been a bright student, for he had spent 8 years in school and was still only in the fourth grade. Furthermore, in spite of his age, he was a poor fourth-grader.

Anna, on the other hand, was an excellent pupil. She could do a little arithmetic and read aloud unfalteringly. She grasped meanings well and could explain what she had read. Her parents were aware of her achievements and felt that she was being well taught.

Paul, unlike Anna, read haltingly. As he read, he jerked and awkwardly bowed his head to many words, and appropriately enough, for they were his master. He knew little of what he read and was unhappy when he struggled with the words. His teacher made him try hard and was often impatient. She hoped the time would come when Paul would "wake up" and learn as easily as the other pupils did. Because Paul learned little, his parents thought that he was poorly taught.

If the teacher had measured the mental abilities of her pupils by the use of mental tests, she might have learned something about her pupils that would have enabled her to treat them more realistically. She would have discovered Anna's mental status in terms of average children of her age and thus understood why Anna was proficient and how rapidly she could be expected to learn. Paul's capacity to learn could also have been determined, and the educational process could have been adapted to him almost as effectively as the seating adjustment. Thus adjustment could have been made to his mental as well as to his physical size.

**The Development of Mental Examinations.** Differences in the capacities of pupils and problems arising from these differences have always confronted the teacher. Psychologists and educators recognized the need for accurate mental tests, and since late in the nineteenth century, attempts have been made to devise them. Tests of mental capacity were being composed and revised at the turn of the century. There were no tests then that could be given to a group of children simultaneously, but a mental test had been devised for testing one child at a time. A test that can be administered to a group is called a *group test*; a test that can be given to only one person at a time is called an *individual test*.

exercises tested sensorimotor abilities but failed to measure mental capacity. Cattell discovered that there was no relationship between the abilities of college students in these tests and their academic success in college. He assumed that ability in school is a general indication of mental ability and concluded that because the ability measured by these tests did not correlate with school ability these tests did not measure intelligence.

It remained for Binet to develop a scale that was actually a mental test. He set out to test the complex mental powers and not the sensorimotor abilities, as others had done, particularly in the newly established psychology laboratories of that time. Binet devised problems and exercises to test comprehension, memory, power of making comparisons, ability to draw conclusions, reasoning, and other mental processes.

**The Age Scale.** Not only did Binet find exercises for measuring mental capacity, but he also arranged his tests in a scale of age levels. The difficulty of the individual tests was determined by the percentages of children of given ages who passed a test. Tests passed by 75 per cent of six-year-olds were placed at the six-year level, and comparably for the other age levels.<sup>1</sup> The principle of the age scale as formulated is like that used by Terman and Merrill in their latest revision. Therefore the study of the Terman-Merrill test in some detail will provide a clear understanding of the individual age scales in general as well as of the last Terman revision.

**The Revised Stanford Binet Tests of Intelligence.** The first Stanford Binet scale, which was a revision by Terman and assistants of the original Binet scale, was published in 1916. This revision had been used extensively for a little over 20 years, and in 1937 the new revised Stanford Binet tests were issued by Terman and Merrill. These appear to be a considerable improvement over the 1916 revision. There are two forms or examinations—Form L and Form M—in the 1937 revision and but one form in the 1916 revision. Thus there are two examinations where there was only one before, so that when a person is retested he can be tested with a different form and the practice effects that accompany the repetition of the same examination can be avoided to some extent.

The test has also been lengthened so that it extends from year level II up through superior adult. Because a test must extend below the age level of the average child being tested, it may be said to be satisfactory on the average for persons ranging from age three up through adulthood. For dull children, the test is not so suitable for those as young as three, but it is quite satisfactory for those four, five, or six

<sup>1</sup> The percentage of successes for each age group, however, was not always exactly 75 per cent.

years of age, depending on the degree of dullness. Bright children a little younger than three may be tested by the 1937 revision.

Table 5 gives a skeleton outline of Forms L and M, showing age level, the number of tests at each age level, and the value of each test. In the lower age levels, from years II to V, there is an extra test, which is called an *alternate*. It is used when a single test does not work out or

TABLE 5. Year level, number of tests, and value\*

Year	Number of tests for both Form L and Form M	Value of each test, months
II.....	6	1
II-6.....	6	1
III.....	6	1
III-6.....	6	1
IV.....	6	1
IV-6.....	6	1
V.....	6	1
VI.....	6	2
VII.....	6	2
VIII.....	6	2
IX.....	6	2
X.....	6	2
XI.....	6	2
XII.....	6	2
XIII.....	6	2
XIV.....	6	2
Average adult.....	8	2
Superior adult I.....	6	4
Superior adult II.....	6	5
Superior adult III.....	6	6

\* 22 years 10 months if all tests are passed.

cannot be used for certain reasons, as sometimes is the case in testing younger children. According to this outline, the maximum mental age that can be tested is 22 years 10 months. The number of tests, alternates, and values is the same for both forms. There is a total of 122 tests and 7 alternate tests for each form.

In order to test a person adequately, it is necessary to find a year level in the examination where he can pass all the tests; this is the basal age. For an average child, this level, or basal age, is usually I or 2 years below the age of the child. Thus, an average three-year-old child will probably pass all the six tests of year level II. A dull three-year-old is not likely to do so; and a very dull one is certain not to succeed with all the tests of year level II. On the other hand, a bright three-year-old can probably *do all the tests* at the three-year-old

level and, if exceptionally bright, can do all those even at the four-year level.

**The Nature of the Tests.** The character of tests varies somewhat throughout the scale from the lowest level through superior adult. At the lowest age levels the verbal nature of the test is minimized by the greater use of objects than at the upper level. At the two-year level, for example, the child is asked to identify a toy kitten, a thimble, a cup, a spoon, a chair, an automobile, a key, and a fork. The use of object material, such as beads, blocks, and other things usually regarded as toys, is obviously more appropriate for young two- and three-year-old children than for adolescents or adults. At the upper age levels the intelligence is measured more by verbal and abstract tests than by concrete or object material.

Even though there is a variation throughout the age levels to the extent that the tests are concrete or abstract, there is a similarity that runs throughout the various age levels, also. An example of this similarity is found in the exercises calling for the repetition of digits after the examiner has spoken them. For example, the examiner will speak at a rate of about 1 a second the digits 4, 9, 2, 6 and then ask the subject to repeat them. At the year level of 2 years 6 months the subject is asked to repeat 2 digits; and at the highest superior-adult level he is asked to repeat 9 digits. Between these extremes, the tests calling for the repetition of digits occur at several age levels. At a few levels the subjects are asked to repeat them backward.

Another type of question that appears at several age levels is one in which the subject is asked to respond to pictures by telling the examiner about them. At the lower levels the subject passes the test if he merely enumerates the objects or persons in the picture. At the level above enumeration, he must describe a picture; and the highest level calls for interpretation. In order to classify as interpretation, the answer must show an awareness of the implication of the picture, must see behind it, so to speak. For a picture of old men outside a post office surrounding a man reading a newspaper, enumeration would consist in saying *men, paper, building*, etc., description would consist in saying that the men are together outside the post office looking at the newspaper, whereas interpretation would consist in saying, "One man has a newspaper that contains very important news, possibly about an election or a war, and he is reading to his friends who have no newspapers." This is explained more fully in the chapter *Mental Growth and Development*.

In addition, there are pictures for which the subjects are asked to fill in missing parts; to compare faces and indicate the prettier ones; and to locate the absurdities such as the shadow falling toward the



sun or the smoke going in one direction and the trees bending in another. Picture tests of this kind vary in difficulty and are placed at age levels according to their difficulty.

Tests of word meaning occur at a number of age levels, also. At the five-year level a child is asked to define simple words like *ball* and *bat*; but at the upper age level the meanings of difficult abstract words are asked for. In fact, in one of the forms of the 1937 revision, there is a vocabulary test consisting of a list of 45 words ranging from the very easy to the very difficult. This vocabulary test, therefore, can be used over a wide age range to discover how many words the subject knows. There are also tests calling for similarities and differences in the meaning of words.

Besides the repetition-of-digits test, memory is also tested by reading a section of a story to the subject and noting how much he can recall, by reading sentences of different lengths and asking the subject to repeat them, and by having the subject copy a pattern of different-shaped beads that has been shown. Thus both auditory and visual memory are tested.

There are other kinds of tests in the Terman and Merrill 1937 Stanford Binet revision, for example, arithmetic problems; questions on what to do under different circumstances, as when thirsty or in danger of being late for school; and interpretation of such absurdities as a soldier saying that everyone is out of step but himself and of proverbs such as "The mouse that has but one hole is easily taken."

Not all the mental tests have been described, but this brief description gives a fairly adequate picture of the general nature of a widely used individual examination in which the various tests are classified into age levels. The nature of the particular tests in the scale indicates that they test various types of memory, power to comprehend and reason, ability to make associations, and also the extent of knowledge of various kinds.

#### GROUP TESTS

Psychologists also sought to develop examinations that would test the mental capacity of a group of persons at one sitting. The individual examination is a satisfactory test of mental capacity, but it usually takes more than an hour to test a child, score his answers, and determine his level of mental development. It was therefore natural to seek a test that could be given to the members of a group all at one time.

About 1915 a number of American psychologists were working on group tests. The entrance of the United States into the First World War caused them to utilize these early efforts in preparing a group intelligence test, known as the *Army Alpha*, for discovering the mental abilities of conscripted soldiers. Results stimulated the construction

of other tests, so that within a few years after the close of the war many group tests for children and youths had been constructed. Now we have so many mental tests that hardly anyone is familiar with them all. The most flourishing period for their construction and use was the decade 1920 to 1929. It was during that decade also that the psychological and educational journals contained the greatest number of articles based on findings obtained from the use of these tests. Although intelligence tests are still used extensively and probably more discriminatingly than ever before, the amount of research based on them has declined considerably. A type of research now in progress is that involving mental examinations given the same subjects several times throughout a comparatively long period of years. Now that psychological examinations have been in use over three decades, such research yields valuable data.

During the period of the Second World War the Army General Classification test was given to about 10,000,000 of the Armed Forces. A revised form is now being used. The Army General Classification test, like the Army Alpha which was used in the First World War, has proved very useful for making a quick and fairly dependable assessment of the mental capacities and powers of those tested. The results have been used along with other information for assigning members of the Armed Forces to the duties for which they are most suited.

**The Exercises in the Group Intelligence Tests.** There are different kinds of exercises in the intelligence tests. To some extent, they all test mental abilities, but the virtue in having a variety of tests is that a wider range of mental abilities is more thoroughly tested. Accordingly, one is likely to obtain a more adequate measurement of general mental ability with a variety of tests than with only one.

Group mental tests include exercises for testing the following: knowledge of words, or extent of vocabulary; reading ability; ability to solve arithmetical problems; ability to complete sentences; general information; capacity for logical relationships; judgment; common sense; etc. Most of the items are verbal in nature, although other kinds are used, such as numbers, figures, and pictures. The following specimens will illustrate the various kinds of items that are usually found in group intelligence or aptitude tests.

**Verbal Content of Mental Tests.** The following items are typical of the kinds of verbal material found in most group intelligence tests. All the verbal items consist of words, and the purpose of such exercises is to test the mental processes in the use and understanding of words. The results contribute to the measurement of general intelligence. In reading the items the different types of verbal items that were used should be observed. The arrangement and structure of the

items should also be noted, and also which are the principal mental processes being tested by the various verbal items.

### I. Vocabulary

Indispensable	(a) clinic, (b) inevitable, (c) essential, (d) routine.	(c)
Erode	(a) rust, (b) disturb, (c) destroy, (d) wear.	( )
Importune—urge	(1) same, (2) opposite.	(1)
Sophisticated—innocent	(1) same, (2) opposite.	( )
(1) Inebriated, (2) infernal, (3) intoxicated,		
(4) intrigued.	1 and 3	
	same	opposite
(1) Tranquillity, (2) turmoil, (3) tendril, (4) travail.		
	same	opposite

Three of the more typical kinds of vocabulary items are illustrated here. The directions are not given, but the reader can readily see what is wanted.

### II. One doesn't belong

(1) Skating, (2) snow, (3) skiing, (4) bobsled, (5) flowers.	(5)
(1) Complex, (2) subconscious, (3) image, (4) referendum,	( )
(5) memory.	

### III. Best answer

"When you start throwing dirt you lose ground" means:	( )
(1) Poor farming results in losing the topsoil.	
(2) Speaking ill of others injures the one doing it.	
(3) One shouldn't waste his resources.	
(4) Small losses result in a big loss.	

### IV. Mixed sentences

Underline the first and last word in these disarranged sentences:  
a administration of need political we change. that my doesn't me wife the  
understand trouble is.

True-false		true	false
first United was the of the president Washington States.			
North Chicago three are Orleans and cities the New America		true	false
the York in New largest.			

### V. Sentence meaning

Procrastination tends to nullify a person's efforts to save time.	true	false
The facade of a building is planned primarily to improve the appearance of its posterior.	true	false

### VI. Information

Nautical refers to (1) mischief, (2) windiness, (3) the sea, (4) ceremony, (5) zero.	(3)
Anglo refers to (1) England, (2) U.S., (3) France, (4) Russia, (5) Heaven.	( )

period of time as many words as possible, with specified prefixes such as *pre-*, *pro-*, *con-*, *en-*, and others. The requirement may be the same for words with suffixes such as *-ed*, *-by*, *-ness*, *-ion*, and others.

**Numerical Materials.** A typical test of this kind follows:

How much does it cost to clean a rug 11 feet wide and 14 feet long at 9 cents a square foot? \_\_\_\_\_

What number added to  $\frac{1}{4}$  of 36 is 2 times 5 plus the number of days in a week?

*Series and logical progression*

Mark out the number that doesn't belong.

18 17 15 12 9 6 (17)

2 4 6 7 11 16 22 ( )

Continue the series.

64 16 32 8 16 4 — — (8, 2)

3 5 10 12 24 26 52 — — ( )

**Form and Space Materials.** The directions for the form and space items (Fig. 10) are omitted except in one item. The structure of the items indicates that in most cases the problem is to pick the one or ones similar to the first one, draw lines similar to the ones given, pick the two parts that make the first one, or pick the form that makes an analogy.

The reader will note that many of the items require reasoning and the perception of logical relationship. Some exercises probably test memory more directly, while others make greater demands on visualization and imagination. All these processes are interrelated or depend to some extent on a general unitary mental power and capacity. Still it requires various kinds of test material and different types of exercises and problems to evoke the wide range of answers which are needed for judging all mental abilities most adequately.

The illustrations given are of the kinds of materials that are used to test intermediate, upper, high-school, and college students, as well as adults in general. Lower-grade test material is more pictorial in nature and less verbal. For younger children the individual mental examination is more satisfactory, because the group test does not work out very well under the third grade. The contents of the most commonly used tests which have been described are arranged according to difficulty in order to test students and others of various age levels.

**Correlation of Subtests.** It was pointed out in connection with some of the subtests that a certain core is common to most of them. Word knowledge, reading ability, and a fund of general information are major elements in this core and are incidentally tested by sections of a test not specifically designed to do so. Because there is a core common to most abilities, there is a correlation between them. The

*VII. Relationships*

Swede: Sweden (1) Spain, (2) Spanish, (3) Chinaman, (4) Korea, (5) China. (3, 5)

Sculptor: statue (1) factory, (2) goldsmith, (3) workers, (4) ornaments, (5) stone. ( )

War: waste:: peace: (1) pipe, (2) property, (3) conservation, (4) treaty. (3)

Bank: money:: granary: (1) teller, (2) grain, (3) books, (4) farm. ( )  
These are called analogies.

Fred is taller than John. John is taller than Ron. Who is the tallest?  
(1) Fred, (2) John, (3) Ron. (1)

Let us assume that all vehicles have four wheels and also that all automobiles have four wheels. Then (1) all vehicles are automobiles, (2) all wagons have four wheels, (3) all vehicles are the same. ( )

Pick the middle one—size, rank, degree:  
(1) Ton, (2) ounce, (3) pound, (4) grain, (5) hundredweight. (3)  
(1) Professor, (2) assistant, (3) associate professor, (4) instructor, (5) assistant professor. ( )

Pick three that most logically belong together:  
(1) Platinum, (2) diamond, (3) jeweler, (4) silver, (5) ruby, (6) gold. (1, 4, 6)  
(1) Oboe, (2) saxophone, (3) clarinet, (4) drum, (5) band, (6) music. ( )

One doesn't belong:  
(1) Physics, (2) chemistry, (3) economics, (4) botany, (5) zoology. (3)  
(1) Hammer, (2) plane, (3) saw, (4) chisel, (5) towel. ( )

Select two:  
A room is most likely to have (1) floor, (2) carpet, (3) plaster, (4) walls, (5) closet. (1, 4)  
A circle is most likely to have (1) periphery, (2) diameter, (3) hypotenuse, (4) cube, (5) tangents. ( )

Also used for intelligence testing is the reading of a story to the subjects, who then are required to answer questions on the content of the story. Such a test is probably a good test of perception and memory—comprehending what was read and remembering it.

**Recalling Words.** Another test of verbal facility consists in the requirement that in a given period of 5 minutes, for example, the subject write as many words as he can which begin with the same letter, such as *b, c, d, e*, or any other. If the reader will try this test on himself, he will probably find it more difficult than he expected, for there is a tendency to "run dry" before the time is up.

This test may be varied, too, by having the subject list in a given

period of time as many words as possible, with specified prefixes such as *pre-*, *pro-*, *con-*, *en-*, and others. The requirement may be the same for words with suffixes such as *-ed*, *-by*, *-ness*, *-ion*, and others.

**Numerical Materials.** A typical test of this kind follows:

How much does it cost to clean a rug 11 feet wide and 14 feet long at 9 cents a square foot? \_\_\_\_\_

What number added to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 36 is 2 times 5 plus the number of days in a week?

*Series and logical progression*

Mark out the number that doesn't belong.

18 17 15 12 9 6 (17)

2 4 6 7 11 16 22 ( )

Continue the series.

64 16 32 8 16 4 — — (8, 2)

3 5 10 12 24 26 52 — — ( )

**Form and Space Materials.** The directions for the form and space items (Fig. 10) are omitted except in one item. The structure of the items indicates that in most cases the problem is to pick the one or ones similar to the first one, draw lines similar to the ones given, pick the two parts that make the first one, or pick the form that makes an analogy.

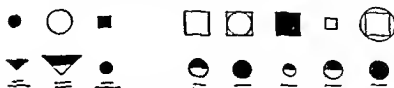
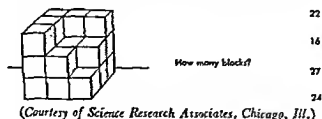
The reader will note that many of the items require reasoning and the perception of logical relationship. Some exercises probably test memory more directly, while others make greater demands on visualization and imagination. All these processes are interrelated or depend to some extent on a general unitary mental power and capacity. Still it requires various kinds of test material and different types of exercises and problems to evoke the wide range of answers which are needed for judging all mental abilities most adequately.

The illustrations given are of the kinds of materials that are used to test intermediate, upper, high-school, and college students, as well as adults in general. Lower-grade test material is more pictorial in nature and less verbal. For younger children the individual mental examination is more satisfactory, because the group test does not work out very well under the third grade. The contents of the most commonly used tests which have been described are arranged according to difficulty in order to test students and others of various age levels.

**Correlation of Subtests.** It was pointed out in connection with some of the subtests that a certain *core* is common to most of them. Word knowledge, reading ability, and a fund of general information are major elements in this core and are incidentally tested by sections of a test not specifically designed to do so. Because there is a core common to most abilities, there is a correlation between them. The



(Courtesy of California Test Bureau, Los Angeles, Calif.)



(From *Psychological Examinations*, by L. L. Thurstone and Thelma Guinn Thurstone, American Council of Education, Washington, D.C.)

Fig. 10. Form and space materials of mental tests.

correlation between two parts of a test should be a moderate one. If it is very high, the two parts are measuring the same capacity and thus constitute unnecessary duplication. If the parts of a test do not correlate at all or correlate very little, they probably do not measure general capacity. It is most desirable for the subtests to correlate a moderate amount, for then they do not have the deficiencies just given but measure different phases of intelligence and thus contribute to both the extensiveness and the thoroughness of the composite test. For this reason, the group intelligence test is composed of several different sections that have some features in common but are still sufficiently unlike to test different capacities.

**Norms and Standards.** In developing an intelligence test, the worker assembles and arranges the materials that he wants to include in his test, but he does not have a dependable instrument until he tries it out and establishes norms or standards for it. For example, he must give his test to many representative children of the ages for which it is designed in order to discover the average scores for children of these different ages. The average score for six-year-olds will represent a mental age or mental level of 6; that of seven-year-olds, a mental level of 7; etc. The developer of a mental test generally provides a manual containing norms for a range of ages expressed not only in whole years but also in years and months, such as 7 years 1 month or 7 years 2 months, and so forth. These are the age norms.

If his test, for example, is designed for children ranging from age 5 to 10, he discovers the average scores for children 5 years, 5 years 1 month, 5 years 2 months, 5 years 3 months, 5 years 4 months, and so on up to 10 years. These are called the norms, or standards, for these ages and indicate the M.A. equivalents for given scores. Let us illustrate with the example of a score of 52, which according to the standards is the average score obtained by children who are 8 years 6 months old. This means that a score of 52 represents an M.A. or mental level of 8 years 6 months. Let us assume further that a child who is 8 years 1 month old obtains this score. His M.A. is 8 years 6 months, and his I.Q. can be obtained by dividing 8 years 6 months by 8 years 1 month, which gives an I.Q. of 1.05 or 105.

The I.Q. is calculated for any child in this way. His score on the intelligence test has a mental-age equivalent in a booklet of norms. This mental age is divided by the child's C.A. to give his I.Q. This will now be discussed in further detail.

#### MENTAL AGE AND INTELLIGENCE QUOTIENT

We can illustrate the procedure for determining mental status by using as an example a child 8 years 1 month old who was given an intelligence test and obtained a score that is the normal or average



score for children 10 years 2 months old. Thus this child has an M.A. of 10 years 2 months. Knowing his C.A. and his M.A., we can determine his brightness, which is expressed in terms of the I.Q. The formula for I.Q. is

$$\text{I.Q.} = \frac{\text{M.A.}}{\text{C.A.}} \times 100$$

In this example,

$$\text{I.Q.} = \frac{10 \text{ years } 2 \text{ months}}{8 \text{ years } 1 \text{ month}} \times 100$$

$$\text{I.Q.} = \frac{122 \text{ months}}{97 \text{ months}} \times 100 = 126$$

In calculating the I.Q., it is preferable to change both C.A. and M.A. to months. The purpose of the 100 in the formula is to get rid of the decimal point.

The mental growth of this child has been more rapid than average or normal. If it had been just average, the mental age would have equaled the chronological age and the I.Q. would have been 100. This child, however, has reached an M.A., or level, above his C.A. He has had an average mental growth of more than 1 year each calendar year. The I.Q. of 126 indicates that he has grown mentally at the rate of 1.26 years for each calendar year.

The I.Q. indicates the rate of mental growth of a child. In the example given, the child has lived 8 years 1 month, or 97 months, but has grown mentally at an average rate of 1.26 months per month, or 1.26 years per year. If 8 years 1 month, or 97 months, is multiplied by 1.26, a mental age of 10 years 2 months, or 122 months, is obtained. This is the mental age of this child as indicated originally. In other words, if the I.Q. and C.A. are known, they can be multiplied to obtain the M.A.

Similarly, we can calculate the I.Q. of a child whose mentality is lower than average. Such a child has an M.A. under his C.A. and an I.Q. under 100. For our problem, we shall find the I.Q. of a girl who is 6 years 8 months old and whose performance on a mental test is equal to that of the average of children 5 years 4 months old. Her M.A. is therefore 5 years 4 months, or 64 months. Divide 5 years 4 months, or 64 months, the M.A., by 6 years 8 months, or 80 months, the C.A.

$$\text{I.Q.} = \frac{64}{80} \times 100 = 80$$

This child has grown mentally at a rate that is only about 80 per cent of the average for all children. It has taken her 6 years 8 months to reach a mental level of 5 years 4 months. If her rate of growth, 0.80, is multiplied by the time she has been growing, 6 years 8 months

( $0.80 \times 80$  months), the M.A. of 64 months, or 5 years 4 months, will be obtained.

As has been said above, the I.Q. indicates the rate of mental growth of children. It expresses the size of the yearly increments that are made to a child's mental level. Furthermore, by indicating the rate of mental growth, the I.Q. may also be regarded as an index of brightness.

An eight-year-old child, for instance, whose mental growth is characterized by an I.Q. of 125 is obviously brighter than one with an I.Q. of 75. The brighter eight-year-old has reached the mental level of an average ten-year-old, whereas the duller eight-year-old is equal to the average six-year-old.

**Children of the Same I.Q. but Different C.A.'s.** Children may have the same degree of brightness but differ in their ability to learn because they vary in C.A. Obviously, two children eight and twelve years old, respectively, with an I.Q. of 100 are not equal mentally. The older child can comprehend more than the younger, not because he is brighter, but because he has lived longer and reached a higher mental level. In 4 years, the eight-year old child will have reached the mental level that the twelve-year-old now occupies and will have essentially the same mental ability. Potentially they are equal; and when both of them reach maturity, they will have essentially the same capacity for learning. Thus children of the same I.Q. have the same mental potentiality but differ in M.A. because they differ in C.A.

**Children of the Same M.A. but Different I.Q.'s.** Children who vary in I.Q. may be found, when measured by the general aptitude, or intelligence, test, to be of the same M.A. Their scores on the test are the same. Such children vary in C.A. and I.Q. but not in M.A. The younger pupils in this instance are brighter; the older ones are duller. Otherwise, their mental level would not be the same.

For example, an eight-year-old boy with an I.Q. of 125 and a twelve-year-old boy with an I.Q. of  $83\frac{1}{2}$  have the same M.A. Both have reached a mental level of 10; in other words, both do as well on the intelligence, or general aptitude, test as the average child who is ten years old. Similarly, a ten-year-old child with an I.Q. of 120 and a fifteen-year-old with an I.Q. of 80 have the same M.A.

We may inquire whether or not brighter and duller or younger and older pupils of the same M.A. will achieve equally well if placed in the same grade. The likelihood is that for a short time the older pupil will probably do slightly better in the academic subjects because he has been in school more years and consequently has had more teaching. Furthermore, teaching is usually adjusted to the average and below average rather than to the bright. In the nonacademic subjects, moreover, such as manual training, sewing, and penmanship, the older pupils will probably do still better.

the bright-normal, with I.Q.'s from 110 to 119, and dull-normal groups, with I.Q.'s from 80 to 89. Each of these groups includes about 16 per cent of the total. Those with I.Q.'s between 70 and 80, who are classified as bordering on feeble-mindedness, constitute 7 per cent of all people and are balanced in number by those with I.Q.'s between 120 and 130, who are classified as superior. Those with I.Q.'s below 70 are classified as feeble-minded and constitute about 2 per cent of the total. At the other extreme, we have the 2 per cent of very superior people with I.Q.'s above 130.

It should be kept in mind that Fig. 11 is smoothed and represents a composite of many findings. The curves representing actual findings have the same general shape as Fig. 11 but are not so smooth or regular. The distribution of I.Q.'s shown in Fig. 11 is as accurate as we have at the present time.

Student or teacher or parent or anyone dealing with human beings should be keenly conscious of the tremendous range in human brightness. A teacher, for example, as she surveys her class may at one moment be looking at a child with a mind that seems to "soak up" everything, a mind far beyond its years, and at the next moment at a child of low intelligence who fails to understand most of what is taking place in the room. He expresses himself poorly, does not like any of his subjects, and wants to leave school as soon as he can. The teacher cannot tell how these two pupils differ by looking at them, but she can tell by their performance on intelligence tests and by their performance in their subjects.

Between these extremes will be found the other pupils, most of them average. Almost wherever people are found will also be found a range in capacities, and this should always be taken into account in dealing with people. The teacher should expect differences in those with whom she works.

**Feeble-mindedness and Its Various Degrees.** Children with I.Q.'s below 70 are regarded as feeble-minded. They develop mentally at a rate that is less than 70 per cent of the average. Psychologically, they are feeble-minded in terms of the intelligence-test standards for their ages. Some of them are vocationally adequate if given work that they can do. None of them can achieve satisfactorily if held to the academic work required of school children, and they are certain to fail if the teacher holds them to standards of average school achievement.

Actually, a person with an I.Q. of 70 or less is not classified as feeble-minded on the basis of the mental-test results alone. He is studied and observed to see how he behaves and gets along. If he is effective in his behavior and can handle his affairs so well that he needs relatively little guidance, he will not be classified as feeble-minded. Conversely, a person who tests 75 or 80 but is stupid in getting along may warrant

classification as feeble-minded. The following example is a case of a schoolboy with an I.Q. of only 70 who definitely was not feeble-minded.

In a school was a certain boy with an I.Q. of about 70. Fortunately, he had much better personal qualities than is usual for children of his intelligence. He also had sympathetic and understanding teachers. This boy was industrious and had initiative, and he got himself a position by pointing out to a storekeeper the various little jobs that needed doing and that he could do around his store.

His teachers realized that he would never be a scholar, but they had hopes that he would be a useful citizen. In school he learned whatever academic subject matter he could. The teachers did not press him unduly, and they allowed him to be a handy man for the school building. The result was that he had a feeling of personal worth, he adjusted well to the school, and the school adjusted well to him.

If a child with a low I.Q. has special interests and abilities such as this boy had, he should be put in classes that will exercise his abilities and engage his interests or be given special opportunities. Some academic material can be taught him when he is sufficiently mature mentally. The child and his adjustment are more important than his academic achievement; he will acquire the few arithmetic or reading skills within his ability much more readily and happily if the teacher waits until he has matured to a higher mental level.

The feeble-minded cover a wide range and have been classified into three groups. Those with I.Q.'s up to 25 are classified as *idiots*. Those with I.Q.'s from 25 to 50 are called *imbeciles*. The highest order of the feeble-minded are the *morons*. They have I.Q.'s from 50 to 70 and are least distinguishable from the normal group. Fortunately, the number of idiots, imbeciles, and morons corresponds to their I.Q.'s; there are fewest idiots and most morons. In another sense, this trend is unfortunate, for it is the morons and those with intelligence just above the moron level who, as adults, have most children and thereby perpetuate and even aggravate the problem of the mentally and socially inadequate.

**Range in I.Q. among the Very Superior.** There is also a great range in the I.Q. of the upper 2 per cent, whose I.Q.'s are 130 and above. If we consider the maximum I.Q. as being 200, then we have a range of 70 for the upper 2 per cent. This is essentially the range for the lower 2 per cent, or the feeble-minded, whose maximum I.Q. is about 70 and whose minimum I.Q. is not far above 0. A child with an I.Q. of 165 or over is distinctly superior to one with an I.Q. of 130. A child with an I.Q. of 130 is probably the best in 50 unselected children; in a typical community of 5,000 school children, he would be included among the brightest 100. He is not likely to have the highest I.Q., but

Nevertheless, it will not be long before the younger, brighter pupils will surpass the older, duller pupils, especially in the academic subjects. The brighter pupils have higher I.Q.'s and are increasing in M.A. more rapidly than are those of lower I.Q.'s. Therefore their M.A. will soon be higher than that of the duller children. Then, being brighter and also higher in M.A., the younger pupils will be superior in learning ability to the older pupils. Of course, one can never be certain that the younger ones will be judged to be superior, for the older children, in some instances, may work harder and appear to be better students than some of the bright younger students.

The weakness in classification by M.A. can be illustrated by considering what happens when children beginning school are admitted and classified according to M.A. Such a classification is better than the arbitrary chronological grouping that occurs when six-year-old children enter the first grade, but whatever homogeneity of ability is obtained by such a classification does not last long. Let us assume that a few with M.A.'s of 6 have I.Q.'s of 120 and that some have I.Q.'s of 86. According to our illustration, the brighter children are five years old and the duller are seven. For a time they will probably be equally apt as pupils. However, as they grow older, they will grow apart in their mental capacity. At the end of 4 years the mental age of a younger pupil will be about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  years more than that of an older one. The brighter pupil will have an M.A. of 10.8 years  $[(1.20 \times (5 + 4))]$ , and the duller one will have an M.A. of 9.46 years  $[(.86 \times (7 + 4))]$ . At adulthood the differences will be even more pronounced, so that if they were then found in the same class the differences in learning ability would be much more apparent.

It can be observed that, if both these children were admitted to school at the age of six, they would differ considerably more in M.A. and that after a few years the difference would be even greater. At the age of six the child with an I.Q. of 120 has an M.A. of 7.2 years, and the child with an I.Q. of 86 has an M.A. of 5.2 years. They differ by 2 years in M.A. when they begin school; but 8 years later, when they reach high-school age, they will differ mentally by 4.8 years, having M.A.'s of 16.8 and 12.0 respectively.

This discussion is based on the assumption that the I.Q.'s obtained are dependable and that a child's degree of brightness remains constant. Of course, these assumptions do not always hold true for individuals, although on the average such assumptions are dependable.

**Children of the Same C.A. and the Same I.Q.** Children of the same C.A. tend to be of the same size and same social maturity, although we must hasten to add that there are wide ranges for any given chronological age. Children of the same I.Q. have about the same degree of brightness or experience about the same rate of mental growth.

Children of the same C.A. and I.Q. also have the same M.A. or mental maturity (mental level). All this about I.Q. and M.A. is consistent with their meanings, which have already been explained.

Children of the same C.A. and I.Q., and therefore the same M.A., are more nearly alike physically and socially than are all children of the same chronological age because similarity in brightness and mental maturity tends to bring this about. More will be said about this in the discussion of ability grouping in a subsequent chapter.

**The Distribution of General Intelligence.** There is a wide range in human intelligence. At the lowest end are the idiots, with I.Q.'s

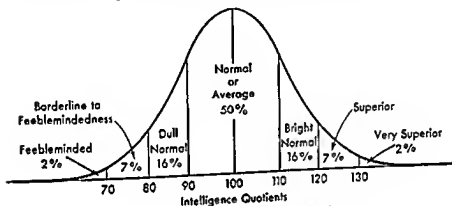


Fig. 11. Distribution of intelligence quotient.

up to 25, and at the highest are those very exceptional persons with I.Q.'s reaching probably 200. Most have I.Q.'s of about 100 or between 90 and 110. The I.Q.'s of a representative group of children seem to distribute according to the normal probability curve or approximately so. Figure 11 is a normal curve divided to indicate the proportion of various classifications of mental ability distributed according to the normal probability curve.

Those early statesmen of the United States who spoke of everyone's being created equal were apparently not cognizant of the great differences in mental capacity. Equal opportunity, even if it did exist, would not be equally realized because of such basic differences. An analysis of Fig. 11 reveals the wide range of I.Q.'s, which are generally accepted as an approximate indication of mental ability. However, the figure cannot be drawn to show the long "tails," or "ends," one of which should approach 0 to the left and the other 200 to the right. The tails, or ends, reaching extreme feeble-mindedness to the left and the highest intelligence quotient to the right, would extend beyond the edges of the page.

Psychologically, 50 per cent of the people are regarded as average, having I.Q.'s from 90 through 109. There is an equal percentage in

a child with an I.Q. of 170 might be the brightest of all the 5,000 children.

### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Mental tests had their beginnings as effective instruments for measuring mental abilities when Binet and Simon arranged various test items according to age level and published their examination in 1905. Binet devised an age scale by arranging the tests at age levels according to difficulty, and the principle used in the original Binet test is used today in the recent revisions. Cattell tried in the 1890's to measure mental ability, but he really tested sensorimotor ability rather than the higher mental processes, and consequently his measurements had little value in discovering general mental proficiency.

The basal age is the highest age level at which the subject can pass all the tests; and during the course of the examination he is tested until he fails all the exercises of a given age level.

The tests in the Terman-Merrill revision of the Stanford Binet contain both object and verbal material, which is graded according to age level from year II up through superior adult. The tests are varied in nature but are planned to measure perception, power of association, memory, reasoning ability, and imagination.

Group tests were being devised in the early and middle teens of this century; during the First World War in 1917, this work was accelerated by the formation of Army Alpha. Following the war, many group tests were devised by means of which numbers of pupils could be tested at one time.

A number of the exercises in the group intelligence test are vocabulary, analogies, logical-progression, logical-selection, general-information, best-answer, arithmetic, reading, and completion tests.

Most of these tests are verbal, but some are nonverbal and consist of pictures, numbers, and various geometrical forms. They are designed to examine the various mental processes whose testing is also attempted by the individual test.

Standards and norms are prepared that give the mental level or M.A. equivalent of any given score. The M.A. is divided by the C.A. to obtain the I.Q., this process being the same for both group and individual tests.

The I.Q. is an index of brightness and indicates for children the rate of annual mental growth.

When an older and a younger child have the same intelligence quotient, the older has more mental maturity (higher M.A.) and therefore is more capable mentally. In adulthood, they probably will not differ very much.

When two children have the same mental age but different I.Q.'s,

the child with the higher I.Q. is younger and will outgrow the older child mentally, in other words, will attain more mental capacity.

If children of the same C.A. and I.Q. are classified in the same group or class, they will have the same M.A. also and will tend to be homogeneous in many ways.

From the lowest to the highest, the I.Q. groups are the feeble-minded, borderline, dull-normal, normal or average, bright-normal, superior, and very superior. Those who are average constitute one-half of all, and the number decreases as the distance from average increases.

The range of I.Q. of the feeble-minded and the very superior is about 65 or 70 points, which indicates the very wide spread of the lowest and highest 2 per cent of the people.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. What does it mean to have a given mental age? A mental age of 6? Of 10? Of 12.5?

2. Why was the principle of Binet and Simon successful, while that of Cattell was not?

3. What is the meaning of intelligence quotient as an index of brightness and as indicating the rate of annual mental growth?

4. Do you think that Paul was truly dull and decidedly under average in intelligence and that Anna was truly bright and above average?

5. Henry is ten years old and has an I.Q. of 125. Sarah is seven years old and has an I.Q. of 128. Which has more mental capacity and more readiness for reading, arithmetic, or history?

6. A child 7 years 1 month old was tested by the 1937 Stanford Binet. He passed all tests at the five-year level, four at the six-year level, three at the seven-year level, one at the eight-year level, and one at the nine-year level. What is his M.A.? What is his I.Q.?

7. Two twelve-year-old students have I.Q.'s of 85 and 135. How do they differ intellectually?

8. Jane and Mary are the same age, and both are classified as very superior, with I.Q.'s of 135 and 175, respectively. Do they differ very much? Discuss.

9. Discuss whether or not you feel that the elements in the group intelligence test measure the mental processes well.

10. John is 4 years 3 months old and has a M.A. of 3 years 11 months. What is his I.Q.?

11. It is often said that intelligence tests do not test true intelligence but that they test the products or results of schooling. Comment.

12. Carol has an I.Q. of 107. She is 9 years 3 months old. What is her M.A.?

13. The size of a person's vocabulary is considered a fairly reliable index to his intelligence. Comment.

14. Bill has an M.A. of 16-5 and an I.Q. of 119. How old is he?

15. What are some of the educational, cultural, and economic implications of the distribution of human intelligence?



# 11. Mental Growth and Development

## *Maturing Intellectually*

**What to Look For.** Review the facts about the growth of the nervous system, remembering that intellectual development follows the course of neurological growth.

A considerable amount of discussion is devoted to the idea that children increase in mental power because of the growth of the nervous system that takes place with increase in age. Try to acquire a thorough mastery of this idea.

Why is it futile and even harmful to "push" a child with tasks and activities that are above his level of mental development?

Growth in mental capacity is indicated by:

1. Size of vocabulary, which is dependent on perception and memory.
2. Memory span.
3. Levels of thinking as shown by enumeration, description, and interpretation and involving the mental processes of perception, memory, imagination, and reasoning.

Learn what is meant by mental maturing and maturation.

The concept of mental readiness should be interpreted in terms of maturing and experience.

Look for the curves depicting mental growth of three intelligence-quotient (I.Q.) levels—130, 100, and 70. Note the relationship between age and mental level.

Mental maturity and the importance of the adult years are discussed in considerable detail. Learn the following:

1. Age when mental maturity is reached.
2. The course of mental powers during adult years.

**Introduction.** The Smiths have a little girl of five named Madeline whom they like to "show off" as a very bright or precocious child. Every day her parents try to teach her new words, most of which are

words one would expect a high-school pupil to use. Her parents also try to teach her to read and encourage her to repeat "cute" sayings. Everything her parents can do to make her appear clever they try, and they feel proud of Madeline's "flashes of brightness." Madeline is displayed at every opportunity.

The Petersons are neighbors of the Smiths. Their little John is about the same age as Madeline. Mrs. Peterson is jealous of the Smiths and their Madeline and wonders if they shouldn't "work on John."

"No," replies the father, "John is too young for this high-pressure teaching. Let him grow up normally. Nature will give him more brains as he grows older. There is plenty of time, but I do hope he works hard at learning after he reaches junior high school and more especially after he reaches high school and college. I hope he keeps learning after he grows up because then he'll have all the brains he will ever have and can learn best."

"Yes, but look at Madeline," remarks Mrs. Peterson.

"Oh, forget Madeline, poor kid. She is only being used to please her parents' vanity. When she has been in school a year or so, she'll be down to her real level. At present she may be developing some stresses and strains, some bad habits and attitudes that may handicap her all her life. John's a good boy, and he'll get along, especially if you don't start to high-pressure him at this tender age."

And this statement by Mr. Peterson more or less settles the question, although Mrs. Peterson would like to show Mrs. Smith that John could be just as clever as Madeline.

**Physical and Mental Growth.** It has been shown how the body of the newborn infant grows and develops until it becomes an adult body. In growing, it increases in physical strength and becomes able to do physical work and to play games it could not when younger. Accompanying the growth of the body is a corresponding increase in physical skill and strength.

In the chapter on physical growth and development the growth of the central nervous system, brain, and nerves is also described. It will be recalled that this is very rapid in the first few years of life, the brain reaching 80 per cent of its weight in the first 4 years. After this the brain grows much more slowly and reaches its maximum development sometime in the early or middle twenties.

In this chapter we are concerned with the growth in mental skills and powers that takes place from birth to maturity and from maturity to death. In this connection we should establish the age of maturity as being reached in the early or middle twenties. Often twenty is considered the age of maturity. It is probably satisfactory to consider twenty as the beginning of the period when maturity is reached, a period that can be most satisfactorily regarded as being the age period

of twenty to twenty-five years. Sometime during that age period, mental and physical maturity are reached by most people. Some may have reached it in the late teens.

**Increase in Mental Ability from Growing Older.** In respect to mental growth and development, certain questions arise about the change in mental powers that takes place as an infant grows older day by day, month by month, and year by year. As a child is able to run faster as he grows bigger and stronger, similarly does he learn to read faster because his nervous system grows and develops? Can a child from the mere fact of becoming older solve harder arithmetic problems than formerly? As children become older, they increase in height and weight and acquire more skill and power in playing with a baseball, football, or basketball. Correspondingly, do they also acquire a larger vocabulary and the ability to use more words because their nervous systems grow and develop? Does a child as he grows older develop a better memory, does his reasoning power improve, and does his imagination become more effective? Can he perform mental tasks more rapidly, and more difficult ones? Can the child at twelve read a page or do arithmetic problems or understand words that were too difficult for him at the age of nine? Do mental powers increase because of the neural growth that accompanies an increase in age?

The answers to all these questions are in the affirmative. As a child grows older from infancy to maturity, his mental powers do increase. This growth in mental capacity is caused by the growth of the body and its parts in general, but more particularly by the growth of the nervous system. At birth the brain and the nerves that lead to it are not fully developed, although they are well advanced on their way toward maturity. The brain and the nerves grow and develop very rapidly after birth. Thus the cells and the billions of fibers of the nervous system grow and develop. The chemical composition of the nerves changes, too. In other words, these parts mature, and accompanying this maturing of the nervous system is an increase of mental capacity: or power. The function improves because of growth and development of the structures.

Of course, as the child grows older, he has more and more experience in using his mind. This increasing experience in talking, reading, doing arithmetic problems, asking and answering questions, listening to and trying to remember directions, and almost countless other ways exercises and equips the mind and causes it to become stronger, so to speak. Thus the fuller use of the growing and maturing mind is necessary if it is to develop fully.

We know that muscles are enlarged and strengthened by proper exercise. A child's legs, arms, and body are made stronger by healthful play. We can deduce that the mind, with its organic counterpart, the

nervous system, improves and becomes better equipped because of use and exercise in the form of reading, calculating, memorizing, speaking, imagining, and other mental activities. Obviously people are mentally active more or less effectively all their lives, and except in cases of mental illness such activity tends to sustain or increase intellectual competence.

If a child could be deprived of all experience, say for a period of 2 years, would he increase in capacity? Imagine a child of seven anesthetized in effect except that he took nourishment and grew according to his potentiality but without activity. The point of this illustration is to bring up the question of whether or not he would have increased in capacity after 2 years of inactivity. In other words, does growth alone increase capacity and power?

The child would increase in capacity even though he had no experiences. When he "awoke," he would be bigger and stronger and his nervous system would have grown and developed, too. When he resumed activity, he would have lost from his "vacation" from experience but he would have more capacity for development and would make more rapid progress than he did two years before. This results from growth's increasing one's power to learn and to do.

There are many evidences of the mental growth that takes place during the growing years. There is an increase in the power to understand directions and comprehend more complex meanings. The number of words per remark or statement increases with age, as does the difficulty of the words used. Problem-solving abilities increase, and the number of reading fixations go down. The sweep of the eye increases, and thus the number of fixations decrease with the improved reading comprehension that accompanies maturing and reading experiences.

Drawing abilities increase because of mental maturing and increasing sensorimotor abilities. More accurate ideas are shown in drawing, and they are represented better. All school abilities increase during the growing years—arithmetic, geography, history, music, language, and of course reading. These school abilities increase because of growing mental powers such as perception, memory, reasoning, and imagination, which in turn increase because of the maturing of the bodily structures.

**Growth of Ability to Use Words.** At birth, a child is able to make vocal noises and sounds, though much of an infant's vocalizing is in the form of crying. As he grows older, the sounds begin to differentiate a little into "da da," "de de," and others. By the age of one or a little later a simple word or two may be spoken. After the first word is spoken, the speaking vocabulary increases rapidly until mental maturity is reached.

Vocabulary is sometimes differentiated according to the words a person uses in speech, the words he uses in writing, and the words whose meanings he knows and understands on the written page and in the spoken word. A person does not use as many words as he can recognize or understand. It will be of interest at this point to study

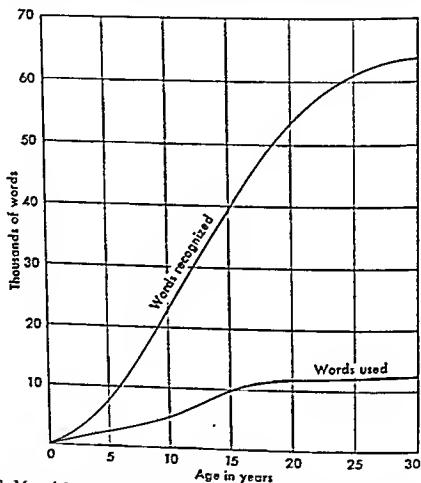


Fig. 12. Mental development as indicated by growth in vocabulary. (From John J. B. Morgan, *Child Psychology, 3d ed.*, Rinehart & Company, Inc., New York, 1942.)

the growth of the vocabulary of recognition and of the vocabulary used.

Figure 12 shows the growth of vocabulary from birth to age thirty. There are two curves, the upper one, which represents the thousands of words recognized at any given age up to the age of thirty, and the lower curve, showing the thousands of words used. It will be noted that both curves are different from some mental-growth curves because of more rapid growth beyond the age of ten and fifteen than is evident in the typical mental-growth curve. This is especially true of the curve for recognition vocabulary, which seems rather high.

In the Terman-Merrill test of mental ability the vocabulary test

appears at various year or age levels. The test consists of 45 words, and the minimum number of words defined by the subject that is accepted for passing at the given year or age level is as follows:

Year	Minimum Number of Words
VI	5
VIII	8
X	11
XII	14
XIV	16
Average adult	20
Superior adult (I)	23
Superior adult (II)	26
Superior adult (III)	30

It will be observed that there is a consistent development of vocabulary ability from year 6 up to the third level of superior adult.

The trend of the size of vocabulary during the adult years is fairly well known. As is the case with most mental abilities, there is not much change in knowledge of words during the adult years, though the trend varies with individuals. Those who read and study a good deal maintain their knowledge of words and even increase it slightly during their adult lives. Adults whose experiences do not expose them much to the use of words tend to have smaller vocabularies as they grow older.

Another approach for determining the growth in word knowledge is to test children of various ages and record the percentage of each age or of each school grade who can define given words. It will be discovered with each successive age group, say from six to fifteen, that the percentage of children who can define any given word will increase with age. In other words, there will be a larger percentage of seven-year-olds who can define a given word than of six-year-olds, a larger percentage of eight-year-olds than of seven-year-olds, a larger percentage of nine-year-olds than of eight-year-olds, etc. Conversely, the percentage of children who fail in defining words or in understanding their meanings goes down from age to age.

Figure 13 shows how the percentage of correctly recognized or defined words increases with age. For example, only 20 per cent of the fourth-graders defined the word *altitude*, while about 90 per cent of eleventh-graders could give its meaning.

This growth of vocabulary accompanies the growth and development of the nervous system and results, also, from the practice and experience that children get from using words and from their recurring experiences with new ones.

From the nature of the growth of vocabulary, there is substantiation of the point of view that the extent of a child's vocabulary is a fairly good index to his general intelligence. The growth of vocabulary is different for each individual; in general, the brighter the child, the more words he acquires and understands. The degree of brightness is

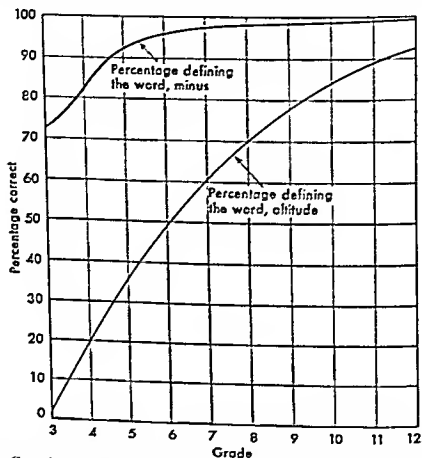


Fig. 13. Growth in mathematical vocabulary. (From L. C. Pressey, *The Growth of Mathematical Vocabulary from the Third Grade through High School*, *School Review*, 40: 449-454, 1932.)

reflected by the number of words a child remembers and can use. The dull child perceives and retains relatively few, while the bright child grasps and remembers many.

**Development of Memory.** Memory is a fundamental factor in intelligence. Without it there could hardly be any intelligence. If we did not remember any of the words we heard, the faces we saw, the general information we acquired, the places we have been in, etc., we should be hopeless idiots. We should not remember what food to eat or what clothes to wear, we could learn no lessons, and consequently we should be constantly in a chaotic state.

At birth there is little memory; but, with the experience and growth that accompany growing older, memory increases. One of the tests of

memory is a test of digit span. In testing digit span the examiner reads to the subject the numbers, or digits, at the rate of about one a second, and the subject is asked to repeat the digits after they have been given. Obviously, the memory cannot be tested by this method until the child is old enough to talk.

The capacity for repeating digits increases with age according to the standards of the Stanford Binet individual examination by Terman and Merrill. These two psychologists have used the digit span at different age levels over a wide range. Table 6 shows the digit span for various age levels. It should be kept in mind that these are standards for the various ages and that some children of these ages have a digit

TABLE 6\*

<i>Repeating digits in order given</i>		<i>Repeating digits reversed</i>	
<i>Year</i>	<i>Number of digits</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>Number of digits</i>
II-6	2	VII	3
III	3	IX	4
IV-6	4	XII	5
VII	5	Superior adult (I)	6
X	6		
Superior adult (II)	8		
Superior adult (III)	9		

\* Based on the Terman-Merrill norms.

span smaller than the standard for their ages and some have a span greater.

The point being emphasized is the increase in memory span from year to year during childhood as tested by the capacity to repeat digits. This memory ability is a phase or part of general mental ability, and it grows from birth to adulthood.

**Development from Enumeration to Description to Interpretation.** The ability to interpret also develops with increasing age. It may be tested by asking the subject to tell what he sees in a picture. Suppose that children are shown a picture of a woman running out of a cabin into the woods and are asked to tell what they see in the picture or to tell about it. There are three general stages of development in responding to the picture: (1) enumeration; (2) description; (3) interpretation.

Children of the age of three will enumerate what they see in the picture. In this instance there would be responses such as "trees," "woman," "house," "ground," "grass," or whatever the subject sees in the picture. This naming of the parts of the picture, or enumeration,



represents a lower level of intelligence or mental ability than the next higher type of response, description.

Children of age six are expected to describe what they see in the picture. They may say that the woman left the cabin in a hurry. She is running into the woods. There is smoke coming out of the chimney. The cabin is located in the woods, and it is a log cabin. This constitutes description and represents a level of mental maturity or development above that of mere enumeration.

As the intelligence grows and matures still further, the ability to interpret develops. At the age of twelve a child should be able to interpret a picture. The person who sees the picture and interprets it may say that the woman is running to a neighbor for help. Her husband or child has become suddenly ill. Or the picture may be interpreted as meaning that a bear or a stranger has got into the cabin and that the woman is trying to escape by running to a neighbor. Perhaps her husband has come home drunk, and she is trying to escape from getting a beating at his hands. The smoke in the chimney indicates that the day is a cool one, or it may be that the woman was cooking and haking and therefore had a fire in the stove. Such responses indicate that the subject has an understanding or a comprehension of the situation represented by the picture. Through interpretation the meaning of the situation is observed, or, better yet, meanings are given the situation.

The levels of enumeration, description, and interpretation are not separate and distinct in the sense that a child is at one level for a time and then jumps to the next one. A person grows steadily and develops gradually to the next level. There are different degrees at each level. There can be a mixture of enumeration and description at a given level, for example, and at a higher level a mixture of description and interpretation. As a child matures further, the power of interpretation increases and mere description becomes less prominent.

The ages three, six, and twelve are the ages at which average children enumerate, describe, and interpret, respectively; these should be taken not as definite standards but as indicating average mental development. With different pictures the ages might be different. Nevertheless, a characteristic of mental development is represented by the levels of enumeration, description, and interpretation.

These general levels of enumeration, description, and interpretation have important implications for teaching. When teacher and pupils are discussing a topic, the teacher can control the pupils' thinking so that they merely recite or enumerate facts. If in classes in geography or history, for example, the teacher calls on the pupils for specific factual information only, such as naming of the states and their

products, the boundaries of countries, the dates when the colonies were settled, or the leading American generals during the Second World War, the children will get in the habit of parroting names, dates, and places. Such teaching and learning are not on a very high intellectual plane. A better level is one on which children and teacher at least describe the situation. Better yet than description is interpretation. A teacher will get from her pupils largely the level of responses that she stimulates. The fact should be taken into account, of course, that children in the lower grades are not very mature mentally, but they can be guided into the habit of reasoning and interpreting.

Classwork at the three levels of thinking—enumeration, description, and interpretation—can be illustrated from a wide range of subjects and subject matter, such as history, geography, sociology, arithmetic, language, and grammar. Almost every subject can be taught at the different levels. In teaching the development of the great American cities, for example, facts about different cities can be drilled and drilled until the pupils will learn to "recite" these facts. Such a method is at the enumeration level. The growth of the cities can be described, also, and an interesting picture developed. But best of all is to give the reasons why New York, Chicago, Los Angeles, Detroit, and other cities have grown so large and to show the influence of location on oceans, on rivers, on lakes, of surrounding territory, of natural resources for manufacturing, etc., on the development of these cities. A teacher should encourage her pupils to think in terms of reasons, causes, and forces. They should see the relationship of city growth to economic and social forces. In other words, a teacher should lead her pupils in the processes of interpreting and using their imaginations.

Children mature mentally as they grow older and naturally reach the stage of interpretation. Still, the teacher should take advantage of existing opportunities and try to create further opportunities for guiding children toward the level of interpretive reasoning. Then teaching cooperates with the mental maturing that takes place as a child grows older.

**Curves of General Mental Growth.** We have discussed various aspects or evidences of mental development—memory span, vocabulary, reasoning, or interpretation—and have shown that there are growth and development from birth to maturity. This growth tends to be of the general nature of the actual growth of the brain. Mental growth is most rapid to the age of ten, after which it slows down increasingly until maturity is reached.

In Fig. 14 are given curves for general mental ability as measured by general intelligence tests. The growth in this instance is in terms

of mental age, which is the equivalent of mental level or stage of mental maturity. The base line of the diagram represents chronological age (C.A.), or the length of time a person has lived.

The curves show mental age, or mental level, according to age and according to brightness, or I.Q. There are three curves representing growth according to I.Q.'s of 70, 100, and 130. These are selected to

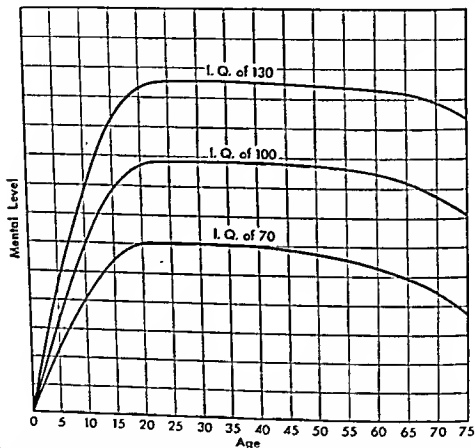


Fig. 14. Mental capacity from birth to old age according to intelligence quotient.

represent mental growth at various rates or according to these three I.Q.'s.

It should be kept in mind that these curves represent averages. Curves for any given individual's growth would probably have the same general shape or pattern as represented by these curves, but not so regular or smooth and with some irregularities or variations. The variations or irregularities are caused by fluctuations in a person's performance on the test and by unreliability in the test, which show up in testing a single individual but which tend to balance out when many are tested. There are also actual, or true, variations in the mental growth of an individual. Nature follows a definite general course for almost every individual but does allow some fluctuation

from that general course. So, keeping in mind that the curves in Fig. 14 are representative, let us examine them carefully.

At birth, all children may be considered equal, as represented by the growth curves, which begin at the same point. Although infants can hardly be distinguished according to mental ability, they are not equal potentially and this is shown by the diverging of the curves. The rate of growth is represented by the curves which are classified according to I.Q. The mental age, or mental level at any given age, is also determined by the rate of mental growth, which is represented by the I.Q.

The curve for persons with an I.Q. of 100 represents the average. In this figure the curve for an I.Q. above 100 is 130, and below 100 it is for an I.Q. of 70. When compared with the curve for an I.Q. of 100, the curves for I.Q.'s above and below become more meaningful. The facts on the nature of mental growth indicate that there is a little more mental growth in the first 5 years than between the ages of 5 and 10. It is evident that there is less between 10 and 15 than between 5 and 10, and mental growth between 15 and 20 is considerably less than growth between 10 and 15. The nature of growth for every I.Q. is essentially the same as that for the average except for at least two differences. Children with high I.Q.'s tend to grow comparatively faster and have a slightly longer period of development than do the dull. In other words, the very dull and feeble-minded tend to reach their limits slightly earlier than do the very bright. The differences in respect to the age when maturity is reached are not very great, but it probably is true that the development of the brighter continues a little longer than that of the less bright. In psychology, too, we learn that to him who has is given even more. This is relatively true and can be seen by examining the mental-growth curves for the various I.Q.'s, which in this instance range from 70, which is the upper I.Q. limit of a moron, to 130, which is the I.Q. for a person who has a high standing in any typical group of people. An I.Q. of 130 is the beginning of the classification designated as very superior.

**Growth of Intelligence and the Constancy of the Intelligence Quotient.** When a person is tested mentally every year from the age of five until his late teens, for example, what does the record show? Such testing will indicate the course of mental growth and will also give some information about the constancy of the I.Q. Figure 15 shows the results of testing three persons from the age before or when they began school until well along into the teens. This figure is based on the excellent work of Hilden, who tested 30 children over a period of about 15 years in most cases.

On the base line of the lower part of the figure are given the chronological ages and on the left-hand vertical are given the mental ages.

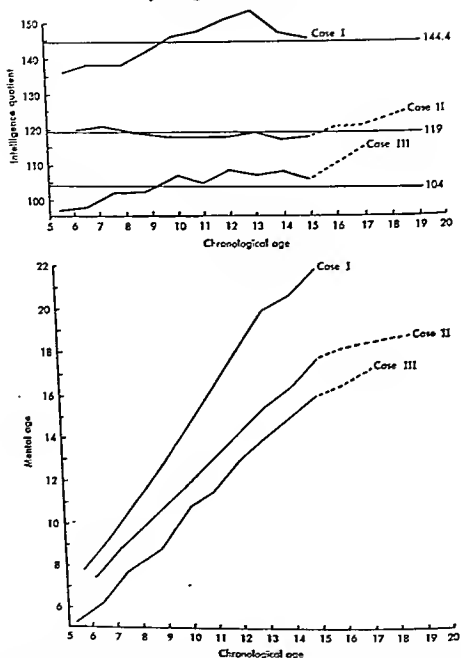


Fig. 15. Intelligence quotients charted over a 15-year period. (Adapted from A. H. Hilden, *Longitudinal Study of Intellectual Development*, *Journal of Psychology*, 28: 187-214, 1949.)

At the top part of the figure, the horizontal line represents the average I.Q., and the line drawn from point to point shows the I.Q. at the various ages indicated by the location of those points.

There are wide variations in I.Q. obtained from annual testing of the same person over a period of years; in some cases the variation is as high as 45 points, or from 97 to 142, for example, and sometimes it is even higher. Hardly any psychologist would claim that the true intel-

ligence of a person actually varies as much as represented by the I.Q. changes from 97 to 142 during the childhood years. Large fluctuations and changes in the I.Q. of any given individual, except in the case of injury to or deterioration of the nervous system, are caused by the following:

1. Erratic or fluctuating performance of the subject, which may be caused by factors of interest, effort, health, fatigue, or enriched or impoverished environment and in general by normal deviations in performance.
2. Variation in the correctness and effectiveness with which the examiner gives the tests.
3. Unreliability in the mental tests themselves.

Hence the large fluctuations in I.Q., that are obtained do not really represent actual changes or fluctuations in true intelligence. In order to obtain more accurate intelligence quotients and a truer course of mental growth, the I.Q.'s were averaged. For example, the I.Q. for age 6 was taken as the average I.Q. for ages 5, 6, and 7; for age 8, the average of 7, 8, and 9; and similarly for each age.

It will be observed that the I.Q.'s do not vary much from their average. In Fig. 15, the average I.Q. is 119 for case II, and the largest variation is 6 points in I.Q. for age 18½. However, this I.Q. should really be excluded, as it is for an age considerably over 15, when I.Q.'s are not calculated very satisfactorily. Observe also in Fig. 15 that the curve of mental growth is clearly free from any fluctuation and represents a steady growth. Here again the part of the curve for ages beyond 15 should not be included with the rest of the curve, as mental age does not increase at the regular rate in the late teens because of the slowing down of mental growth.

The person whose intelligence quotients and mental growth are represented as case I is very bright, with an average I.Q. of 144.4. Case I shows more variation about the average and a greater range in I.Q. than do cases II and III. Case I's lowest I.Q. is 136, and his highest is 153, which gives a range of 17; but the largest deviation below the average of 144.4 is 8.4 for the I.Q. of 136, and the largest positive deviation is +8.6 for the I.Q. of 153. The curve representing case I's mental growth is relatively free from irregularities and shows that mental growth is steady and predictable. Again it is best not to include the growth after age fifteen, which usually is diminishing considerably in rate.

Case III's intelligence is about average. When the I.Q.'s for ages above fifteen are excluded, the range of his I.Q. is from 97 to 108, with the largest deviation from the average being 7.

It is apparent from studying these figures that the I.Q.'s are fairly constant at their average levels of 104, 119, and 144.4, respectively.

The I.Q.'s of these three pupils do not overlap, and the levels established for each represent their I.Q. levels and can be depended upon. The same is true of the results of intelligence testing in general when it is well done and the results are smoothed or averaged out so that wide individual fluctuations do not distort the curves representing the I.Q.'s and mental growth of the student. The sharp annual fluctuations in evidence before smoothing are not caused by actual changes in intelligence, as has been explained, and therefore should not be represented by curves to indicate the I.Q. and mental level of the pupil at the age of that testing.

Can it be said that I.Q. is constant? For most students careful testing over the period of the school years will establish dependable I.Q. levels for them. The I.Q.'s for the given year are not free of deviations from the average, but the level for each individual is constant enough so that it can be depended upon as indicating whether he is at about the 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, or any other level. This was essentially true of the cases represented by the figures presented here, where the average I.Q.'s are approximately at the 104, 119, and 144 levels.

The rate of mental growth or the I.Q. is not constant in the absolute sense. No human behavior and growth are that. But it has been shown that by repeated annual testing during the grade-school and junior high-school years a person's I.Q. level can be established and will be found to be at a fairly constant level. When a school child has been tested four or five times in as many years, the results will indicate quite dependably what the mental level of the child is, whether moron, dull-normal, average, bright-normal, or very superior.

**Age When Mental Maturity Is Reached.** The age of mental maturity is the age when mental growth stops. Just as there is an age when a person stops growing taller and stronger, so there is an age when a person's mental capacity does not increase any more. On the basis of measurements, it is reached when a person is unable to improve his performance on intelligence tests. It is the age, according to Fig. 14, when the curves reach their maximum height. Mental maturity is reached probably about, or slightly after, the time when the brain and the nerves leading to and from it cease to grow.

Various ages ranging from thirteen to the early twenties have been given as the age after which there is no further mental growth. Some psychologists have found, by the use of certain mental tests, that their experimental groups did not increase their scores after the ages of fourteen, fifteen, or sixteen. As a consequence of these results, the psychologists doing the testing have concluded that mental growth stops at those ages. The same conclusion would be reached about physical maturity if it were discovered that after these ages people

could not run faster, lift heavier weights, jump farther, or increase in other motor or physical abilities.<sup>1</sup>

During the First World War, 1917 to 1918, the mental abilities of American soldiers as measured by mental tests were equivalent to the abilities of American school children a little over thirteen years old. On the basis of this finding, it was concluded that mental maturity is reached on the average at thirteen and that no mental growth takes place after this age. Of course, the age of thirteen is not accurate, for there is considerable growth beyond this age.

It is probably safe to conclude that a person reaches his maximum mental level at about the age of twenty or perhaps a little before or a little after twenty. There no doubt are individual differences, some persons reaching mental maturity a little earlier and some a little later than others. It is true that on the average there is only a little mental growth during the late teens as measured by tests and shown by growth curves; nevertheless, this small amount may be very important. The measured growth from seventeen to eighteen is less than from seven to eight, but a little growth in the late teens may be just enough to enable a person to perform some tasks, say in college or on the job, that otherwise he could not.

Even though mental growth stops at twenty or thereabouts, it does not follow that educational growth need stop at that age. In fact, it is after a person has obtained his maximum mental power that he is best equipped for learning. It is then that he has most capacity for understanding facts and ideas and for thinking. It is then that a person studies for law and medicine; it is then that he masters his craft or learns a business.

**Course of Mental Capacity after Maturity Is Reached.** The course of mental capacity during the adult years has been the subject of many inquiries. Mental tests have been given to adults of all ages. Tests of learning have been given in order to investigate the learning ability of adults over a wide age range. Careful inquiries have been made about the age when the best books are written, when men are most inventive, when scientific discoveries are made, and when chess players become champions. If the age of great mental achievement is known, this should give some clue to the age when mental powers reach their acme.

Psychologists do not agree on the trend in mental capacity during adult years. There are some who believe that mental capacity tends to decline slowly after the early twenties until old age is reached, when the decline becomes more rapid. According to this point of view, the curve representing mental power would be similar to that depicting

<sup>1</sup> Of course, this has not been found with respect to physical abilities, which are considered probably to reach their maximum sometime in the early or middle twenties.



the weight of the brain as given in Fig. 5 (page 82), except that the decline in mental power is more rapid than is the loss of brain weight.

The contention that mental power starts declining after maturity is reached is hardly consistent with many important facts. Just as physical power does not reach its maximum as soon as a person reaches his full stature, so it is likely that full mental power is not reached at age twenty, when the nervous system seems to have reached its maximum growth. On the basis of the research findings on mental capacity and adult learning it can be stated, not too positively it is true, but with considerable confidence, that mental power or capacity probably reaches its maximum at about the age of thirty-five or forty. This is not to imply that there is much, if any, organic growth of the central nervous system which causes an increase in basic intelligence or capacity between the ages of twenty and forty. Whatever increase in intelligence or the ability to use intelligence may occur between the ages of twenty and forty probably comes from experience and education. A person does much and learns much in the period when he is a young adult; he reaches a high point around thirty-five to forty as a consequence of or, shall we say, because of, the cumulative effects of mental maturity and experience.

The statements given here about adult mental power and the curves presented are based on the assumption that adults equip their minds through sustained mental activity. It is assumed that the adult exercises mentally by memorizing, reasoning, and studying new materials as much as a student in school does. Obviously, if he abandons intellectual and learning practices and lives a dormant mental life, tests of his mental and learning powers will show during the adult years large and steady declines which begin in the twenties.

There is hardly any doubt that some time during the adult years, probably in the forties, certain changes in the central nervous system and in the senses take effect and cause a decline in mental capacity to set in. The course of decline is not sharply downward but very gradual. There is considerable evidence that mental powers maintain themselves throughout the adult years surprisingly well for those who keep their minds vigorously active. In fact, the vocabulary and fund of general information may even increase throughout all but the last of adult life. The decline in most mental powers is not very rapid except during advanced years, when the infirmities of old age set in.

**Education in Terms of Mental Growth—Readiness.** Psychologically and educationally, a knowledge of the course of mental growth and decline can be used to advantage by the teacher. By taking into account the mental maturing that occurs during the elementary-school and high-school years the curriculum and teaching can be adjusted to the learning ability or mental capacity of the

pupil. This fact was also pointed out in the discussion of the growth of the brain (page 83).

Books that are too difficult for a child at six may be entirely suitable for his mental level at the age of eight. At six the child has no interest in a book because it is too hard; at eight he finds it interesting because, having reached a higher mental level, it is comparatively easy for him. The concept of readiness is applied extensively in connection with learning to read, do arithmetic problems, begin piano lessons, and so on. A child has readiness for such tasks when because of his experiences and the growth of his physical structures he has the capacity to make good and gratifying progress when he undertakes these tasks.

A student has greater readiness for geography, history, and other subjects because of the reading skills he has acquired; a greater readiness for algebra because of arithmetic abilities; and a greater readiness for studying French because of having studied Latin. When a child will soon be learning to read, he is given greater readiness by hearing and telling stories, by dramatizing them, and by learning to recognize some of the simplest but most frequently used words. Teachers refer to such experiences as the child's background. Readiness is increased by the acquired skills and abilities which help one when he takes on a new problem or project and also by the maturing caused by the growth and development of the body structures. The growth and development of such physical structures as the eyes and ears, of the nervous system, and of the bodily structures in general increase the potential capacity for learning.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Comparable with the increase in physical power that accompanies general growth there is an increase in mental power that accompanies increase in age until maturity is reached. The nervous system grows, and this is the basis of increasing intelligence, which develops through education and experience.

Trying to teach a child that which is actually too advanced or too difficult for him does not result in a better educated child. In fact it is likely to harm him emotionally.

One of the indexes to growth of intelligence is increase in vocabulary, which has two phases, words used and words correctly recognized. Increase in vocabulary in general is characteristic of mental growth and reaches its high point in the twenties, although it is possible that vocabulary ability increases slightly throughout most of adult life.

Memory, which is a basic element in intelligence, also develops steadily in a manner characteristic of mental growth and reaches maturity in the late teens or early twenties.

Another index to the development of intelligence is the development

of thinking through the stages of enumeration, description, and interpretation. The teacher should be conscious of these stages and in teaching should try to stimulate the higher orders of thinking.

The above indexes evidence mental growth because they indicate increasing powers of perception, memory, imagination, and reasoning or problem solving.

A person has mental or learning readiness for tasks when he has grown and developed to a level where he has the potentiality and capacity to learn these tasks readily.

The concept of mental readiness should be interpreted in terms of maturing and experience.

General mental growth is most rapid in the first 5 years of life, nearly as rapid from ages five to ten, less so from ten to fifteen, and much less so from fifteen to twenty. Natural mental growth probably stops at about the age of twenty. Bright children develop much faster than dull children and reach a much higher level at maturity. The bright probably develop over a little longer period than do the dull.

Mental maturing is the mental growth and development that results from the growth of the structures and from experience. Mental maturity is the stage reached when growth stops, usually after the first two decades of life.

Of importance, too, is the course of mental capacity after adulthood is reached. Some studies indicate that, beginning in the late twenties, mental abilities decline; others, that mental capacity declines very little, if at all, until well past middle age. The golden years of life are probably the two decades from twenty to forty.

The adult years are good years for professional and personal development, and the teacher should capitalize on her adulthood to achieve maximum proficiency and happiness.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Explain how maturing increases mental capacity or mental readiness.
2. A person of twenty is dull and does not seem able to remember well or to think clearly. Discuss whether or not he will become significantly more intelligent as he grows older. Was he bright as a child?
3. How do experience and the maturing of structures affect the mental processes of perception, memory, reasoning, and imagination?
4. During the childhood years, growth is learning's best friend. Discuss.
5. Some teachers call for facts and more facts, and the class period consists in reciting facts and figures. Some teachers encourage reasoning in the form of description and interpretation. Which teachers are cooperating best with Nature?
6. The structures underlying mental abilities probably stop growing at the age of about 20. Discuss whether or not function, or intellectual manifestations, stops developing at that age also.

7. During what years of life do growth and development add most cubits to our intellectual stature?

8. At sunset the sun is not so bright as at midday. In the sunset of life the intellect is not so bright as at the noon of life, which is at the age of about thirty-five. Comment.

9. Two parents were discussing the education of their children. One parent said that on the average a child of ten can learn better than a person of twenty. The other parent said that the person of twenty is superior to the child of ten. What do you think?

10. A psychologist said to a young man of twenty-four, "Nature has stopped improving your nervous system, but you should make full use of the intellectual endowment you now have." Comment.

11. Of two ten-year-old children, one has an I.Q. of 75 and the other an I.Q. of 150. What comparative mental levels will they reach as adults?

## 12. Intelligence, Its Meanings, Organization, and Relationships

**What to Look For.** Master the ideas found in the definitions of intelligence, and observe that there is a tendency to judge a person's intelligence in terms of the effectiveness of all his behavior.

What are the meanings of altitude, level, power, speed, range, width, and area when used to describe intelligence?

In what sense is intelligence quantitative?

How do the educational and cultural opportunities of children affect their being equipped to take intelligence tests?

What is the relation of socioeconomic-vocational status and ability on intelligence tests?

Learn about the three theories of mental organization: (1) connections and bonds; (2) one general and several specific factors; (3) primary mental abilities.

What mental processes are basic to intelligence?

Some evidence that intelligence tests actually test intelligence and yield valuable results is set forth.

In what sense are intelligence tests aptitude tests?

The meanings of abstract, motor-mechanical, and social intelligence are explained. Compositely these terms afford a description of most of our behavior.

The characteristics of the very bright child are described to show that he tends to be above average in physical, social, and character qualities.

Observe that correspondingly there is a tendency for children with low I.Q.'s to be underaverage in other qualities.

The extended study of gifted children shows that they have a wonderful record, although a few have not succeeded.

Perhaps you will not agree with the discussion of what is the optimum or most desirable I.Q. to have.

**Introduction.** Nearly 40 years ago a professor in a Middle Western university was describing intelligence and how to measure it by the use of the Binet tests. A member of the class was unconvinced and contended at some length that such an intangible quality as intelligence will always elude any effort to define and measure it. The professor listened patiently and after class detained him and asked if he had ever used intelligence tests. The student said he had not and agreed that he would like to learn how. As a result, he tested a number of boys in his neighborhood and learned much about them that helped explain their characteristics and behavior.

His interest was aroused and he began a lifelong study of human capacities. He has become an eminent psychologist and has made several important contributions to the measurement of intelligence and to the understanding of its relationships to other qualities.

**Definition and Meaning of Intelligence.** There is little agreement even among psychologists on a definition of intelligence. In a sense, this disparity of opinion is not undesirable, for it allows the expression of a greater number of concepts. Intelligence has been variously defined as the ability to do abstract thinking, the capacity to learn, the ability to respond in terms of truth and fact, and the ability to adjust to one's environment. Some definitions of intelligence center on the effectiveness of the intellectual processes—perception, memory, reasoning, and imagination. Other definitions have been given, also, but these are enough to indicate the range of the definitions. In the field of educational psychology the definition of intelligence as the capacity to learn is as satisfactory as any. We judge a pupil's intelligence by the quickness with which he can learn and by the amount that he has learned.

Most definitions of intelligence center on abstract intelligence or on facility with ideas and concepts. Accordingly intelligence is evaluated in terms of the facility of the mental processes in dealing with abstract symbols. Some definitions are in terms of adjustment to new conditions or the facility with which one solves the problems that he faces. These latter concepts permit a broader interpretation of intelligence as including all of a person's behavior and not only that which involves words and other symbols.

A more comprehensive meaning of intelligence holds that a person is intelligent according to the effectiveness with which he deals with all the elements and situations in his environment. Thus a person's intelligence is evaluated according to how he deals with people, things, and ideas. Accordingly the degree or amount of intelligence depends on the degree of effective integration of one's capacities and abilities for getting along well.

A person may be intelligent in some respects and not in others. One

may be very intelligent academically but be a fool with money or have such poor control of his emotions and feelings that he does not get along with people. If a person is egocentric and alienates his friends, his behavior is certainly not very intelligent. A child may be a good lesson getter but be so full of anxiety and fears, for which there is no true basis, that he is suffering from tensions and is unhappy much of the time. Certainly such persons are not uniformly intelligent, although they are intelligent in some respects. Therefore it might be useful to evaluate all of a person's behavior to determine the nature and extent of his intelligence.

Such a view of intelligence will be objected to by many because it includes one's emotional responses, one's initiative, and all the features of one's behavior. It is impossible, however, to separate the mental, emotional, social, and volitional elements of one's behavior. When we use the term *mental hygiene*, for example, we assume a certain "pure" mental element in one's mental and emotional health. It seems probable, nevertheless, that all of a person's behavior should be evaluated in determining his intelligence.

The intelligence of a pupil can be measured by the difficulty of the tasks that he can do. The difficulty of tasks is, in turn, determined by the percentage of people in a specified group who can do them. For instance, in the case of twelve-year-old children who are working arithmetic problems or defining words, the easiest problems are those which all can solve, and the easiest words are those which all can define. The hardest are those which none or very few can solve or define. The degree of difficulty of such items can be determined by giving them to older children and to adults.

The child who can do more of the difficult tasks or more of those in which most children fail is the more intelligent. The altitude, level, or power of his intellect is determined by the most difficult tasks that he can do. The range, or width, of his intellect is determined by the number of tasks that he can perform at each level. The area, or spaciousness, of the intellect is based on its altitude and its width. There is a close correspondence between altitude, on the one hand, and width, or range, on the other; the person who has mental power to reach a high altitude of performance can generally do more at each level than a person with a lower level of capacity.

For example, twelve-year-olds who can define words or work arithmetic problems missed by 95 per cent of twelve-year-olds have a higher altitude of intellect than have those whose limit is reached by defining words or working arithmetic problems that are missed by 50 per cent of twelve-year-olds. Furthermore, those who can do the more difficult tasks can also define more words, do more arithmetic problems, and perform other tasks that are easier, that are missed, say,

by only 10 per cent of twelve-year-olds. In other words, those with the higher level of ability can also do better with easier tasks than can those of less altitude of intellect. At such low levels, where the ability to achieve is too widespread to distinguish a child of higher from one of low mental power, those of greater mental power can be discovered by the speed of their performance.

Two very important intellectual factors are power and speed. Power is determined by the difficulty or complexity of the problem or task a person can do when he is given all the time he needs. Power indicates the ability to solve problems, follow directions, memorize, define words, see relationships, integrate a whole out of parts when plenty of time is given. Speed refers to the quickness with which one can reach the correct solution, define the word, etc. The tasks and exercises used to test power generally range in difficulty from relatively easy to very difficult; but, to test speed, the tasks are of only moderate difficulty for the person being tested. Power and speed are related, for ordinarily a person is quick in accomplishing tasks because of his high mental power. A person of high mental power can do most tasks easily and therefore rapidly, but he will do relatively much more slowly the tasks of a difficulty near the limit of his intellectual altitude.

There are some exceptions to the general relationship of speed and power. Some children and adults of high mental capacity are deliberate in their nature and are so constituted emotionally that when they are put under pressure to work rapidly they do so very poorly. Speed tests, which are often used in school, are harassing to pupils of this nature. In fact, it is both psychologically and socially unsound to stress the use of speed—especially unsound in a society that is emphasizing recreation and living at a more moderate tempo.

Intelligence is quantitative in the sense that it is measured by the number of tasks that one can do. The child who can define more words and solve more problems than another child of the same age is the brighter, or more intelligent, of the two. The intelligence test cannot, however, include all tasks; it therefore contains what its author regards as a good sample of tasks. These, varying from the easy, which all can do, to those which none can do, are arranged to measure adequately a pupil's ability to do the tasks.

**Measurement of Native Capacity.** Long and heated controversy has been waged over the question whether intelligence tests measure true capacity or whether the abilities tested are the product of teaching, educational opportunities, and environmental advantages. According to the latter point of view, a person's ability to read, to memorize, or to define words reflects his training and not his innate capacity. It is, of course, true that the abilities measured by mental tests are largely acquired abilities. There can be little dispute about



this. The point that the mental tester makes, however, is that, in general, acquired abilities are in proportion to one's native capacity. What one has acquired is an index to one's power to acquire, or to learn. Thus the extent of one's vocabulary, capacity to comprehend directions, or ability to select the best answer indicates the relative degree of native brightness. Such a theory implies, of course, that children have had sufficient opportunity to acquire the abilities tested by mental tests. Ordinarily, it is true that children have enough opportunity; consequently, differences in performance involving mental concepts reflect fairly accurately the power for acquiring ability, or the capacity to learn: the capacity designated as intelligence.

There are differences in the circumstances of life that equip some pupils better than others with the materials included in intelligence tests. Children raised in homes where only foreign languages are spoken are at a disadvantage in a mental-test situation, especially in their earlier years. An especially rich or impoverished environment affects the measured intelligence of preschool children but by the time children have reached the upper grades and high school, the abilities measured by intelligence tests indicate fairly well their capacity for acquiring these abilities.

**Intelligence and Cultural Influences.** Scores of studies have yielded data which show that the intelligence of adults and children corresponds in a general way with their socioeconomic levels. On the average children whose parents are highly educated and who hold well-paying, highly respected positions, who have fine homes in the best residential sections, and who in general are successful and favorably recognized have average I.Q.'s which are about 20 to 25 points higher than the average I.Q. of children in the lowest class. In the lowest socioeconomic class are parents and children who live in the slums or in Shantytown. The parents have a minimum of education, often only a year or two, perform unskilled day labor, or are poorly paid factory hands. Unemployment and relief are part of the pattern. People of the lowest class do not hold positions in the government, in clubs, or on boards and seldom obtain honors of any kind. People classify between those extremes according to the degrees of their socioeconomic significance.

The average I.Q. of children of the highest socioeconomic level is probably about 115; of the lowest economic level the average is about 90. All studies have not yielded exactly the same information, but the two averages given are probably representative of the findings. The children of both the highest and lowest socioeconomic classes have a wide range of I.Q.'s from very low to very high. There are children of the most favored classes who have very low I.Q.'s and those of the least favored who have high I.Q.'s. There are, however, more high

I.Q.'s among children of the highest socioeconomic level and more low I.Q.'s among children of the lowest level, and thus the large difference in their average I.Q.'s.

Until recently, it has been quite generally believed that those who had achieved high socioeconomic status did so because of high intelligence along with much ambition and industry. Conversely, those who had drifted to the lowest socioeconomic level were there, the evidence suggested, because of low intelligence and a lack of ambition and industry. It follows, on the basis of the hereditary principle that like produces like, that parents of the highest level would produce on the average children with high I.Q.'s and parents of the lowest socioeconomic status would have children of comparatively low average I.Q.

The many analyses of test results according to socioeconomic levels have consistently shown class differences, but during the last few years some educators at the University of Chicago have tried to show that the content of our intelligence tests favors the children of the upper socioeconomic levels and penalizes those of the lowest.<sup>1</sup> Specifically, it is pointed out that much of the material in typical intelligence tests is verbal—consisting of words—and that this content favors children of parents who are educated and who therefore use an extensive vocabulary. Such parents have many books and magazines in the home and in general expose their children to the best cultural influences. This is in sharp contrast with the educational influences on children raised in homes that are impoverished economically and culturally. There the children do not have the opportunity to acquire many of the meanings of the verbal material found in intelligence tests.

It is also contended by the Chicago educators that our American schools do not furnish the environment that is most favorable for children of the lowest cultural groups. Rather, the curriculum of the schools and their methods, it is stated, are more suitable for children from the more favorable cultures. On this point there is a lack of specificity and concreteness, and nothing of a definite nature can be set forth here.

In order to test their theories, the University of Chicago educators sponsored the testing of nearly 2,300 nine- and ten-year-old children and nearly 2,500 thirteen- and fourteen-year-olds of all socioeconomic-cultural classes. A number of commonly used group intelligence tests were used, the items in these tests being like those illustrated on pages 245 to 248 of Chap. 10. The items were carefully analyzed to discover the percentage of successes and failures of children from the different socioeconomic classes. The differences in the percentages of success and

<sup>1</sup> These educators are Allison Davis, Robert J. Havighurst, Kenneth Eells, Virgil E. Herrick, and Ralph Tyler.

failure according to social class will point to the sociocultural effects on the various types of material of intelligence tests and will also locate specific items which reflected the advantages and disadvantages of the various sociocultural environments.

It was discovered that on the average or on the whole children of the highest socioeconomic levels did the best on all types of items—verbal, form, space, and pictorial. There were a few individual items in which there were very small differences, but children of the highest class did consistently better on the great majority of items.

The superiority was greater on the verbal items than on the form, space, or pictorial ones. This fact has been interpreted as pointing to the greater cultural influences of the better home environment on the verbal than on the nonverbal content. There is some evidence, however, which does not support this point of view, for the differences in the scores on the verbal material of children of the highest and lowest socioeconomic-cultural classes was greater for the thirteen- and fourteen-year-old children than it was for the nine- and ten-year-olds. In other words, the difference increased with age. This is surprising, for older underprivileged children in school represent a greater selection of the brighter ones of their group than do older more privileged children. Also, with the larger number of years of schooling children from lowest class homes would make up in considerable part for their impoverished home environment. If children from culturally meager environments actually had the "brains," or the basic intelligence, they would, because of the 7 or 8 years of formal education which they had had by the time they became thirteen or fourteen years old, have overcome in part the handicap in acquiring verbal meanings which a poor home environment had imposed on them.

The activities of the typical school stress verbal meanings. Therefore it seems that if children from unfavored homes had higher mental capacities than the typical mental tests indicate, they would acquire word meanings in school and become relatively better as they increased in age. The evidence of the reported studies from the University of Chicago shows that, instead of a reduced gap between the older groups of the highest and lowest levels of the socioeconomic-cultural scale, there actually is a larger one.

There is considerable interest at present in devising culture-free intelligence tests. This, of course, has been a serious concern of all mental testers. Even Binet over 50 years ago was very conscious of the necessity of choosing mental-test content which was not oversensitive to educational and environmental influences. It is necessary that the material selected for mental tests be of a kind which can be organized into problems and exercises that measure actual, basic intelligence.

Conceivably, verbal material may be best for this purpose, although all types of symbols should prove more useful than any single kind.

As one reads the writings of the University of Chicago educators interested in this problem, one senses that they have a deep, sympathetic feeling for children from the low socioeconomic classes. They believe that these children have much more potentiality than our present intelligence tests indicate and that, if the school curriculum were suitable, they would probably succeed in and out of school as fully as children from the privileged classes. All this represents a most commendable attitude, especially in this callous world, where underprivileged children have far too few sympathetic sponsors and supporters.

It is hoped that a few schools will experiment in providing the right education for what are now the relatively low-testing children from the low socioeconomic groups, so that they will come under the influence of the kind of teaching which will cause them to grow and bloom. Then we shall learn whether or not these low-testing, underprivileged children can be nurtured by an educational environment which will produce proportionately as many doctors, lawyers, engineers, scientists, professors, artists, and authors from the lower end of the socioeconomic-cultural scale as we now obtain from the upper. A demonstration of this nature would be in order to support various hypotheses about social class and potentiality and to supply facts that will fill a number of gaps in our knowledge on this very important subject.

#### THE ORGANIZATION AND STRUCTURE OF INTELLIGENCE

**Bonds and Connections.** There are three rather distinct theories about the organization of intelligence or mental abilities. The theory supported by Thorndike assumes quite a specific neurological basis of intelligence in the form of connections between stimulus and response. According to this theory there are specific neural bonds or connections underlying behavior. Consequently, if a person knows a name or can define a word, give the product of two numbers, recognize a face, recite a poem, juggle balls, or carve with skill, he can do these things because connections or bonds have been established in the nervous system through practice and learning. In view of the estimated 13,000,000,000 neurons, the potentialities for bonds or connections are very great. Thorndike's theory does not exclude the possibilities of all sorts of combinations of bonds and connections as a basis of skills and learnings of all degrees of complexity and comprehensiveness. Intelligence according to this theory is basically the actual and potential connections and bonds in the nervous system.

**A General Factor and Specific Factors.** Spearman, an English psychologist and contemporary of Thorndike, advanced a two-factor theory based on a general mental factor which is designated as *g* and specific factors designated as *s*. Some time after the announcement of these two factors, he recognized that some of the specific factors belonged together, and he called these *group factors*. The *g*, or general, mental factor represents the general mental energy or power that functions in all one's mental performances. Above the limit set by the size of a person's *g*, or general, mental power and energy, one's performance depends on *s*, or specific, factors.

Let us try to understand the general factor in another way. Think of a student who is very good in a wide variety of studies: mathematics, literature, languages, science, philosophy, and others. He deals effectively with ideas in all fields that he studies and also with various abstract symbols such as words, mathematical and scientific symbols, pictorial forms, musical notes, and so forth. This student has a large *g*, or general, factor which accounts for his effectiveness in all intellectual areas. Another person may be only average in his fields of study or mental activities because his *g* is only average. A person whose general mental activities and learning capacities are very limited has a small *g*.

The concept of the special factors, or *s*, explains the special capacities a person may have which are evidently in excess of or above the general capacity or general factor. For example, a person may be especially good in one of the following: languages, music, painting, mathematics, physics, building design, or any specialty. When such capacities extend above one's general capacity, or the *g* factor, they are accounted for by specific factors, or *s*. Generally the weak and mediocre do not have high special abilities; in other words, large *s*'s seldom accompany small *g*'s. Sometimes, for example, good musical ability is shown by people of very moderate general capacity. The psychological records include a few cases of persons of low general intelligence who can multiply a pair of four-digit numbers mentally or who can extract a square root and do mentally what skilled mathematicians must do with a pencil or by the use of a table. Another illustration of a specific factor is that of a person of limited mental capacity who could read the numbers of the cars of a passing freight train and give the sum of these numbers when the caboose passed by him. He had, of course, a very extraordinary specific capacity even though his *g* factor was small.

Sometimes the special factors are interrelated sufficiently to constitute a group factor. However, the basic feature of Spearman's theory is the *g* and *s* factors.

**The Primary Mental Abilities.** Another attempt to explain the structure or organization of intelligence has been made by Thurstone.

By the use of mental tests and special statistical techniques, he divided intelligence or the mind into seven primary mental abilities:

1. Number, or numerical, ability.
2. Verbal fluency and facility.
3. Spatial visualization.
4. Verbal relations.
5. Inductive and deductive reasoning.
6. Perceptual abilities.
7. Memory.

It is assumed that these abilities are quite separate and distinct, in other words, that there is very little or no correlation between them. Factually, this is not strictly true; there is considerable relationship between numerical and verbal abilities and also between the mental processes of memory, perception, reasoning, and visualization.

A theoretical weakness in this list of primary mental abilities is that they are not parallel or coordinate. For example, memory is given as a separate ability, though both verbal and numerical abilities depend greatly on memory. In fact, there would be no mental abilities without memory, as memory "holds" verbal, numerical, or other symbolic material that one is working with. Similarly in dealing with forms and shapes for determining power to visualize spatially, the processes of perception and reasoning are fully in play. The point to capture here is that the mental processes and powers of perception, memory, reasoning, and imagination are involved in the use of numbers, words, space, form, and any other symbols and consequently there are no word, number, or space abilities apart from these mental processes and powers, which in turn are interrelated. In other words, memory needs perception and perception needs memory. Reasoning, perception, memory, visualization, and imagination depend on each other. There are reciprocal relationships and interdependence among them. They are interwoven and probably have a common core and are hardly separate and distinct.

It is useful, however, to measure the facility of the mental processes with tests containing various symbols such as numbers, words, forms, pictures, formulas, and the various kinds of mathematical and scientific symbols and forms. Such tests show the symbols with which one's mental processes are most effective. There are mentalities that are more effective with words and related ideas and therefore have greater aptitude for verbal materials found in such areas as languages and literature. Other mentalities may have more capacity with spatial concepts and various forms and figures and will perform better on the tests which employ forms and figures. Such an aptitude may indicate special talent for art and design, architecture, or probably certain mechanical pursuits. Tests employing numbers and mathematical and scientific symbols and thus testing perception of, memory of, and

reasoning with such symbols indicate talent for mathematics, chemistry, physics, and engineering.

Thus any attempt to test mental abilities with various kinds of test materials does serve a good purpose by yielding results which indicate with what kinds of ideas and concepts any child, adolescent, or adult is best or poorest. Test results which differentiate or separate out the various abilities mentioned help to point out for a person the areas of study and work where he may be most competent.

Even though everyone varies in his capacities, it is rare that a student tests high in mathematics and low in verbal material, for example, since as a rule, if one's mental processes are good with one form of symbol, they are likely to be good with others, also. It should likewise be remembered that most areas of activity require thinking with several types of symbols. Hence it is useful to have a knowledge of a person's general intellectual level or capacity based on testing the various mental processes with different types of problems and different symbols.

In science one needs facility with mathematical symbols and concepts and also with words. The various branches of medicine require a high order of verbal ability as well as facility with numerical, space, and form symbols. The doctor must learn and remember hundreds of technical names and meanings; without high verbal abilities, he will be so blocked that he will turn to something else.

Whatever one's field of study and preparation, most of the abilities are needed. Compositely they constitute a general mental capacity. Obviously, however, one should work in the fields where one's highest abilities are most required.

**Mental Tests and the Measurement of Intelligence.** Psychologists use the term *intelligence* to designate the capacities that are measured by the use of intelligence tests. One can argue endlessly whether or not these tests are true intelligence tests and whether or not they actually measure intelligence. Such discussions are of theoretical importance and serve a good purpose, but the fact is that intelligence tests are very useful for evaluating extremely important abilities and thus yielding knowledge which can be used for guiding the student.

Some evidence of the validity of the mental test is to be found by comparing the ability of the youngest and oldest children of a given grade. It will be discovered that, for the most part, the oldest children in the grade obtain the lowest scores and the youngest obtain the highest ones. The principal reason for the differences must be that the younger ones have more native capacity.

Furthermore, success in these tests corresponds with ability in school. The correlation between mental-test scores and success in school as measured by school marks is about .50. Moreover, those who

have most ability, according to these tests, continue longest in school. Those who have, on the average, the lowest ability drop out earliest in their school careers. Thus there is a fairly strong relationship between success in school and mental-test ability.

There is a positive correlation also between teachers' estimates of the brightness of their pupils and the I.Q.'s of the students as determined by mental tests. The correlation is probably about .50, which is large enough to indicate to some extent the validity of the tests.

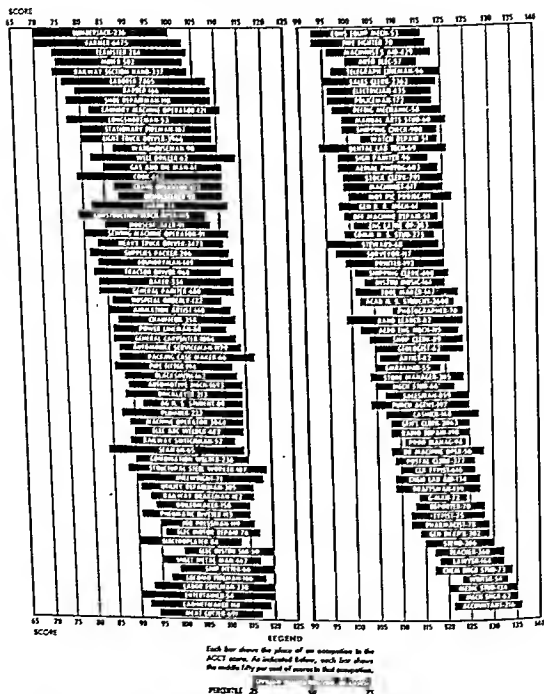
Among adults, there is a relationship between vocational status and ability in these tests. Empirically, we know that the professions call for a higher order of mental ability than unskilled labor. In general, occupations are classified with the professions at one end of the scale and unskilled labor at the other, presumably according to the amount of intelligence needed by the members of these occupations. Figure 16 indicates that the order is a logical one, although there is much overlapping of ability.

**Intelligence, or Aptitude.** Most of the evidence for the validity of intelligence tests is in the form of success in the school situations. Such factors as age in a given grade, school survival and elimination, correlation of mental-test results with school marks, and teachers' estimates pertain to the school situation. Mental tests have proved most useful in the school situation for indicating the aptitude of children for doing schoolwork. Consequently, these tests have been called *aptitude tests*. We speak of those tests given to grade- and high-school students as *school aptitude tests*; more specifically, those which are used with high-school graduates and college students are called *college aptitude tests*.

These tests measure fairly well the mental aptitude that a student possesses for doing his schoolwork, but they do not indicate so well what every individual student actually will do. There are many reasons why some students do not achieve as well in school as they are able to. The most common one is that they are not motivated and do not work conscientiously and efficiently. On the other hand, some pupils who have low aptitude according to the tests achieve fairly well or better than expected because of unusual diligence and application.

It should not be charged, however, that the results of the aptitude test indicate nothing because of some inconsistencies between expected and actual achievement. They indicate fairly well the potentialities of the individual children. The problem of the school is to stimulate and guide children to perform and achieve in accordance with these potentialities. The school will doubtless always fail with some children; but if it tries in many ways to adapt its methods and content to the individual differences in the aptitudes of children, it will succeed much better than it does at present.





## VARIOUS KINDS OF APTITUDES AND CAPACITIES

**Abstract Intelligence.** The aptitude, or capacity, discussed here is an aptitude involving words, numbers, and other symbols. It is an aptitude for learning to read, for working problems expressed in words and symbols. for memorizing verbal material—in general, the capacity that expresses itself in effective behavior with words and symbols. This type of intelligence is referred to as *abstract* or *verbal intelligence*. It is the type most important for success in the learning situation in school, for it is necessary for success in reading, arithmetic, geography, history, and other academic subjects. It is also the intelligence featured by the mathematician, writer, or speaker or in general by the professor and scholar. Hence, it is also essential for those entering occupations and professions requiring extended schooling.

The first requirement of the mind is that it perceive and comprehend, and intelligence will vary according to degree of perception and comprehension. The mind must also remember what it perceives in order to be intelligent. The tools, or means, of intelligence are words, symbols, and space concepts, and the processes of intelligence consist in the use of these means in reasoning. Intelligence varies from person to person according to the capacity to perceive, comprehend, and remember and according to the effective use of the symbols and tools involved in thinking and reasoning.

**Mechanical, Motor, or Concrete Abilities.** In addition to the abstract, there are other phases of aptitude, or capacity. One of these is the mechanical, motor, or concrete. This aspect of intelligence refers to aptitude, or capacity, for dealing with situations involving objects or things. The boy who is apt at handling tools, taking a clock apart and putting the parts together, repairing an automobile, finding and replacing a blown fuse probably has a high order of mechanical intelligence. He is successful in solving problems involving concrete, or objective, materials.

Tests have been devised also for measuring motor ability and mechanical aptitude. The mechanical aptitude tests generally consist in assembling the parts of various mechanical devices, such as a mouse-trap, doorbell, three-piece clothespin, and bicycle bell. A widely known test of this kind was devised by Stenquist; and the Minnesota Assembly Test by Paterson, Elliot, and others is a revision and extension of the Stenquist test. Mechanical assembly tests have been used quite extensively with school children in connection with industrial courses. The correlation between the ability measured by mechanical assembly tests and general, or abstract, intelligence is comparatively low, indicating that mechanical tests measure a capacity different from that measured by the usual mental test.

In the field of physical education the term *motor abilities* is used to describe athletic and physical skills and abilities. We say of the person who can execute difficult dance steps, who can throw and catch a ball skillfully, who can do acrobatic stunts, who can juggle balls and other objects, who can dodge quickly, who can play baseball, football, basketball, golf, and similar games well, or who can handle his body with grace and skill that he has a high order of motor ability.

People differ in the degree to which they are possessed of motor skills. At one extreme are the very awkward, those who seem to be all thumbs and feet, as we say, and who have very little aptitude for athletics and sports and consequently no interest in them. At the other extreme is the renowned dancer, the famous athlete, the great magician, and the outstanding acrobat. Most people fall between these extremes in motor skills, with a concentration about the average, as is the case with most human characteristics and abilities.

**Social Abilities.** This phase of human behavior pertains to the capacity to behave effectively with people. A person who can deal well with others has social intelligence. Personality and character traits are closely related to, if not an integral part of, social intelligence. Temperament, disposition, attitudes, honesty, judgment, and humor are factors that are important in determining how well a person gets along with others.

Many persons fail in life because of poor social intelligence. Probably more people fail because of this deficiency than because of inadequate abstract intelligence. Ordinarily, social and abstract intelligence go hand in hand, but there are people relatively high in one and low in the other.

The politician who is cordial and friendly and whom the people like and therefore vote for has a high capacity for social relationships. So also has the salesman who is gracious and friendly and as a result usually makes the sale, because the prospective customer favors the salesman he likes or finds it hard to say "no" to one whose personality is very likable. The teacher whom the pupils have confidence in and are fond of and who gets along well with her fellow teachers is well developed socially. The student who has many dates, who is a leader in school activities, and who gets many votes when a candidate at the school elections has good social qualities.

A person of high social ability is a well-adjusted person who is usually in good physical health and who must be in good mental health in order to be a successful social being. A person well developed socially is friendly and comparatively free from jealousy, has good habits, and in general rubs people along the grain and not against it.

**People of Various Abilities.** Usually, good qualities go together and are found in the same person. More often than not, if an individ-

ual has good abstract intelligence, he also has good social understanding and ability. Similarly, if a person has high mechanical intelligence or a high order of motor abilities, he is more likely to be above average socially and also in his general intelligence. But there are those who are high in one quality and low in others.

Take, for example, a certain young man on a college staff who had a very good mind, as his colleagues would say. For advanced students, he was regarded as one of the most stimulating teachers in the college. He was very alert mentally, his fund of knowledge was unusually large, and his ideas showed that he had the power of penetrating deeply into his subject.

But socially he was a different man. At times he seemed charming. But if crossed a bit, he became disagreeable, and often he lost his temper. He did not have the capacity to meet people with warm cordiality. His circle of friends was small, its members changed often, and hardly anyone remained a friend very long.

This man's mechanical and motor skills were poor. He had never engaged in sports to any extent and seemed to be without mechanical sense. He operated an old automobile and had no ability to make even the simplest repairs and adjustments. Here, then, is an example of a young man brilliant of mind, therefore having high verbal or abstract abilities, but short of social and motor abilities.

On the other hand, another young man is good all round. He thinks straight, understands what is going on, and in school did an excellent grade of work. He is good in music, being able to play a number of instruments, and these abilities call for both abstract and motor skills. The abstract intelligence consists in understanding and interpreting the written music, and motor and mechanical abilities are involved in playing the piano, violin, and horns. He also shows that he has mechanical abilities by his skills with motors. For example, when on a fishing trip his outboard motor was not working very well, he took it apart and cleaned, adjusted, and reassembled it, after which it operated perfectly. He is a good shot with both rifle and shotgun, and he can play a good game of tennis, baseball, and basketball. In fact, he is good in many sports. He also has good social qualities, as shown by the fact that he has many friends. Many visit him at his home, and he has many friends whom he calls on. He is the head of a department in a large store, and those who work under his supervision have very good morale because of his skillful way of dealing with people. This young man, having a good mind, knowing how to get along with people, and having good skills for dealing with concrete things, can be classified as having good abstract, social, and mechanical abilities.

These three types of abilities—abstract, motor, and social—although not entirely independent of each other, are still unrelated to

the extent that a person may be distinctly stronger in one than in the other. The concepts of these three types or phases of intelligence serve as a general guide for understanding the abilities and characteristics of persons. It is not well to push these distinctions in intelligence too far in their application to individuals, although a consideration of kinds of abilities assists in comprehending more adequately the capacities and characteristics of many persons.

It should also be mentioned that there are other tests, such as those of musical ability, art appreciation and art ability, neurotic tendencies, vocational interests, honesty, and knowledge of right and wrong. Some of these are of practical value; others are in the experimental and theoretical stages.

### SOME CHARACTERISTICS OF HUMAN ENDOWMENT

**The Very Bright Child.** Proportionately, there are few very bright children, but in most schools there is one or more. If a school does not have a particularly bright child one year, it may have such a child another year. Very bright children may be described as those with I.Q.'s of 140 and above. It is estimated that there is, on the average, 1 such child among every 400. I.Q.'s of very bright children range from 140 up into the 180's and 190's. Few indeed have I.Q.'s over 170; the number with such I.Q.'s is much less than the number whose I.Q.'s are in the 140's and 150's.

**Superiority and Its Problems.** The bright child is as much a deviate as the dull one, the former being above the average and the latter below. He is very different from the average, but his differences are not so apparent as are those of the children with low I.Q.'s. Negative differences from the average, or deficiencies, make themselves more felt than do positive differences, or strength. The strength of very bright pupils is not so discernible to the teacher as the weakness of the dull, which reveals itself in every lesson.

As a consequence, the very bright child is left to take care of himself, for he ordinarily does well in his work. If the very bright child does not do satisfactory schoolwork—and some do not, according to the usual standards—the mental-test results are regarded as unreliable and he is treated as a dull child. Such treatment is most unfortunate—the worst that a bright child can be given. It is serious enough when bright children are not recognized and are given a level of instruction suitable only for average children.

Consequently very bright children have difficulties in getting along in school, and this is especially true of gifted boys. The teacher who is successful in dealing with children whose I.Q.'s are above 140 is to be commended, for teachers often fail in dealing effectively with exceptionally bright children.

**General Characteristics of Superior Children.** Children who are very bright tend to be above the average in other traits, also. Rather than being small, nervous, and sickly, they tend to be larger than average, stable emotionally, and in good health. There are many exceptions even among the intellectually gifted, but on the average they are favorably endowed in all respects. Nature tends to favor in every way those whom it has favored in one particular, such as with high intelligence.

Not only does Nature favor the intellectually gifted, but nurture as well. Brilliant children are generally born to parents of a high socioeconomic status. Marked exceptions exist, of course, but the largest proportion are born to parents of good or more than average means. Consequently, they are given better care, consisting in better diet and more adequate medical attention. Furthermore, their habit and emotional training is better. These favorable environmental factors have their effect in developing other desirable attributes.

Intellectually gifted children, as has been said, tend to be larger and healthier than others of their age, although this superiority is not great, being only an inch or two in height and a few pounds in weight. At about the age when children begin school the intellectually gifted are probably 4 or 5 pounds heavier than average children of the same age; at the age of fifteen they are about 10 to 15 pounds heavier. As indicated before, these differences are not large, but they do show the tendency and serve to offset the general compensatory notion that mental strength and physical weakness are associated. Gifted children have fewer headaches, are less nervous, have better posture, have clearer skins, are less easily fatigued, have fewer colds, and in general show fewer symptoms of general weakness than other children.

Additional evidence on the physical qualities of the mentally gifted was yielded by a comparison of 220 ranking contestants in the annual science talent search with 1,786 nonranking contestants. The ranking contestants had fewer physical defects than contestants of lower standing except for eye defects, which can be readily understood. Visual defects no doubt were more frequent among ranking science contestants because of more extensive reading and more intense use of the eyes. Physically, the ranking science candidates were not small and puny. In fact they were taller and heavier than inductees into the United States Army.

It must be kept in mind that not all mentally gifted children are superior to all other children in physical characteristics, emotional stability, and social adjustment. Some are below average in these particulars, and a few of them are considerably below. Each gifted child must be studied individually to determine his status. If a person has one desirable trait, he is likely to have other desirable traits, and if a

person has one undesirable trait he is likely to have other undesirable traits. This is the trend: the principle of human endowment is correlation and not compensation. There are many exceptions to this, however, and each child must be classified, not according to the trend or a principle based on that trend, but on the basis of individual study.

If children are selected because they are particularly high in one trait and are studied for other traits—physical, social, mental—it will be found that they do not rank so high in these other traits, although usually above average. For example, if we choose a group of children who are in the best one-fourth or one-eighth because of their health and physical traits, it will be discovered that, though above average on the whole in mental ability and social adjustment, they are far from as high in these respects as in their physical traits, which, in this instance, were the basis for selection. In general, children as a group are not as high in other traits as in their highest, although they tend to be above the average in these, also.

**Children with Low I.Q.'s.** Children who are inferior mentally tend to be underaverage in other respects. If, for example, a group of mentally inferior children were selected, say with I.Q.'s below 50, it would be discovered that physically, socially, and morally they would tend to be below average. They would be relatively higher, however, in these traits than in their mental traits. For instance, children with I.Q.'s under 50 usually have a physical development beyond their mental development and motor skills above their academic and mental skills.

The mentally retarded tend to be smaller, more nervous, and more fatigued and have headaches more frequently than other children. These weaknesses are not overcome by the time adulthood is reached. It must be remembered, however, as before, that we are speaking of averages and also that there are individuals low in one characteristic and high in others.

Similarly, those who are low mentally tend to make poorer social adjustments than children of high mental capacity. Delinquents, for instance, are distinctly below average in mental capacity. There are, of course, delinquents who are above average, and some are of very high measured intelligence. The modal, or average, I.Q. is probably in the middle or high 80's. The proportion of delinquents with I.Q.'s under 70, or those who may be considered feeble-minded, is several times as large as the proportion of feeble-minded among an unselected group of children.

**Ability, Character, and Personality.** In his study of gifted children, Terman compared them with an unselected group on the basis of test results of selected character and personality traits. The tests

were tests of honesty, trustworthiness, social attitudes, character preferences, and emotional stability.

In these tests the gifted girls and boys showed much better standings than did the unselected group. However, it must be remembered that gifted children are much brighter; possibly these children masked their true characters by giving the answers which they knew to be acceptable rather than those which reflected their true character and motives. In other words, character and personality tests may be to some extent tests of intelligence. If such tests are valid, however, it may be assumed that the character traits of gifted children are more desirable. This is interesting, for the common opinion is that intelligence and delinquency go hand in hand.

Has it not been said that if a crime has been committed within 60 miles of Boston, particularly a crime against property, you may be sure that it has been done by a graduate of Harvard University? Reference is commonly made to the brilliant shysters, the smart crooks, and the clever swindlers. A brilliant man is often considered dangerous, for it is feared that he will utilize this intelligence to defraud his fellow man. The honest man is usually pictured as having a sub-average intellect and being an unimaginative plodder.

The facts show that character and intellect tend to go hand in hand. There are some bright, able men who commit crimes, particularly fraud; but the highest proportion of crime and delinquency is attributable to adults and children who are underaverage in intelligence.

Boys of high intelligence are frequently thought of by their contemporaries as being feminine, or "sissies." It is believed that they like girls' games and do not care for the sports engaged in by red-blooded boys but would rather read books or play the piano. We usually associate vigorous sports, such as school athletics, with boys who have barely the academic ability to remain eligible for such activities.

Gifted boys, as a matter of fact, have about as much interest in "red-blooded" games as have unselected boys. On the other hand, it should be recognized that intellectually superior children have considerably more interest in activities more or less related to school. They especially like to read; and younger girls, in particular, like to cut out pictures, draw, and paint. This is entirely natural for intellects of high order. But intellectually gifted children are as interested in games and physical activities as are run-of-the-mine children.

There is a positive relationship between general intelligence and social acceptability. By children most accepted socially we mean those who are most often chosen as friends, who are given most presents, and who are most often selected as work and play companions. There is a tendency for brighter children to be more acceptable than duller



children. The correlation between intelligence and social acceptability for any given grade is probably around .35, which is not very high but which has some significance when it represents the correlation for a single grade. Social acceptability is to a considerable degree synonymous with social intelligence. Consequently, it can be said that general and social intelligence tend to go together.

In general, then, desirable traits and characteristics tend to accompany each other. There are many exceptions, of course; but, more often than not, intelligence, integrity, health, and personality all tend to occur in an individual in less than average, average, or more than average amounts. Thus a person tends to have a corresponding status in the various traits.

**The Success and Failure of Gifted Children.** Much of our present-day information about gifted children has been obtained by Terman and his fellow workers. In 1922 Terman made a careful study of very highly selected groups of grade- and high-school children who had I.Q.'s of 140 and over. In 1928 a follow-up study was made of Terman's gifted group, and in 1936 Terman and some associates studied the gifted group again. The records for about 1,500 gifted children were in Terman's file, and he located approximately 1,400 of them, or about 93 per cent of his original group. The original grade-school children first studied in 1922 were twenty-six years old on the average when studied in 1938, and the original high-school students averaged thirty-two years of age.

The gifted children have long been grown-up and were last reported on when they averaged thirty-five years of age.<sup>1</sup> They are being studied again at an approximate age over forty, and a report should be forthcoming soon. Physically, the gifted boy has maintained his relative status as a man and is about 2 inches taller and about 10 pounds heavier than the average male. The gifted girls grew up to be women who are so little above the average in height and weight that they may be considered as being about average in size. The health of both the men and the women seems a little better than average, and their death rate is consistent with that observation, as it is a little underaverage. Suicide and the incidence of serious mental disorder are less than for the public at large.

Personally and socially they have got along better than average. Their records have not been perfect. Three of the gifted boys were such serious delinquents that they were placed in reformatories but as adults are getting along very well. One gifted child when he became an adult was imprisoned for violation of the law. There are a few very

<sup>1</sup> Terman, G. M., and M. H. Oden, *The Gifted Child Grows Up. Twenty-five Years' Follow-up of a Superior Group*, Stanford University Press, Stanford University, Calif., 1947.

heavy consumers of alcohol in this group. For 1.45 per cent of the men and 0.92 per cent of the women, alcohol is a very serious problem. However, there is less crime and less alcoholism among the gifted grownup proportionately than among a comparable number of the public at large.

Educationally and professionally the record of the gifted is outstanding and far ahead of the average. Of the men, 69.5 per cent graduated from college, as did 66.8 per cent of the women. This may be compared with about 5 per cent of the public of the same age. Records on high-school graduation showed that 99.6 per cent of the gifted men and 98.6 per cent of the gifted women graduated. This may be compared with 35 per cent for the general adult population. A large proportion of the gifted men continued into the graduate and professional schools, and 10.8 per cent have received the Ph.D or equivalent degree and 8.5 per cent the M.D. Not all had good college records, as two had an average of D. These two constitute less than one-half of 1 per cent of the total group and may be contrasted with the 30 per cent who graduated with honors.

Occupationally the gifted children became very successful adults. Nearly one-half of them are in the professions and only 0.7 per cent in the slightly skilled trades. On the average this is about ten times as good as the typical occupational distribution. By the time the gifted had reached the average age of thirty-five, they had published 90 books and monographs and 1,500 articles on engineering, medicine, and science and in other fields. They have taken out 100 patents, of which about half have been taken out by two members of the group. Their minds have been very fruitful.

Between the most successful and the least successful of the gifted adults, who are now approaching middle age, there was little difference in I.Q., but there was a marked difference in their school progress and success both in high school and in college. Of the most successful, 90.0 per cent graduated from college; of the least successful, only 37.2 per cent graduated. It seems that success in college for students who have an abundance of mental capacity depends on ambition and industry, which are necessary for vocational success, also. Among the most successful, 62.5 per cent of the high-school marks were A's, while among the least successful only 28 per cent of the high-school marks reached this level. In high school the boys in the successful group participated nearly twice as much in extracurricular activities as the least successful group. The difference in marks indicates primarily a difference in industry and systematic effort, and the difference in participation in extracurricular activities indicates a difference in social qualities.

In evaluating his findings after having studied the boys of the gifted

group, Terman makes the statement that, for people with I.Q.'s over 140, success is dependent on social and emotional qualities and ambition to do well, or a drive that leads to achievement.

**The Optimum or Most Desirable Intelligence Quotient.** Of theoretical interest, and even of practical interest, too, is a consideration of the question "What is the optimum or the most satisfactory I.Q. for a person to have?" The answer to this question requires the selection of an I.Q. or a short range of I.Q.'s from the full range of human I.Q., which is approximately from about 5 or 10 up to about 200.

Before making a selection one should realize that I.Q., or the index of brightness, which in turn indicates general mental capacity, is only one part of a person's equipment, which also includes health, physical powers and skills, character and personality, and various volitional or conative qualities. In the consideration of the most desirable intelligence quotient, it is assumed that these other qualities are equal and that the only factor under consideration is intelligence.

In a very general way there is an appropriate I.Q. for any particular vocation, determined by experience in terms of the work people find themselves fitted for. The general pattern is to be found in Fig. 16. For monotonous, routine work, a person with a low I.Q. is more suited than a person with a high I.Q., for the latter would suffer the pains of boredom and would hunger for work that stimulates his mind. Most people of different I.Q.'s—low, average, and high—can get along and be reasonably happy if they work and live in environments that fit their particular levels of intelligence.

Theoretically it would seem that in order to live most fully and richly a superior mind is almost a requisite for understanding and appreciating the many things and events that make up human existence. It is well known, however, that some persons with very alert and vivid minds use them largely for thinking up and dwelling on troubles and anxieties—far more than duller people do. Thus a good mind may be a source of problems as well as a means for solving them.

In order to make outstanding contributions to the world in the form of great scientific discoveries, for understandings of our social and economic structure, and so on, a very high I.Q. is usually needed, and in addition those special interests and insights which are the particular qualities of genius. Intelligence tests do not measure such special qualities. Persons of such caliber and with those qualities are so very rare that they do not satisfy the concept of the optimum I.Q. In fact, they probably deviate so much from the average that they may have trouble in appreciating many of the situations they find themselves in.

Possibly the I.Q.'s in the range of 130 to 145 or 125 to 150 are the

optimum ones. No one can be arbitrary in answering a question as to the degree of brightness which is in general most satisfactory. Perhaps this attempt to do so is worth while largely because it concentrates attention on some of the values associated with I.Q.'s of 125 to 150. Those with such I.Q.'s learn with ease, understand readily, and are able to cope with most of the intellectual problems that they must face. Students, for example, with I.Q.'s of 125 to 150 can train themselves for the best positions and are rarely handicapped intellectually in dealing with their problems. Furthermore, they do not deviate so much above the average and therefore are not so much out of line with the world that they have special problems, which may be the case with the very, very bright. The history of children and adults with I.Q.'s in the range from 135 to 150 or thereabouts shows that a large proportion of them achieve a very satisfactory all-round adjustment in life. It should always be kept in mind, however, that a well-adjusted dullard may live a more useful and a happier life and be a better citizen than a person with a very high I.Q. who is neurotic, lazy, and dishonest.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Intelligence has been defined as learning capacity, ability to think with symbols, to respond correctly, and to get along in one's environment. Probably we should consider intelligence as being effective behavior.

Power, altitude, and level are determined by the difficulty of the tasks a person can do. Speed is determined by the number of tasks done in a given time; and range, or width, by the number of tasks a person can do at any given level. Altitude and range, or width, determine the area, or spaciousness, of a person's mind.

Intelligence is quantitative when evaluated by the number of tasks a person can do.

It is assumed that a person's mental ability indicates his true intelligence, for the amount of mental ability he has is proportional to his intellectual capacity to acquire mental ability. Limited cultural and educational opportunities keep a child from developing fully.

The bond theory assumes specific neural connections and bonds, the *g* and *s* theory provides for a general mental capacity and specific abilities, and the theory of primary mental abilities provides for the abilities listed on page 287.

The basic mental processes probably are perception, memory, reasoning, and imagination.

Evidence that intelligence tests actually test mental capacity is found in the facts that the oldest children in the grade test lowest,

that the youngest test highest, that school success and teachers' estimates correlate with mental-test scores, and that vocational status corresponds with mental-test scores.

The usual intelligence tests are most valuable in indicating what a person can do in school, in other words, his aptitude for schooling.

Abstract intelligence refers to ability with words, numbers, and other symbols. Mechanical, motor, or concrete intelligence refers to capacity and ability to deal with objects and things and also to skill in handling one's body. Social intelligence refers to capacity in dealing with people.

Children with high I.Q.'s show wide ranges of physical, character, and social qualities, but in general those who are very superior in intelligence tend to be above the average in size, health, character, and social qualities. Children low in intelligence tend to be under-average in these qualities.

The success of a group of adults who were gifted children is much above average, although the record is not without blemish and failure.

The optimum I.Q.'s are given as being between 125 and 150. This is just hypothetical, of course, but is predicated on the belief that people with I.Q.'s between 125 and 150 actually get along best in this world.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. What theory of mental organization or mental structure fits your ideas best? Explain.
2. The terms *altitude*, *width*, *area*, *power*, *range*, *level*, and *speed* are used to enlarge our concepts of intelligence. Describe intelligence in these terms.
3. What are the mental processes which underlie intelligence? Explain.
4. What evidence have you pro and con that intelligence tests do test actual intelligence?
5. In school life and out-of-school life, what are the advantages and disadvantages of those who test high, average, or low in the typical mental or intelligence tests?
6. Discuss some of the differences in the characteristics of very superior and feeble-minded people.
7. If you had a choice of being high in two of the three intelligences, or three aspects of intelligence—abstract, social, and mechanical-concrete—and low in one, which two should you choose?
8. Suppose a person has a general intelligence represented by an I.Q. of 125 to 150 but also has a high special ability in music, mathematics, mechanical inventiveness, money-making, writing, or acting. What are likely to be this person's achievements?
9. Discuss the relationship between the intelligence-test scores of individuals and the occupations in which they are engaged. What use can be made of such results for vocational guidance?

10. Criticize and evaluate the various definitions of intelligence. Select the one you like, or make up one of your own.

11. Differentiate between abilities and capacities.

12. How are traits usually related in the same person? Is the tendency toward uniform endowment or endowment showing compensation?

13. What are the usual degrees of endowment of any given person in the various types or aspects of intelligence? For example, if a person is very high in one, how is he likely to rate in the others, and so on for different degrees of endowment in any one of the types of intelligence?

14. It is often said that those low in intelligence are usually stronger and healthier than those high in intelligence. What do you think?

15. Discuss the progress in adulthood of gifted children.

16. Do you think the difference in the I.Q.'s of children from the most favored and least favored socioeconomic conditions is caused primarily by a real difference in mental capacity or by cultural advantages and disadvantages? Discuss.

# 13. Learning Capacity and Progress in School

## *Guiding the Student*

**What to Look For.** What can a kindergarten or first-grade teacher learn about her pupils if she gives them an individual mental examination?

There are differences in the abilities and interests of boys and girls. Should there be different age standards for beginning school?

Learn what the relationship is between pupils' standing on intelligence tests and their standing in the various types of school subjects.

The terms *readiness* and *aptitude* are used in connection with a number of studies.

What are the comparative intelligence-test ratings of students who progress furthest in school and of those who drop out by the way?

What are the school standings and intelligence-test rankings of students who are most likely to succeed in college?

The meaning of a correlation is explained and illustrated in terms of a correlation of .40 and .50. The explanation should be studied carefully.

Except for a few of the mentally deficient, all children begin school, but a retardation and dropping out of pupils take place as they proceed up the educational ladder. Learn what the intelligence levels of pupils are from the kindergarten through the graduate school.

Learn also what the differences tend to be in the average intelligence of students who take the various school subjects, academic, commercial, vocational, and special subjects like music and painting.

Note the difference in abilities of students in various college departments and also the difference in the quality of the student body in high schools, colleges, and universities.

Note also that, in the small schools particularly, the quality of the student body may vary from year to year.

**Introduction.** In the fall of the year over 3,000,000 young children will enter the first grade. Some have been in a kindergarten and so

have some advantage over the great majority, who enroll in a school for the first time when they enter the first grade.

This large army of 3,000,000 young children will be on the march through the American school system for many years, but the progress of their march will differ. Some will begin to falter at the start, some will fall behind, but a few of these may catch up. Some pupils will stay ahead and even increase their lead. As the march continues from grade to grade, for an increasing number of pupils the road becomes steeper and more slippery. In many schools, however, the roads are changed, the grade, as it were, made easier, so that more and more pupils can continue their march. Nevertheless, pupils fall by the wayside. Many drop out at the end of the eighth or ninth grade. More drop out in high school. About 40 per cent of those who graduate from high school go on to college nowadays, and of the number who begin college only about one-half finish. A few spend more than 4 years in college and work for graduate and professional degrees such as those in medicine and law.

The progress made depends in large part on the mental and personal strength of the individual pupil. It also depends on what paths and roads the schools prepare for the pupils and how the teacher helps the pupils make progress.

**Predicting What a Child Can Do.** From the results of mental testing the principal and teacher can judge with greater accuracy what school success can be expected of the child. Furthermore, one can predict in a general way what final vocational status a child may reach, but on that point the teacher must be very careful and conservative. If a child is carefully tested when he begins school, his success in terms of school subjects and grade progress can be anticipated considerably better than if no tests were made. In order to obtain a more reliable basis for predicting the degree of success, it is well to retest children occasionally—possibly every third year or so. Subsequent tests may overcome a part of the unreliability inherent in the testing of children before they have had school experience.

In some school systems the kindergarten teacher tests the beginning kindergarten pupils, thus gaining almost on first acquaintance a fairly accurate knowledge of the mental alertness and mental maturity of each child. She learns in an hour or two as much about a child's mental capacities as otherwise it might take her a year to learn, and she may acquire certain knowledge about the child's mental status that she could obtain in no other way. Furthermore, in testing the child, which in a sense is a systematic interview, the teacher learns whether the child is forward or shy, expresses himself well or poorly, is interested or indifferent, can pay good attention or not, and is friendly and cooperative or the reverse. In giving the individual mental ex-



amination to a child beginning either kindergarten or first grade the teacher acquires much valuable information about the child's personality and social qualities.

If a first-grade teacher has the I.Q.'s and M.A.'s of her pupils when they enter the first grade, she has data that will help her anticipate fairly accurately what they will do in reading and arithmetic, for example. Not all those who are highest in the mental test will be highest in reading and arithmetic, and not all who scored lowest on the mental test will be poorest in reading or spelling. A general trend is shown, however, which may guide the teacher in what to expect from her pupils both individually and as a group.

Experience and experimentation have demonstrated that a child with a mental age of 5, for example, is hardly developed enough mentally for learning how to read. Time will be wasted, for the child cannot learn to understand enough of the printed words to make more than discouraging progress. At a mental age of 6 a child can spend his time more profitably at learning to read and will make better progress. But at a mental age of  $6\frac{1}{2}$  or 7 a child usually can make excellent progress in learning to read.

In this connection it should be mentioned that there are reading readiness tests which will also help the teacher judge when a child is ready to take up reading. These tests have vocabulary elements in them, as do general intelligence tests, but they prove a good supplement to the mental tests in judging a pupil's reading readiness.

Mental age or mental maturity is an index to arithmetic readiness, also. It has been discovered for arithmetic as it has for reading that time is wasted and bad attitudes are formed if children study arithmetic before they are ready for it. In the case of arithmetic, it is really best if only a little is done until a child is 8 or 9 years old mentally or is in the last months of the second grade or in the third grade, when it can be taken up systematically. Again, it is the best educational policy to wait until the child is mentally ready. Up to the time when a child has reached a mental age of 8 or 9, he should be made ready for arithmetic by being exposed to many numerical and quantitative concepts. There are definite methods for developing arithmetic readiness. If the reader is interested in this topic, he should consult books on the teaching of arithmetic.

**Capacities and Abilities of Boys and Girls and Grade Placement.** Results from the testing of the intelligence of elementary-school children indicate that boys and girls of the same age are essentially equal in general mental ability. When analysis is made of particular abilities, it is usually found that girls are superior in penmanship, language, and English courses. In high school and college, girls are on the average ahead in languages, in verbal understanding, and in

expression generally. Boys are usually ahead in arithmetic, algebra, geometry, and the sciences.

Some students of sex differences claim to have found evidence to the effect that girls of primary-school age are so superior to boys that, on the basis of these findings, they recommend that the age of school entrance be so regulated that boys will be 3 to 6 months older than girls when entering school. Before administrators adopt such a plan, we should have more reliable evidence that girls have greater school capacities than boys do. As the evidence now stands, there are no important differences or at least not enough difference to warrant any attempt at such regulation. The differences among the abilities of the boys and of the girls of any given grade are very much greater than any differences between the averages of the two sexes. In other words, the boys and girls differ very much more among themselves than do the averages of boys and girls.

When physical maturity is considered, it should be said that girls at six, for example, have reached a greater percentage of their adult status than have boys; nevertheless, the boys are slightly taller and heavier than the girls and are fully equal if not slightly superior to them in sensorimotor, athletic, or game skills. In general there certainly are no physical differences that would warrant different average ages for boys and girls in the first grade.

During the early teens, girls reach puberty about a year or a year and a half earlier than do boys, are a little more mature in their social interests, and are even slightly larger for a short time. One could argue that it might be desirable for the girls to be with boys a little older than they. But the boys soon catch up, in adulthood exceed them physically, and are fully their equal mentally.

Another point of view is that girls should, if anything, be orientated to boys their own age and preferably younger because women outlive men by about 5 years on the average, and it would be desirable to cut down the number of years of widowhood. At the present time women tend to be widows for a period of about 7 years on the average, and there would be many advantages in husbands' and wives' taking the last ride at more nearly the same time.

**Relationship between Intelligence and Achievement in School Subjects.** So many correlations have been calculated between intelligence and school achievement that the relationship is fairly well known. A summary of the findings indicates that the correlations between intelligence and all school subjects are not the same. The relationship between measured intelligence and general attainment in grade-school, high-school, and college subjects has, however, been fairly well established. In the academic subjects, in which the verbal, symbolic elements are predominant, as in reading, composition,

history, arithmetic, English, algebra, and foreign languages, the correlation within a given group or grade is generally between .40 and .50. Both smaller and larger correlations have been found; but, on the whole, correlations between .40 and .50 are typical.

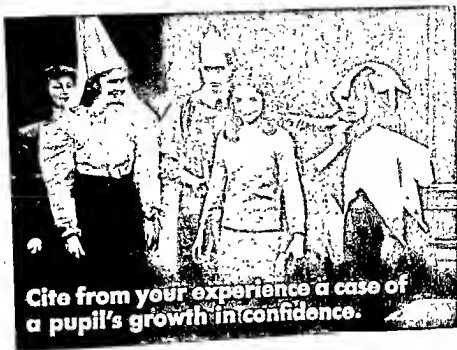
The correlation between mental-test ratings and skills such as those involved in the mechanics of arithmetic is lower than that for arithmetic problems. Between the drill and mechanical phases of all subjects and intelligence there is less relationship. The intelligence tests indicate most accurately what a pupil will do in the more academic phases of a subject, so to speak.

Intelligence tests indicate less well what pupils will do in art, drawing, and writing. Investigators have found correlations that differ a little; but, on the average, the correlation between mental-test results and ability in these subjects is only about .20. This correlation is low, and on the basis of this relationship a teacher can hardly predict whether the bright child will write, draw, or do art work better than an average child or an average child better than a dull child. From the content, it is to be expected that the abilities measured by intelligence tests have less in common with the abilities needed in these skill subjects. The intelligence tests are more verbal, whereas these subjects call for more nonverbal abilities.

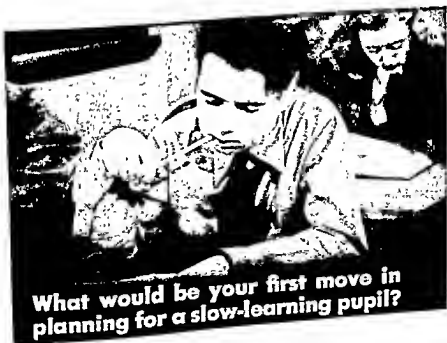
Similarly, in the case of industrial subjects, such as woodworking, mechanical drawing, sewing, cooking, the relationship between attainment in those subjects and mental-test ability is low, being about .20 also. If, in addition to stressing skills and performance, these courses also consist of definite subject-matter content to be learned by the students, the correlation between mental ability and achievement in the courses will be higher, probably as high as .40.

The correlation between mental-test scores and spelling-test scores falls between the correlation of general intelligence with the academic subjects and that with special subjects. The correlation between general mental ability and spelling ability is probably between .30 and .40. There is thus a definite element of general intelligence in the ability to spell words correctly. In fact, some studies indicate as high correlation between general intelligence and spelling ability as between general intelligence and academic subjects.

The value of mental tests as a basis for anticipating the achievement of pupils depends to a considerable degree on how accurately achievement is measured. If school marks are used as the criterion of achievement, the accuracy of prediction is reduced, for marks are not always accurate. When achievement is thoroughly measured by carefully devised achievement tests, the correlation between mental-test ratings and achievement will be higher and consequently can be predicted more accurately.



**Cite from your experience a case of a pupil's growth in confidence.**



**What would be your first move in planning for a slow-learning pupil?**

**Readiness and Aptitude Tests.** Special tests have been devised for judging aptitude for particular subjects and special fields. These tests are called *aptitude tests*. Of special importance in this connection are readiness tests in reading, which indicate a little better than do general intelligence tests what progress a child in the first grade will probably make in reading.

Another example of readiness tests is furnished by those given in algebra. What a pupil has done in arithmetic is a fair indication of what he will do in algebra, as is his mental capacity as determined by the general intelligence test; but algebra readiness tests probably are a little better because they are designed to test specifically for the amount of talent for algebra. What has been said about reading and algebra readiness tests applies to other subjects, also.

There are also special tests of musical abilities, of artistic abilities such as drawing, painting, and the appreciation of art, and of athletic and sensorimotor abilities. The purposes of these tests are to determine one's capacity or potentialities in these fields. No test can actually measure capacity and potentiality apart from practice and experience, but nevertheless these special tests do give valuable information about a person's aptitude or talent in special areas which is not yielded by the use of general intelligence tests. If the reader should ever need to use such tests, he should consult books devoted to testing and then obtain copies of the tests which he contemplates using.

**Different Abilities and Guidance.** Many aptitude tests have been developed which are divided into sections for testing different abilities. Such tests provide problems with different symbols such as spatial, numerical, and verbal and thereby test a person's mental processes of perception, memory, reasoning, and imagination in using these different symbols. The scores from the different sections indicate relative strengths and weaknesses which should be considered in guiding the student so that he will take the courses for which he has most aptitude. For example, high verbal abilities may indicate particular interest in and aptitude for courses in literature, journalism, languages, history and other social studies, philosophy, and library work. Numerical, mechanical, and spatial abilities indicate whether or not the student is well fitted for courses in mathematics, science, engineering, architecture, and probably dentistry. A high level in all areas represents, of course, added equipment for any field of activity, and then a student can be guided more by his immediate interests.

The pattern of a student's school marks is a fairly good indication, too, of where his stronger and weaker aptitudes lie. A high-school student's marks in arithmetic, algebra, geometry, chemistry, and physics are a good index of his aptitude for college mathematics, science, and engineering. Similarly good marks in English, Latin, and

other languages, indicate interests and aptitudes for continuing in fields which utilize verbal meanings and require verbal facility. A combination of a student's school record and the results of aptitude tests indicates better still the areas of activity in which a student will probably be most or least successful.

**Correlation between Mental-test Ratings and General School Success.** When children finish the traditional eighth grade or the ninth grade of junior high school, depending on the organization of the school, many of them, most of them in fact, will go on to senior high school. Not all will succeed, and the science of education and psychology tries to determine who will succeed or fail. Better yet, it tries to determine what a student should take in high school and how a student should be treated so that he can succeed.

Considerable concern has been shown about how to predict whether or not a pupil will succeed in college. It usually costs a considerable amount to go to college. Often the high-school graduate leaves home to enroll in a college miles away. In a sense, he cannot afford to fail. If a student could be told that he probably would not succeed and thus were enabled to avoid so costly a failure, this would be helpful to him.

It has been discovered that there are almost as many high-school graduates of high abilities and good high-school records who do not go to college as those who do. Perhaps they have not the ambition or drive that they should have. On the other hand, some of them do not go to college because they cannot afford it. We say of John and Mary, "They are such bright, alert youngsters and did so well in high school that it is too bad they don't go to college."

Most high-school students do not go to college. Consequently, the teacher is interested in providing the best high-school education for pupils of all abilities.

We are interested in knowing what pupils in grade school will succeed in high school and what high-school students will succeed in college. To about the extent that correlation exists between I.Q. and ability in the academic subjects there is also a correlation between I.Q. and scholastic success in high school. This is entirely consistent, for scholastic success in high school is determined by success in the individual subjects. In general, there is a correlation of .40 to .50 between I.Q. and high-school achievement. About the same correlation exists between scores on college aptitude tests and achievement in college.

In fact, the marks that a student has earned in his high-school courses should be considered in connection with the results of the psychological examination in predicting probable success in college. High-school marks are a slightly better indication of what a student

will do in college than is his standing in the psychological examination. The school marks that one has obtained show what one has done and therefore indicate what one is likely to do, though it must be borne in mind that standards of achievement are higher in college than in high school. Aptitude tests indicate what one should be able to do. Thus a combination of what one has done and what one can do provides a good basis for predicting what one will do.

Very few students who have a record of poor marks and who score low in aptitude tests succeed in college. On the other hand, as we should expect, those who have a very good high-school record and have a high rating on the psychological tests, with only a few exceptions, succeed in college. It is harder to predict for those who are high in one respect and low in another than for those who are consistently high or low in both their school marks or their mental-test standing.

On the other hand, if a high-school graduate is high in mental capacity, in other words, if he is a bright student but has achieved poorly and consequently received low marks, it is likely that his achievement will be no better in college. Possibly he may start utilizing his mental powers, but the likelihood is that he will have the same poor study habits and general indifference in college that he had in high school. A person's habits are very stubborn, and it is with discouraging infrequency that a student substitutes good study habits for the poor ones that he has had for many years.

However, if a high-school graduate, for example, has a very good record in high-school subjects but a psychological standing that is only average for high-school graduates, the likelihood is he will do well in college. One of the best woman students in a certain college had only an average mental rating according to high-school standards but a very good achievement record. She did not have top mental capacity, but she was very industrious. The cumulative learning resulting from her systematic efforts and her industry enabled her to achieve as well as the best students in the college.

It has been found through experience that boys who graduate from high school with a composite ranking in scholarship and psychological tests that places them in the lowest one-third of high-school graduates should hardly attempt college work, for very few succeed. Failure is almost certain for such students. In the case of girls, those in the poorest one-fourth are also almost bound to fail. In other words, if a high-school graduate has low capacity for learning and a poor record of achievement, it is very unlikely that he will succeed in college.

At the other end of the range, those students who are in the best tenth, according to a combined ranking of their aptitude- or psychological-test and high-school marks, are almost certain to do satisfactory college work. Very few failures will occur among the students in

this highest tenth. From the highest ranking high-school graduates to the lowest, the probability of success accompanies the rank, being best for the best rank and diminishing with a decrease in rank and being least for those with the poorest scholarship and aptitude standing. In other words, if we think of a scale on which the students are ranked from 0 to 100, the chances of success are greatest for those at 100 and least for those at 0, with the probability corresponding in general with the position along the scale.

**Expectation According to Correlation of .40 and .50.** It is difficult to visualize what is meant by *correlations*. We know that a correlation of .40 is larger than one of .20; and, in general, we judge the amount of correlation by the numerical size of the coefficient, although this is a gross and only an approximate way of doing it. This point will not be developed fully, but an idea of what correlations of .40 and .50 mean can be given by indicating what they mean in terms of prediction. Let us assume that we are trying to judge what high-school graduates will do in college if the correlation of combined high-school record and aptitude test with achievement in college is .50. Of those who are above the average on the basis of the combined rating of scholastic and aptitude tests, two-thirds will also be above the average in college, but one-third will be below. In other words, out of every 100 high-school students above the average according to this method, about 67 will be above the average in college, and about 33 will fall below. Correspondingly, of students going to college who are below the average for combined ratings of high-school marks and college aptitude, two-thirds will be below the average of college achievement, but one-third will change their position and be above. Thus, if one were predicting in relation to the average, he would be right twice as often as he would be wrong. If one predicted according to guess or chance, he would be right once to every time he was wrong; but prediction on a basis of a correlation of .50 results in a 2-to-1 ratio of correct prediction.

On the basis of a correlation of .40 the prediction is not so accurate. Of those in the upper half, 63 out of 100 will retain that general position; but 37 will fall below, the ratio being 63 to 37, or 1.7 to 1. For a correlation of .50, the ratio was 2 to 1. According to a correlation of .40 between two traits or qualities, of those in the lower half in one trait, 63 out of 100 will be in the corresponding, or lower, half in the other trait, but 37 will be in the upper half. When the coefficient of correlation is smaller, the ratio of those in the corresponding half to those in the other half approaches 1, or 50 to 50, which is the case when the correlation is zero. As the correlations become larger, or approach 1.0, the ratio of the numbers in corresponding halves to those in the other halves approaches infinity, or 100 to 0. When the



correlation is 1.0, all are found in corresponding halves; but when the correlation is zero, 50 per cent are found in corresponding halves and 50 per cent are not.

It may seem to the reader that excessive emphasis has been laid on the relationship between measured mental ability and high-school marks and probable success in college. Such would be the case if it were not for the fact that the principle explained in reference to those relationships also operates at every level of the school from kindergarten through college. The best index to what a child will do in the second grade is what he has done in the first, what he has done in the third grade indicates what he will do in the fourth, and what a person has done in his freshman year in high school is the best indication of what he will do in high school.

Correspondingly, when the mental capacity of a student has been measured, the teacher also has an indication of what the child can be expected to do in the various subjects. If the teacher has at hand what the pupil actually has done, he has additional help in predicting what the child will do. These principles apply to all grades or levels of the school, not only to the high-school graduate who goes to college.

**Change of Standards from Kindergarten through College.** Will a child who does good work in the lower grades do good work in high school and in college? This raises the problem of long-range prediction. No attempt will be made to answer the question here. Instead, it will be merely pointed out that prediction must take into account that the average quality of students in high school is higher than that of grade-school pupils and that college students, in turn, average higher than high-school. The reason for the increase in intelligence quotient according to school level is largely the retardation and dropping out of the less capable students. The more capable tend to survive and finish high school, and the most capable finish college. This is true only as a general principle, for some who are capable drop out before they reach or finish high school, and many who are mediocre complete their high-school work. The very poor do not finish high school, and comparatively few of the mediocre finish college. Thus, those who finish high school are a more selected group than are those who finish grade school, and those who finish college are a more selected group than those who finish high school. College graduates, in turn, are more selected according to aptitude than are high-school graduates, and the most capable students of all are those who work for advanced degrees. Selection goes on all the way from the kindergarten to the doctor's degree.

The selection that takes place from the lowest step in the educational ladder to the highest is evidenced by the fact that the intelligence test scores of Terman's gifted children when they were college

students were slightly under the scores of candidates for the Ph.D. degree in psychology at Stanford University. Candidates for the Ph.D. degree probably represent the highest selection of students. The average score of the candidates for the Ph.D. degree at Stanford University was slightly above that of college students who were selected because of having an I.Q. of 140 or over, which represents a selection of about the best 1 in 400 or even more. It is thus apparent that from the kindergarten up through the graduate school to the highest degree, the Ph.D., only the very best survive. The competition gets harder and harder along the way, and only the very ablest, or a small percentage of those who started, are still in the running at the advanced graduate level.

We must hasten to point out that success in school is not to be measured alone by examinations, achievement tests, and school marks and also that a school must do much more than teach subject matter. The good school is efficient in making every student as successful scholastically as possible, but it is equally concerned, if not more so, about the child's health and the development of good personality and character so that the child will be happy and successful in his human relationships. Furthermore, the good school does the most it can for every child of every mental level and is not concerned only with preparing children for the next academic step.

It is the selective character of education that helps to explain why some children who seem superior in the lower grades prove to be only average or slightly better in high school and probably poor or failures in college. For example, a first-grade child with an I.Q. a little over 100 and superior home advantages may, if earnest and diligent, do very good work in the grades. Such a child, if he possesses an I.Q. of 110 or 115, may seem to be the brightest child in his class. But when this child reaches his last year in high school, there will probably be in his classes a few pupils considerably brighter than he. Especially is this true if the high-school classes are large—it is less true in the smaller high schools. The pupil who seemed bright in high school will not be so outstanding in college. He may be only average or even less, for he will be competing with the best students from many high schools. The pupils' relative standing shifts as they proceed up the educational ladder, for the average intellectual quality increases.

**I.Q. and School Level.** Usually, it may be assumed that the average I.Q. of children in any of the lower grades is about 100. This varies, of course, in any grade or school, according to the socio-economic status of the children's parents and other factors. If the average I.Q. of children in the lower grades is about 100, the level is a little higher in high school—probably about 105 or 110—for the poorest students do not go to high school. It must be recognized, how-

ever, that education is not so selective now as it was a few decades ago. More and more students are found in high school, many, because of the tremendous increase in enrollment, with lower I.Q.'s than formerly. College enrollments also have increased very much during the past two decades, and the consequence of these increases is that more of the less able students are also found in college. The best students in high school and college are as capable as were the best students decades ago, but more of the less able students survive than formerly. The point should also be made that financial ability to go to college is an important factor; often financial ability, rather than mental ability and desire, determines whether or not a student goes to college.

Owing to the conditions indicated above, it is more difficult now to show what I.Q. is necessary for success in high school and in college than formerly. The high school has enlarged its curriculum and offers so many different types of courses that most students can now obtain a high-school diploma. Such an adjustment to individual differences is desirable, for the school serves the pupils; but it also means that high-school diplomas do not represent the same kind and quality of scholarship that they did years ago.

It is not the purpose of the schools to arrange the courses and offer a limited program so that the academically duller pupils drop out. The schools then would serve only the brighter pupils, whereas they should serve all the pupils, offering work suitable for children of all degrees of brightness, interest, and capacities.

Ordinarily, it is expected that high-school students should have I.Q.'s of at least 105 in order to grasp the content of most high-school subjects. Higher degrees of brightness are desirable, of course, and students with higher intelligence acquire a better comprehension of their subject. It is doubtful, however, that children whose I.Q.'s are under 105 can understand adequately the use of symbols in algebra or the interpretation of the facts in history, acquire the vocabulary in Latin or the principles of physics, or comprehend the abstract and symbolic elements in most scholastic subjects. Actually, high-school students with I.Q.'s about 105 can do only passable work in these academic subjects and cannot progress very far in them. Still, they can profit from courses in citizenship, physical training, manual arts, music, commerce, or whatever they may have the ability and interest for. The student should be given profitable experiences, and the high school can furnish valuable educational training for all.

The minimum I.Q. for doing acceptable work in a typical college is higher—possibly about 110. College students with less intelligence drop out in large numbers, although a few of them do creditable work because of their extraordinary industry. In order to be able really to

comprehend college instruction, to integrate the subject matter acquired, and to react in a somewhat original way to it, a higher I.Q. is needed, possibly 125 or 130 and over. One cannot be too arbitrary about minimum I.Q.'s, for there are always the exceptions among those who are low down in the group but achieve surprisingly well in spite of a mediocre intellectual equipment. In general, however, it is well to recognize the limitations set by I.Q.'s of different size, but with a willingness to allow for exceptions.

A striking exception was the case of a boy with a low college aptitude who entered college. The aptitude tests that this young man took when he entered the senior division, or the upper 2 years of college, indicated that he was in the lowest 5 per cent of all students who entered. It was predicted by those who did not know him that it was futile for him to try to obtain a college degree. "He might just as well go back home and not even begin his courses," said an instructor who observed his standing.

Those who knew his school history stated that he had a good high-school record, that he had done well in junior college, and that he had characteristics and capacities that the aptitude tests do not measure. On the basis of past performance, it was predicted by those who knew him that he would do acceptable work during his junior and senior years.

The boy did do passing work. In fact, it was strong average. Conversation with him near the time of graduation revealed that he was disappointed because his marks were not high enough to earn him a place on the honor roll. He had tried very hard for this, but apparently he could by studying very diligently and systematically succeed only in passing his courses satisfactorily; with his limited aptitude, even his most earnest attempts to achieve superior standing resulted in failure to do so.

Ordinarily, it is said of students of this type that they are hard "pluggers" and will do passing work but that nothing creative or original can be expected of them. The boy we have spoken of exceeded all expectations in this regard, also. Shortly after he graduated from college, he took out a patent on an invention. His invention did not alter appreciably the way we live, but it represented a degree of creativeness not found in many with much higher I.Q.'s.

This case, of course, is an exception and must be so regarded. Most students with the aptitude rating of the boy described above fail. A few exceptions should not cause us to overlook the general trend or relationship between aptitude and school achievement. However, we should be on the lookout for exceptions and remember that none of life's activities can be reduced to a formula.

Table 7 shows the relationship of intelligence quotient and school

progress. It presents the results of a follow-up study of 1,989 pupils who were tested in the sixth grade, so that the I.Q.'s reported are those determined in the sixth grade. An interesting fact is that no person with an I.Q. under 97 received a bachelor's degree and no one with an I.Q. under 111 took graduate work.

TABLE 7. *Intelligence quotients of sixth-graders and subsequent school progress\*†*

	Did not enter high school	Entered high school but did not graduate	Graduated from high school but did not enter college	Entered college but did not receive degree	Received bachelor's degree	Took graduate work or received advanced degree
N	270	590	523	171	99	27
%	16	35	31	10	6	2
Q <sub>1</sub>	88	97	106	107	114	118
Md	95	105	114	115	123	124
Q <sub>3</sub>	102	112	121	124	131	134

\* Adapted from data reported by Viola E. Benson, in an article, *The Intelligence and Later Scholastic Success of Sixth-grade Pupils*, *School and Society*, 55:163-167, 1942.

† N = number, % = per cent. Q<sub>1</sub> is the 25th percentile, or the position or score below which 25 per cent of the I.Q.'s are found and above which there are 75 per cent of the I.Q.'s. Md is the median, or the I.Q. below which half are located and above which are the other half of the I.Q.'s. Q<sub>3</sub> is the 75th percentile, or the I.Q. below which 75 per cent of the I.Q.'s are located and above which 25 per cent are found.

In reading this table observe that those students who progressed further in school had the higher I.Q.'s; this is shown for Q<sub>1</sub>, Md, and Q<sub>3</sub>. Note that the median I.Q. of the sixth-grade pupils who did not enter high school was 95 but that the median I.Q. of those who did graduate work was 124.

**I.Q. and School Subjects.** Some subjects require more of the ability measured by mental tests than do others. These are the ones more academic in nature. In the elementary school, as has been stated, reading, arithmetic, history, geography, language, and grammar call for the abilities measured by general mental tests to a greater extent than do art, writing, or music. In high school the more academic subjects such as Latin, algebra, geometry, English, history, French, and physics require more of the abstract type of intelligence than do the commercial and vocational subjects. Thus it is discovered that students taking Latin and those who select an extra unit of mathematics, for instance, are brighter than those who specialize in agriculture, sewing, cooking, typewriting, bookkeeping, or manual training. The I.Q.'s of students taking these latter courses may be 10 or 15 points lower than those taking the classical, scientific, or general subjects. The various types of courses attract students of different abilities.

Sometimes teachers attribute the greater mental ability of the students in their courses to the training value of the subject itself. For example, when a Latin teacher in a high school of 160 pupils discovered that her students had the highest mental ability, she pointed out to her superintendent what she thought was the effect that the study of Latin had on their mentality. The true reason for the superiority of the Latin students is that Latin is chosen by students who have more of the ability that the mental tests measure. Students who take Latin tend to come from homes in which the parents have had an academic education and who plan that their children shall go to college. Furthermore, the weaker students are not encouraged to take Latin. The consequence of these factors is that the better students are found in the Latin classes.

In trying to anticipate who will succeed in school the teacher should take cognizance of the change of standards, previously mentioned, that occurs from kindergarten up through the graduate school, because of the dropping out of school of the weaker students and the survival of the stronger. Thus, a child may have more than adequate ability for the first grade, but not for high school or college. The quality of the student body becomes more select and improves from year to year, making competition at different levels increasingly difficult for all students; only the better ones succeed in high school and, more especially in college.

It should not be overlooked, however, that students have special interests and abilities. Those not so able in general academic work may be better in music, art, vocational subjects, physical education, and other studies more specialized in nature. Boys and girls of school age should be in the controlled environment of the school, having social experiences and getting whatever training from which they can profit.

It is not implied for a moment that a high order of abstract or general intelligence is not needed if a student is to excel in music, art, industrial courses, business, and physical education. Only the bright excel in all phases of such work, but there is much of this work that calls for specialized ability not measured by general intelligence tests. Because of the lower correlation with intelligence of the abilities needed in these special courses, it is possible to do well in them without being able to do very well in algebra, geometry, Latin, physics, and other academic courses.

To be a leader in any of these special fields, however, a high order of general intelligence is needed. Evidence pointing in this direction can be found in colleges where there are special departments in music, art, industrial training, and other subjects. Let us take music, for example. In colleges and universities having strong music departments, it will be

with small enrollments, comparatively large increases or decreases in the proportion of duller or brighter pupils occur from year to year and the proportion of failures is apt to vary accordingly. He added, in his explanation of the increased number of failures, that the effectiveness of instruction or the instructional standards of a school cannot be judged on the basis of the number who fail in the state examinations without taking into account the mental capacities of the pupils. The argument given by this superintendent of schools is a valid one.

**Differences in Capacities of Students in Different Schools.** The average capacity of school children in any large school system differs from school to school. The mental-test scores of the children of a school in one section of a city may be distinctly higher or lower than those of a school in a different section.

Figure 17 shows the differences in the mental abilities of the children in a number of schools. It indicates the variation among 64 schools in mental-test scores according to the percentage of each school above and below the limits of the middle 50 per cent of all 6A children. For purposes of illustration, we may single out schools 37 and 45. About 57 per cent of school 37 and 0 per cent of school 45 are above the upper limit of the middle half of all 6A pupils of all the schools. Those above this limit are at least equal to the best one-fourth of all students. Below the middle half the percentages are very different for the two schools. Only about 14 per cent of the pupils in school 37 are below the middle half and may be classified with the poorest one-fourth of all pupils, but about 75 per cent of school 45 are in that category. The status of the other schools can be interpreted similarly.

The schools with the children whose measured aptitude is higher are situated in good residential districts. Most of the parents are successful professional and business people, and their socioeconomic status is high. Their families tend to be small or moderate in size. The children of this district have had the advantage of a better home environment and also have no doubt inherited better intellects.

The school with children of lowest mental aptitude is situated in what is generally described as a district of poor homes. The fathers of the children in this school are unskilled or semiskilled laborers, and unemployment is common among them. Their socioeconomic status is low, and the cultural and educational influences of the home environment are meager. Furthermore, it is likely that the hereditary endowments of many children in these areas are also below average.

The teachers in the school situated in the more favored district will find that their children are above the city norms or medians of achievement tests for various subjects, whereas the teachers in the school located in the less favored district will discover that their children are below the city medians. The latter teachers may try as hard as they

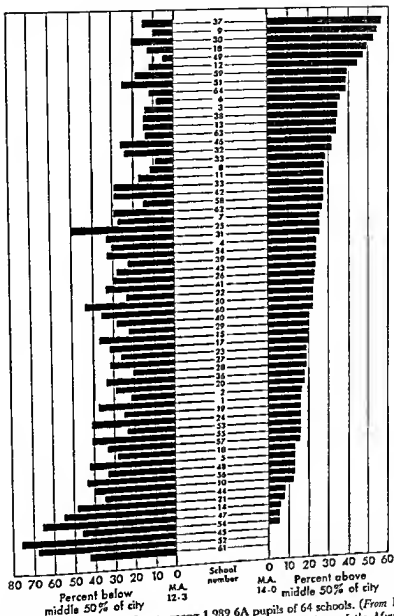


Fig. 17. Variation on Delta 2 test among 1,989 6A pupils of 64 schools. (From W. S. Miller, *The Classification of 6A Pupils into Ability Groups*, *Proceedings of the Minnesota Society for the Study of Education*, 1924, p. 21.)

can, but it is doubtful that their pupils will, on the average, reach the city norms. It is very difficult for the teachers in school 45 to bring their children's performance up to the city medians and practically impossible to bring it up to the levels of performance of school 37. The latter is almost certain to be above the city norms no matter how poor



the teaching. Some supervisors may commend the one school for its fine achievement and point out to the other that it is not up to standard. If, however, the average mental ability of the schools is taken into account, no one should expect the poorer school to come up to the average achievement.

Variation in the quality of the student body may also characterize the schools within the county or state and the nation. Children vary with areas, which, because of social and economic conditions, attract a superior type of people or a poorer type as the case may be. In suburban and residential areas, for example, the quality of the students is likely to be high, whereas in mountainous, cutover, or congested slum areas the quality is likely to be lower. The socioeconomic status of an area is a general index to the general mental abilities of the students from that area.

Table 8 shows three widely varying eleventh grades. School 1 is well balanced in its distribution, having 20 per cent in both the highest and

TABLE 8. *Per cent of eleventh-grade pupils in highest quarter, middle half, and lowest quarter of mental-test scores in different high schools\**

<i>School</i>	<i>Per cent in highest quarter</i>	<i>Per cent in middle half</i>	<i>Per cent in lowest quarter</i>	<i>Number of students</i>
Average or typical.....	25	50	25	
No. 1.....	20	60	20	10
No. 31.....	0	22.2	77.7	9
No. 47.....	39.1	56.6	4.3	23

\* Adapted from David Segel, "Intellectual Abilities in the Adolescent Period," p. 6, *Bulletin 6*, Office of Education, 1948.

lowest quarters, instead of the usual 25 per cent, and 60 per cent in the middle half, instead of 50 per cent. School 31 has no students in the best quarter but 77.7 per cent in the lowest quarter or over three times the usual 25 per cent for that quarter. The students of the eleventh grade of school 47 are very superior to those of school 31, with 39.1 per cent in the highest quarter and only 4.3 per cent in the lowest quarter.

It is apparent that in these small high schools there are very important differences in the mental levels and powers of their students. The actual school achievement in grade 11 of school 47 is almost sure to be much higher than in school 31 although the students may be given just as good marks in school 31, where the mental level is much lower. This is a principal reason why the same marks from different schools have different meanings and cannot be depended upon fully.

and the processes of testing yield very valuable information about the mental capacity and personality of the child.

The usual general intelligence tests indicate better what a student will do in the academic subjects and less well what he will do in commercial, vocational, and special subjects.

Girls tend to be superior in linguistic abilities and boys in mathematics and science. In general they are equal, and any grading plan for having the boys about 6 months older than the girls of the same grade is not warranted.

In general, children of higher intelligence go to school the largest number of years, while those of least intelligence drop out of school earliest. There are individual exceptions, of course, but this is the trend from the first grade through high school.

Readiness and aptitude for specific subjects and fields are indicated best not so much by general intelligence tests as by readiness tests and by actual achievement in similar and related subjects and fields.

A student's record in one grade is the most reliable indication of what he will do in the next grade.

Most correlations between intelligence-test scores and school marks or achievement are .40 and .50. This means that 63 and 67 per cent will be in their corresponding halves, respectively, in intelligence and achievement.

Because the work becomes harder and because the duller children drop out of school, the standards rise with each successive step in the educational ladder—elementary school, junior high school, senior high school, junior college, senior college, and graduate school.

Students in high school who elect subjects like Latin and mathematics have on the average higher intelligence-test scores than the student body at large, while students who specialize in vocational and commercial subjects tend not to be so high.

There are differences within universities, too. Students majoring in law, medicine, and engineering tend to be higher than those majoring in dentistry, pharmacy, home economics, music, and art.

The student bodies of different colleges and universities differ greatly in their average capacities, and there is a great range between the best and the poorest.

The schools of any large school system vary greatly in the quality of their student populations. The differences accompany the socioeconomic levels of the areas in which the schools are situated.

In small schools the individual classes may differ in their quality from year to year.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Why are the usual mental ability tests better for indicating capacity for academic subjects than for art, music, and vocational and other subjects?

2. Subjects in high school and college attract students who vary on the average in their mental abilities and capacities. Discuss.

3. Much is said about reading readiness, arithmetic readiness, and readiness in general. Explain what is meant by these readinesses.

4. Show that there are important abilities and characteristics other than measured intelligence that account for a student's failures or successes.

5. An old and persistent argument in favor of education is the evidence to the effect that high-school graduates earn more than eighth-grade graduates and college graduates earn more than high-school graduates. Can you show that years of schooling alone are not the cause of increased earnings? Is it not the students who are most capable to begin with who complete most years of schooling? Comment.

6. There are kindergarten teachers who give an individual mental examination to their pupils during the first month of school. What do these teachers learn about their pupils which should prove very helpful in understanding them?

7. Trace in general the average level of intelligence of students in the various divisions of the educational system from the kindergarten through the graduate school.

8. Let us drive our car through a city and notice how sections vary in socioeconomic status as shown by the homes and buildings. There will be a range from slums to fine residential sections. The schools attended by the children from the poorer sections will have more dull pupils and fewer bright ones than those attended by children from the best sections, and the average abilities will tend to correspond with the socioeconomic status of the communities in which the schools are located. Discuss.

9. "You'll find some dull and some bright students in every class, school, department or section." Comment. "But the proportions of the duller and brighter differ greatly." Comment.

10. How do the results of intelligence tests, M.A., and I.Q. help a teacher predict what a pupil will do and explain what a pupil is doing?

11. What does the evidence indicate about the age when boys and girls should begin school?

12. A high-school principal said, "Let me see a high-school student's scholarship standing in his class and also his standing in the intelligence tests, and I can tell you whether or not he should go to college and predict his likelihood of succeeding." Comment.

13. The best evidence on how successful in school a grade-school, high-school, or college student will be is how well he did in the first grade, high-school freshman year, and college freshman year, respectively. Discuss.

## 14. Providing for the Differences in Capacities and Interests

### *Teaching and Individual Differences*

**What to Look For.** Observe that, in this chapter, stress is laid on the great differences in the capacities and abilities of children of any given age and grade and on what should be done about these.

Learn how homogeneous grouping is an attempt to organize the pupils for more effective teaching. It has disadvantages as well as advantages.

Note how, in the case of some very bright pupils, their achievement as measured by tests is high, while their marks are low.

When ability grouping is used, what adjustment should be made for pupils who are considerably better in some subjects than in others?

If ability grouping is to be effective, how must instruction be adapted to the various groups?

A plan of voluntary ability grouping which is governed by needs, abilities, and guidance and which overcomes many of the objections made against such grouping is described.

Try to understand the characteristics of individualized instruction.

What are the principles that underlie individualized teaching?

Note what is said about the all-round development of man and also about the development of "strong suits."

Learn what may be the ill effects of too much extra promotion and also what may be the ill effects on the brightest children if they are not given some extra promotion.

Be able to explain the meaning of the much-used term *enrichment*. How is enrichment achieved?

It is pointed out that differences in capacity and interests can be taken care of very well when the activity and project method of teaching is used.

Observe how the Dalton plan is an adjustment to individual differences.

**Introduction.** "The hardest problem for the teacher, it seems to me," said Mrs. Jones, mother of three school children, "is to appeal to the widely differing tastes, interests, and capacities that are found in a roomful of children."

Mrs. Nelson, another mother, replied that she had heard the school psychologist say that in the sixth grade, for example, the duller children can learn no more easily than can some third-graders and that the brightest sixth-graders can learn more readily than can some high-school freshmen.

Except for those with very low I.Q.'s, children of all mental abilities are found in the schoolroom. The children who enter the first grade at the age of six are heterogeneous in ability. A first-grade child with an M.A. of 4 may be sitting next to one with an M.A. of 8. They are given the same assignments and are required and expected to do the same work.

In previous years, and to some extent today, the process that resulted in more homogeneity of ability in the class was the promotion of the bright pupils and the retardation of the dull. Some children remained in the same grade 3 or 4 years. As a result, those who reached the upper grades were considerably more homogeneous in their capacity to profit from instruction than the first-grade children had been.

Now the policy of many schools is not to fail children so frequently as formerly. As a consequence, the dull children are promoted regularly, and when they reach the intermediate and upper grades they are comparatively even less competent to do the work than they were in the first grade. Figuratively speaking, the work in subsequent grades grows farther and farther away from their reach. But no matter what the promotional policy, the instructional problems because of individual differences always exist.

**Homogeneous Grouping.** Attempts to divide children into homogeneous groups are not new. In fact, it has been attempted as long as we have had group instruction. Our present system of organizing children into grades—first, second, third, etc.—is an attempt to classify them according to their ability to learn. One should ask if the present grade system based on chronological age is the best. It has some advantages, but it also has many weaknesses. Children of the same C.A. differ in physical size, in ability to adjust socially, in I.Q., in M.A., and in the capacity to comprehend the instruction that they receive. For instance, they differ so much in achievement from grade to grade that some fourth-graders have more skills and knowledge than some eighth-graders, and there are first- and second-graders who exceed a few of the fourth-graders. The achievement of the best one-fourth of any grade is distinctly better than that of the poorest

one-fourth of any grade next above it; and among the upper grades of a school the achievement of the best one-fourth of the pupils is better than that of even the poorest one-fourth of the class two grades above it. Thus, if the best one-fourth of the sixth grade replaced the poorest one-fourth of the eighth grade, the quality of the eighth grade would be improved and become more uniform.

By applying our knowledge of individual differences and using intelligence and achievement tests, we should be able to grade, or group, pupils more effectively than we do now. It is clear that when pupils are grouped according to C.A. there is marked heterogeneity in their social maturity and their ability to profit from instruction.

If children are to be classified according to ability, what ability or abilities should be rated as of major importance? Possibly the capacity for learning as indicated by I.Q. and M.A. should be regarded as a very important one. Teachers' marks indicate in a general way just how effectively a pupil achieves and what a child has done, and I.Q. and M.A. indicate reasonably well what a child can do. Standardized achievement tests likewise indicate how well a child has achieved and how well he will achieve in the future. It may be well to consider first the methods of classification based on these measures before others are taken into account.

Children of essentially the same I.Q. and M.A. may be put into the same class or group. They will have about the same degree of brightness and the same mental level. In addition, they will be of the same age, for if they are similar in I.Q. and M.A., they will be similar in C.A. In fact, the way to make sure that the children in a group will be homogeneous in M.A. is to select those of the same C.A. and the same I.Q. It is, of course, impossible in the practical situation to choose children of exactly the same I.Q. Because I.Q.'s range continuously from low to high, it is a good practice to group those between given points. For example, children eleven and twelve years old with I.Q.'s between 90 and 110 can be put in one group. To select from within this range the brighter younger child and the less bright older child and group them together is desirable. Thus, a twelve-year-old child with an I.Q. of 100 will fit fairly well in a group with an eleven-year-old child with an I.Q. of 110, for both have an M.A. of about 12. There will always be some variation within any group organized to be homogeneous, but a small range is allowable.

Accordingly, children of a given age can be divided into two or more groups. Practical considerations, such as the number of pupils to be classified, may govern the number of groups. They might be divided into as few as two or as many as five or six groups.

Theoretically, pupils classified into groups so that they are fairly uniform in I.Q. and M.A., and thus C.A. also, should be able to learn

with about equal facility. They should grasp directions and explanations at about the same rate, and their intellectual progress should be nearly uniform.

**Achievement and Capacity.** This classification in terms of mental and learning capacity also tends to bring together in the same classes children of the same social and physical development. Being of the same or more nearly the same chronological and mental age, the children are likely to be much more alike in social interests as well as in interests in games and sports. It should always be kept in mind that the class is a social unit as well as a group organized for learning subject matter.

The achievement that ought to take place in terms of capacity does not always do so. Even though groups are fairly homogeneous in brightness and mental maturity and are much alike in their ability to perceive and comprehend, there will still be some able children whose achievements are far below their capacity for achievement and duller children who do much better than expected. Students of average capacity are more likely to vary both above and below what is expected. Of course, many children achieve at a level consistent with their capacity.

In view of the fact that actual achievement does not always correspond to the capacity to comprehend, the question may be raised whether or not children should be transferred to other groups according to their achievement. Thus, should a student who achieves high for his capacity be shifted to a higher or abler group, and should one who achieves poorly in terms of his capacity be transferred to a group of pupils whose aptitudes are lower?

In determining actual achievement, it is well to check or validate the teachers' marks against comprehensive achievement tests. It may be found when tested by standard achievement tests that a dull child getting fairly good marks really does not have the knowledge to justify these marks and that a bright child really has more knowledge than most of his classmates and still has been receiving only average or poorer marks.

We can illustrate further with the case of John P., a bright boy with an I.Q. of 146, who was in the seventh grade of a large junior high school. Most of his marks were C or average, but he did receive some D's and an occasional F. When measured by standardized achievement tests, however, it was discovered that his achievement was three to four grades above his grade placement. In the school that he attended, he was placed in the group of average ability because of achievement. In addition to being unsatisfactory in achievement as judged by the teacher, he was also a behavior problem.

But, in spite of his marks, he should have been placed in the bright-

est group. His brightness and his powers of comprehension fitted him for that group. While this very bright boy was in the average group, his interest dulled even more and his recitations and required work became even more indifferent. Then he was placed in a remedial section, an unforgivable educational sin, and he did more poorly than ever, for he was bored by drill and repetition.

Faulty placement affected not only his marks but his personal adjustment, and his behavior tendencies became more serious. This increasing maladjustment was to be expected as long as he, a boy with an I.Q. of 146, remained in a group where the instruction was directed toward pupils with I.Q.'s under 100 and where his companions—possibly his teacher, also—were intellectually inferior to him. If he had been placed in the brightest group, the likelihood is that he would have made a better adjustment, especially if the teacher of this group were bright and had adapted the curriculum and her teaching to the capacity of her students.

This point can be illustrated further by the case of a high-school girl with an I.Q. of about 160 who got A in everything but mathematics. In both algebra and geometry she received only C, though in fact she was probably more capable in mathematics than in any of her other subjects. She was exceedingly alert in comprehending the problems, in making original applications, and in reaching the answer in her own way. But her teachers were the routine, unimaginative kind, and as a consequence this bright student lost interest and was satisfied to "get by." A student like this should be in the ablest group in mathematics even though her marks are only average. Conversely, a dull child achieving average should probably be kept in the dull group, where instruction is geared to his capacity to comprehend. If, however, a child in the dull group has excellent achievement, he should be tested again, for it may be found that he has been incorrectly classified. He probably should be placed in an abler group and kept there if his achievement continues to be excellent.

**Ability Grouping and Specific Subjects.** If students are classified on the basis of I.Q. and C.A., and thus incidentally by M.A. also, they are classified according to their general mental capacity. It will be found that students classified into different groups on this general basis are not uniform in their ability to learn the various school subjects. A few in the brightest group, for example, may not be so apt in arithmetic as in the other subjects. They might profit more by the instructional methods used in another group, where the general intelligence is not so high. Similarly for other subjects. Children of average or lower groups who have a special ability that enables them to be particularly strong in a given subject might profit by taking instruction in their strong subject with a brighter group. Assigning



est group. His brightness and his powers of comprehension fitted him for that group. While this very bright boy was in the average group, his interest dulled even more and his recitations and required work became even more indifferent. Then he was placed in a remedial section, an unforgivable educational sin, and he did more poorly than ever, for he was bored by drill and repetition.

Faulty placement affected not only his marks but his personal adjustment, and his behavior tendencies became more serious. This increasing maladjustment was to be expected as long as he, a boy with an I.Q. of 146, remained in a group where the instruction was directed toward pupils with I.Q.'s under 100 and where his companions—possibly his teacher, also—were intellectually inferior to him. If he had been placed in the brightest group, the likelihood is that he would have made a better adjustment, especially if the teacher of this group were bright and had adapted the curriculum and her teaching to the capacity of her students.

This point can be illustrated further by the case of a high-school girl with an I.Q. of about 160 who got A in everything but mathematics. In both algebra and geometry she received only C, though in fact she was probably more capable in mathematics than in any of her other subjects. She was exceedingly alert in comprehending the problems, in making original applications, and in reaching the answer in her own way. But her teachers were the routine, unimaginative kind, and as a consequence this bright student lost interest and was satisfied to "get by." A student like this should be in the ablest group in mathematics even though her marks are only average. Conversely, a dull child achieving average should probably be kept in the dull group, where instruction is geared to his capacity to comprehend. If, however, a child in the dull group has excellent achievement, he should be tested again, for it may be found that he has been incorrectly classified. He probably should be placed in an abler group and kept there if his achievement continues to be excellent.

**Ability Grouping and Specific Subjects.** If students are classified on the basis of I.Q. and C.A., and thus incidentally by M.A. also, they are classified according to their general mental capacity. It will be found that students classified into different groups on this general basis are not uniform in their ability to learn the various school subjects. A few in the brightest group, for example, may not be so apt in arithmetic as in the other subjects. They might profit more by the instructional methods used in another group, where the general intelligence is not so high. Similarly for other subjects. Children of average or lower groups who have a special ability that enables them to be particularly strong in a given subject might profit by taking instruction in their strong subject with a brighter group. Assigning

pupils from one ability section to another for specific subjects will not be necessary in very many cases, for, in general, their abilities in the academic subjects are reasonably uniform—that is, they tend to achieve in all of them at about the same level.

Abilities for such special subjects as art, music, and physical education do not correspond so closely to the general mental level as do those for academic subjects. Thus, homogeneous grouping on the basis of general mental ability does not classify the students so effectively for the special subjects as for the general academic ones; however, it is somewhat better, even for these special abilities, than no classification at all.

There are many schools where it is almost impossible to classify the students according to their measured mental abilities. This is especially true in many small schools where the pupils are so few that it is impracticable to divide them into ability groups. In rural schools, however, where the enrollments are comparatively small but all eight grades are included, effective reclassification into fewer and more homogeneous groups or grades can be achieved by the use of general intelligence and comprehensive achievement tests. In other instances, where it is unworkable to classify children into ability groups, adjustment to differences in capacity can be made by adapting the methods of instruction to the capacities of the pupils.

Objections have been raised against ability grouping on the ground that it is not democratic and also that it tends to make the students in the best group snobbish and gives those in the poorest groups feelings of inferiority. It is true that the social and psychological effects tend toward group stratification, the smugness of the most capable, and a frustrated desire by those in the lower groups to have higher status. Members of the best group are referred to by students as the "brains" and "geniuses" and those in the lowest group as the "dumbbells." The students know which is which no matter how the groups are designated. The teacher was a bit naïve who said that her pupils didn't know because she called one group the rabbits and the other the turtles.

Cooke reports a method used in high school that suggests how the work can be offered so that it does the best and the most for the students. In the first place a school should have a comprehensive offering of courses and activities. The course offerings should include the academic and college preparatory courses, industrial arts, music, business, homemaking, art, and health. There should also be opportunities for remedial work, especially in reading. Activities and extracurricular activities that should be sponsored by the school are sports, dances, parties, dramatics, and excursions.

With such an offering the problem is to guide the student so that

he does what is best for him and does it with a healthy attitude. The students are tested so that their capacities and interests are known, and with the use of these facts and others the student and teacher discuss the student's program. The key to this procedure is guidance. The pupil and his parents make the decision, as the plan is voluntary in nature. The pupils of low academic aptitude rarely take the college preparatory course. This is selected by students of high mental capacity and with good records in the academic courses they have taken in junior high school. Students, when wisely guided, generally take the work which is best for them. Segregation takes place, but not in a way that stirs up feelings of superiority or inadequacy.

There is no segregation in the home room or in sports and social activities. In a sense, then, students of all abilities live and play together, but each goes to the work of his own choosing with the feeling that it is the most suitable for him.

**Ability Grouping and Suitable Instruction.** Out of the extensive testing of abilities has emerged a sharpened interest in individual differences in the capacities and abilities of people. This interest has taken practical form in the school in attempts to adjust instruction to differences in capacities and abilities. Various methods have always been used, such as individual attention after school, special homework, summer school, tutoring, remedial work, and extra promotion. A method that has been a more direct outgrowth of psychological testing has been the classifying of pupils so that they can be taught according to their capacities to learn.

Ability grouping should be a means for bringing about effective instruction for children of all abilities. Obviously, in a heterogeneous group, instruction directed to the dull is not suitable for the average and the bright, and instruction suitable for the bright is not adapted to the average and dull. Consequently, when children are classified into ability groups, the content of the courses and the method of instruction should be adapted to their learning capacities. Bright children need much less drill and will respond to teaching that leads them to interpret and relate what they learn. They will profit from a method permitting them to work independently, exercising their own initiative and originality, a method enabling them to integrate larger portions of their knowledge than they can if the classroom method is merely the question-and-answer type.

Children of less aptitude need more direct help from the teacher. Though deadening to the bright pupils, drill, frequent reviews, and frequent testing are more effective for the dull. The degree to which the teachers adjust their teaching methods depends, of course, on the degree of dullness of their pupils and the nature of the subject matter.

There are, for instance, phases in the teaching of arithmetic that require more drill and review than are necessary in history or geography. Or, again, there may be more need for intensive work in teaching a subject in its initial stages than later on.

Teachers, supervisors, principals, and superintendents must do their part to make instruction with ability grouping most effective. There is no point in classifying children according to their general aptitudes if educators do not plan beforehand how they will adjust their methods of instruction and the curricula to the characteristics of the groups. Once the plan is put into operation, changes and adjustments may be made as the need arises.

It is important to select teachers according to their abilities to teach the children of the various ability groups. Some teachers are best fitted for dull children and work patiently and effectively with them. Others have the imaginative quality, sweep of mind, and special capacity for stimulating bright children.

An example of good classification but poor subsequent control is to be found in a junior high school of over 1,000 pupils where the children were classified into five ability groups on the basis of I.Q. and M.A. The classification was worked out by the school psychologist, after which the principal assigned the teachers to the respective groups. The teachers followed the course of study as before and taught much as they had previously, except in those cases where circumstances forced them to make some adjustments. The teachers of the brightest groups found it easy to cover the material, and the achievement of their pupils was high. But those who had the poor group labored hard to cover the course of study for their grade, and the achievement of their pupils was low. Many of the teachers in this school, and the principal also, were not satisfied with ability grouping and felt that the former heterogeneous classification was probably just as satisfactory and saved the work of organizing the students into homogeneous groups.

In this instance, it was not the principle of homogeneous grouping that was at fault but the psychologist, the principal, and the teachers, who failed to function according to the opportunities offered by ability grouping. In the first place, the psychologist should have explained to the principal and teachers just how the children had been grouped and just what this grouping implied as to teaching methods and curricular changes. After this had been done, the principal should have taken charge in planning with the teachers and the psychologist how the curricular content could be adapted to fit the aptitude of the different groups. Furthermore, the problem of teaching methods should have been taken up, perhaps concurrently with the

discussion of the curriculum. Then the teachers would have been ready to make the most of the situation after they had begun their work with the different ability groups.

Even when ability grouping has once been established, continuous study of the arrangement should be maintained so that beneficial adjustments can be made. Some pupils will probably have to be transferred from one group to another, and no doubt some of the teachers should be shifted so that they will teach the groups for which they are best adapted. The teachers of the bright groups will be faced with the problem of securing enough books, references, and materials for enriching the curriculum. The teachers of the dull also need special materials. Only if an experimental attitude is maintained and adjustments are made as the need arises can the effectiveness of ability grouping be truly determined.

**The Results of Ability Grouping.** It is difficult to evaluate the effects of ability grouping, for it has been given few adequate trials according to the principles just set forth. The main purpose of ability grouping, as indicated above, is to give an opportunity for adjusting teaching methods and curricular content to the differences in children's aptitude for learning. As this purpose has not yet generally been realized, it is difficult to draw any conclusions. The most we can say at present is that there is some evidence that children tend to achieve better in homogeneous groups.

This fact is probably important, but it is even more important to know what effect ability grouping has on the personality of children. Are they better adjusted when segregated into fairly homogeneous groups, or do personality difficulties arise from such a classification? Theoretically, they should be better adjusted. When children are grouped so that they are faced with tasks commensurate with their capacities and when they are in a classroom with fellow students neither much poorer nor much better than they, they are not hopelessly outclassed by their fellows, defeated by too difficult tasks, or dulled by too easy ones. The effect of ability grouping on the mental health of pupils is not known, but attempts should be made to discover and evaluate it.

That we do not have adequate evaluations of the effectiveness of homogeneous grouping is a good reason for giving it a thorough trial. There is apparently virtue enough in the plan to warrant its being carefully tested. Ability grouping is not new, having been practiced, nominally at least, in many schools since shortly after the introduction of group mental tests.

Considerable discussion has here been devoted to ability grouping, but the reader should not interpret the discussion as necessarily an argument for ability grouping. There has always been some form of

grading and grouping of pupils, and obviously there should be. If intelligence and educational tests can help the teacher group the pupils so that they can be taught better and so that they will develop better socially and personally, such tests should be used for that purpose. But out of this discussion of ability grouping should come a consciousness of the necessity for recognizing individual differences. Even without any ability grouping whatever, if the teacher is conscious of the great differences in the abilities of her pupils, she can understand them better and do much more for them.

**Individualized Instruction.** Some schools may use a method of teaching that enables the pupils to learn at their own individual rate. This system requires specially prepared instructional and test materials. The instructional materials are arranged in units so that the child can master the contents with a minimum of help from the teacher. Accompanying the study materials are self-testing exercises, which enable the pupil to determine how well he has mastered the part of the subject that he has studied. When he has reached a satisfactory standard of efficiency as determined by examination covering a unit of work, he is permitted to begin another unit.

The progress of pupils under this plan is influenced by their industry and learning ability. In addition, the individual pupil can adjust his program of study according to his abilities to progress in the different subjects. A pupil who finds himself better in one subject than another may strengthen himself in his weaker subjects by spending more time on them and less time on his strong subjects. A young pupil in a school in Winnetka, Ill., where the individualized system is practiced, said, "I don't have to spend much time on reading. I can read a page by just glancing at it, but I'm not so good in arithmetic, and therefore I put more time on it."

The individualized method of instruction tends to emphasize the acquisition of the basic facts and skills in various subjects. It is doubtful that the pupil by this system alone gets adequate opportunity to apply these facts and skills to life situations, as he might if he were learning through activities or in a socialized situation. At Winnetka, however, half the day is spent in socialized activities and the other half in individualized work. Groups of children engage in pageants and plays, group singing, excursions, the arts, handicrafts, and creative writing. In addition, the students have their own government, which also operates to socialize pupils. By means of such a combined program the children have an opportunity to relate their information to group living.

**Differences in the Individual.** Even though each individual in a broad way tends to be uniformly endowed, he is stronger in one respect than another. He may have greater ability in one academic

subject than another, or he may have special talents for or interests in mechanics, art, or music. The question arises, therefore, whether one should spend more time on his weak subjects in order to bring his achievement in them up to average or should develop his strongest subjects at the expense or at least in partial neglect of his weaker subjects.

For the most part, teachers practice the method of drilling the pupils on their weak subjects. If a pupil is especially strong in history and weak in arithmetic, he is directed to spend more time on arithmetic and less on history. There are good grounds for questioning this procedure; a pupil probably should not neglect his strength in order to cultivate his weaknesses. If a student has a special interest in a subject because he has more ability in it than in others, he should work at it more rather than less. The teacher and librarian should provide him with more books in the field and be alert in calling his attention to lectures, motion pictures, exhibits, and other opportunities for sharpening his interests, widening his knowledge, and developing his critical attitude toward the fields of his special ability.

Much extra time devoted to the pupil's weaknesses is probably not well spent. The extra time is better used if spent on the subject or subjects of his greatest interest, for thus he may develop a proficiency in a field of study that he will pursue all his life. It is better to develop children and adults so that they are especially strong in some fields of knowledge and comparatively weak in others rather than uniformly mediocre in all. This point of view should be interpreted in general to apply to larger areas of ability and not to specific weaknesses within a given subject. If, for example, a pupil is weak in certain basic steps in arithmetic, then drill should be centered on that weakness and not on the steps that have been mastered. On the other hand, if there are some pupils particularly good in the manual arts and mediocre and uninterested in a few required academic subjects, then emphasis should not be placed on learning those subjects to the partial neglect of the nonacademic subjects in which they are interested. If there are subjects for which pupils have an aptitude, schools should never be too arbitrary about requiring subjects that, for some pupils, are overdistressing.

A quotation from Dolbear will illustrate the evils in a system for uniform development:<sup>1</sup>

In Antediluvian times, while the animal kingdom was being differentiated into swimmers, climbers, runners, and fliers, there was a school for the development of the animal.

The theory of the school was that the best animals should be able to do one thing as well as another.

<sup>1</sup> Dolbear, Amos E., Antediluvian Education. *Journal of Education*, 68:424, 1908.

If an animal had short legs and good wings, attention should be devoted to running so as to even up the qualities as far as possible.

So the duck was kept waddling instead of swimming. The pelican was kept wagging his short wings in the attempt to fly. The eagle was made to run and allowed to fly only for recreation.

All this in the name of education. Nature was not to be trusted, for individuals should be symmetrically developed and similar for their own welfare as well as for the welfare of the community.

The animals that would not submit to such training, but persisted in developing the best gifts they had, were dishonored and humiliated in many ways. They were stigmatized as being narrow-minded specialists, and special difficulties were placed in their way when they attempted to ignore the theory of education recognized in the school.

No one was allowed to graduate from the school unless he could climb, swim, run, and fly at certain prescribed rates; so it happened that the time wasted by the duck in the attempt to run had so hindered him from swimming that his swimming muscles had atrophied, and so he was hardly able to swim at all; and in addition he had been scolded, punished, and ill-treated in many ways so as to make his life a burden. He left school humiliated, and the ornithorhynchus could beat him both running and swimming. Indeed, the latter was awarded a prize in two departments.

The eagle could make no headway in climbing to the top of a tree, and although he showed he could get there just the same, the performance was counted a demerit since it had not been done in the prescribed way.

An abnormal eel with large pectoral fins proved he could run, fly, climb trees, and swim a little. He was made valedictorian.

Almost every teacher, especially those in high school and college, can recall instances where students have had to repeat the same subject several times. Some students have been driven from school because of their inability to pass a certain course after two or three attempts. Others have survived, academically speaking, but in doing so have suffered an ordeal that left its scar on their personality. In cases where students do well or reasonably well in all but one or two subjects and where these, for one reason or another, seem to be insurmountable obstacles, it is good educational procedure to substitute other subjects for the overtroublesome ones. In some instances, the difficulty of the student is overcome if he is given a change of teacher. Adjustment of one kind or another should be made so that failure in one or two subjects will not destroy any student's whole educational career.

Adults are not required to be uniformly proficient in many departments. Adult life does not call for symmetrical development; much less does child life. Only in school do we work for it. In adulthood, we are most successful when we do the work in which we are most interested and when we capitalize on our greatest capacities. To be



sure, adult conduct is not an infallible guide in indicating how children should be trained, for it is conceivable that education should aim at establishing different practices, which may be better than the present ones. Still it is extremely doubtful that a pupil should spend on his weaker subjects more time than is average for any subject. To reiterate, more growth results from a unit of time spent in cultivating and perfecting one's greater talents than in attempting to develop one's weakest powers. The Greek ideal of all-round harmonious development is still too much with us.

This discussion can be illustrated by the college record of a person who has since reached a certain degree of distinction. As a student, he exhibited marked talent in composition, literature, and public speaking; he was also proficient in history and the other social sciences. In mathematics, physics, chemistry, and the other natural sciences, he was poorer than average. His marks thus showed a sharp division into two groups. In the literary and expressive arts, he was excellent; in the quantitative fields of study, his abilities were below the average of college students. There is hardly any doubt that he profited by having taken the courses in mathematics and natural science, but his greatest natural assets lay in the other fields. Those were the ones in which his development was to be most significant.

He developed his natural talent for effective expression and broadened his knowledge in the social sciences. The history of this individual, as a university president, reveals a serious deficiency because of a lack of that critical insight and realism characteristic of those who have a sharp quantitative sense. If a persistent and laborious study of mathematics, statistics, physics, chemistry, and other similar subjects had developed the power and habit of thinking quantitatively and had given him power to control his affairs with greater regard for the most important factors in the situation, then by all means he should have spent more time on the subjects in which he was poorest.

It is doubtful, however, that special and additional training in those subjects would have changed the character of his mental processes to such an extent as to make him much more effective in adult life. There is little evidence to show that a person's particular intellectual weaknesses can be overcome by special training. In this case, would the imaginative and literary qualities have been balanced with hardheaded realistic thinking? Generally, the strong points are developed to cover the weak ones. Adjustment consists in choosing work that makes only minimum demands on the abilities in which one is weak. The person referred to here was unsuccessful as an administrator, but he did well as a writer and lecturer and therefore did right in cultivating the field in which he was successful.

Life is in some respects like the card game of bridge. In bridge, you

bid your best suits, trying to make your best one trumps and then, in playing, making the most of your particular strength in any given suit, be it spades, hearts, clubs, or diamonds. Sometimes a player is strong in all four suits, and then he plays them all. There are people in life who are strong in several "suits," but they must specialize. Of course, their several strengths will help them no matter what area they specialize in.

In dealing with a person's weak and strong suits, there are situations or weaknesses that should be given considerable attention. For example, if a child stutters, special and even extended effort should be devoted to overcoming this speech defect. Such a defect is a serious handicap in all personal relationships. Hardly any effort should be spared to overcome such a deficiency.

Similarly, if a child is very weak in personal development, shy, uncommunicative, fearful, and suspicious, the teachers must pay special attention to him and try to develop him into a pleasant, personable child who plays and works happily with his fellows. In physical education the teacher tries to overcome physical defects in a child and improve his physical bearing so that he will have fewer handicaps both in childhood and adulthood. Thus, in the kind of instances given, time should be devoted to handicaps until they have been entirely overcome or sufficiently overcome so that the person is no longer handicapped seriously.

But let us consider a case where extreme efforts were made to overcome a weakness that in the first place was not overcome and in the second place probably was not worth much effort anyway. A young man in college, who was unusually gifted in athletics, had a consuming ambition to become a coach. He failed in a course in English, repeated it, and failed again.

The English teacher can still be heard saying, "He must learn to express himself clearly and accurately both orally and in writing."

He failed a third time also. Fortunately, this student was extremely durable, and so he outlasted the teacher and finally passed. Most students would have dropped out of college before they would have endured so many failures in a single course.

Now this young man turned out to be one of the best coaches and best referees in the state. In his work he can express himself very effectively and suffers no handicap, even though he probably never satisfied the English teacher. The experience of this man illustrates the truth that a long suit is very adequate for successful living and that no particular handicap need be suffered because of weakness in some academic subjects.

Although we say that more often than not a person well equipped in one respect tends to be above average in others, and similarly if a

person is poorly equipped in one respect he tends to be below average in others, there actually are many exceptions. It is not unusual for some to be good in academic subjects but relatively poor in music or in athletics; to be good mechanically but poor in abstract thinking; to be of high I.Q. but poor socially; to have good health but be under-average mentally; and so on. Generally, these are not the typical relationships, but they do occur, and students therefore do have their long and short suits, or their strengths and weaknesses. The problem is to bring about the best possible development of students with "up and down" capacities and abilities, and this is done by developing strong suits fully and preventing weak suits from becoming a handicap by building them up, or when this cannot be done, by helping such students to become so strong in some respects that weaknesses do not get a chance to play an important role.

**Acceleration by Extra Promotion.** A common method of adjusting to individual differences is to give extra promotion to the brighter pupils. Such extra promotion is justified in a sense, for such pupils are capable of doing work one or two grades and even more above the grade that is normal for their chronological age. In fact, the wide range of mental ability in each grade would indicate that the brightest pupils are the most retarded. They are retarded, in effect, because their mental ability is ahead of the average for their grade, whereas the dull average child is actually accelerated in grade because his mental ability is below that average.

But although these arguments are valid enough, there may be other aspects of the problem in view of which certain objections against too much extra promotion emerge. Furthermore, there may be a better method of taking care of the brightest students. Other factors must be considered besides the capacity to learn. The physical adjustment and social adaptations of the child are also important. Several extra promotions that bring the child into a group whose chronological age level is several years in advance of his own may lead to an unfortunate physical and social maladjustment. A child with mental maturity in advance of his years will be grouped with children who are larger physically and more advanced socially than he. The bright youngster may be able to compete with the older pupils in the recitations and in the examinations but may be a misfit in the sports, games, parties, and general activities of his fellow pupils.

It is questionable that a pupil should be accelerated more than two full grades, or 2 years, even if he is capable of doing the classwork. A student should not finish high school over 2 years younger than the average of the class. There are exceptions, as always, and each child should be considered as a separate and individual case. There can be no definite rule, but it is a good principle not to group a child

so that he is several years younger or older than the other members of his class. When in school, a pupil is living an important part of his life; he is more than a learner of facts and should associate with pupils with whom he can live most happily as well as learn most effectively.

Studies have been made of young accelerated students, and it has been discovered that on the average those who have been given 2 or more years of extra promotion by the time they finish high school are as well adjusted and have as wholesome personalities as pupils who are of normal age. It might be expected that the brighter, more able pupil would be better adjusted than average, but it is possible that some of the brighter pupils were harmed personally by extra promotion of over 2 years. When 2 or more years of extra promotion are faced by a child, the decision should be made in terms of the individual child. Conceivably, a young bright child who is large physically and mature socially will not be injured and may possibly be helped, while an advanced child academically who is small and has tendencies toward feeling inferior might be injured by being placed in a group of much larger children who are considerably more advanced socially. The decision on extra promotion should always be made in terms of the individual child and not according to any general rule.

There is evidence indicating that gifted children, those with I.Q.'s of 135 and over, who are not accelerated do not make as good an adjustment as those who are given extra promotions. If very bright children are not given some extra promotion, they are actually or in effect held back and retarded. Again it must be emphasized that when acceleration is considered for an intellectually superior child, his social and personal development should be taken into account and thought given to his having happy and successful companionship with members of both sexes.

Most students in the upper 5 per cent in intelligence go to college and enter the professions. Actually it is desirable that they begin college 1, 2, and in some exceptional instances 3 years younger than average and correspondingly begin their professional careers 1 to 3 years earlier also. They would thus begin college at the ages of seventeen, sixteen, and fifteen. Again we point out, however, that acceleration of 2 years and especially of more than 2 years should be undertaken only after the most careful study and analysis of the individual's needs and with consideration for his fullest and healthiest development. Reference was made to children in the upper 5 per cent. It should be emphasized that the best pupils in the upper 5 per cent, those with I.Q.'s of 145, 150, and over, are very superior to those at the bottom, or lower end, of the upper 5 per cent, those with

I.Q.'s of about 125, and that such differences among bright children must be taken account of, also.

**Enrichment and Personal Adjustment.** By enrichment is ordinarily meant the inclusion of additional materials and activities at a given grade level in order to permit those who can do more than the average amount of work to achieve up to their capacity. Thus, for example, when a geography class is studying the state of New York, the brighter pupils read books on the subject for which others cannot find the time, prepare illustrative materials, interview persons who have been to New York, and in general engage in activities that will give them a more comprehensive understanding of the subject. Opportunities to learn about a subject must be adapted to the individuals of the class according to their individual abilities.

Enrichment not only is the extension of study and activity in subject-matter fields but also may include extra activities such as dramatics, music, birdlore, gardening, and other projects. Enrichment of this kind consists in enlarging the number of activities and subjects as against more extended and intensive work on fewer subjects.

Enrichment for some children is provided outside the school. Some parents introduce special training in music, dancing, dramatics, or art early in the lives of their children and continue it as long as their children are in school. Their children attend special classes after school or on Saturdays. If the pupils are spending some of their out-of-school hours in such activities, the teacher should not load them with special work in order to achieve enrichment. They are already experiencing desirable forms of enrichment, and the teacher may concern herself primarily with enrichment of the subjects and activities usually regarded as the more essential elements in the curriculum.

Modern education with its excursions, group projects, and varied activities allows much more for individual differences in ability than does the old "nose in the book" and "recite to the teacher" method. In group projects and the socialized approach to problems, children have more opportunity to work according to their interests and capacities. Within the same room, the teacher using these more modern methods can stimulate children having a wide range of capacity and offer opportunities that will appeal to them.

**The Project, or Activity, Method and Individual Differences.** There are various ways of adapting instruction to the learning capacities and interests of students. The bright can work and study more independently and require less drill and less detailed and repetitious explanations than do the dull. Furthermore, bright children can be guided in developing their literary, dramatic, musical, painting, and other artistic abilities in the arts. Of course, any child who has any

special talents should be helped to develop them. If a child has an interest in writing stories or preparing radio and dramatic skits or loves to draw and paint, he should be given special help and opportunity to do so.

The project, activity, or progressive method of teaching allows for wide individual differences within heterogeneous groups. When the students are engaged in their activities and projects, there will be opportunities for them to utilize their special talents and increase all their abilities. Some children will write radio or dramatic skits, others will paint murals, some will look up and study special references, and here is a boy who normally is a marginal member of a class but now is right in the center of the activity because of his ability to construct things with his hands. It is necessary for him to express himself both orally and on paper, and he does so much better than expected because he is highly interested and motivated. Furthermore, he has to do considerable figuring, and so he learns more arithmetic than in almost any number of formal lessons. Probably best of all, this boy and the other pupils are now working together and getting social experiences that he would not get if he were sitting in his seat, separated from the other children, as is true in the formal, traditional classroom.

We must not lose sight of the great opportunities to adjust instruction to individual differences within a single class. Learning experiences can be carried out which give all children an opportunity to contribute what they can. Children learn more when their present skills and interests lead to developing additional ones, just as in the case of the boy mentioned in the preceding paragraph, interest in building things led to motivated experiences in language and arithmetic.

**The Dalton Plan.** One of the more widely known programs for adjusting to individual differences is the *Dalton plan*. It is so called because it was adopted first by the high school of Dalton, Mass. By this plan the rooms of a school are so arranged that a separate room or laboratory is set aside for each subject and is specially equipped. For example, the history room will have books, maps, and other materials for the study of history. The teacher of history is present in this room, not to instruct formally, but to help the students.

Each assignment covers work to be done in a month's time. Each monthly allotment is called a *contract*. The pupil is given the opportunity to exercise his own initiative as to how soon he is going to complete his contracts in the various subjects during the course of the month. He is tested periodically so that he may know how well he is achieving. About once a month he must complete all his allotments, or contracts, and thus be abreast of all his work. In this way the pupil has done the work in the subject in which he makes least progress as

well as that in the subjects which he likes and learns more readily. The Dalton plan and the many modifications of it are methods used to adjust the schools to the individual capacities of the students and thus to get away from lock-step procedures.

A modification of this plan which takes into fuller account the differences in the capacities of children is a system of contracts by which the pupils according to capacity and willingness agree to do different amounts of work and receive a mark appropriate to the amount and the quality of work accomplished.

**Conclusion.** Great differences in the capacities and characteristics of pupils are a proved fact. There are many ways of adapting the schools to these differences; several methods have been mentioned and discussed. Teachers and schools seldom use one method entirely or exclusively but utilize practices from different ones. Good progressive teachers use the various methods that they find helpful. If teachers, principals, and superintendents know the facts about individual differences and are willing to test methods and actually to experiment with adapting the schools to individual differences, great progress will be made.

All the methods described are a recognition of the differences in the learning capacities and interests of pupils and represent attempts to adjust the school to the interests and capacities of the students. The various modifications and aspects of ability grouping, contract plans, individualized instruction, and departmentalization constitute a direct appeal to the various levels of capacity and interest. Project, or activity, methods provide informally for individual differences within the group. Special coaching of the dull and the bright, failure of promotion or extra promotion, the four-quarter plan, and promotion every 10 weeks, quarter, or half year are also plans that recognize the differences in the school progress of which children are capable.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Today's promotional policies of fewer failures result in less homogeneity than was true formerly, when there were more failures.

If possible, children should be grouped so that they are as homogeneous as possible in social and mental development. Children of the same chronological age and intelligence quotient will tend to be homogeneous socially and educationally. Teachers' judgments will prove helpful in classifying pupils.

Ability grouping on the basis of general capacity and general achievement does not classify students very well for special subjects and activities such as art, music, industrial arts, and physical education.

Very bright children who score high on achievement tests but who have low school marks should be placed in most instances in the most

superior group. Instruction should be suited to the different groups, with more drill and repetition and a slower pace for the duller groups and more extensive and advanced work for the superior.

When junior and senior high-school students take courses and enroll in classes according to their interests and needs, and guided by teachers who have records of their capabilities, a type of voluntary ability grouping takes place which is very effective.

Although the evidence is not very decided, largely because ability grouping has not been utilized fully, ability grouping is apparently conducive to higher achievement and better social development.

A person should capitalize on his best abilities and overcome his weaknesses sufficiently so that they will not handicap him.

Students should not be given so much extra promotion that they will be in a class where the children are much larger and stronger. Young bright children can be helped by enrichment.

Very capable children need some extra promotion, otherwise they may lose interest. Usually 1 to 2 years of acceleration during grade and high school is desirable.

Most children who are not in the best ability groups would like to be. Such feelings may not be very wholesome. The modern activity, project, and problem methods overcome this objection to ability grouping by making a good place for every child in the group for carrying out its projects.

The purpose of individualized instruction and the Dalton plan is to provide opportunities for children to progress at the rate of which they are capable. Social development is provided by group activities.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. How can the child-centered, project, progressive methods take care of wide differences in capacities and interests within a given grade or group?
2. Give your reactions pro and con to the statement by Dolbear.
3. Do you believe in capitalizing on your strong suits or building up your weak ones? Comment.
4. If children of nearly the same chronological age and I.Q. and thus the same mental age are grouped together, it is probable that they are also more homogeneous socially than the typical heterogeneous group. Discuss.
5. Are there actually very large differences in the brightness and learning capacity of children of the same age? Discuss.
6. How does the Dalton plan break the lock-step system?
7. How does the described plan of voluntary ability grouping overcome many of the objections to the usual methods of homogeneous grouping?
8. What are some dangers in extra promotion?
9. If children are classified into groups according to their capacities to learn, the teacher and teaching should be suited to the different groups. Comment.



10. What is meant by enrichment as a substitute for extra promotion?
11. List and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the methods of individualized instruction.
12. What effect does the policy of no failure have on the heterogeneity or homogeneity of the pupils in the grades?
13. What is meant by lock-step methods?
14. Show how very bright children may suffer if not given extra promotion.

# 15. Heredity, Environment, and Human Development

## *Sources of Our Capacities and Characteristics*

**What to Look For.** Note how a teacher's point of view about nature and nurture will influence her methods in dealing with her pupils.

People inherit through the germ cell with its chromosomes and genes. Try to understand the mechanics of inheritance.

Several principles of inheritance are discussed. Their interfunction should be understood.

It is pointed out that both greatness and failure run in families and that biological inheritance is accompanied by corresponding social inheritance.

Observe that the closer the blood relationship the greater the correspondence in abilities and characteristics.

The abilities of children tend to correspond to the occupational status of the father, but note that here again heredity and environment accompany each other.

Learn what happens to the abilities of rats when "bright" and "dull" are mated with their own kind.

Learn what effects the foster home has on foster children in terms of intelligence, school progress, and character.

The twins of each of 20 pairs of identical twins were raised in different environments and the effects on the twins studied. What were the differential effects on the twins?

Note that failure to attend school influences the intelligence, as is shown by the study of canalboat and gypsy children.

We have long known that the youngest children in the grade are the most capable and the oldest the least capable. Observe that this seems to be indisputable proof that there are real inherent differences in the capacities of school children.

Develop an explanation of why soldiers from states with the best school systems had considerably higher mental-test scores than those from the states with the poorest.

heredity but must accept children as they are and teach them as effectively as possible.

Obviously, such a viewpoint is superficial. It results in teachers' shutting their minds to ideas which are helpful in dealing with pupils realistically. A teacher's attitude toward her individual pupils, the way she deals with them, is much influenced by her knowledge of the forces of nature and nurture and her consequent point of view. If she believes that nurture is the complete force and that nature is little or nothing, she will believe that all children are potentially alike and can be taught an unlimited amount. Her efforts, she believes, will then count almost equally with every child. If, on the other hand, she believes that children differ in their potentialities and capacities, she will feel that her efforts will bring different results with different pupils and she will have different expectations for her pupils.

To the teacher, knowledge of the relative effect of the forces of heredity and environment on human development and their inter-relationship is of signal importance. Teachers are the main environmental factor in the children's school life. A teacher is valuable according to her ability to develop the potentialities of her pupils and to make desirable changes in them. She must understand the possibilities and limitations of the human material with which she works. Her philosophy and methods of teaching are greatly affected by her concepts of the possibilities of training and education.

The teacher who believes that children's development depends on her efforts alone will misdirect much of her energy. There are teachers who believe that "every child is a diamond in the rough which needs only polishing in order to reflect the light of intelligence." According to this notion, every child has great possibilities that will be realized if the teacher will only work hard enough to develop them.

Other instructors feel that a child will develop in the directions determined by his heredity and that the guidance and training of children by parents and teachers matter very little. A teacher with such beliefs will miss many opportunities to develop the latent capacities of her pupils.

The extreme view on the potency of training was dramatically stated by the psychologist Watson, who startled the world by saying, in substance, that if he were given a group of healthy infants he could train or condition them to become lawyers, beggarmen, doctors, or thieves and that he would use definite psychological methods to make each infant into an adult of a predetermined pattern. Such a plan of training assumes that what a child can be made into depends entirely on the training he receives and denies almost entirely the variation in quality of the human organism. It can be added now that Watson never demonstrated his method of training.

Other students of this problem are reasonably sure that some infants are born with such a low quality of nervous system that they never will acquire the knowledge and abilities necessary for certain achievements. There are people, it is believed, who will never acquire enough ability to be musicians, writers, lawyers, or doctors. Possibly a few educators and psychologists hold that psychologically sound training is all that is needed to mold the human organism into any pattern, but such an extreme point of view is hardly based on sound evidence. It is futile, however, to discuss the influences of environment and heredity without making clear the particular nature of these influences. One's point of view should be differential rather than general, and one should think of the specific effects of heredity on various human qualities and characteristics. Before discussing the differential effects of nature and nurture let us consider how children inherit from their parents.

✓ **The Mechanics of Inheritance.** A human being has its beginning in union of the male germ cell, the sperm, with the female germ cell, the ovum. They unite and then divide. Cell division continues, and the result is the growth and development of the embryo. The germ cells of the parents are preserved in the embryo. Thus, the child carries the germ cells of its parents, and thereby the stream of germ cells is continuous from generation to generation.

✓ **The determination of the characteristics and potentiality of a child** is not a haphazard, trial-and-error, hit-or-miss matter. The characteristics of a child and his potentialities are determined genetically according to definite quantitative and scientific laws. In the germ cells of the father and mother are definite quantities known as chromosomes and genes, which unite and determine, for example, whether or not the child is to be black or white, blue- or brown-eyed, tall or short, bright or dull, strong or weak, and so forth. (There are definite factors, then, in the germ cells of the parents that determine the quality and characteristics of a child.)

The germ cells contain chromosomes, 24 pairs in the germ cell of each parent. The chromosomes, in turn, are made up of genes, or determiners, and each chromosome consists of about 40 to over 100 of these determiners. At the time of conception, half of the father's chromosomes, or 24, unite with 24, or half, of the mother's chromosomes. The genes, or determiners, in the chromosomes of the sperm pair with the genes of the ovum and determine the potential characteristics and qualities of the offspring. (The result of the union of the genes we call *heredity*.) Figure 18 shows the male and female chromosomes. The processes of heredity are very complex, but this diagram suggests how it operates.

If the father's genes for tallness unite with the mother's genes for

tallness, then the offspring will inherit tallness. Similarly, if the male genes for high mentality unite with the female genes for high mentality, then the child will *inherit* brightness, and similarly for nearly all traits. If, for example, the father and mother carry genes for weak lungs and these genes pair, then the offspring will have weak lungs and will have a predisposition to tuberculosis. (If the environment of the offspring is conducive to tuberculosis, so that he is exposed to infection, he probably will become infected. Disease is not inherited, but the weaknesses are; therefore some people have a natural pre-

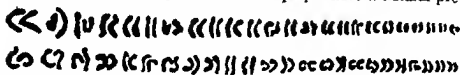


Fig. 18. Chromosomes of the human male in the upper row and the human female in the lower row arranged in order of size. (From Evans and Swery in *Memoirs of the University of California*.)

disposition to infection, whereas others are born so strong that they resist nearly all diseases.)

The brief description is a very simple, in fact an oversimple, explanation of the inheritance of traits and capacities as determined by the uniting of the genes of the chromosomes in the sperm and ovum. Nevertheless, essentially it describes the process of inheritance. Discussions of certain other important factors such as Mendelianism, dominance, recessiveness, sex-linked and unit characters, and mutations can be found in books on genetics or biology. The mechanics of human inheritance are not definitely known to the extent that we can determine how specific traits are inherited, but for our purposes it is sufficient to show how inheritance takes place.

#### SOME PRINCIPLES OF INHERITANCE

**Like Begets Like.** The general principle of inheritance is that like tends to beget like. This principle will be interpreted here to mean that bright parents tend to have bright children; average parents, average children; and *dull parents*, *dull children*. Similarly, in the case of physical size, there is a tendency for the mature size of the offspring to be similar to that of their parents. Thus, on the average, the children tend to be like the parents, but there are many exceptions to the rule. This fact leads us to the second principle, the principle of variation.

**Variation.** Children are not exact replicas of their parents, nor do they develop to be precise reproductions at any given age of what their parents were at that age. The reason lies in the characteristics of the germ cells of the parents. Germ cells contain many determiners,

which unite in different combinations to form offspring differing among themselves.

For purposes of illustration, let us assume that two human parents could have a very large number of children. The average quality of the offspring would be determined by the quality of the parents' germ cells. For some parents, the average would be high; for most, it would be average; for some, it would be low. Most of the children would be at the average of their parents or near it, but they would vary from that average. The genes of the germ cells vary in their potentialities.

This principle of variation explains why children in the same family differ in intellect, size, and temperament. They are a product of different combinations of the determiners in the parent germ cells. But though they differ, they tend to be more alike than do unrelated children. Brothers and sisters (siblings) have their similarities, although they vary from the family average.

**Regression.** The tendency for children of very bright parents to be less bright than their parents and, comparably, for the children of very inferior parents to be less inferior is called *regression*. For any trait, there is a tendency for the children to regress toward the average. Not all the offspring will regress; but, on the whole, they will move toward the average rather than farther below or above it, as the case may be.

Usually the children of a very gifted father or mother are not so gifted as the parent. A son of a great athlete seldom becomes as great as his father or the son of a great scientist as great as his father. There are several reasons for the regression.

In the first place, the father, for the traits that he possesses, represents the product of the most fortunate combination of the determiners in the germ cells of his parents. Therefore the germ cells that he carries are, on the average, inferior to the particular combination from which he developed.

Second, it is likely that he will mate with a woman not so distinguished as he and that his mate will be almost certain not to carry germ cells as good as those which combined at the time of his conception. Though the offspring will tend to be decidedly above the average, it is unlikely that they will be as great as their father. This is regression.

Similarly, the germ cells of two imbeciles are probably better than the combination from which they sprang; therefore the offspring of such parents would be better than the parents, possibly averaging low moron level. Occasionally a child of two imbeciles has average ability, and sometimes there are offspring as deficient as their imbecile parents, but most, though deficient, will be higher than the father and mother.

We can illustrate regression in the case of Man o' War, who was one of the two greatest running horses in American racing. He produced some great runners, but of his 386 offspring not one of that large number was as great a runner as he.

These three general principles—like tends to beget like, variation, and regression—are useful in trying to understand human characteristics and qualities. In general, the offspring tend to be as bright, as tall, as healthy, etc., as their parents, but they vary above and below the average ability of the stock from which they spring. Furthermore, there is a tendency for the offspring to be lower in the characteristics in which the parents are high or higher in those traits in which the parents are low. They regress, or move toward the average. ✓

**Congenital Influences and Acquired Abilities.** The congenital period of life is the embryonic and fetal period, or the period of pregnancy, or gestation. It is the period between the union of the male and female germ cells and the time of birth. For human beings it is about 9 months long.

Questions are often raised about the various factors that may affect the embryo and fetus and thus influence the character of the child. The effect of faulty nutrition on the growing embryo or fetus, of pressures and strictures on its development, and of the chemical balance of the mother are still matters of speculation. Little is known about them, although it is certain that some children are injured at birth in a manner that affects them physically and mentally during all their lives. Venereal diseases may also be contracted congenitally, or during the gestation period. Now we read about an Rh factor, or the incompatibility of the mother's blood with the embryo and fetus, that influences them unfavorably.

Little need be said about the transmission to the embryo and fetus of the experiences and thoughts of the mother during pregnancy. The superstition that pregnant mothers frightened by dogs or otherwise frightened or distressed will consequently give birth to dog-faced children or other monstrosities has no validity. Illness and great emotional stress may possibly affect the embryo, but the wishes and ideals that a mother has for her child are not transferred to it. A mother may listen to great music and hope that her child will thus become a great musician, or she may spend hours viewing masterpieces of painting with the wish that her offspring will become a distinguished artist. She may day-dream about the future of her child, but all her hopes and visions have absolutely no effect on the embryo or fetus.

However, the prospective baby should have as good an environment in the body of its mother as possible. If the mother is ideally nourished, perhaps the fetus will be nourished better, too, and will therefore grow and develop more healthily. Furthermore, if the

pregnant mother is calm and happy, this may have a good effect on the fetus. We have no satisfactory evidence on these points as yet, but we must remember that miraculous growth and development take place during the 9 months of gestation, and a good environment then should be very important.

✓Children do not inherit the acquired abilities of their parents. As an adult gets older, he may acquire different skills, increase his efficiency, and add to his store of knowledge but such improvement is not transmitted to his offspring. The germ cells are independent of such influences. If the values of a parent's experiences were inherited in the children, the young children in a family should surpass the older, or the last-born should be more capable than the first-born. But this is not the case; there is no relationship between order of birth and the intelligence of the offspring.

**Ancestry and Inheritance.** The child's heredity is not determined solely by his immediate parents. He inherits not only from his father and mother but from his grandparents, his great-grandparents, etc. In other words, he inherits from his ancestors, though, of course, he inherits most from his immediate parents. As the parentage becomes more remote, the hereditary influences decrease. It is partly due to the heredity from these less immediate ancestors that very superior parents generally have less superior children and very inferior parents have children better than themselves. The hereditary determinations, however, from remote ancestry are least influential. Most of a person's inheritance comes from his immediate ancestry.

Probably  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the inheritance is from the parents,  $\frac{1}{4}$  from the grandparents,  $\frac{1}{8}$  from the great-grandparents, and correspondingly  $\frac{1}{16}$ ,  $\frac{1}{32}$ ,  $\frac{1}{64}$ ,  $\frac{1}{128}$ , etc., from the less immediate ancestors.

#### HEREDITY, ENVIRONMENT, AND MENTAL CAPACITIES

Are a few born to be gifted and a few to be idiots and imbeciles, and are most infants destined to be distributed between those extremes, with most of them about average? Or are people born equal in mental potentiality, and do the differences which are evident result only from differences in experiences and education?

First, it must be recognized that brightness and dullness depend on the quality of such physical structures as the sense organs, glands, and especially the nervous system. The "heart" of the intellectual system is the brain and its neural connections. Mental capacities depend on the neural, muscular, and glandular hookups and on the quantity and quality of the various body materials. Thus mental function depends on structures, and we generally accept the idea that potential growth and the consequent structures are largely inherited. In this sense mental capacities are inherited.



However, the growth and development of structures and the effectiveness with which they function depend on many environmental conditions. Consideration should therefore be given to various environmental conditions that affect intellectual development. The following items will be discussed, though not in the order of this list:

1. Distinction and deficiency in family lineages.
2. Occupational status of fathers and the abilities of their children.
3. Selective mating.
4. Foster children and their social and mental development.
5. Twins reared in similar and different environments.
6. Degree of blood relationships and correlation of abilities and characteristics.
7. School attendance and measured intelligence.
8. The mental abilities of the youngest and oldest child in a given grade.
9. Variations in the average mental ability of soldiers from the different states.

#### FAMILY LINEAGES AND RELATIONSHIPS

**Distinction and Deficiency in Family Lineages.** Studies have been made of certain family trees to ascertain whether or not some consistently bear very good fruit and some bear largely poor and inferior fruit. A large number of details could be given, but only a few pertinent facts will be set forth here.

It can be said at the outset that eminence and distinction are found in some family lineages and feeble-mindedness, insanity, and criminality in others. Of course, most families are average, with some members above average and others below. If, for example, you took the outstanding men and women in a city or county, say the most outstanding person in 4,000, and then took the same number of persons at large, you would find that the eminent persons would have many more relatives of high standing than those picked at random. In fact, Francis Galton, a great English scientist of the nineteenth century, made such a study and found that there were 134 times as many outstanding relatives of distinguished men as of persons taken at large.

Feeble-mindedness, insanity, criminality, or social deficiency of one kind or another runs in families, too. Very often several feeble-minded will be found in a single family, and feeble-mindedness has been prevalent in a family for several generations. Studies of two family lineages, those of the Jukes and the Kallikaks (both fictitious names), show a distressingly large number of inadequates. Many were thieves, indolent persons, feeble-minded persons, prostitutes, or insane persons. There were some normal and adequate persons, too, of course, but many inadequates came forth each generation. Studies of the families

of persons committed to prisons, insane asylums, and institutions for the feeble-minded show that they have many relatives who have the same deficiencies.

The Edwards family, beginning in the American colonial period and running through many generations, is usually contrasted with the Jukes and Kallikaks. The Edwards lineage produced many important judges, college presidents, clergymen, professors, and other leaders.

Although eminence and distinction on the one hand and deficiency and depravity on the other characterize some family lineages, we still do not have clear-cut proof that heredity is responsible, for the children of prominent parents have a superior cultural inheritance, also, while the children of the very poor and ignorant are born into a very meager and disordered culture. Thus the evidence from family lineages has the weakness of not being able to attribute to either heredity or environment the responsibility for either distinction or deficiency since both good inheritance and good environment work together to produce distinction and leadership, while poor nature and poor nurture work together to produce weaknesses of all kinds.

High musical ability tends to run in families; most eminent musicians have a parent or other relatives who have been recognized for their musical abilities. There are, of course, exceptions to this tendency. Toscanini is a musician from a family in which there was no musical talent. The appearance of high musical talent early in the lives of those who have become eminent musicians indicates that the capacity is inherited. The gifted child apparently inherits the right sensorimuscular-neural-skeletal hookup for music, and his talent becomes evident early in life.

Genius and distinction appear among all levels of people except possibly the very lowest, but far the largest proportion of the gifted are born to the upper socioeconomic-cultural groups, even though such groups constitute only 5 to 10 per cent of the population. Still, greatness will show up in comparatively common quarters. For example, Benjamin Franklin came from reasonably humble circumstances. It no doubt happened that the genes of the chromosomes that combined to produce Franklin were the very best. Mark Twain was born of pioneer parents who were good people but in no way outstanding. Occasionally the genes for extreme greatness combine to produce a genius, but much more frequently the genes of various degrees of potentiality combine, with the result that most people cluster around the average.

A study of parents and their children has led to the following estimates:

2. Parents with I.Q.'s of 70 will average 160 children per 1,000 of moron grade or less.

3. Parents with I.Q.'s of about 40 will average 335 children per 1,000 of moron grade or less.

We must not lose sight of the fact that like tends to produce like, even though there are variations and exceptions.

**Blood Relationship and Abilities.** The most closely related individuals are identical twins—born from a division and growth of the same cell. Next in degree of relationship are fraternal twins, or those born from the union of two separate cells; then children of the same family, or brothers and sisters; then cousins; and so forth. The correlation of abilities between parents and children is higher than between grandparents and grandchildren or between uncles and aunts and their nephews and nieces.

The relation of abilities is known, not for all degrees of blood relationship, but for enough to indicate that abilities correlate to an extent corresponding to the nearness of the kinship. Correlations have been calculated to determine the relation in tallness, weight, mental-test ability, and achievement in school subjects as well as in other characteristics and abilities. The results vary a little from investigator to investigator, but in the accompanying tabulation the correlations for the various degrees of blood relationship are reasonably accurate in indicating the general trend. Of course, these correlations are not

<i>Relationship</i>	<i>Correlation</i>
Identical twins.....	.80-.90
Fraternal, or nonidentical, twins.....	.65-.70
Brothers and sisters (siblings).....	.45-.50
Cousins.....	.20-.35
Unrelated children.....	.00
Parent-child.....	.40-.45
Grandparent-grandchild.....	.10-.20

necessarily indisputable proof that various physical characteristics and the capacities for various abilities are inherited according to the degree of blood relationship. For in fact it is likewise true that the closer the degree of blood relationship, the more nearly alike the environment.

For twins, prenatal environment is more similar than for nontwins. Brothers and sisters experience a more similar environment than do cousins; nevertheless, the fact that sisters and brothers differ is just as valid an argument that traits and capacities are inherited as the fact that they correspond to a degree represented by a correlation of .45 to .50.

The knowledge of right or wrong of parents and children correlates

about .50, which is essentially the same as the correlation for nearly all other traits and capacities. Although the capacity for ethical knowledge is perhaps inherited, like the capacity for any kind of knowledge, it would seem that a knowledge of ethical conduct and related ideals and attitudes is to a large extent the product of home teaching and home environment. That the parent-child correlation for a quality probably acquired is as high as the correlations for other qualities generally considered inherited raises a question as to the validity of concluding that high correlations indicate the inheritance of those qualities.

This conclusion, which has been reached by some observers, is a little extreme, no doubt, but represents a belief that contains truth. It serves, at any rate, to point out the fact that environment works with heredity in making related persons more alike. Nevertheless, it is true that no one can observe the appearance of a pair of identical twins—the similarity of size, features, eye color, twirl and shade of hair, finger print, achievement in school, and disposition—without recognizing the importance of hereditary factors. Furthermore, the variations in the characteristics of siblings are not inconsistent with what we know about the principles of inheritance.

**Occupational Status of Fathers and Mental Abilities of Their Children.** A further point of interest is the relation between the vocational level of the parents and the intelligence of their children. Teachers, others who work with children, or anyone especially interested in children will find useful a knowledge of the relationship of the mental abilities of children to the work that the father does. The occupational status of the father is a general index to the mental abilities of the child, but only an approximate one, and not to be depended upon for judging the individual child. However, to know the relationship will enable the teacher to understand her pupils better. She will know, for example, that students in a district where the fathers are largely lawyers, doctors, professors, and business executives will have on the average considerably more ability than the children in a district where the parents are of the unskilled laboring class. Knowledge of this kind helps in understanding children and why they are as they are.

The occupational status of parents is generally distributed over a range, at one end of which are the unskilled and at the other the professional workers. The categories often used are unskilled, semiskilled, skilled, business-clerical, and professional. Some representative occupations in an order corresponding to the classifications given are hobo-transient, unskilled laborer, teamster, butcher, carpenter, policeman, automobile mechanic, railroad clerk, bookkeeper, accountant, schoolteacher, librarian, doctor, engineer, creative writer, and scien-

tist. These occupations are considered representative of different positions in the occupational scale according to the amount of education, mental ability, or abstract intelligence required.

There is a large range of ability, of course, in each classification. Some persons engaged in the less skilled occupations possess more abstract intelligence than some in the more skilled occupations and even than a few in the professional occupations.

We know that the I.Q.'s of the fathers correspond in general to their occupational status, and we should expect that the intelligence of the children would correspond in a general way to the occupations of the fathers. And, in general, men marry women of corresponding intelligence. Thus, on the average, the children of professional parents have the highest I.Q.'s and those of unskilled workers the lowest. This is, in fact, the trend. The correlation between occupational status of parents and I.Q. of the children is about .40. The relationship is very general, and again the question may be raised as to whether the superiority of children of professional parents is due to the genes of their parents or to the difference in the cultural and educational environment into which they are born. A child of professional parents obviously is the beneficiary of more advantages than a child born into the home of an unskilled worker or of parents on relief. Again we are in a situation where the relative effects of environment and heredity cannot be distinguished; consequently, the differences in the qualities of the children cannot be definitely attributed to either. There is some likelihood that hereditary qualities accompany vocational status to some degree.

**Selective Mating.** If, for example, the brightest, healthiest, and those of best character married those like themselves, would the children be like the parents? If those who were dull and had poor health and bad morals married those like themselves, would the offspring be like the parents? Or could a psychologist take children from either stock and make them whatever he tried to make them?

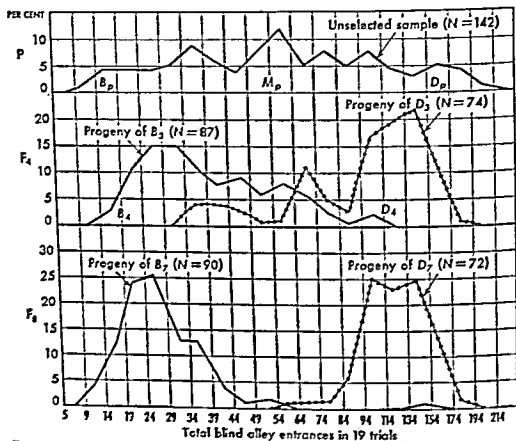
We have, of course, no experimental results on human beings, although we have a large amount of evidence indicating that family stock contributes much to what a person is. Even though the earnest, intelligent teacher who understands educational psychology can do much for every child no matter what his natural endowments are, it is doubtful that he can overcome **certain** limitations.

It is interesting to examine a study on the selective breeding of rats that were bred according to their abilities to run a maze. In a sense, the ability to run a maze measures the intelligence of a rat. Tryon, after having tested a group of rats on the maze, bred the most intelligent rats with the most intelligent and the least intelligent with the least intelligent. He did this through a number of generations in order

to determine whether or not through the generations there resulted from this selective breeding a bright and a dull group.

Figure 19 shows the parent group and the fourth and eighth generations. The reader should note carefully what has taken place.

The parent, or beginning, group has abilities ranging from less than 10 entrances into blind alleys in running the maze to about 225 such



union of poor genes of bright parents. This is parallel to a dull child being born to very bright parents.

In this experiment, only one ability was considered, but in terms of this ability it is evident that, when the best learners are mated with the best and the poorest learners with the poorest, in a few generations there is a remarkable difference in the learning abilities of the two different groups of offspring. Perhaps the teacher and the parent can learn from this experiment that there are true differences in the native learning abilities of children and that parentage is responsible for the differences. Of course, there is a long phylogenetic distance from rats to men, but there is so much in common in their genetics that it is safe to draw some conclusion about human learning from what has been found for rats.

In the fields of animal husbandry and horse racing, there is no question about the dominance of genetic factors. It is through selective mating that the best beef types, the most productive milkers, and the fastest horses are produced. In the dog world, too, we see what scientific mating has done to produce types, temperaments, and skills such as appear among hunting dogs, for example.

**Adopted, or Foster, Children.** Adopted, or foster, children have been studied in order to discover what effect the foster home has on their intelligence, school progress, and behavior. The true parents and family background of the foster children were known, and the kind of foster home in which they lived was studied. Their intelligence was measured carefully by intelligence tests, their progress in school was carefully checked, and their behavior carefully evaluated.

In the study of foster children, special attention is paid to the influence of environment. This can be done because the foster parents are not the true parents and consequently a genetic or hereditary relationship does not exist. Second, the quality of the foster home can be rated and the effect of the home on the foster child evaluated in terms of the quality of the home.

The home is evaluated in terms of its expected influence on the foster child. A home is rated high if the parents are of high standing in the community, if they are well educated, if they have good financial means, if they have a home with good books, television, and a telephone, and if the house is an ample, well-built, attractive one in a good community where the other children are intelligent and well behaved. In such a home the foster children are under the best influences and have maximum opportunities for developing their intelligence and character.

Homes at the other end of the scale are in poor districts; the parents are of poor character, little education, and small income and care little what becomes of their children. In these homes the influences make

for poor school attendance, lack of ambition, and delinquency. These two types represent the extremes of the scale, and between these extremes the various foster homes can be classified.

Various studies have been made, and the following facts have been found: intelligence or I.Q. develops more in the better than in the poorer homes; the longer the foster children are in the home, or the earlier the children were adopted, the greater the increase in I.Q. Part of this may be due to the tendency of parents from better homes to choose better children. Being abler persons, they would select children with a better family background.

The advantageous influence of the better home is not very large on the average, probably being about 5 to 8 points in I.Q. In some individual cases it is as high as 15 to 20 points, but it is doubtful that this can be attributed to the influence of the foster home alone. Individual cases do not constitute very reliable evidence, although the average of a large number does. The particular individuals might have increased in intelligence under average circumstances, or there may have been unreliability in the testing.

In the matter of school progress, it has been discovered that foster children make good or better than average progress in elementary school. In high school, this is not the case. The explanation lies in the fact, perhaps, that the true parents of the foster children studied were of inferior stock. It is more often the case than not that the children available for adoption have shiftless and inadequate parents. Otherwise, they or members of their family would take care of the children, who then would not be given away to foster parents. Many foster children have poor heredity. The result is that when they attend high school their hereditary limitations set in and the work becomes too hard for them. In grade school, through their own efforts and with the guidance of their foster parents, they can do the work satisfactorily, but in high school the comparatively more difficult algebra, foreign languages, history, English, and science are too difficult for them to master.

Studies have been made in Iowa of children of poor genetic background who were placed in foster homes before they were six months old. The mothers were reported as having an average I.Q. of 75, and the fathers were judged to be comparable with the mothers. Thus these children had inferior heredity. When the children were five and six years old, their I.Q.'s were found to be 110. This has been interpreted as indicating that good foster-home environment may overcome deficient heredity. Regression could account for an average I.Q. of these children as high as 85 or 90 but not for an above-average I.Q. of 110.

The behavior of foster children is very favorable in terms of family



background. The foster children studied had much better records than their true parents had had and than they probably would have had if they had been left in the environments of their true instead of the much better environment of their foster homes. It seems, then, that the greatest favorable influence of foster homes on foster children is on their behavior. This is very important and encouraging, too.

In summary, it can be said that the study of the foster-home environment on foster children indicates that their intelligence reflects the quality of the home, increasing a little more in good than in average or poorer homes, though the increase is not large in any foster environment. School progress of foster children is influenced favorably by their homes, but the home environment cannot overcome limitations in native or hereditary endowment. The behavior of foster children reflects very favorably the influences of the foster home, for it is much better than could be expected in terms of hereditary background, which was in the instances studied often very unfavorable.

#### TWINS REARED IN DIFFERENT AND SIMILAR ENVIRONMENTS

**The Similarity of Identical Twins.** The reader has probably had experience with twins whom he could not tell apart. He may have had the embarrassment of not knowing which was which and talking to one when he thought he was talking to the other. Such twins, known as *identical twins*, have been carefully studied to discover how much alike they are in physical, mental, and educational characteristics. They have been compared in height, weight, width of head and hip, and length of head. They have been compared by carefully administered mental examinations and by the use of achievement tests in various school subjects. It has been found that there is a high correlation or close relationship between the physical traits of identical twins and also between their mental capacities and between their educational abilities.

This means that, if one of the identical twins is tall, the other is the same or very nearly the same height; if one is short, the other is also. If one twin has an I.Q. of 120, the other has about the same. If one twin has an I.Q. of 95, the other has an I.Q. of 95 or thereabouts. In knowledge of subject matter, identical twins nearly always have about the same standing, both being high, both being average, or both being low. In the various physical, mental, and educational characteristics or abilities the relationship is very close and is represented by a correlation of about .93, which is a very high one.

**Identical Twins Reared in Different Environments.** It has happened that identical twins have been separated at birth, one being placed with one family to live and the other being placed in another home. Such twins therefore were reared in different environments.

The best study of such twins is a report of an investigation of 20 pairs. Of given pairs, one had been raised on a farm, the other in the city; one had lived a pleasant, comfortable life, while the other had had hardships; one had had more years of education than the other. The twins were carefully studied and examined to discover whether or not different modes of living or different experiences had made a difference in their health, physical development, intelligence, and educational abilities.

In some instances, what appear to be different environments do not seem to make a difference. In other instances, different environments do affect identical twins.

The following are some of the differences discovered in the identical twins studied:

One twin girl, who was raised on a farm, was sturdy and weighed nearly 30 pounds more than her sister, who had been raised in the city and did little hard work.

One twin who had lived on a farm as a struggling farmer's wife and the mother of children weighed nearly 10 pounds less than her twin, who had had a comfortable married life. The one who had lived well had perfect teeth, while her twin sister, who had fought poverty on a farm, had teeth missing and decayed.

In the case of an older pair of twins, one had been raised in the "goiter belt," while the other was raised where she had plenty of antiggoiter foods. The one had a goiter, while the other did not; the former was heavier and less alert in moving around.

Of another pair, one twin raised in the city was "citified," while the one raised in the country was "countrified."

Of a pair, one had had much hardship and consequently felt worried and insecure, while her sister, living in comfort, was much freer of feelings of overconcern.

There were differences in educational achievement and mental age, reflecting a difference in the number of years of schooling. Some twins had had only some grade-school education, while the twin sister or brother had had high-school education. There were differences of as much as 3 years in both mental and educational age.

It seems, then, from the study of identical twins reared apart that certain differences in the environment influence the human body either favorably or unfavorably, that human temperament and personality reflect the nature of the circumstances to which they have been exposed, and also that additional years of education reflect themselves in higher mental ages and greater knowledge and information.

**Further Data on Twins.** Table 9 gives a good summary of the relationship for various traits for three groups of twins: (1) identical

twins reared together; (2) fraternal, or unlike, twins reared together; (3) identical twins reared apart. It is normal or natural that twins should be brought up together in the same home, attend the same school, and be together in the same surroundings. By comparing the size of the correlations for the three groups the degree of similarity will be readily observed. Note that in physical measurements the pairs of identical twins are very much alike and that the degrees of similarity are about the same for the identical twins reared together and those reared apart. Weight is affected a little by differences in environment, it seems, but other physical traits have been changed very little.

TABLE 9. *Correlations for three groups of twins\**

Trait	Identical reared together	Fraternal reared together	Identical reared apart
Standing height.....	.981	.934	.969
Sitting height.....	.965	.901	.960
Weight.....	.973	.900	.886
Head length.....	.910	.691	.917
Head width.....	.908	.654	.880
Binet M.A.....	.922	.831	.637
Binet I.Q.....	.910	.640	.670
Otis I.Q.....	.922	.621	.727
Stanford achievement... ..	.955	.883	.507
Woodworth-Mathews.....	.562	.371	.583

\* After Horatio H. Newman, Frank N. Freeman, and Karl J. Holzinger, *Twins: A Study of Heredity and Environment*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1937.

Except for head measurements, the fraternal twins are nearly as alike in physical measurements as the identical twins.

The greatest influence of the environment on the traits shown in Table 9 is on mental and educational abilities. The correlations for the Woodworth-Mathews test should probably not be depended upon, for this is a test of psychoneurotic tendencies such as worries, fears, and complexes and is not so reliable as tests of intelligence and school achievement, which can be tested more accurately.

Identical twins raised in the same homes show a very high degree of similarity in mental and educational tests; the correlation is about .93, which is nearly the same as for physical qualities. For fraternal twins the correlation is about .74 for mental and educational tests, but for identical twins raised in different environments the average correlation is about .64. It is apparent from comparing the .93 and .64 that being raised in different environments with their different intel-

lectual stimulations and educational opportunities makes identical twins more unlike than if they had been raised together. It is interesting to note that, even though identical twins have been separated, they still are more alike intellectually and educationally than are brothers and sisters reared together in the same families, going to the same schools, and in general having the same environment. The usual correlation of intellectual and educational abilities of siblings is about .50.

These very important studies made of twins show the strength of heredity as well as the powerful influences of environment. The data indicate clearly that the strength of heredity persists but that environment has its effects also. Environment seems to have very little effect on certain physical characteristics but has more effect on measured intelligence and on the knowledge acquired.

#### SCHOOL ATTENDANCE AND ABILITY IN MENTAL AND EDUCATIONAL TESTS

Adult people of most countries provide schools for their children and for themselves, too. They believe that schools afford one of the best environments for equipping and developing the minds, personalities, character, and health of their children. At this time we shall set forth some evidence (that points out the effectiveness of the school in the developing and equipping of the mind.)

TABLE 10. *Mental and scholastic ability of different groups, with their percentages of school attendance\**

Group	Average mental ratio (I.Q.)	Average educational ratio (E.Q.)	Average attendance by percentage
Physically defective.....	86.7	86.9	48.0
Gypsy children.....	75.4	77.4	34.9
Canalboat children.....	71.5	71.6	5.0 (estimated)
Backward class.....	74.9	76.9	67.5

\* Based on Hugh Gordon, "Mental and Scholastic Tests among Retarded Children," *Educational Pamphlet 44*, Board of Education, London, 1923.

A study was made in England by Gordon of four groups of children, the physically defective, gypsy, canalboat, and backward classes. The results of the study show that there is a relationship between school attendance and mental and educational abilities, which as measured are probably to a considerable extent the same abilities. Table 10 shows the ratios and quotients. Observe that the ratios tend to be in terms of the amount of school attendance and that the ratios of gypsy

and canalboat children are even lower than those of backward children. Their intellectual and educational status is low because of absence from school.

Table 11 furnishes more evidence to that effect. It will be observed that, following the age of six, the intelligence quotient is smaller with each succeeding year, thus indicating the increasing penalty with increased absence from school.

Studies made of the mental-test abilities of children in mountain pockets in the United States yielded similar results. In these remote and isolated sections, schools were very poor and attendance was also poor. In one such community where the schools improved markedly and the better morale of the pupils was reflected in much more satisfactory attendance, the mental-test abilities improved considerably and approached the age norms or standards for the tests.

These facts are strong arguments for the value of school and tell rather dramatically what the teacher is doing to sustain the intellectual and educational level of the children. Children grow physically and become larger and stronger, but if it were not for the teacher instructing youth, their physical growth would not be accompanied by corresponding mental and educational growth. The data on the canalboat and gypsy children show this relationship very clearly.

#### THE YOUNGEST CHILDREN IN A GRADE ARE THE MOST CAPABLE AND THE OLDEST ARE THE LEAST CAPABLE

It will be found in a given class that the oldest children are less capable than the youngest. This is true in spite of the fact that the older pupils have lived longer, have had more opportunity, and have had several years more instruction and usually a great deal of special help. But their inherited limitations are never overcome, and they are surpassed by younger, brighter children who have inherited greater capacities.

The data in the accompanying tabulation include the average chronological age of a youngest and oldest group and also their years of schooling and average mental age. The mental age is determined by the scores that the students obtained on general intelligence tests,

TABLE 11. *Intelligence quotients of canalboat and gypsy children according to age\**

Age	Canalboat children	Gypsy children
6	86	95
7	79	81
8	76	78
9	73	76
10	68	74
11	64	72
12	59	71

\* This table has been based on curves found in Hugh Gordon, "Mental and Scholastic Tests among Retarded Children," *Educational Pamphlet 44*, Board of Education, London, p. 54, 1923.

which have been described in considerable detail in a previous chapter. If one makes this kind of analysis of any grade such as the sixth, eighth, or tenth, he will obtain similar results.

*Comparison of the 15 youngest and 15 oldest boys in a high-school class\**

	<i>Average age, years</i>	<i>Average number of years of schooling</i>	<i>Average M.A.</i>
Youngest.....	11.7	5.7	16.7
Oldest.....	15.8	9.4	15.1

\* Data were provided the author by Royal Embree, Jr.

The older group was, on the average, 4.1 years older than the younger and had had 3.7 years of schooling more than the younger but still was 1.6 years below the younger group in mental level. Additional education and more years of living failed to overcome what no doubt was a basic inferiority of the older group. The superiority of the younger group must have been due to inherent qualities, for time was on the side of the older group. This difference will continue to increase, and when adulthood is reached the two groups will be further apart than they have ever been.

These are important ideas for the teacher. She must realize that there are these true differences in the ability of children to learn and to respond to the teaching which they receive. Some will grow educationally and intellectually much faster and much more than others. These differences, no doubt, are constitutional. The teacher must learn to recognize these differences, being very patient with the dull and the slow and guiding the bright into many interesting and stimulating activities. She must realize that she cannot overcome nature and that she must work with it for the maximum development of all children.

#### VARIATIONS IN AVERAGE MENTAL ABILITY OF SOLDIERS FROM STATE TO STATE

During the First World War, the United States soldiers were tested with a mental test known as *Army Alpha*. On this basis, it was possible to determine the average mental abilities of the soldiers from each of the states. The average mental abilities of the soldiers varied from state to state, and in some instances the differences in the average scores were large.

Investigators were interested in discovering a possible explanation for these variations from state to state. Some have found it in the quality of state school systems. States differ considerably in the average

quality of their schools. Some offer their children better educational facilities: the teachers have higher qualifications; the school terms are longer; and the school equipment is superior. The quality of the state school systems has been evaluated according to these and other factors.

A comparison of the rating of the schools of the states with the average standing of their soldiers in the mental tests revealed that there was a fairly high correspondence between the quality of the schools and the tested ability of the soldiers. Thus, the soldiers from the states with the best schools scored highest on the mental tests, whereas those who scored lowest were from the states with the poorest school facilities. This correlation was not perfect, but the trend was very marked.

✓ The foregoing relationship seems to indicate the effect of good schooling on general ability. Accordingly, if the schools of various states are poor, the mental abilities of the people in those states will most probably be poor, but if the schools are good, then the mental ability of the people will be relatively high.

Another point of view may logically be taken. It is that the schools do not create the intelligence of the people but that the people create the schools. Those of less inherent ability or less intelligence will not demand and maintain such good schools as those of superior traits. In other words, the schools are a product of the people, and not the people a product of the schools.

This evidence, like most of the evidence on the contribution of environmental and hereditary forces to human development and capacities, lends itself to a dual interpretation. It is probably closer to the truth in this last instance, as well as in others, to recognize that both types of influence are important. In this last case, one may feel quite certain that the mental abilities of adults taken as groups depend to some degree on the quality and amount of formal education that they have had. On the other hand, it is likewise true that those of superior mental abilities will secure better schools because they will demand them for their children. Cause and effect are not clearly distinguishable. There is, no doubt, a reciprocal relation between the environmental and hereditary factors; one reacts on the other.

#### THE DIFFERENTIAL POWERS OF HEREDITY AND ENVIRONMENT

Let us look at several aspects of human growth and development and see how they are influenced by nature or nurture. Even if we recognize that various physical structures such as body size and proportions, color and structure of the eye, the organization of the nervous system, shape and size of the head, and other physical features are determined by the genes largely, still many functions and the nurture of the physical structures are controlled by the environment.

**Health and Longevity.** Consider first of all the health and longevity of the people. Today such illnesses as diphtheria, typhoid fever, small pox, and scarlet-fever are almost entirely a thing of the past in the United States. Tuberculosis is now one-sixth of what it was in 1900, and infant mortality, with a rate of about 1 out of 6 in 1850 and 1 out of 8 in 1900, is now about 1 in 30 and is still going down. In 1800 the average length of life was about 35 years, in 1900 about 50 years, and now it is 66 years for men and 71 for women. What has brought about such great improvement in health and survival? Not nature, because the human stock is probably deteriorating, but nurture in the form of better nutrition and health service.

These achievements by nurture are phenomenal, but they do not have much influence beyond middle age on health and longevity. Nurture will keep many more people alive to reach fifty, but after that health and longevity depend very largely, it seems, on whether or not an individual has picked the right ancestors: Still it is remarkable that the length of life today for those who reach the age of fifty is even slightly more than it was 100 years ago because now a much larger proportion reach middle age. Formerly, when the average age of people was about one-half of what it is today, only the sturdiest reached fifty, but today many who would have been too weak to survive formerly now reach middle age. In spite of the fact that the survival-of-the-fittest force is much weaker today than decades ago, those who become fifty today will live a couple of years longer on the average than those who reached that age 100 years ago. This is remarkable in showing how effective nurture can be in keeping people well and alive.

There are relatively few more very old people today than there were 100 years ago. The occasional claim that it will not be long before nearly everyone will live to 100 and that it will not be unusual to have people live to reach 125 and even 150 has no support from the facts. Few or no gains have been made in adding years to the lives of old people, though we can put more life in their years, which probably will be our greatest achievement for those who reach old age. People who reach 60 today live no longer than those who reached 60 a century ago; and those who reach 80 today have slightly less time to live.

It may be interesting to note that in 1952 there were three Union Army survivors of the War Between the States. One was 110, and 2 were 105 years old each. It is very likely that veterans of the First and Second World Wars and the Korean War will not have more very old survivors proportionately when time reduces their number to the last few.

Probably heredity is largely responsible for some human characteristics; environment, for others. The color of the eyes, width of the head,



fingerprint patterns, age at puberty, and stature are probably determined chiefly by genetic factors. On the other hand, such psychological matters as temperament, disposition, ideals, and attitudes are probably more affected by environmental influences. This probably is especially true of ideals and attitudes. Specifically, the health of a normal child depends to a considerable extent on the good sense that the mother exercises in caring for him. For example, raising children without an adequate diet causes many of them to develop rickets, but children who are well nourished, given cod-liver oil in the winter, and exposed to sunshine in the summer rarely develop rickets. Also, if growing children in the goiter belt, the Great Lakes region, are given supplementary iodine, as in the salt, goiter, which was once very common, is almost eliminated. Scientific care during the prenatal period and during infancy prevents a large proportion of deaths; but after a person has reached middle age, the factors that determine whether or not he will live a long life seem to be largely hereditary in nature. Thus the relative influence of environmental and hereditary factors may vary at different ages and influence various characters differently.

**Character, Personality, and Mental Health.** Studies of human behavior point to the conclusion that ethical behavior and a healthy personality are products of the experiences which one has had rather than resulting from the make-up of the inherited neural, muscular, and other cellular structures. The evidence is clear that infant and childhood years are more formative than are the adult years. This, of course, is a rather general conclusion for all characteristics and phases of human development.

It has been pointed out before what penetrating influences the home has on the personality and mental health of children and how the children tend to be adjusted or maladjusted according to their homes' being adjusted or maladjusted. The school, too, has considerable influence but probably not as much as the home on the whole, although it may have a great deal in particular cases. It has also been shown before how the personality of the teacher and her methods have wholesome or ill effects on the children's emotional health. It seems from an analysis of home and school influences that healthy, happy behavior is the product largely of healthful experiences and influences.

Very complex behavior such as great performance in music, athletics, or mathematics depends on inherited capacity, but a wholesome personality is no more complex than an unwholesome one. Both kinds of personalities, it seems, are more the result of experiences than of inherited structures or capacity.

There is some evidence, however, that makes us think that possibly the tendency to misbehave may be in the inherited organism. For

example, in a study of 137 pairs of identical twins of which one member of each pair was a criminal, all but 18 of the other 137 were also criminals. In other words, both members of each of 119 pairs were criminals, of the other 18 pairs one member of each pair was a criminal but not the other one. Of 272 sets of fraternal twins, both twins of 102 pairs were criminals, and of the remaining 170 pairs, one of each pair was delinquent. The ratio for the identical twins was 119 to 18, or about 6.6 to 1, but for the fraternal twins the comparable ratio was 102 to 170, or .6 to 1. In other words, there were proportionally 11 times as many delinquent pairs among the identical twins as among the fraternal.

This has been interpreted as indicating that character and personality accompany inherited structures. Identical twins have a more similar inheritance than do fraternal twins, and criminal behavior was found much more frequently in both of the pairs of identical twins, as was shown. It must also be taken into account, however, that identical twins live more closely than do fraternal twins and that their environment may be more similar. Conceivably the delinquency was the result of the greater similarity of environment and experiences of identical twins than of the greater similarity of inherited organisms.

The problem is a very complex one. It must be recognized that character and personality are the responses to situations and that these responses involve the human organism—the nervous system, senses, glands, muscles, and skeleton.

#### HUMAN STOCK IN THE UNITED STATES IS DETERIORATING

The United States has been stocked from other countries. Some of the stock has been poor, much of it average, and some of it very good. During the last decades relatively few people have emigrated to this country, but nevertheless the population is increasing at an alarming rate to reach an amazing total of over 160,000,000 at the time this book is printed.

What is happening to the quality of the human stock? It is going down, for two principal reasons. One reason is the warring we do—three major wars in 35 years. The other reason is the differential birth rate of the socioeconomic-cultural classes.

War kills or seriously wounds many of our young men, who consequently do not reproduce themselves. Only the brightest, healthiest, and strongest are trusted with the very complex and expensive modern war equipment such as airplanes, tanks, and sea vessels. The neurotic, moronic, and rheumatic are not allowed on the battlefield but must stay at home. So they breed and reproduce weakness and the tendency to weakness.

There is a negative correlation between socioeconomic-cultural

levels and number of children per family. This means that the most capable parents mentally and physically have the fewest children on the average, and the less capable have more. For example, if Mr. Harvard marries Miss Radcliffe they probably will have on the average a total of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  children. But when Mr. Dropout from the fourth grade marries Miss Quitschool from the fifth grade, they will probably average about 5 children.

If these factors, war and the differential birth rate, continue to operate as they have for the past three or four decades, this country will continue to degenerate. The quantity goes up, and the quality goes down. Improved education will tend to affect the trend slightly, but the likelihood is that education will deteriorate, too, for a poorer quality of people will not demand and support as good education as more capable people will.

#### SELECTIVE CHARACTER OF ENVIRONMENT

Two psychologists riding in a train were discussing the relative contribution of heredity and environment to human development. As they looked out of the train window, they saw in a cornfield a man driving two horses hitched to a corn cultivator. One psychologist asked the other (no doubt having forgotten that according to popular notion every corn row leads to the White House), "Even if he has marked ability, what chance has that man of achieving greatness?" The other psychologist stated that, if the man had high capacity, he would be so restless in his present environment that he would throw the lines over the horses' backs and seek an environment compatible with his abilities. He might have added that if this man had unusual abilities he could have shown it on the farm by inventing special farm machinery or by improving his plants and animals through ingenious breeding practices.

For the extremes of ability, this statement is essentially true. It is probable that a person who has transcendent talent for music, sculpture, mathematics, or poetry will not be denied. Such a person will utilize all possible experiences to manifest his ability; and when he finds that his surroundings are not sufficiently stimulating, he will seek a new environment.

A story about Isaac Watts, the great hymn writer, illustrates the persistence of some abilities in spite of adverse circumstances.<sup>1</sup> When he was a child, his unabating versifying annoyed his mother and she attempted to discourage him with a spanking. He pleaded during the process:

Oh mother, oo me pity take,  
And I will no more verses make!

<sup>1</sup> Reported by Paul Popenoe, *Journal of Heredity*, 20:422.

At the other extremes of ability we have those who are so limited that, no matter how advantageous the environmental stimuli, they will gravitate toward their natural condition at the first opportunity. Such persons cannot be put into a good home without its soon becoming untidy and run-down. Though they are given any number of jobs, they will fail in all of them. If closely controlled, they seem to get along a little better, but as soon as the props are removed they revert to their vegetative state. If it were not for the disciplines of social control, they would become delinquents and social problems, as many of them, in fact, do in spite of controls and restraints. Such persons are so heavily laden with liabilities that they gravitate to the bottom. In contrast are those so richly endowed that they rise to the top.

#### NATIVE CAPACITY AND THE POWER TO LEARN

If one believes that the limits of a person's capacity to profit from instruction are fixed by the quality of the genes in the parents' germ cells and the order in which the genes combined, he is likely to adopt an educational philosophy consistent with that point of view. He is likely to have a deterministic outlook. He will feel that some are limited by heredity to fewer years of education than others—that, some should have a college education, others should have only a high-school, and still others only an eighth-grade education. The most gifted, he believes, should be guided by teachers and counselors into the professional schools. A tendency exists among some educators to fix inherent limits of educability for students on the basis of aptitude, or intelligence-test, scores.

Serious danger lies in taking too deterministic a point of view. Some pupils from whom only very little is anticipated on the basis of various tests exceed expectations considerably. There is a greater tendency to underestimate than to overestimate, to predict failure rather than success. On the basis of intelligence-test scores, psychologists and teachers may decide that some pupils are not capable of completing their high-school work or of maintaining satisfactory scholarship in college. There is, to be sure, a general correlation between test performances and ability to achieve in various school situations, but without the fullest evidence no one should be dogmatic in any case. Occasionally, a few students succeed very well in spite of the fact that they entered college with poor prospects and with failure predicted for them by nearly everyone. They generally possess special talents and character traits that were either not known or not measurable by the tests given.

Sometimes a teacher may judge as dull and hopeless a pupil who is exceedingly capable. Such a pupil shows little interest in his school-work and proceeds in his own individual and often peculiar way or

devotes a large proportion of his time to activities more to his liking. The busy teacher, judging the child only in terms of the usual classroom standards, overlooks his genius and expects him to fail. When in early adulthood he turns out to be a distinguished person, she wonders how a child who seemed so dull in school could have developed so much ability. The fact is that she failed to understand that he had great capacity and consequently misunderstood him.

Counselors and others who engage in guidance and decide for pupils that the classes or the kind of schoolwork that they propose to take is beyond their ability are thus in danger of making serious mistakes. They will be correct in the case of many students, but if they are too arbitrary they will do serious injustice to a number. Heredity may fix varying limits for each pupil, but the limits for each individual cannot be arrived at accurately enough to warrant the counselor's absolute and arbitrary judgment of everyone. We are sure, of course, that a pupil with an I.Q. of 70 or 80 will not become a lawyer or a member of the other professions, but in less extreme cases we are not sure that all those with low aptitude-test ratings who continue their education will not succeed. A few of those who according to nearly all previous findings are destined to fail will survive educational rigors, and an occasional one will achieve a comparatively high degree of success. The limits of achievement seem to be affected by such a number of factors that we cannot be sure of what they are in a specific situation. Most errors can be avoided if those who guide and direct pupils allow, within reasonable limits, a period of trial instead of judging them with absolute finality.

### THE TEACHER, THE SCHOOL, AND THE CHILD

Now that we have discussed the nature-nurture problem, what lessons shall we draw for the teacher and the school? In the first place, we can be proud of the importance of the opportunity that the school has in developing the child's character, his personality, his health, and his intelligence. The school can be a good one that will do much for the student or a poor one that will do little for him or that may even do him harm.

A good school will have a good health service. The classroom teachers should be conscious of the health needs of their pupils; by vigilance they can do much for the health of their students.

A school with good discipline in the modern sense, or good control of behavior with its consequent good morale, can do much for the personality and behavior of its pupils. It can develop mannerly, well-adjusted youngsters nurtured by healthful situations.

Good teaching as against poor teaching can make the difference between well-informed and -educated and poorly educated pupils and

can develop a curiosity about learning and a sharp interest in it instead of cold indifference. Thus, definitely and indisputably, the influences of a good school are favorable, while the poor school with its poor teachers affects the pupils adversely.

✓ However, in spite of its good effects on the pupils, the good school will still have its failures. The children will still become sick, and some more often than others. Some children will still misbehave and some develop poor personalities. Children will still have poor habits no matter how great the teacher's efforts to inculcate good ones. Pupils will still differ widely in intelligence. Children will also differ greatly in the amount they learn, and good teaching will not reduce those differences in intelligence and learning. Even in the best schools there will be graduated some pupils who are dull and poorly informed, and in the poor schools there will be graduated very bright pupils and some who have a fairly good and even an excellent education according to the standard for the grade from which they were passed or graduated.

All this must be granted, but we must recognize that the evidence on the influences of environment indicates that good teachers and good schools can have very good effects on the group as a whole and on some individuals in particular. The teacher should be proud of her opportunities to influence her pupils favorably. In the case of some children, she can change carelessness to carefulness, indolence to diligence, and ignorance to understanding and can cause a child to love or hate school life. ✓

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Teachers who have an extreme hereditary point of view will have a deterministic attitude toward their pupils. Those who have an extreme environmental point of view may be overoptimistic about what they can do for their pupils. A teacher should cultivate a balanced point of view based on the facts.

Inheritance involves the transmission of traits through the chromosomes and genes of the father and mother.

Three interrelated principles of inheritance are that like tends to beget like, that there is variation in the offspring, and that offspring of parents who deviate considerably from the average tend to regress toward the average.

There are no congenital influences on the child from the thinking and hopes of the mother. The pregnant mother should be well nourished and healthy emotionally.

A child's inheritance is from all its ancestry, but most from the parents, and decreasingly less as the relationship becomes more remote.

Either outstanding strength or outstanding weakness tends to run in family lineages. A child of superior heredity is usually nurtured in a superior environment. A child of inferior heredity is usually nurtured in an inferior environment.

The closer the blood relationship, the closer the relationship in abilities and characteristics.

The occupation of a person indicates in general his capacity, and it has been found that the intelligence of children tends to accompany the occupational status of the fathers.

It has been demonstrated in the case of rats that selective breeding results in almost complete separation of the best and poorest.

Foster children reflect the influence of their foster homes in their intelligence quotients, school progress, and behavior. The most beneficial effects seem to be on their behavior.

When identical twins have been reared apart in different environments, their general health, educational and mental status, and temperaments seem to reflect differences in experience. Physical characteristics such as height and head sizes are not affected.

When children are absent from school a large proportion of the time, their educational and intellectual status seem to suffer about equally and to a considerable degree.

In a given grade the youngest child who has had several years less education is more capable than his older classmate who has had several years more education. These differences are caused by fundamental differences in their native capacities.

The mental-test scores of soldiers according to the states from which they came tended to correlate with the quality of the schools of those states. Either good schools increase the intelligence of its people, or people of higher intelligence develop better schools.

It is not nature or nurture but nature and nurture. Nurture is much more important for infant health than for health past middle age. Nurture is more important for ideals, attitudes, and beliefs, while nature may be more important for high endowments. Nature and nurture should be viewed differentially.

Probably the quality of the people mentally and physically is going down, because in wars our best young men are killed, and because the less endowed have most children.

If we are too deterministic about what a child can do, we may discourage when we should encourage and may close off opportunity. If we do not recognize any limitations on potentiality, then students will be encouraged and guided only to suffer frustration and disappointment.

There are no doubt true and fundamental differences in the capacities of school children, but there can be good education for all children.

## 16. The Progress of Growth and Development through Learning

**What to Look For.** The meanings of learning and of performance are set forth.

Note that the conditions that cause variations and fluctuations in learning and performance are within the learner and also outside of him. What are these internal and external conditions?

Learn the characteristics of the learning curve that are described as concave, convex, concave-convex, and the plateau.

What are the factors in learning that make for these various phases and characteristics of the learning curve?

Learn what the factors are that cause a plateau. How can a plateau be overcome?

What are the theoretical and physiological limits of learning and performance?

Note how learning proceeds because of improving from lower to higher levels or through a hierarchy of performance.

What are the practical and optimum levels of learning and performance?

Comprehend how growth during the childhood years increases readiness and therefore is such a helpful ally of learning.

How is level of maturity, or maturation, a factor in learning during the growing years?

Learn the features of the learning experiments with identical twins and the value of more maturity.

How have adult abilities and the abilities of adults to learn been tested? Formulate some opinions about the trend in abilities during the adult years.

Note that learning and performance would be better in most adults if they worked harder mentally.

Formulate some ideas on how teachers and others can utilize their adult years for personal and professional advancement.

**Introduction.** "It seemed that for the first few weeks we studied German we made no progress at all," said Gwen.



"We were laying the groundwork, and after we had done that we made rapid progress in learning to read and speak the language," replied Greg.

Ann said, "When we begin to study subjects like economics, algebra, and history, we make rapid progress from the start because of the ability to understand what we study." She wanted to point out that the learning of some subjects starts off rapidly.

"Maybe a time comes in learning a subject when one doesn't make progress because one forgets as much as he learns," was the comment of Mack, who had the question in mind because he was going to be a teacher of chemistry.

In discussing basketball, Dick, one of the regulars, remarked that he didn't think he was getting any better in throwing baskets.

Tom replied, "When I find I'm not making any improvement, I try harder or I change my method. If that doesn't help, I stay away from practice for several days."

"But a time will come when we can't get any better no matter how hard we try," added Ray.

"Yes, and after a period of no improvement a decline sets in. That takes place after you reach a certain age, probably in the late twenties," commented the coach.

**Meaning of Learning and Performance.** We have learned when we are able to do something which we did not or could not do before. Usually learning is evident in behavior changes resulting from experiences. The commonest examples of learning are the acquisition of word meanings, learning to read, to play a musical instrument, or to execute a new dance step, or learning how to please people. Learning results in new mental content, emotional reactions, and social and physical skills. Learning can be good or bad, right or wrong. A feature of learning is the acquisition and improvement of abilities, and in this sense learning implies improvement and betterment. The improvement may be in the skills of typewriting or of picking pockets. The improvement of acquired skills and the acquiring of new skills constitute learning.

Performance consists in doing that which has been learned. The baseball player, pianist, typist, and machinist are doing that which they have done many times before. Each has learned to play baseball, perform on the piano, operate the typewriter, or handle his machine, and performance consists in doing and repeating what has been learned. In performance there is in effect no new behavior, no acquisition of new skills and knowledge, but merely the repetition and use of previously acquired behavior. Usually, of course, a person tries to perform effectively and efficiently or as well as he can and to learn better ways of doing what he is doing. Thus a person can try to learn

while he is performing or while doing that which he has learned previously.

**Factors and Conditions Affecting the Curves of Learning and Levels of Performance.** Curves representing the development and acquisitions of learners follow interesting courses. Let us try to visualize, for instance, a curve depicting the acquisition of vocabulary from birth to old age, or throughout the span of life. Similarly, what is the growth in various sensorimotor abilities some of which we acquire incidentally and some through special effort and practice? What is the course of learning for children, as a whole and individually, from kindergarten up through the eighth grade, high school, and college? At present, there is increased interest in the direction that learning takes throughout the adult years from maturity to old age. Curves showing growth and development may represent a composite of many abilities, or they may represent the growth of more specific abilities such as reading, arithmetic, language, and history.

This introduction to the topic of growth through learning has stressed development over a long period of time. Important, also, is the nature of development over a shorter period. For example, if individuals practice typewriting for several months, the curves depicting their increase in speed and accuracy show definite trends. In the attempts of persons to learn a language, to develop ability in tennis or golf, to acquire a trade, to play the piano, to give a mental examination, and to gain proficiency in bridge, the course of learning can be depicted and described graphically. The learners would go through various characteristic experiences. In the beginning, their progress might vary. Initial learning would be slow in some instances and more rapid in others. In the course of nearly all learning a time is reached when no progress is made for a time, when the learner seems to be at a dead level. Generally, he improves and emerges from the period of no growth to reach eventually a point where no matter how hard he tries he can improve no further.

If a chart is made of day-by-day learning and performance, great variations in efficiency will be found. On one day, a pupil will be twice as efficient as on another; problems that are difficult at one time will be much easier at another. Fluctuations in individual abilities are characteristic of all and cannot be avoided. Baseball players bat, field, and pitch better on one day than another; lecturers express themselves better at different times; workers vary in their efficiency from day to day; and, in general, pupils learn more readily on some occasions than on others.

Variation in achievement is the rule and cannot be avoided, for many factors and conditions influence performance and cause these variations. To a considerable degree these conditions are physiological

or internal, but there are also factors external to the person himself. Some of the personal, or internal, factors are capacity, fatigue, emotional conditions, interest, motive, and health. External factors are difficulty of material to be learned, incentives, weather conditions, noise, and other distractions. The combinations of these factors vary from day to day and influence achievement correspondingly. When the combination is most favorable, efficiency is highest; when it is least favorable, efficiency is lowest. Each person has an average level of performance that is characteristic of his particular efficiency. There are fluctuations about this average, influenced by the factors that have been mentioned.

### THE LEARNING CURVE

There really is no single learning curve. So many factors influence the direction taken by learning that there are many learning curves. Learning curves vary from person to person, from school subject to school subject, according to whether the learning period is long or short, the materials hard or easy, and according to the manner of drawing the curves or their arrangement. Even though there is great variation, certain characteristics of the course of learning should

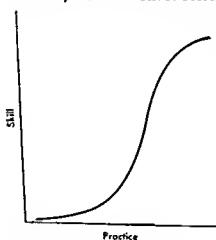


Fig. 20. Concave-convex curve.

be discussed as general principles. In a general way, the curve of learning may be divided into three sections: the beginning, the end, and the portion between the beginning and end. This classification is oversimplified, of course, but is useful for setting forth some of the principles pertaining to the development of skills and abilities.

**Slow Initial Start.** In order to have something concrete to describe, we shall discuss two simple learning curves (Figs. 20 and 21). The initial progress according to Fig. 20 is slow. Apparently, little is gained at the beginning. This is typical of the progress of a child in learning to read or an adult in learning a difficult foreign language. There is a period of weeks and sometimes months in which no perceptible progress is being made. A few words are being learned, but little development of the ability to read from the printed page is apparent.

Following a period of no apparent growth, there is a rise in the curve, representing a rapid measurable increase in ability. This growth is maintained for a period of time and is represented by the more

nearly vertical part of the curve. After a while, however, the improvement slows down and then stops. The period of greatly reduced gain following rapid learning is represented in Fig. 20 by the upper part of the curve.

This type of curve represents the growth of various abilities. The growth of a child's reading ability is depicted in a general way by Fig. 20. After the initial phase of no apparent development there is a rapid rise of ability, which reaches at some time in the teens a period of little or no improvement. Ability remains quite constant thereafter. Much of human learning and growth takes the course illustrated in Fig. 20. For example, the curve depicting the growth in the walking ability of infants resembles it. For nearly a year there is apparently little increase in walking ability, although, of course, the development of the physical structure involved in walking is taking place. After a child begins to walk, his ability increases rapidly; but a time is reached when there is little improvement. Similarly with the development of vocabulary. There is no apparent learning of words until a child is about twelve months of age. Then his acquisition increases rapidly until maturity is reached, when very little, if any, further growth of vocabulary occurs.

In learning almost any material that is difficult for the learner the initial progress is extremely slow. Apparently, it takes a long time to get started. Slow initial improvement characterizes the learning of hard problems in mathematics, an unfamiliar language, learning to play the piano, or the acquisition of any skill and ability that seems to defy for a time the attempt to acquire it.

Examination of the lower half of the curve reveals that part as being concave. The upper half is convex. A curve is concave when the rate of learning is increasing. It is a curve that depicts a period of more rapid learning following a period of slow improvement. Obviously, a learning curve cannot be concave if the entire course of learning is depicted, for it is impossible for the rate of learning to increase indefinitely. It must slow down in approaching a period of no improvement and then ultimately reach that period. No one can continue to improve indefinitely in every given function. A person can take up a new subject or attempt to acquire a new skill, and he will improve, but ultimately he will reach a limit above which he cannot improve. A pupil reaches at some time the limit of his ability to compute arithmetically; the typist reaches a point where, no matter how hard he tries, he cannot type more rapidly or more accurately; the musician reaches a point where his playing does not improve—he can learn new pieces, but the quality of his performance does not become better. Similarly with all our learning—there are limits beyond which we

cannot go. But it must be remembered that we seldom reach our limits; and in many fields, our learning has not developed even past the initial stages.

The curve of learning depicted by Fig. 20 is concave-convex; the lower half is concave and the upper convex. This curve is general, but it does depict the direction taken by much learning. There are, of course, many individual variations. Fluctuations characterize individual curves, and only summary or average curves are free from irregularities. Then, too, plateaus occur for short periods, which are not shown by a curve that depicts the progress of learning over a long

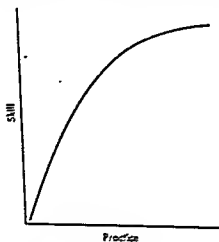


Fig. 21. Convex curve.

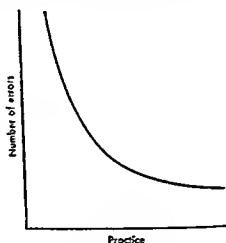


Fig. 22. Decline in errors with practice.

period. The courses taken by curves depicting the acquisition of skills over shorter periods of time will be discussed later.

The curve can be reversed if the mode of representation is changed. For example, if instead of showing the amount acquired the number of errors is recorded according to successive practice or according to time, the curve will start high and go down as the number of errors decreases. Figure 22 is this type of curve; it shows improvement by its descent.

**Rapid Initial Start.** Figure 21 represents a learning curve in which initial progress is rapid. Improvement is rapid from the beginning and continues for a time, after which it slows down and reaches a level where no further improvement occurs. The curve, as given, is a convex one, representing rapid initial learning that slows down with time. A learning curve is generally convex when the learner brings to the problem a capacity and initial ability that enable him to progress rapidly from the start. In such instances, learning does not begin at the zero point, and the slow initial phases have probably been overcome by the previous acquisition of abilities. When this is the case, learning

appears to increase rapidly from the beginning, whereas in reality the slow initial phases have been overcome by previous learning.

In learning to skate, for example, we bring to the problem of acquiring that skill all the sensorimotor abilities that we have acquired in learning to walk and in maintaining our equilibrium. In learning to play quoits a person begins with tossing skills that he has acquired in other games; consequently, learning is more rapid than it otherwise would be. Similarly, when a person starts to learn algebra after having studied arithmetic a number of years, when he approaches geography and history after having had several years of reading experience, initial progress is more rapid because of allied experiences. In general, we begin few tasks without some preparation that will cause rapid initial learning.

As one learns material that is intrinsically difficult or difficult because it is unfamiliar, the curve depicting progress of learning will not show a rapid initial rise. If one is trying to solve difficult puzzles, there is little growth at first but the solution often comes rapidly after a period of no apparent progress. In attacking difficult problems in arithmetic and algebra the progress is very slow at first, but a time usually arrives when one seems to get an insight into their solution, and then progress is rapid. The curve depicting such progress in learning is concave until it tends to flatten out and adds a convex portion, thus becoming concave-convex. This curve is different from the one in which the initial progress is rapid, in that the latter does not have the concave portion and is only convex. Reference to Figs. 20 and 21 may help clarify these various concepts that have been set forth.

Another explanation for the rapid initial rise in the curve is found in the fact that the tasks or problems are novel when first attacked. Greater progress is made until interest wears off. Not always, however, is the learner as interested in the beginning as he becomes later when he increases his efficiency. In the acquisition of many of our abilities and habits, it is first necessary to go through much discouraging work before the development of facility stimulates us to work with zest.

Plateaus. Periods of no visible progress followed by improvement are called *plateaus*. The flat parts of the learning curves preceded and followed by a rise are considered the plateaus. During the period of the plateau there is no apparent growth or improvement in learning. When the pupil does not improve in his reading, when the piano student's playing seems arrested, when the gymnast is not bettering his performance, and when the speech student shows no improvement, we have examples of plateaus. They generally last during the learning period for days, weeks, and months, as is implied by these examples; but plateaus also occur in the development of abilities through a substantial portion of even the whole of a lifetime. There are periods

logical arrangement of subject matter, as in mathematics, which ranges from the simplest addition to the most complicated mathematical equations of an Einstein. The simple is progressively organized into the more complex until the organization becomes so complex that only a few can comprehend it. Learners vary in the level beyond which they can go. Some with little capacity go hardly beyond the simplest levels; most reach the average; a few are capable of the highest reaches. According to the theory of hierarchy of performance, the plateau is a period when the learners are making the adjustments for emerging into a more efficient and complex type of performance.

In the development of any field of learning or the acquisition of skill a place in the curve will be reached where the complexity of knowledge or skill causes a considerable slowing down. This is represented by the flattening out of the curve.

Partly related to this factor of increasing complexity is the amount of improvement that remains. At the beginning, all is in front, so to speak; but as the learner progresses, the possible amount of material to be learned decreases. Complexity usually increases, also, but the percentage to be learned diminishes, and consequently the rate of growth slows down. The flattening of the curve often represents the approach of a point where a practical limit is being reached.

A student may be arrested in his progress because the work is too complex or hard for him. At this point the teacher can be of great help by observing carefully the recitation, written work, and examinations of the pupils and detecting the parts of the work that give the individual pupil trouble. She can also encourage her pupils to ask questions and to bring their special problems to her attention so that she can help them with the parts that are blocking them. Many situations may be like a tangle in a skein of yarn; when it is untangled, the winding of the yarn into a ball can continue rapidly until another tangle has to be loosened. Similarly, the teacher can untangle the knotty problems of her pupils and thus keep them progressing academically and personally.

The teacher should watch her pupils in order to detect bad habits and a lack of interest, two factors that often go together. There is often the bad habit of not studying enough and not having good habits of study. Specific habits such as moving the lips while reading, moving the eyes back and forth too often over the same lines, and reading too slowly should also be looked for. Talking to the child is not enough. It may help a little, but what is needed is a remedial program for the child that will liberate him from his faults and thus free him to move ahead. The teacher at all times must keep in mind the learning capacities of her children and recognize the great range of capacity in any given class.

A student will be on a plateau when he feels that he has no motive or purpose. Then he does not try very hard, for he feels there is no point to it. He may not even stay on a dead level very long but may actually lose ground.

When students seem aimless or without motive, the teacher should talk with them and show them why they should engage in various activities and why they should master the subject matter in which apparently they have no interest. One of the purposes of guidance and counseling is to show the pupils that the activities and tasks of the school, or its programs in general, offer many very profitable opportunities for improving and equipping themselves to get along more successfully. When students see the reason for what they are attempting to do and then are helped so that they are able to do it, they usually make progress.

In a discussion of plateaus, it is often asked whether or not they can be avoided. Is there a method of preventing their occurrence? They seem to represent a loss, and it would seem desirable to avoid them so that learning may progress steadily. There probably is no way of entirely preventing plateaus, but they may be lessened in number and shortened in duration if the learner is highly motivated and his interest well maintained. It is impossible to maintain interest continuously at a very high pitch; even if it were possible, it is doubtful that all periods of no improvement could be prevented.

The best recommendation that can be made for preventing plateaus is for the learner to cease practice when he is failing to show any betterment in his performance—in short, take a few days off or turn to a different task. When a person seems stale or unable to make progress and his efforts in certain directions lead to nought, he should cease trying and utilize his time doing something else. He is on a plateau and will probably reach his goal just as soon if he abandons the work for a time, for he may progress from the start when he comes back to it.

If it is a fact that taking time out avoids the plateau, then it would seem that the plateau is not necessary for effecting the reorganization of the simpler processes into a more complex response. During the plateau, certain inhibitory factors or poor techniques probably drop out, and time may be the factor that is responsible rather than practice.

In a general and empirical way, we know that we progress most if we take time out from our work. During the year, we arrange to have vacations so that we can return to our work more efficient than before. People avoid falling to a dead level of achievement through hobbies and by developing new interests. Empirically, we know that efficiency and interest in one's work are maintained by absenting oneself from



it for shorter or longer periods. Similarly, when viewed more narrowly in terms of acquiring skills and abilities over a shorter time, it is consistent with known facts that plateaus can be avoided if the learner discontinues practice when a period of no improvement is reached. If he cannot take time out from his work, he should get special help or change his methods. If the old way does not work, try a new way.

**Limits and Levels of Improvement.** In acquiring any skill or ability a person reaches a limit beyond which he cannot go, no matter how hard he tries. In the growth of an individual's reading ability a time is reached when ability to read rapidly and understandingly does not improve. Also, there is a limit to the speed with which a pupil can multiply, add, subtract, and divide; write words and numbers; operate a typewriter; sew with a needle; plane a board; or draw a line. In various activities, there are limits for each learner.

When the simpler skills are involved, it is easy to comprehend the limits of learning. We realize that the maximum scores obtained by individual children and adults in the simpler arithmetical processes are reached after a comparatively short time. It is apparent that in typing, tennis, golf, and other sensorimotor activities a limit of improvement is reached. This is called the *physiological limit*. There is a limit in the facility with which the eyes can move in the case of reading, the fingers in typewriting, the legs in running, and the speech organs in speaking. In the learning of skills, limits of improvement are more apparent than in the acquisition of the more abstract powers.

When the more abstract materials are involved, it is not so easy to realize the limits of improvement. It would seem possible for all people to continue throughout life acquiring more words, increasing their fund of historical and geographical knowledge, and improving their abilities in mathematics. However, an equilibrium is reached when the amount acquired equals the amount forgotten or lost, and then the limit of improvement has been reached.

In acquiring knowledge and understanding, the physiological limits of the movement of eyes, hands, legs, and speech organs are not involved so much as they are for an athlete, typist, and factory worker. A person acquiring knowledge is limited by his intellectual capacity and also by his needs, and consequently the physiological limit is not involved so directly as it is for those who depend on the movement of the body and its parts for their efficiency. The relation of physiological limit to various learning situations should still be kept in mind, however.

Limits of learning involving both sensorimotor and abstract materials vary from person to person. Some have very high limits; most have moderate or average limits; and some have limits that are very low. These limits of learning capacity may be described as the altitudes

justment. Many pupils and teachers are at a level much below the optimum one. They should be motivated to greater efficiency. Others strain themselves by attempting too much learning; they should adjust to a more practical level.

**The Teacher's Use of These Ideas and Meanings.** The concepts that have been presented are of practical use to the teacher. The initial start, the rate of improvement, plateaus and their duration, levels and limits apply directly to his teaching.

It is desirable, for example, to have as good a start as possible when new work is taken up. Thus, if the teacher is well prepared to start a new topic, area, or subject and knows what he is going to do and how to do it, then a good beginning is more likely.

With momentum developed early, and by motivating the work and keeping the students interested and working at optimum levels, their curve of learning will be more upward because of faster learning. Furthermore, the teacher can note when the students seem to be poorly motivated, without much interest, and seemingly on a plateau and can then introduce new materials, try new methods, vary the activities, and consciously work to get them to rise above the plateau which they seem to be on.

She will also be aware of the students who over the long pull are working at their optimum levels, those who are at their limits and whose practical levels are so low that they are utilizing only a small portion of their capacities. Wisely, she and her students will chart individual and group progress, when this can be done, so that they know what progress is being made. This will motivate many of the students.

#### **AGE, MATURITY, AND LEARNING ABILITY**

In dealing with the topic of age and maturity in relation to learning, it is well to discuss two phases. The first is age in relation to learning up to the period when mental and physical maturity is reached; the second pertains to learning after that stage of development. Age is a much more important factor in learning during childhood than during adulthood. A few years in the age of a child make a tremendous difference; but in the case of an adult a few years probably matter little.

**Age and Learning up to the Period of Mental Maturity.** Figure 14 depicts the general nature of mental growth. The precise age when mental growth stops because of the cessation of maturational processes is still a matter of controversy, but the experimental evidence indicates that the rate of mental growth after fifteen or sixteen is comparatively slow. The period when the annual increments of mental growth are greatest merely from growing older are the preschool and elementary-

school periods of life. During high-school years, growth through maturation is much slower, and it may be considered as reaching its limit during the college years.

During the preschool and elementary-school years, however, a child matures greatly during a single year. Tasks that he finds too difficult at six he can achieve at seven and finds easy at eight. The type of exercises that are included in intelligence tests may be graded so that of five-year-olds only 35 per cent but of six-year-olds as many as 70 per cent will pass. The percentage of successive age groups who pass tests of their age levels increases rapidly from age to age during the earlier years, for growth through maturation is most rapid before the teens are reached. The increase in the percentage of boys and girls in the teens who pass test items is much less from age to age than that of younger children.

The factor of age is consequently very important educationally. If a child cannot learn to read at the age of six, he can probably learn at seven or eight, unless his rate of mental growth is extremely slow. If his mental level is not high enough at the chronological age of seven or eight, it may be adequate at a higher age. In the case of some children whose I.Q., or rate of mental growth, is very low, a level adequate for learning to read is never reached. The mental level, or M.A., of a pupil indicates in a general way what he is able to learn. The C.A. of children is important in the sense that, with an increase in age, an increase takes place in mental capacity. The amount of increase is indicated by the I.Q. A child with an I.Q. of 150 grows 1.50 years mentally in a chronological year and consequently has the capacity for doing a number of tasks at the end of a calendar year that he could not do at the beginning. A child with an I.Q. of 75 will increase only .75 of a mental year, or one-half as much as the child with an I.Q. of 150. The duller child has not improved much from one birthday to the next and, therefore, has not increased his mental power enough to be able to learn much more readily than the year before. At the end of 2, 3, and 4 years, however, the total amount of mental increment is enough to be important educationally. Widespread recognition of the differences in rate of development would bring about the organization of a separate educational program more suited to the capacities of these slower children. These facts have been set forth to show how capacity to learn is dependent on maturing or the increasing power and potential that result from growth during the growing years of life, which are the first 20 years.

**Growth, Maturation, Training, and Ability.** An approach to the problem of testing the importance of maturation in human development was made by Gesell and Thompson and also by Strayer. They used a pair of young identical twins in order to examine the effect of

increasing age, or maturation, on physical and mental abilities. Because the twins were identical, one could be used as a control against the other. If one were trained differently, any observable differences in their behavior and abilities could be ascribed to differences in training. In the experiments referred to, attempts were made to determine the effect of maturity on motor and language abilities.

In the first experiment the twins were about a year old, and they were tested for their ability to climb five steps. Twin T was given more training and practice than the other, designated as twin C, the letter symbolizing the word *control*. Twin T was given 6 weeks of training in climbing stairs. The training began when she was forty-six weeks old and ended when she was fifty-two weeks old. Twin C was given only 2 weeks of training but began at the age of fifty-three weeks and therefore ended at the age of fifty-five weeks. It is important to note that twin C was 7 weeks older when she began her training than twin T had been. Twin C was given 4 weeks' less training but was 3 weeks older when the training period ended. In short, twin T was given more training, but twin C was older when trained. The investigators wanted to discover whether or not more training at a younger age will develop more motor ability of the kind needed in climbing stairs than less training when older; in other words, they were interested in the question of training versus maturity.

The results indicate that being older outweighs the advantage of longer training. Gesell and Thompson summarize their results as follows: "The climbing performance of twin C at fifty-five weeks was far superior to the climbing performance of twin T at fifty-two weeks, even though twin T had been trained 7 weeks earlier and three times as long. The maturity advantage of 3 weeks of age must account for this superiority."

The comparative effect of maturity and training on the grasping and manipulative ability of the twins was tested in a similar manner. In this phase of the experiment, cubical blocks were used. The ability of the twins to manipulate the blocks was systematically observed. As in the previous experiment, the twin whose training period began later but was shorter manifested superior skill.

Using the same pair of twins<sup>1</sup> and essentially the same technique, Strayer examined the effect of training and maturation on language development. Twin T was given 5 weeks of training, which continued through her eighty-eighth week of age, and twin C was given 4 weeks of training, which began at the age of eighty-nine weeks. The differ-

<sup>1</sup> When identical twins are used with one as a control twin and the other as an experimental twin, it is assumed that the twins are equal and alike. There is some variation even in identical twins; nevertheless, the experiment is interesting and probably valid.

ence in the amount of training was only 1 week, but it began for twin C about the time when it ended for twin T.

The language training consisted mostly in naming pictures and objects, following directions, and the association of words with behavior, such as "How do you do?" with shaking hands. While twin T was being trained in language, twin C was not spoken to. In this experiment, also, maturity, or age, determined ability to a greater extent than did training. Twin C showed a superiority over twin T, thus indicating that, in verbal development, maturity with less training results in more learning than does more training with less maturity.

Not all results substantiate those given. In some instances where identical twins were raised together and one was given special training with the purpose of developing mental and sensorimotor abilities, there was a marked difference in the abilities of the two. The one trained had decidedly greater motor ability, for example, having much superior ability in skating.

Educationally, we acknowledge the factor of maturity by fixing the age for school entrance at about six. Teachers have recognized, however, the fact that children of the same C.A. have not reached the same degree of mental maturity. In some schools, cognizance is taken of mental maturity rather than C.A. by allowing young bright children to begin school if their M.A. is  $6\frac{1}{2}$  or over. Some teachers also maintain that children should have reached a degree of mental maturity expressed by an M.A. of at least 6 before any attempt is made to teach them to read. Much time is wasted in trying to teach reading to pupils whose mental development has not reached a stage where they can learn readily. They do not possess reading readiness.

Some experiments indicate that, if children are not taught systematically and formally until they are older than the usual age for beginning certain subjects, they will learn more rapidly and will eventually be ahead of those whose training in a given subject began earlier in their school experience and therefore extended over a longer period of time.

For example, it was found that, at the end of the second grade, children whose formal arithmetic was begun in the first grade were not ahead of pupils who had had none until the second grade. Thus, one group was taught formal arithmetic for 2 years, in both the first and the second grade, whereas the other group had formal arithmetic for only 1 year, which was in the second grade.

Tests given at the end of the second-grade work indicated that, in both the oral and the written tests, those who had begun formal arithmetic in the second grade were superior to those who had had it in the first and second grades. This experiment and others indicate that we must be wasting a tremendous amount of time in our schools

teaching children subject matter that is too difficult for their level of maturity. If for the average and underaverage children we delayed the teaching of most of the present subjects a year or two, we should probably discover that in the end our graduates had learned more, acquired better habits of scholarship, and were in better mental health.

One of the evils of sending children to school when they are too young lies in the emphasis on learning subject matter which puts these young children under pressure to learn to read, to spell, and to acquire arithmetical facts before they are mentally or physically mature enough to do so. We have psychological evidence that many pupils are not mentally mature enough for the work that they are doing and that they would gain more if the school waited a year or more. It may be that the sensory development of the children—their eyes, their ears, the structures underlying their emotions, and their neurological development—is not adequate for the rigorous and formal tasks that many schools impose. A highly important factor in the learning and achievement of children, then, is maturity. The schools and home would consequently conserve their own efforts and that of the children by waiting until the latter are mentally, socially, and emotionally mature enough for the tasks imposed upon them and for the situations in which they are placed.

**Adult Ages, Learning, and Performance.** There is no entirely satisfactory definition of adult age. It may be assumed here that the term applies to the ages after maturity has been reached. For most practical purposes, any age above twenty may be considered adult. After that age, a person does not become mentally more capable from merely growing older, as he does during the pre-teen age and also during most, if not all, of the teen age.

It is a common opinion that we learn with greatest facility during our childhood and youth. Good memory is usually associated with childhood and forgetfulness with adulthood. Common statements such as "You can't teach an old dog new tricks" convey the idea that adulthood is more or less impervious to learning. Until about 30 years ago, we had little experimental evidence on the capacities and learning abilities of adults, and consequently there may be many faulty opinions. During the past 30 years, however, a number of such studies have been made, so that we now have actual evidence to interpret.

In general, the studies are of two types. One type of investigation consists in giving general aptitude, or intelligence, tests to adults who cover a wide range of ages. If the adults throughout the age range are potentially equal in capacity or equally well selected, the trend of the scores with age will indicate the trend of mental abilities with age. The other type of investigation consists in testing the ability of adults of different ages to learn a foreign language; to memorize series of non-

sense syllables, arithmetic combinations, and words; and to learn the content of the usual school lessons.

The results of different investigators are conflicting, although most indicate that there is some decline in both general mental ability and learning ability after the twenties. The high point in mental development, as measured by aptitude tests and learning experiments, seems to be reached in the twenties, or the third decade of life. The data of various studies indicate that the first half of that decade is slightly superior to the second half. The decline generally observed up to the age of fifty is steady though not very rapid; after that age, the decline increases. Some results indicate that certain abilities, particularly vocabulary and general information, increase with age, whereas others, such as memorizing spoken directions, translating sentences according to a code, and seeing the relationship of different geometrical forms, decline with age. There is some indication that mental abilities not practiced decline with age, whereas those which are practiced do not decline but may even improve.

Specifically, we may inquire about the ability of adults to learn new materials in the same sense that children learn their lessons. Can adults learn readily, or do the years following the age of mental maturity impose a penalty on the powers of adults to learn? On the basis of all findings, it may be concluded that adults in their twenties and thirties can learn much more effectively than elementary-school pupils and more effectively than even high-school pupils. Some decline in learning ability has been observed for people in their thirties and older, but conceivably this decline is caused not by actual loss of learning capacity but by rustiness, or lack of practice. Like all processes and activities learning abilities decline when they are dormant.

The studies of adult abilities suggest that there is no need for hurry about introducing young six-, seven-, and eight-year-olds to formal education. Even if any essential curricular materials are omitted, they can be readily and more profitably learned during the adult years. If we would recognize the capacities of adults to learn and the greater vitality of learning by adults, we should adjust our teaching material more adequately to the maturity level of pupils rather than crowding everything into the elementary- and secondary-school curriculum, whether it fits or not.

The record of human intellectual achievement suggests that mental powers are at their height during the years from twenty-five to forty or perhaps from twenty-five to fifty. It is during these years that mathematicians, chemists, physicists, inventors, writers, and artists are most creative. This statement does not imply that great achievements are not made after the age of fifty, for individuals who have made important contributions to knowledge in their twenties and

thirties continue to be creative afterward, also. Nevertheless, for the most part, men are not so productive after fifty as before. They seem to have passed their intellectual prime and to have lost some of their former energy. Similarly, from the formal studies that have been made of intellectual achievement, the intellect seems to be at its best during the twenties, the thirties, and probably the forties. Mental-test results and also the results of learning experiments indicate some decline during these years. It is educationally sound to conclude, however, that during the years of adult life, and especially during the third, fourth, and fifth decades of life, learning powers are higher than during the usual school years. Consequently, an adult, by sustained study and learning, can enlarge his fund of knowledge and improve the skills with which he uses it.

The mental level and mental capacity during the adult years are very favorable for adult education. To begin with, a person during his adult years, especially between the ages of twenty and forty, has his maximum mental power. It is then that he has reached his full mental maturity and can learn more effectively than ever before. If a person wishes to make the most of the powers inherited from his parents, grandparents, great-grandparents, and other ancestors, he should make the most of his growing years for developing good habits and acquiring attitudes, skills, and knowledge consistent with his physical and mental level and then during the adult years utilize his maximum capacity for becoming an educated and learned man.

It is during the twenties and thirties, the golden years of life, that a person usually gains or fails to gain competence and recognition in his field of work. It is during the twenties that a person educates himself for the professions of medicine, law, dentistry, teaching, ministry, engineering, etc.; and it is after he receives his professional degree that he either grows by studying and learning or deteriorates because of a failure to utilize his capacities in sustained study, exploration, and investigation.

The latter half of adult life is good, too, for then mental capacity is still high, although not quite so high as during the first half. Education should be a lifelong process. A person should acquire new ideas and new facts continuously, and he can do so during his forties, fifties, sixties, and seventies if he will only try. The capacity for learning is adequate during these years. It is largely a matter of desire and effort whether or not a person becomes better informed and more competent.

This also applies to the teacher. She is rightly concerned about her own success and happiness, and in part these depend on how she utilizes her adult years, which are likewise her teaching years. The teacher, if she studies her subjects and her teaching methods, can increase in competence. She has the capacity to do so, and whether or



not she does increase in competence depends on how she uses her time. By devoting a reasonable portion of her time to personal growth and professional development a teacher can develop greatly and achieve satisfaction and happiness. If she lets year after year go by without using her mentality fully, she will soon find herself in a deadening routine, out of date, without intellectual curiosity, and less happy than if she had utilized her adult mental capacities.

## SUMMARY AND REVIEW

When a person learns, he becomes able to do something he was not able to do before or does it better than he did before.

Performance is the doing of what one has done before—repeating it, actually.

The course of learning as depicted by learning curves may cover growth and learning over a period of several years and even all of life, or it may cover a short period as in learning the combinations in arithmetic or throwing baskets in basketball.

There are daily fluctuations in learning and achievement caused by external and internal factors, which are influences outside and inside the individual.

External conditions which influence learning and efficiency of performance are distractions, the weather, incentives, difficulty of tasks, and emotional climate. Internal conditions are health, capacity, fatigue, emotional tone, boredom, motive, and interest.

Learning curves vary in their shape, corresponding to differences in the course of learning, but there are typical curves. A slow initial start followed by rapid progress is depicted by a concave curve, while a rapid start followed by less progress is represented by a convex curve. Some curves are concave-convex, and some are convex-concave.

A plateau is that section of a curve which is flat and represents a period of no progress. Plateaus are caused, it is believed, by a lack of motivation and loss of interest, by boredom, by fatigue, or by a reorganization of responses into a higher or more complex pattern. Any one of these factors or a combination of two or more may cause a plateau.

The word *hierarchy* or the term *hierarchical organization*, when used in connection with learning and performance, refers to gradation or organization from easier to harder and simpler to more complex.

When a person is on a plateau, or in a period of no improvement, he should change his methods, work doubly hard, "just keep at it," or probably best of all leave the task for a while.

Each person has his limits of improvement. The utmost limit is the theoretical, or physiological, limit.

The level that a person reaches by ordinary, or usual, effort is the practical level. The optimum level is a level under the physiological limit and is reached by consistent, efficient effort.

During the period of growth, which is the years from birth up to about twenty, learning abilities increase. The curve representing learning in many instances follows the general growth curve. Age and maturity are important factors in learning, as is shown by experiments that demonstrated that a twin when older learned more with less practice than did the other twin when younger with more practice.

Maturing increases potentiality and therefore capacity and readiness for learning.

The course of learning ability throughout the adult years varies. Vocabulary and the fund of general information tend to increase, while ability to master new materials tends to decrease. However, adult ages, except probably the very advanced, are very effective for learning.

Some evidence indicates that adult learning and performance would be better than they ordinarily are if adults tried harder and practiced more.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. The adult years are very good for learning, it can be contended, for during adulthood, especially the years from twenty to forty and possibly fifty, a person has his maximum capacity and also can profit from the years of previous learning and experience. Comment on these ideas.

2. We vary from day to day in our performance and are more effective on some days than others. What causes variations in performance and learning?

3. What are some of the causes and symptoms of a plateau? What can be done to get off plateaus or to prevent them?

4. Why do children of elementary- and high-school age show more growth in learning in general than do adults?

5. Describe the different limits and levels of learning, and discuss the advantages or disadvantages of each.

6. We speak of readiness in connection with maturing. What does the term mean?

7. Suppose that a group of adults took up the study of economics and that the material they studied was almost entirely new to them. What could be their learning, or progress, curve? Suppose that they took up the study of the completely unfamiliar Japanese language. What would be their progress then?

8. Suppose that a group of twelve-year-old children took up the subjects mentioned in the preceding question. Compare the progress of children and adults.

9. What effect does good or poor teaching have on the course of learning?

10. If an adult wished to keep growing, he should take up the study of new areas or fields occasionally. Comment.

11. Adults do not differ in their learning ability, for they have reached their limits of mental growth. Comment on the truth or falsity of this statement.

12. During the first years of life there is more learning and less performance; later there is much performance and little learning. Explain.

13. It seems that the growth and development during childhood that accompany growing older result in increased capacity to learn more quickly. Discuss the idea of maturing and learning ability.

# 17. Principles and Theories of Learning

## *Their Application to Education*

**What to Look For.** Acquire the idea that the learning processes are not simple, and do not follow too precisely any principles of learning or regard any one of them as being complete in itself.

Observe that learning according to repetition, exercise, or use and disuse depends also on interest and attention.

Learn the meaning of readiness, or mental-set, and how it can be developed.

Note that the principle of effect pertains to results and answers and their reactive effects on learning.

It is pointed out that doubt has been cast on the effectiveness of the negative aspect of the principle of effect.

It should also be pointed out that the pleasant and unpleasant, or satisfiers and annoyers, control behavior by causing us to seek out the pleasant and avoid the unpleasant.

What are the relationships between the learning of the pleasant, unpleasant, and neutral and efficiency in learning?

Is it the intensity of pleasantness or unpleasantness that influences retention rather than the nature of the experience?

What is the general meaning of the gestalt principles as applied to learning? How can they be applied to teaching and learning situations?

Learn Dunlap's three hypotheses of learning. Study particularly the features of the method of learning through negative practice.

How do we learn by means of the associated, or conditioned, response? Be able to give some examples.

Learn the meaning of primary, associate, and concomitant learning, and be able to illustrate.

Logicial and psychological learning are discussed, and their meaning should be comprehended.

**Introduction.** "Don't let the children hear what is incorrect, even in warning them against it," said the speaker at an institute held for

teachers. "If the child hears the wrong forms, he will be as likely to learn them as he will the right ones."

Thus, teachers should not say to pupils, "It is wrong to say 'You and me are invited to the party.'" Only the right form, "You and I are invited to the party," should be presented. When only the correct is presented, there will be no confusion between the right and wrong forms.

Probably learning is not so simple as this. Perhaps there are factors such as motive and mental-set that invalidate the ideas expressed above. The following pages contain information related to this point and several others.

**The Complexity of Learning.** It is easy enough to recite glibly various principles and theories of learning, but learning itself is not simple. The processes of learning are usually very complicated. They are complex because of the many characteristics of the learner as well as of the material learned. For example, there is evidence that learning (a lesson as a whole or learning larger units is more effective than dividing the whole into a number of parts and learning piece by piece.) This refers to the whole versus part methods, which are discussed in the chapter, *How to Study and Learn*. However, there is no definite rule. Sometimes the whole method, sometimes the part method, or sometimes a combination of whole and part is best, depending on the capacity of the learner, the difficulty of the material learned, and the amount to be learned.

We know that it is impossible to learn anything—words, throwing a curve, multiplication tables, or what not—without trying, or without repetition and use, and yet repetition and use alone are not enough. We have learned that that which is repeated is learned, but just repetition without interest or intent to learn results in very little learning. Also, there is a theory of learning, and it is supported by proof, that if one wants to get rid of troublesome errors and habits, one should indulge in them, repeat them, in fact. This idea is contrary to what is generally believed, but certain factors of desire and motivation are involved that make this seemingly contradictory method understandable enough.

The principles of exercise, readiness, and effect do not work out with piston-in-cylinder preciseness, but on the whole they are useful concepts. We know, for example, that if a person is to become a good piano player, he must have a want and readiness to become one and must practice almost interminably, repeating various exercises many times. Then, too, the effects of his playing—the applause from the audience, the favorable reviews, and the financial returns stimulate learning and achievement.

We should regard the principles of learning as ideas and concepts

of learning that are useful for learner and teacher. We should keep in mind, too, that learning is very complex, involving many factors, and that there are situations where the learning processes may seem contradictory and illogical.

In terms of the methods of teaching that are used, it is hard to interpret effectiveness in terms of the principles and theories of learning. It would seem that the formal methods, with their frequent repetition in the form of systematic drills and reviews, would be more effective than the informal method, in which children learn their arithmetic, vocabulary, and other facts by taking them up as part of a project or solving a live problem. Yet apparently children learn more through this informal method, in which the facts and ideas are in a problem or project setting. Just how learning takes place is often hard to explain; no single principle seems to apply. In the case of formal teaching versus informal, or its equivalent, the logical as against the psychological, it seems that learning psychologically in larger units according to interest and needs, as is true of the good project or activity method, is more effective.

(In studying the principles and general concepts about learning, it should be remembered that they are not rigid, unequivocal laws that apply in all situations. Learning should be thought of as a complex process that may be better understood by making a broad and discerning application of its various principles.)

**The Principle of Exercise—Use and Disuse.** This principle is one that we observe when we reread our lessons a number of times in order to learn them. Drill is also based on the principle that repetition fixes the facts to be learned. Children spend much time repeating arithmetic combinations, writing the words of spelling lessons a number of times, and defining and using words in order to establish their meaning. Students participating in a play learn their lines by reading them many times and repeating them when practicing. (Repetition and use are so common that they are universally accepted as an effective means of learning.) The child learns his piano lessons by playing them over and over; dance steps by repeating them many times; and the "piece," or poem, by saying it over and over until he can recite it without a mistake.

Lack of practice causes the memory of learned materials to weaken; and, in general, the longer the periods of disuse, the greater the loss. Human minds retain what they use. Words that we spell frequently are seldom misspelled, and we do not forget the meaning of words that are used in our writing and conversation. We learn and retain by use and forget through disuse. It is the exception to be able to repeat quotations, define the meaning of words, and recall names if they have been out of our consciousness for many years. Of course, some things

have been learned so well that they are hardly ever forgotten even if not often used or recalled; but this is unusual.

Most of the "orations" that we gave on special occasions are forgotten. The "pieces" and "gems" that were memorized are in large part now gone from our memory. It is customary in some churches for children to memorize the catechism, parts of the Bible, and some hymns, but as adults few can recall what once was memorized. Should an adult reread material that he once learned by heart, he may even find part of it entirely unfamiliar to him.

We have spoken of forgetting as resulting from disuse or lack of practice. Another idea is that we forget because subsequent experiences and learnings tend to rub out what has been learned. Thus we lose our skills and knowledge, not through a sort of wasting away or diminishing by disuse, but through erasure by subsequent learnings. Whatever the cause, the facts are that disuse results in loss, while practice and review result in learning and retention.

Much that people learn is lost because it does not come within their experience again or because too long a time elapses before it recurs. Forgetting, apparently, is largely the result of disuse. Two points can be made in this connection. One is that we should devote much of our learning time and effort to acquiring those facts, skills, and abilities which we shall find useful and which we shall therefore use frequently. Second, we must recognize the fact that we shall learn much which by its very nature is a temporary acquisition and which will be lost when it has served its purpose. These two approaches seem inconsistent, but both are applicable to the school situation. The first principle should be used for determining what in the content of the school curriculum should be emphasized for permanent acquisition; the second, for determining what should be taught because of its immediate and temporary usefulness. One's experience in learning orations and "pieces" is an example. It was never intended that all the lines should be permanently retained or that subsequent experiences should recall their content. But, in a broader sense, the learner may have acquired from the experience an appreciation of what good or poor oratory is and may have developed certain attitudes that govern his attendance at public gatherings. In many instances, certain attitudes and feelings may be acquired that long outlast the retention of the material itself.

The psychology of use and disuse, which are the two phases of the principle of exercise, runs parallel to learning and forgetting. Through use, or exercise, we learn and retain; through disuse, or lack of practice, the acquired is forgotten, and what is not learned remains unlearned. There are some qualifications to the principle of learning through practice. Learning is not directly proportional to the amount

of exercise, or practice. In some instances, as in practicing music or memorizing poetry, less practice with more interest results in more learning than perfunctory practice over longer periods of time. Furthermore, in most instances, what is learned is soon forgotten, whereas other materials and experiences are retained much longer, and some seem never to be forgotten and come to mind often. Other factors, especially the emotional ones, influence learning so that the law of exercise cannot be applied quantitatively or mechanically.

(Repetition alone is not enough to guarantee efficient learning, although it is important. Interest and purpose coupled with repetition make repetition much more effective.)

Practical application of this point is to be found in present-day spelling and arithmetic drills, which are much shorter than formerly. Five- and ten-minute drills are adequate. We know that it is a waste of time to drill and repeat the spelling of words, arithmetic combinations, and geography facts over long class periods, for interest thus wanes and time is lost.

(In fact, it has been found in teaching the spelling of words and basic arithmetic facts that little drill is needed if the pupil meets these facts in several situations.) For example, the ability in spelling is increased by experience with words. Children see words in their reading. If they use them in sentences and in compositions, and if the teacher and children find where the spelling words are used in various books, very little repetition is needed and thus not only are more words spelled correctly but also more are understood. The same is true of facts in arithmetic, history, and geography. If these facts are learned in a meaningful setting rather than just repeated over and over again or learned by rote, they are likely to be learned and remembered better.

(Repetition alone is not enough. There must be interest, motive, and meaningfulness, too. Then exercise increases greatly the acquisition of facts and ideas.)

**The Principle of Readiness.** In general, the principle of readiness may be described by saying that, when a person feels ready to act or to learn, *he acts or learns more effectively and with greater satisfaction* than when not ready. If a person feels ready to act and is prevented from doing so, he feels annoyed. A synonymous term for readiness is mental-set. A pupil has a mental-set to do his lessons when he is disposed to work at them. Other stimuli do not then distract him. He is interested in and therefore willing to concentrate on the tasks toward which his attention is directed. As he continues, his mind-set may weaken and the time is reached when continuing to act in a direction that earlier was satisfying becomes annoying.

If a student is directed to work on a lesson or to do a task when he



has no readiness for it, he will not learn easily. If, however, the lesson proves to be interesting and captures his attention, his learning efficiency will improve and reach a high point. (Much of the passive and unprofitable studying done by pupils is due to the fact that they have no mind-set for work but merely approach it in a routine and perfunctory way.)

A readiness, or mind-set, to master a problem is equivalent to a desire to do so. (One of the fundamental duties of a teacher is to develop in children a readiness to learn their lessons.) A good assignment, for example, raises interesting questions and cleverly introduces new materials so that the pupils will be anxious to study them. A teacher who is specific in her assignments and asks interesting questions for the students to solve arouses their curiosity and develops in them a favorable mind-set toward the assignment. On the other hand, the teacher who perfunctorily takes up one lesson after the other in mechanical order fails to develop the pupils' readiness for their lessons, and they passively approach their assignments as a matter of mere routine.

The mental readiness, mind-set, or interest of pupils is aroused and maintained on a broader scale by using the problem and project methods. Instead of formally taking up a topic, the teacher aims to bring about a learning situation in which the topics will be covered in order to complete a project or solve a problem. (If the pupils have a motive and a purpose, they sustain a mind-set for their work, a condition that is equivalent to maintaining interest in it. For example, in learning to write letters the pupils actually write real letters to real people rather than perfunctory letters for handing to the teacher. In some schools the children exchange letters with boys and girls in other countries.) Under such circumstances, children have a mental set for writing correctly and interestingly. Letter-writing assignments may also be connected with pupils' hobbies. If, for instance, the children are maintaining a flower bed and feel the need of specific information, they will write more willingly for bulletins and reports from the agricultural bureaus than if they formally prepared letters according to the teacher's assignments.

Similarly, in the history class, there is unlikely to be much psychological readiness among students if they are asked to "study the next six pages." (If, however, the teacher takes the students to points of historical significance in the vicinity and correlates the lessons with the historical excursion, they are more likely to develop an active readiness to study.) Some teachers overlook opportunities to prepare their pupils psychologically for their lessons. In studying Lewis and Clark's explorations the pupils and the teacher in a certain city mechanically discussed the contents of the book, even though they were only a few city blocks away from part of the marked route that

Lewis and Clark had taken when they passed through the great Northwest. The teacher could have taken the pupils to some of the local points of the route, traced with them the route through their immediate territory, and expanded their study from that point on. Vivid interest is developed by making the problems real and concrete rather than by confining them to the abstract elements of a textbook. When interest in a topic has been generated, the student will work on it with more satisfaction and will learn more.

(Sometimes events and situations occur that develop a readiness, or mind-set, that takes the pupil's attention away from his lessons. If the teacher is wise, she can in some instances utilize the situations that seem to be distracting. For example, a few years ago an eclipse of the sun occurred on a fall afternoon when school was in session. In a particular school (and possibly in thousands of others) a teacher had difficulty in teaching because the children were distracted by the approach of the eclipse although they could not go outside and see it. She would not deviate from her daily program of study to give them that opportunity. At the end of the school day she complained that she had found it so hard to keep the children's attention on their work that she was nearly exhausted.)

(Because of the curiosity that the children had for the eclipse of the sun, their minds were set, not for their lessons, but for the natural phenomenon that was occurring. The teacher should have taken her pupils outside to view the eclipse and discuss it with them. She had a rich opportunity to utilize the mind-set of her pupils to teach them various facts and principles of geography. To a teacher with originality the experience could also have been the basis for language lessons. Instead she worked against her pupils' natural interest, irritated them, exhausted herself, and lost a fine opportunity to teach effectively.

**The Principle of Effect.** In general, the law of effect is that learning accompanied by a pleasant or satisfying feeling is strengthened but that learning associated with an unpleasant or unsatisfying feeling is weakened.) This principle pertains to the feeling, or emotional state, following the learning experience. When a child finds the correct solution to a question, he feels pleased about his achievement and the connections between the stimulus and response are consequently strengthened. If the solution is incorrect, the associated feelings of annoyance tend to rub out the connections that have been made, unless, of course, the experience is so painful or embarrassing that the event and the mistake are fixed in the memory. (For the most part, however, the connections for the correct responses tend to persist, and those for the incorrect are weakened and eliminated; a feeling of satisfaction fixes a response, whereas a feeling of annoyance tends to destroy it.)

Besides the influence that the affective, or feeling, state has on the immediate response (principle of effect), it also controls to a considerable extent the future behavior of the learner. Pupils avoid problems and circumstances that have annoyed them and approach with interest situations in which they have had satisfying experiences. Thus experiences and feelings that accompany responses develop mental-sets for future behavior, as well as strengthening or weakening the response with which they are associated. This will be discussed more fully later.

Success and failure condition the learner to a large degree. Success with a task is generally accompanied by feelings that affect the learning process favorably, but failure is accompanied by the opposite emotional state. The principle of exercise is also involved, for success implies that the proper response has been made and that a repetition of the same or a related response is more likely to occur. On the other hand, failure means that a response has not been made at all or that the inaccurate response that was made will not be likely to persist because of the feeling of dissatisfaction that accompanied it.

(The laws of readiness, exercise, and effect are not separate and independent of each other but are actually interrelated.) Readiness and emotional effects influence practice; in turn, the emotional effect of practice determines a pupil's readiness in another situation. The pupil who has been unsuccessful is reluctant to resume his lessons, but he who has been successful has a favorable mental-set toward his work.

Success and failure influence learning and behavior greatly and are related to the capacity of the learner. It is the most capable who have most successes and the least capable who have most failures. Consequently, success stimulates those who are already most capable of learning, and failure further retards those who are least able. (Thus, it is desirable to enable everyone to experience success, and it should be possible through careful educational guidance to adjust the pupils and their work so that they will experience an optimum amount of success.)

emotions accompanying the completion of a task are satisfying. The emotional, or feeling, element in the learning situation governs the student to a considerable extent, for the intensity of his effort is a function of his interest and feeling. The whole problem of learning is not so simple as this; there are many qualifications, but the principles given are so important that they should be observed.

The emotions of a learner influence his efficiency. We describe the principle of effect in terms of feeling, and there is considerable evidence indicating the influence on learning of praise, blame, reward, punishment, and other factors.

**A Question about Negative Effects.** It will be noted that according to the principle of effect there is the positive effect and the negative effect. The positive effect tends to fix the response so that it will be repeated or brought out again more easily. In other words a positive effect of satisfaction caused by success, approval, or reward results in establishing that response, and thereby learning is increased. But a negative effect produced by disapproval of an incorrect response or by punishment or penalty of some kind tends to eliminate that response. Thus there develops a feeling, or emotional tone, that either reinforces the learning in one case or stamps out the response in another (In general, the principle of effect is theoretically and psychologically sound because feelings and emotions are definitely involved in the learning processes.) Fear and overconcern, for example, can cause blockages to learning, while happiness tones up the student so that he is a better learner.

However, considerable discussion has centered recently on the negative aspect of the law of effect. The thesis of this discussion is that annoyances following a response or dissatisfaction caused by penalty or punishment has little effect in destroying that response. In other words, unpleasant or annoying effects following a response do not lessen the probability of that response occurring again. If true, this means that saying "Wrong" to an incorrect answer, disapproving of undesirable behavior, and in general a feeling of dissatisfaction brought on by such behavior do not reduce that behavior.

The evidence on which these statements are based is far from conclusive. In fact there is evidence indicating that the negative phase of the principle of effect has considerable validity. A great deal of comprehensive research is needed before we can accept the conclusion that an annoying, unpleasant, and dissatisfying effect following a wrong or bad response does not lessen the probability of that response occurring again.

However, it is readily granted that the most effective and healthful way of establishing desirable behavior is to reinforce it with feelings of satisfaction. When the right answer is given and when behavior is

good, by all means with praise, approval, and other rewards let us make the feeling state a pleasant and satisfying one. Desired learning is facilitated most in this way. In the first place the right answer has been given, and thus the behavior has been good. Second, a feeling of success and satisfaction stimulates pride and worth, which motivate a learner to respond correctly and thereby sustain his learning. On the other hand, if the learner feels dissatisfied after making an error or showing bad behavior and so wants to learn the correct answers, he must first get rid of the wrong answers and then acquire the correct ones.) This process is more complex than repeating the right response after it has once been made. It is apparent that the negative phase of the principle of effect has more against it in the learning process, so to speak, than has the positive phase of this principle. (But though it is no doubt best educationally and psychologically to try to prevent errors, to accentuate the positive, and to try to develop high morale in the individual learner and the class as a whole by successes and rewarding satisfactions, still there are inevitable errors and failures, with their constant annoyance and dissatisfaction. The teacher must guide the student to profit from mistakes and failures and substitute truth and fact for wrong and error.)

(If the negative aspect of the principle of effect is not valid, then we are wasting a great deal of time and effort in trying to teach people to do right and not to do wrong. The home, the school, and society in general disapprove and punish the wrong. We may ask whether this is ineffective or even harmful.)

There is no quarrel about the value of approval and reward for stimulating learning. This is accepted, and the home, school, church, industry, and the government are becoming increasingly conscious of the need for positive and constructive emphasis. But our faith in the efficacy of disapproval, punishment, and penalties for stamping out wrong behavior is evident in many practices. Parents and teachers individually and society collectively try to eliminate what are considered wrong responses by penalizing and punishing the wrongdoer in one way or another. This may actually be ineffective; perhaps even harm is being done. Yet we are not prepared to accept the idea that annoyance and dissatisfaction do not help to eliminate wrong responses and thus guide the learner to the right answers. It is true that, exclusive of our frequent wars, we use pain and punishment much less today than formerly. Our teaching and learning have been improved in this regard: in the schools of the last century punishments were frequent and severe. It is possible that the annoyance and dissatisfaction that develop from failure or difficulty in any situation are sufficiently effective in themselves and that penalties added by a teacher or parent may do harm; but certainly, a person should be made aware of his errors so

the pictures. There were five trials, and failure to respond and incorrect responses were observed.

Pleasant words are such words as *mother*, *candy*, and *marry*; unpleasant, such words as *fright*, *stink*, and *kill*; and indifferent, or neutral, such words as *pen*, *trade*, and *number*. Three series of eight words of each type—pleasant, unpleasant, and indifferent—were used in the manner described—a word given along with a picture in successive trials, the object being to recall the word associated with a specific picture.

In Table 12 are given the results. The second column shows the rating of the pleasantness of the words on the basis of the children's

TABLE 12. *Frequency of errors in the learning of pleasant, unpleasant, and indifferent words\**

	Mean P-U rating	Mean associ- ation time	Used in place of cor- rect word	Re- placed by in- correct word	Failure to re- spond	Sum of all errors
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)
"Pleasant" words:						
Series I, 8 words.....	1.66	4.50	353	298	668	966
Series II, 8 words.....	1.86	3.49	167	144	516	660
Series III, 8 words...	1.72	3.28	100	119	455	574
Average, or totals†.	1.75	3.76	620	561	1,639	2,200
"Indifferent" words:						
Series I, 8 words.....	2.72	4.52	209	432	1,044	1,476
Series II, 8 words.....	2.50	3.46	113	187	631	818
Series III, 8 words...	3.01	3.61	89	187	625	812
Average, or totals..	2.74	3.86	411	806	2,300	3,106
"Unpleasant" words:						
Series I, 8 words.....	4.34	5.16	315	339	886	1,225
Series II, 8 words....	4.29	4.03	130	179	653	832
Series III, 8 words....	4.19	3.62	124	147	520	667
Average, or totals..	4.27	4.27	569	665	2,059	2,724
Grand total.....	....	....	1,600	2,032	5,998	8,030

\* Carter, Harold D., *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 27: 59.

† The values in columns (2) and (3) are means; those in columns (4), (5), (6), and (7) are sums. The entries in column (7) are the sums of the corresponding entries in columns (5) and (6).

classification of them into five groups according to degree of pleasantness and unpleasantness. If all the pleasant words had been called most pleasant and placed in group 1, then the average for the pleasant words would have been 1.00; similarly, if the unpleasant words had been classified in group 5 by all the children, the average rating for

those words would have been 5. But there was some disagreement, so that the averages were not completely at the extremes 1 and 5 for the pleasant and unpleasant words, respectively. The neutral, or indifferent, words fell in between the extremes.

The third column should be explained, for it indicates the time taken to respond with words to the words of the experiment when they are given. The method used in testing association time is essentially this: The experimenter tells the subject to respond with the first word that comes to mind when a word is pronounced. In this instance the words pronounced were the words used in the experiment and classified as pleasant, indifferent, and unpleasant. The averages show a slight tendency to respond more quickly to pleasant than to unpleasant words. This is consistent with findings showing that the emotional character of the words, because of the nature of the experience of the subject, affects his reaction time.

The evidence of Carter's study suggests that pleasant words are learned more easily than either unpleasant or indifferent ones. But the unpleasant words were learned with fewer errors than were the indifferent. To generalize findings of this kind may lead to oversimplified conclusions. However, it may be said that the feeling element in learning influences learning. We seem to learn most poorly that which has no emotional tone. Of that which evokes a feeling, we learn the pleasant better than we do the unpleasant.

(Thus, it is important that subject matter be vitalized and made interesting. A teacher, in turn, who is neutral and indifferent will probably not be so effective as one who is dynamic and teaches with conviction. To promote learning, feeling and emotion should be injected into both the teaching and the learning process. Again we have evidence pointing to the importance of the character and personality of the teacher.)

O'Kelly and Stickle tested the retention of pleasant and unpleasant experiences by having college students on their return from their Christmas vacations report pleasant and unpleasant experiences that they had had during their vacations. Sixty-two per cent of the experiences were pleasant, and 37 per cent were unpleasant, which is almost a proportion of 2 to 1. Ten weeks later, 48 per cent of the pleasant experiences were recalled and 40 per cent of the unpleasant, indicating that there is better retention of the pleasant than the unpleasant. The importance of this differential retention is greater than the differences in the percentages of 48 and 40 indicate, for there were nearly twice as many pleasant experiences first reported.

When analysis was made of the individual memory of pleasant and unpleasant experience, it was discovered that 63 per cent remembered a greater proportion of pleasant memories, 31 per cent a greater pro-

portion of unpleasant, and 6 per cent an equal proportion of each. This difference in the individual has given some basis for the suggestion that there are the optimists who remember the pleasant and the pessimists who remember the unpleasant; this is merely a suggestion, however. It is generally accepted that we have a better memory for the pleasant, and conceivably there may be a tendency to repress the unpleasant.

There is another feature of pleasantness and unpleasantness that should be taken into account, and that is the intensity of the feeling. When the pleasantness and unpleasantness were rated for intensity, it was found that experiences of high intensity were recalled most frequently and those of low intensity were recalled least of all. There was actually no difference in the recall of pleasant and unpleasant experiences: the difference was in the acuteness of the experience and the corresponding intensity of feeling.

There may be a difference, too, based on whether that which is to be recalled is an experience of the person recalling it or is someone else's experience, or whether or not it consists of emotionally colored words and ideas. It is conceivable that one's own experiences are recalled, whether pleasant or unpleasant, according to degree of intensity, but that for other emotionalized material we may tend to remember better the pleasant than the unpleasant. It is certain that that which is toned with feeling is remembered better than that which is neutral, or has no feeling tone.

✓ **The Gestalt Principle of Learning.** According to the gestalt school of psychology, other psychologists have overemphasized the individual elements in the learning situation and have stressed too much the *S-R*, or *stimulus-response*, theory, also referred to as the *bond theory*. (The idea according to the bond theory is that there is a neural bond in the organism between the stimulus and the response.) It is wrong according to the gestaltists to think of learning and memory as being determined by the number of bonds, or connections, between individual stimuli and responses.

Instead, (learning is determined by the pattern, or configuration, of the stimuli.) The interrelationship of the elements, how they shape up as a whole, is what causes the character of the perceptual field. The perceptual field will be shifted or changed according to the arrangement or new patterns of the stimuli. The changes in pattern result in new learning. Consequently, there can be a change in the field, or pattern, of stimuli that results in sensing the idea or acquiring the solution quick as a flash. This is called *insight*. A learner may, for example, be working a problem in arithmetic or a puzzle and make no progress until the solution comes all at once, so to speak. According to the gestaltists, this is learning by insight.



Gestalt vocabulary includes these words: *field*, *pattern*, *organismic*, *integration*, *wholistic*, *configuration*, *closure*, and *gestalt*. All fit the concept that the learner reacts to a pattern, or field, and learns wholes, or configurations. The term *closure*, for example, is used to describe the mind as completing a partial, or incomplete, pattern. For example, if an outline of a house, human figure, or baseball field has something missing, the mind "closes it" by supplying the missing parts.

That learning may depend not on the absolute individual stimulus but on the interrelationship of stimuli, or integrated pattern, was illustrated in an experiment with chickens trained to peck food from a paper a darker shade of gray than the paper next to it. Then the papers were changed. The paper that had been the darker became the lighter, for a new paper of a still darker shade was present. The chickens then pecked from the darker paper instead of from that from which they had pecked before. The relative feature of the situation—that of being darker—was what determined the response, and not the absolute stimulus.

The gestaltists, in their theories of learning and experimentation, emphasize meaning, organization, integration, and pattern of stimuli. The whole of the situation, rather than its separate parts, determines the perceptions of the learner. (Gestalt psychologists have caused psychologists and educators to conceive of the problem of learning in more comprehensive terms and units.)

In a general way, gestalt psychology can be applied to teaching and education by organizing subject matter and activities into larger units. In fact, education is getting away from the bit-by-bit, piece-by-piece method, substituting large, meaningful wholes instead, and thus in effect gestalt principles are being practiced to a considerable extent.

Thus in physical education, when teaching golf, swimming, tennis, or any sport, the teacher should try from the first to give the students the general pattern of the activity. For example, in the case of golf, instead of beginning with lessons on stance, lessons on swinging the driver, special lessons on approaching the green, and lessons on putting—instead, that is, of teaching more or less isolated parts of the game—the teacher should give the students from the start a good general picture of the game as a whole and should let them play the whole game. He should give the specific practice as needed but should first see that the students understand the general pattern of the game, the game as a whole.

(Similarly, in geography, algebra, geometry, history, literature, and most other subjects the teacher should try to orientate the students to the general organization, or pattern, of the subject being studied. Then they can see the interrelationship of the parts and can understand more fully what they mean.)

Possibly one of the principal reasons why the activity, project, and problem methods seem to be so effective lies in the fact that gestalt principles are probably functioning. In the activity method, large and not too clearly defined units are covered, and in many instances the material is covered as a result of exploration. In the activity or project method, a student studies according to his needs and interests and consequently goes wherever he must go to find logically related material. Thus, being guided by need, curiosity, and interest, a student will cover large areas of learning and is more likely to see the interrelationships of related materials and organize them into a pattern.

#### DUNLAP'S HYPOTHESIS OF LEARNING

**Repetition and Learning.** Ordinarily, it is held that in a general way the extent of learning is in proportion to frequency of repetitions. Consistent with the principle of repetition is the statement that no exception should be allowed to occur. According to some pedagogues, for example, only "It is I" should be repeated and not the more usual expression. It is argued that the wrong forms should not be repeated, even for purposes of correction. This point of view is not entirely sound, for repetition alone does not fix a response. A contrary theory holds that the best way to eliminate errors is to repeat them. According to this theory, the way to eliminate a grammatical error is to repeat it consciously; the way to learn to spell a word correctly is to repeat the incorrect spelling; and the way to prevent common slips in typing is deliberately to type the word in the habitually incorrect way.

In a discussion of learning, Dunlap presents three theories. One of them has been discussed as the principle of exercise, but all three will be given together here to give us a clearer perspective of the effects that the occurrence of a response may have on the likelihood of its occurring again. Dunlap uses the names of the Greek letters alpha, beta, and gamma to designate his three hypotheses. They are as follows:<sup>1</sup>

1. Alpha hypothesis. The occurrence of a response increases the probability that it will occur again when there is the same stimulus.
2. Beta hypothesis. The occurrence of a response lessens the probability that the stimulus that produced the response will again produce it.
3. Gamma hypothesis. The occurrence of a response has no effect on the probability of the occurrence of the response.

The alpha hypothesis is the more conventional one and is generally considered as explaining learning by repetition. The beta and gamma hypotheses, however, indicate that an experience or response either

<sup>1</sup> Dunlap, Knight, *Habits—Their Making and Unmaking*, p. 78, Liveright Publishing Corp., New York, 1932.

diminishes the likelihood of the response's occurring again or has no effect at all. According to these theories, there are three effects of a stimulus and response situation—the positive, the negative, and the neutral. On the basis of these, a wider point of view is taken toward the effects of repetition and practice. In them we can see the explanation for the responses of children, some of which seem to contradict our more conventional principles of practice.

**The Beta Theory.** Since this theory has been defined, the following discussion of it will be devoted to its application. Dunlap reports several experiments that he conducted according to this theory. They included attempts to cure stammering, fingernail biting, thumb-sucking, and several other habits. In general, the procedure consisted in practicing or repeating the wrong habit. This is called *negative practice*.

There are certain attitudes that the learner should have in order that the negative practice may be effective. He must be aware of the bad effects of the habit, understand the advantages of breaking it, have a desire to break it, and engage in practicing it with the earnest purpose of breaking it. The points of view and general attitude of the learner must be as indicated, or the procedure will not be effective. The voluntary repetition of bad habits should deautomatize them.

The theory may be illustrated as it was applied to stammerers. During the practice periods, they stammered voluntarily, simulating as nearly as possible their involuntary stammering. Occasionally, a stammerer would attempt to speak words without stammering. If he could do so successfully, he would discontinue the negative practice. If he was unsuccessful, he would resume immediately the negative practice, or voluntary stammering. Attempts were made later again to speak without stammering; if successful, the negative practice was abandoned.

Dunlap reports that after 3 months some adolescents were completely cured. He also reports good results in breaking the habits of fingernail biting and thumb-sucking. His results are encouraging enough to warrant teachers' experimenting with the method. No one, however, should proceed without carefully planning the procedure and being grounded in the psychology involved.

A teacher, for example, might experiment with children who have trouble with their *th*'s. In some areas, there are many children with foreign-born parents who pronounce their *th*'s as *d*'s or *l*'s, in such words as *rather*, *though*, *those*, and *moth*. A group of such children might be organized for periodic negative practice. In trying this method, it is necessary for the teacher to give the children confidence that they can break their habit of pronouncing the *th*'s incorrectly and to tell them that they should not practice listlessly but concentrate on the

negative practice. An ingenious teacher can find many specific situations in arithmetic, reading, language, and other school subjects, as well as in the field of habits and other personality problems, where he might profitably try negative practice in attempting to develop voluntary control of behavior which has been involuntary.

### LEARNING THROUGH THE ASSOCIATED RESPONSE

Much that we learn is learned through connection with certain facts and situations. Many of our feelings and attitudes are acquired through associations. A given color may be favored because our experiences with that color have been pleasant. Thus, a young woman may like blue because her party dresses and traveling suits have been blue and therefore are associated with a festive mood. Black may not be so popular because it is associated with old age and funerals. An individual may have learned to regard people with certain facial features with suspicion because somebody with similar features once tricked him. Words are learned by associating them with the thing that they describe or name. In situations involving facts and attitudes, we acquire them through association.

The associated response can be illustrated with the following diagram:

$$\begin{aligned} S_1 &\rightarrow R_1 \\ S_2 &\rightarrow R_2 \\ S_1 + S_2 &\rightarrow R_2 \\ S_1 &\rightarrow R_2 \end{aligned}$$

$S_1$  represents stimulus 1, and  $R_1$  represents response 1.  $S_2$  represents stimulus 2, and  $R_2$  represents response 2. According to this outline,  $S_1$  brings out  $R_1$ ;  $S_2$  evokes  $R_2$ ; and, because  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  occur together,  $S_1$  causes  $R_2$ .

We may illustrate by showing how a child was conditioned to fear a harmless snake. The presence of the snake evoked a manipulative response on the part of the child, who played with it. The mother saw the child with the snake and screamed frightfully. The baby was thereby conditioned to fear the snake.

The following arrangement illustrates how the child learned to fear snakes:

$S_1$ (sight of the snake by the child).....	$R_1$ (playing with it)
$S_2$ (sight of the snake by the mother).....	$R_2$ (screams because of fear)
$S_1$ (child sees snake).....	$R_2$ (fear of snake)

In this instance, the mother screamed in the presence of the child and the snake, and the child was conditioned then to fear the snake

because fear was attached to or associated with the snake. Therefore, when the child sees a snake  $S_1$ , he will respond with fear, or  $R_1$ .

The teacher as an important factor conditions the attitude of her pupils toward the subjects and situations that arise in the classroom. If the teacher has an effective personality and therefore is appreciated by her pupils, she will, by the principle of associated response, condition them to be interested in their schoolwork. She has their good will, and consequently she is associated favorably with their responses in the situations in which she is a factor. The presence of the teacher evokes a favorable response, and therefore the schoolwork for which she is responsible will evoke a more favorable response, also. Conversely, if the pupils are antagonistic in their attitude toward their teacher, they are also likely to be conditioned to take the same attitude toward most situations in her classroom. The importance of the teacher in this connection can hardly be overestimated.

#### PRIMARY, ASSOCIATE, AND CONCOMITANT LEARNING

Educational philosophers and psychologists have pointed out that, while students are learning the basic facts which have been assigned them, there are related learnings of one kind or another that also take place. We have just referred to the attitude that students acquire toward their subject in terms of the way they feel toward their teacher. Furthermore, when students are studying to acquire certain facts, these facts may lead to others.

These learnings are referred to as *primary*, *associate*, and *concomitant* learning. In this instance, the assignment to be learned is the primary, the attitude developed toward the subject is the concomitant, and the associate consists of facts learned because they occur in connection with the primary learning. The primary learning consists of the facts, principles, theories, etc., that are the main core of the lessons in particular and the curriculum in general. The associated learning consists of the facts and other more objective materials that are learned because they are related to the primary and are logically brought into the lesson. The concomitants consist of the attitudes, ideals, and appreciations that the student acquires because of his school experience.

**Primary Learning.** Let us assume that the lessons being studied are the geography of the northeast section of the United States. The primary learning will consist of knowledge of the climate, topography, industries, and so forth, of this section. The basic and traditional facts constitute the primary learning.

**Associate Learning.** While studying the geography of the New England states, the students become interested in the history of the section. They relate its historical development to its geographical characteristics. They also become interested in the industrial develop-

ment of this section as well as its present-day problems. Some students become especially interested in learning why so much of the textile industry has moved from New England to the South.

Many related historical, economic, and geographical facts will be learned. Such related facts are called associated learning.

**Concomitant Learning.** In studying the New England states, certain attitudes and points of view are sure to develop. Certainly the students will appreciate the courage and enterprise of a people who could accomplish so much as the New Englanders in a region which was none too fertile and promising but in which they made the most of their environment and built up a great industrial and cultural area. The New Englanders displayed courage, industry, and thrift, which the students will probably appreciate. It is certain that the students from studying the New England states will develop certain ideals, attitudes, and appreciations which they did not have before. These are known as concomitant learning. Such learning may be either desirable or undesirable.

In a sense, the attitudes developed govern behavior more than do facts and information. The way in which a person acts in a situation is largely controlled by his points of view. Feelings and attitudes develop out of knowledge and facts, it is true, but attitudes and feelings also determine how we interpret facts and knowledge.

The ideals, attitudes, and appreciations acquired in a situation govern behavior in many instances to a larger extent than do the facts, skills, and principles acquired. The concomitants are an outgrowth of facts and skills, but the former often long outlive the latter. We can illustrate by considering the effect that certain courses may have on the behavior of the students who took them. Let us assume that some citizens in a community who have taken courses in bacteriology and chemistry are faced with the problems of voting for or against a sewage system or other measures of sanitation. They most probably have forgotten most of their bacteriology and chemistry, but certain attitudes and appreciations engendered by the study of these subjects are almost certain to cause them to favor improved sanitation. Long after the facts in chemistry and bacteriology that are found in courses and examinations have been forgotten, certain attitudes and appreciations will remain to influence behavior.

Concomitants, or the intangibles acquired, are of such importance that psychologists and educators might well be concerned as much about these concomitants as about the primary, or core, learning. In a country of free public education the attitudes and ideals that pupils acquire are of much importance. We spend millions of dollars and the lives of thousands of teachers and other employees educating our children, youth, and adults. In particular, it matters whether those

educated in our schools at public expense leave them with a selfish individualistic attitude and an ambition to exploit their fellow man or whether their attitude is a more cooperative one and expresses itself in social consciousness. Furthermore, the ideals, broad sympathies, and scientific attitudes that are learned contribute much to happy and fruitful living.

### LOGICAL AND PSYCHOLOGICAL LEARNING

Logical learning refers to the learning of material which is organized logically, as is the case when it is organized from simple to complex, or from the easier to the more difficult. United States history is taught logically when it is taught chronologically, beginning before Columbus and continuing up through the decades and centuries until the present day is reached. Arithmetic is taught logically when fractions and decimals are taken up so that a knowledge of fractions is preparatory to studying decimals. Logical learning is usually associated with formal and systematic teaching.

Psychological learning, on the other hand, does not pay much attention to logical, or systematic, organization of subject matter, although it is not necessarily inconsistent with it. In psychological learning, the pupil studies the material according to his needs or interests. If he is engaged in an activity or is working on a project, he studies anything that will give him the ideas and information that he needs to answer his problems.

When the psychological method is used, the teacher does not say, as she does when the logical method is used, "We don't take that up at this time." In the psychological method the pupils study any phase of any subject to which their interest and need take them. Of course, the material studied is usually consistent with the capacity of the student to study it profitably.

In the logical method the subject matter is taken up in a prescribed order. The course of study is carefully organized, and it is followed accordingly.

Experiments have proved that students can learn effectively when they study in order to learn the facts they need even though no systematic procedure is followed. Conceivably, purpose and interest make up for a step-by-step sequence. After all, in adult life when a person has a problem to solve, he goes after the facts as directly as possible and learns all he can from whatever source is at his disposal in order to learn what he wants to know.

Logical and psychological learning are fundamental to educational and teaching theories and methods. Logical learning is characteristic of the old school with its most formal methods, while psychological learning is characteristic of the newer child-centered school.

## SUMMARY AND REVIEW

The processes of learning are not simple and do not follow any given principle and hypothesis of learning precisely.

According to the principle of exercise, learning tends to be in proportion to the amount of repetition, or use, and forgetting in proportion to the amount of disuse. Other factors are involved, such as interest and concentration.

The principle of readiness, or mental-set, states that a person learns more effectively when he wants to learn or is ready or motivated to do so. A teacher observes this principle when she interests the pupils in what they are going to do and keeps them interested.

When a response is accompanied by a feeling of satisfaction, that response is more likely to be learned than one accompanied by an unpleasant feeling. Thus success accelerates learning, and failure retards it.

Even though the negative aspect of the principle of effect has been questioned, it is still probable that negative effects influence learning.

Our behavior and learning are influenced and controlled considerably by annoyers and satisfiers.

The pleasant is probably learned and remembered better than the unpleasant.

Although it is generally believed that the pleasant is remembered better, there is evidence that it is the intensity of the pleasantness or unpleasantness that is the chief determiner of retention.

Gestalt psychology emphasizes the pattern of the stimuli. A shift in the pattern of the stimuli may cause the learner to see the answer. This is called *insight*. The teacher should apply the gestalt idea by giving the students as comprehensive a pattern of the work at hand as possible.

Dunlap's hypotheses of learning, alpha, beta, and gamma, are to the effect, respectively, that the occurrence of a response increases, lessens, and has no influence on the probability of the recurrence of the response to the same stimuli.

[Learning through the associated response is learning by association or conditioning. Pupils learn to like or dislike particular subjects or school in general because of the good or poor personality of the teacher.]

Primary learning consists in mastery of the immediate objectives; associate learning consists in learning the related objectives; and concomitant learning consists in the feelings, motivation, and points of view that are outcomes of the primary and associate learnings.

Logical learning refers to learning in a logical order involving sequence, difficulty of material, and systematic organization. Psychological learning refers to learning in any order dictated by need and inter-



est. Logical learning is a feature of the older, formal type of school, while psychological learning is characteristic of the new school.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. There is no substitute for practice although practice alone is not enough. Comment.

2. Explain how the gestalt principle can be applied effectively by a teacher in her teaching.

3. The trend in modern elementary and secondary education is toward the more informal education with its activities, problems, and projects. What principles of learning are practiced?

4. Explain why we may learn so much in actual life situations and not learn in artificial school situations.

5. Give an example each of primary, associate, and concomitant learning.

6. Even though we recognize that learning is very complex and that no single principle or law applies fully and unequivocally, we try to define learning in terms of principles. Comment.

7. Dunlap's beta hypothesis is the one that seems inconsistent with our traditional points of view. What are the forces and motives that must function if negative practice is to be effective?

8. It is true, of course, that we usually do not learn in direct proportion to the number of repetitions. But some practice or repetition is necessary if one is to learn; activity, repetition, and use are definitely conducive to learning; lack of repetition results in forgetting. Comment.

9. Show how our attitudes and interests are developed toward things because of how they go together, or through associated response.

10. Show whether or not success and failure and the pleasant and unpleasant are the principal effects that influence learning and other behavior, too.

11. To say that one has readiness, or set, for a problem is equivalent to saying that the organism is ready to attend to that problem. Discuss.

12. What principles of learning are applied or involved in the traditional school?

13. How do Dunlap's three theories or principles of learning amplify our concepts of the traditional principle of repetition, which Dunlap gives as the alpha hypothesis?

14. Discuss whether or not a teacher's ability to arouse curiosity and interest is equivalent to saying that she develops readiness, or mind-set.

## 18. Interest, Attention, Incentives, and Motivation

**What to Look For.** Note that intensity of effort varies greatly, being very low when one is uninterested and unmotivated but very high when one is highly motivated or is working for rewards and for a feeling of prestige and personal worth.

Teachers list how to interest pupils as their primary problem. Learn the various methods that are used to motivate and interest pupils.

The meaning of attention is explained and should be understood.

Note the nature and degrees of attention, and note the attention that characterizes the students in their classes. Learn what the teacher can do to stimulate the attention of the pupils.

What may be the bad effects of very strong competition? Do children accomplish more when they work for themselves or for the group? How does the use of prizes of various kinds affect achievement?

Under what situations is working in a group or working alone more effective?

Praise and reproof affect various pupils differently. Learn these differences.

What effect has knowledge of results, or knowing the progress one is making, on attention and achievement?

What effect have the developing and increasing of ability on interest?

Will pupils work harder when they know that they will pass at the end of school year or when they are threatened with failure?

What are the qualities of good and poor incentives and motivation?

Learn what the effect of the use of audiovisual aids is on the achievement of the learners.

Television is a more recent addition to audiovisual aids and may prove effective educationally.

**Putting Forth One's Best Efforts.** Of major concern not only to educators and psychologists but to people in general are the conditions and factors that cause maximum achievement. Some conditions of work contribute to greater achievement than others. Under some con-

ditions, a child or adult is greatly interested and works with zeal, and his attention is highly concentrated. In another situation, his attention is indifferent, and he works listlessly.

Under one teacher the pupils manifest great interest and attack their work with avidity. The same pupils with another teacher show little interest and behave as if they had no purpose in life. Similarly, when directed by a certain conductor, an orchestra or choir will seem highly motivated, but the same organization responds indifferently to other leaders.

Thus it is throughout many spheres of life—responses can be evoked with different intensities. Some persons are stimulated by praise and favorable recognition; others, by reproof and unfavorable criticism; still others respond to material rewards. Usually, we work hard to outstrip others, and many will put their utmost into an activity in order to obtain the distinction of winning a prize, receiving honorable mention, or being selected as a member of an honorary society.

Boys on the college football team expend every bit of energy that they possess in order to keep their place on the team, earn a letter, win the praises of the spectators, and be featured on the sports page. Hardly any professional athlete, no matter how big the prize he is working for, plays and works harder than the high-school and college athlete, who is spurred on only by his desire to receive the recognition and approbation of his fellows. Even the professional athlete works as hard for distinction and to possess a top rating as he does for his salary.

Many factors cause young and old to work hard, and possibly several of them are associated with the drive or motive to obtain personal satisfaction through a feeling of prestige and worth. Praise serves this purpose; reproof or scolding causes a feeling of inferiority and may spur one to change his behavior to avoid another scolding. A prize may be valuable in itself, but it is still more coveted if it brings recognition to its owner. Some of the greatest incentives in history have consisted of medals or a small wreath of laurel.

In the schoolroom many techniques are used to spur pupils to greater achievement. They are praised; scolded; ignored; given prizes; placed on the honor roll; given special privileges; kept aware of their records and the progress they are making; pitted against each other in individual and group rivalry; encouraged to work for a goal or with a purpose; and, in general, made to attach pleasure and satisfaction with accomplishment and dissatisfaction with failure.

The purpose of the methods and techniques used is to evoke maximum attention to one's work and thus produce maximum achievement. When teachers employ effective methods, the pupils have a set and readiness for their work, attacking it with purpose and motive and consequently with a determination to achieve. When teachers set

up attractive incentives, pupils develop an initial drive for their objectives, which, in turn, is maintained by the knowledge, skills, and abilities being acquired. An important influence in developing a drive is the competence that the pupil feels he is acquiring.

**What Is Attention?** Attention is the process of attending to stimuli. In thinking of attention, let us think first of stimuli which strike the senses: light that strikes the eye and enables us to perceive objects; sounds that strike the ear so that we perceive music and words; substances in the air that reach the membranes of the nose so that we perceive odors. The skin is stimulated by temperature and pressure, and internal stimulation develops sensations in the joints and in the visceral region.

Stimuli alone do not constitute attention. It is the awareness of and the responding to certain stimuli and not responding to others that constitutes attention.

We can illustrate in the case of a worker in a factory who is not considered satisfactory. The criticism made of him is that he does not pay enough attention to his work. In other words, he does not attend to his duties. His trouble is that he responds to stimuli other than those before him to which he should respond in order to do what he is paid for doing.

A teacher says that Jimmy does not pay attention. Jimmy responds to stimuli; he attends to elements in his situation, but his difficulty lies in his failure to attend only or largely to stimuli that will result in his being a successful student. Jimmy is always attending to something, as everyone is as long as he is awake, but he is not attending enough to what the teacher and school require shall be attended to.

In thinking of attention, we should think of it as a process or as something taking place or being done. Attention should be understood in terms of an awareness to stimuli and responding or attending to it. We should think in terms of the verb form *attending* as well as the noun form *attention*.

To this point we have spoken of attending to stimuli that are striking the senses. A person may attend to stimuli that are not immediate, that have been present or that may become present. When a person is daydreaming or is engaged in autistic thinking, he is attending to what we might call the contents of his mind. Ideas and images develop in his mind, and his thinking is based on past experience and is governed by his wishes. He is attending to his thinking.

It is quite common for students, for example, not to attend to immediate stimuli but to be engaged in thinking not affected by those stimuli. A student sits in a classroom and should be attending to what takes place so that he can learn from the situation in which he is in. He should listen to the teacher and his fellows; he should study what is

written on the board, observe the teacher's demonstrations, and take notes. He should be attending in those various ways, but is he?

No, he is "absent though present." Although he is present in his seat, he is not responding to the stimuli which are intended for him and the other students. Instead, this student is thinking of last night's fun or tomorrow's football game, or he may be warming himself emotionally with pleasant fantasy. For moments he does not hear the instructor's words or even see him, so completely is he attending to his thoughts and dreams. Now and then he does attend just momentarily to what the teacher is saying and doing, but most of the time he is not aware of these stimuli.

It is common to say that a person is not paying attention. However, this statement is not accurate, for as long as one is awake or conscious, he is attending to something. What is meant is that the person is not attending to what he should be or is expected to be attending to. He is attending to something else.

A person responds to varying stimuli, now this and now that. Momentarily he is stimulated by one element in a situation and then by another.

This raises a question as to whether or not a person can attend to more than one thing at a time. Specifically, can a student listen to the radio and study his lesson at the same time, or can he listen to the teacher while he writes a letter? Strictly, he cannot at the same moment study his lesson and listen to the radio or write a letter while listening to the teacher's explanation. It is true that he can during the course of an hour, for example, do both, but what he is doing is shifting his attention from one stimulus to another. While he is attending to the explanation, he is not attending to his writing, and vice versa. For a moment or more he is attending to the lecture and not to the letter he is writing, and then for a moment or more he is attending to his letter, at which time he is impervious, so to speak, to the stimuli of the teacher and his explanation.

During the hour the student can finish his letter and also acquire a considerable amount of the explanation. Off and on he has attended to the explanation enough to maintain some sort of continuity. If he had attended more to the explanation, he would have learned more but his letter writing would have suffered because he would have attended to it less.

**The Teacher and Interest.** When over 1,000 teachers were asked to list their teaching problems, the problem they listed most frequently was how could they interest the children in their work. They were most concerned about how to motivate their pupils and stimulate them to work hard.

A second problem that they emphasized, and one closely related to

the problem of getting children interested, is how to present good materials so that their classes would be alert and lively. Teachers also want to know how to stimulate their students to study effectively.

All these problems, so frequently mentioned, pertain to student interest and motivation. It thus seems that the major problem of the teacher is to interest the child so that he will pay attention and be so interested in his work that he will attack it with sustained effort.

The following discussion will attempt to set forth and evaluate the facts about various methods used to stimulate achievement. Many questions can be raised—and answered to some degree—on the effectiveness of rewards, praise, scolding, recognition, rivalry, purposes, knowledge of progress, and other factors that influence achievement. For example, are there differences in how these influences affect dull and bright children, younger and older pupils, boys and girls? Furthermore, some of the factors may have a desirable effect when first applied but, if continued, will have little influence and sometimes even an adverse one. Many phases of the problem of interest, attention, incentives, and motives must be considered.

**Sustained Concentration and Fluctuating Attention.** The driver of an automobile concentrates on his driving, and his attention is on everything connected with it. He expends considerable energy in doing so. His passenger pays attention, too, but in a very different manner. He does not concentrate or focus his energy on the stimuli that strike his senses. In other words, he does not respond to the stimuli with the expenditure of much energy, and largely so because he does not have to. If he takes over the wheel, his motivation changes. Then his attention and energies will be centered on driving the car. A driver can give many details about the road of which a passenger is unaware.

Much that is about us we do not observe in an active way because we do not look with a purpose. When a teacher of nature study points out certain birds, flowers, and trees, observation becomes active and that which was not seen before is now noted. Interest is stimulated and increases in its intensity. A mind-set and a definite intent to learn take the place of indifferent and untrained attention.

Incidentally, mere repetition does not result in memorizing what is repeated. For example, in learning a series of nonsense syllables that were repeated orally to the subjects many times by the experimenter, it was discovered that the experimenter could not repeat from memory a series that he had repeated over fifty times, whereas the subjects, who had a mind-set for learning them, acquired the series in less than one-fourth as many repetitions. Experiences like this have been observed in a number of similar situations and verify the general conclusion that intensity of interest and will to learn are basic to efficient learning.

There are many situations in life where little learning occurs because no active attempt is made to learn. The teacher reads sets of directions over and over again that she could readily learn and conveniently give from memory if she tried. Many speakers use notes or outlines that they could easily memorize if they actively attempted to do so, thus avoiding the handicap of having to glance at notes. Sharp attention to peoples' names, accompanied by earnest attempts to remember them, enables some persons to remember an unusually large number; to a considerable extent, this is a matter of attention. In many of life's situations the will to learn results in the acquisition of facts and material that usually are passed by unnoted.

Studies have been made of how steadily students attend to the work of the class. Students are attending when they are keenly aware of the meanings which are being developed in class. Their attention is elsewhere when they are daydreaming or thinking of this and that. When a student's attention is not on the lesson, he is learning no more about it than if he were asleep.

It is difficult, of course, to judge how much a student is actually concentrating on the work at hand. He himself can estimate how much of the time his mind is fully on the subject at hand or away from it, but such estimates are unreliable. Observers can check what they think is full attention and what is not, but even though a student appears to be devoting his energies to the classroom activities, he may not be, and vice versa.

It seems that college students do not concentrate fully on the work of the class more than one-fourth to three-fourths of the time. Attention varies greatly, of course, according to the effectiveness of the teaching and the motivation of the students. Data on the amount of attention cannot be depended upon for their exactness, but they can be relied upon as indicating that the problem of interesting the students is a foremost one.

There are many conditions that may cause attention to vary. Some teachers are more interesting than others; also, they may vary from day to day in their power to interest the student. Topics and lessons differ in the degree to which they attract interest. Advanced students probably concentrate their interest more than beginners do.

Even though results would differ from class to class, the fact probably is that attention during a class period fluctuates considerably and is centered on one thing after another. The mind often wanders, and the energy of the learner is not concentrated on the topic at hand as much of the time as is necessary to reach a high state of efficiency. The educational problem is to motivate and interest the pupils so that they will attend to their work with more energy and for longer periods of time.

the problem of getting children interested, is how to present good materials so that their classes would be alert and lively. Teachers also want to know how to stimulate their students to study effectively.

All these problems, so frequently mentioned, pertain to student interest and motivation. It thus seems that the major problem of the teacher is to interest the child so that he will pay attention and be so interested in his work that he will attack it with sustained effort.

The following discussion will attempt to set forth and evaluate the facts about various methods used to stimulate achievement. Many questions can be raised—and answered to some degree—on the effectiveness of rewards, praise, scolding, recognition, rivalry, purposes, knowledge of progress, and other factors that influence achievement. For example, are there differences in how these influences affect dull and bright children, younger and older pupils, boys and girls? Furthermore, some of the factors may have a desirable effect when first applied but, if continued, will have little influence and sometimes even an adverse one. Many phases of the problem of interest, attention, incentives, and motives must be considered.

**Sustained Concentration and Fluctuating Attention.** The driver of an automobile concentrates on his driving, and his attention is on everything connected with it. He expends considerable energy in doing so. His passenger pays attention, too, but in a very different manner. He does not concentrate or focus his energy on the stimuli that strike his senses. In other words, he does not respond to the stimuli with the expenditure of much energy, and largely so because he does not have to. If he takes over the wheel, his motivation changes. Then his attention and energies will be centered on driving the car. A driver can give many details about the road of which a passenger is unaware.

Much that is about us we do not observe in an active way because we do not look with a purpose. When a teacher of nature study points out certain birds, flowers, and trees, observation becomes active and that which was not seen before is now noted. Interest is stimulated and increases in its intensity. A mind-set and a definite intent to learn take the place of indifferent and untrained attention.

Incidentally, mere repetition does not result in memorizing what is repeated. For example, in learning a series of nonsense syllables that were repeated orally to the subjects many times by the experimenter, it was discovered that the experimenter could not repeat from memory a series that he had repeated over fifty times, whereas the subjects, who had a mind-set for learning them, acquired the series in less than one-fourth as many repetitions. Experiences like this have been observed in a number of similar situations and verify the general conclusion that intensity of interest and will to learn are basic to efficient learning.



There are many situations in life where little learning occurs because no active attempt is made to learn. The teacher reads sets of directions over and over again that she could readily learn and conveniently give from memory if she tried. Many speakers use notes or outlines that they could easily memorize if they actively attempted to do so, thus avoiding the handicap of having to glance at notes. Sharp attention to peoples' names, accompanied by earnest attempts to remember them, enables some persons to remember an unusually large number; to a considerable extent, this is a matter of attention. In many of life's situations the will to learn results in the acquisition of facts and material that usually are passed by unnoted.

Studies have been made of how steadily students attend to the work of the class. Students are attending when they are keenly aware of the meanings which are being developed in class. Their attention is elsewhere when they are daydreaming or thinking of this and that. When a student's attention is not on the lesson, he is learning no more about it than if he were asleep.

It is difficult, of course, to judge how much a student is actually concentrating on the work at hand. He himself can estimate how much of the time his mind is fully on the subject at hand or away from it, but such estimates are unreliable. Observers can check what they think is full attention and what is not, but even though a student appears to be devoting his energies to the classroom activities, he may not be, and vice versa.

It seems that college students do not concentrate fully on the work of the class more than one-fourth to three-fourths of the time. Attention varies greatly, of course, according to the effectiveness of the teaching and the motivation of the students. Data on the amount of attention cannot be depended upon for their exactness, but they can be relied upon as indicating that the problem of interesting the students is a foremost one.

There are many conditions that may cause attention to vary. Some teachers are more interesting than others; also, they may vary from day to day in their power to interest the student. Topics and lessons differ in the degree to which they attract interest. Advanced students probably concentrate their interest more than beginners do.

Even though results would differ from class to class, the fact probably is that attention during a class period fluctuates considerably and is centered on one thing after another. The mind often wanders, and the energy of the learner is not concentrated on the topic at hand as much of the time as is necessary to reach a high state of efficiency. The educational problem is to motivate and interest the pupils so that they will attend to their work with more energy and for longer periods of time.

**How to Ensure Attention in Class.** When Edmiston and Braddock checked on the amount of the class time during which pupils were paying attention, they discovered that it varied according to what was taking place in class and ranged from 80 to 88 per cent. Of course, there are classes where attention to the classwork is not as good as this, and there may be some where it is better.

It was observed that attention was highest when the students made reports and lowest in the laboratory. In between these extremes in order of amount of attention was demonstration, general discussion, workbook, lecture, rapid-fire questions, and general discussion by the teacher.

It is probable that in other classrooms the various activities would not gain attention in the amounts discovered in this experiment. Attention is sure to vary with the subject and teacher.

However, certain ideas for controlling attention seem to have emerged from this study. They are as follows: (1) There should be definite, clear assignments so that both teacher and pupil know what is to be done. (2) Both teacher and students should be thoroughly prepared. (3) Classroom methods should include the audiovisual. (4) There should be extensive student participation in the classroom. (5) Whatever takes place in the classroom should be related to the work at hand. By utilizing these ideas the teacher can stimulate maximum pupil attention.

**Rivalry and Competition.** The school uses many contests in which rivalry becomes keen and tense. Athletics, probably more than any other school activity, is based on rivalry, both individual and group. The participants strive to defeat their opponents either as teams or as individuals. As a member of a team the player is stimulated by the desire to improve his individual record as well as to have the team win. The baseball player wants to have a higher batting average than that of other players; the football player aims to make the most touchdowns; and the basketball players work for individual high scores as well as for team victory. Thus, in athletics there is almost always individual rivalry as well as team rivalry.

In the more conventional subjects, also, rivalry appears in one form or another. Children compete against each other to obtain higher scores in the examinations and higher marks on the report cards. The older form of spelling contest was competitive—side against side and individual against individual to see who would be the lone survivor. In everyday spelling lessons the individual child strives to obtain the highest mark. Contests in debate, declamation, and music bring out the spirit of sharp rivalry.

Because the rivalries in contests have become so acute that hard feeling and a critical spirit have developed, the use of contests to

stimulate achievement is not so common as formerly. In some states, debate, dramatic, and musical contests of a state-wide nature were sponsored. Today, less emphasis is placed on the contest and more on festivals and clinics. The spirit thus developed is less the spirit to win and more the spirit to learn by receiving help and guidance.

Rivalry, or competition, has the virtue of causing those engaged in it to concentrate their energies on the activity that calls it forth. Psychologically, rivalry has been found effective because it increases achievement. But from a philosophical point of view a question may be raised about the desirability of using rivalry to a great extent, for it may develop the competitive or individualistic spirit to an excessive degree. On the other hand, it is well for students to learn to win and lose or to rank high, average, or low. In life a person will frequently experience winning and losing, victory and defeat, success and failure. He needs to learn early in life how to react maturely to those experiences.

**Competition and Cooperation.** An experiment whose results show the effectiveness of rivalry is one set up to discover the comparative results when an individual works for his own record in competition with others and when his score is combined with that of his group and compared with the score of another group.

The tasks consisted of simple addition combinations of single digits, such as  $2 + 3$  and  $4 + 8$ . Because of the simple nature of the tasks the amount accomplished was a good indication of effort and thus of the interest in the work.

The children taking part in the experiment were tested under four conditions: (1) unmotivated; (2) working for self; (3) working for the group; (4) choice of working for self or the group. Thus, this experiment furnished an opportunity to test accomplishment under conditions of individual and group competition or cooperation and also the extent to which the pupils chose to work for themselves rather than for the group. Included were 1,538 children of the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth grades and of the age range from eight to seventeen.

The pupils were first tested to discover what their accomplishment was without any particular motivation. The scores constituted the basis for comparing the self-motivated and group-motivated scores. When the competition was individual, or the motive was for self, each pupil was told that his score would indicate his rank as first, second, third, down to the last, and that the fastest would be given a prize.

In the test of the strength of group motive the students were organized into classes and urged to work hard for the prizes that would be given to classes having the best scores on the addition test. The children wrote the name of their class on the paper and not their individual names. The individual competition was greatly reduced, if not

eliminated; thus, in this case the group, or class, competition was a cooperative attempt of the members of one class to beat the members of the other.

In another competitive situation the pupils were permitted to choose whether they wanted to work during units, a minute in length, for themselves or for the group. There were seven 1-minute units, and thus there could not be an equal division between self and the group.

Table 13 contains the scores for practiced, self-motivated, and group-motivated children and the differences between the groups.

TABLE 13. *Arithmetic scores of groups with different motivation\**

School	No. of cases (total, 814)	Practice (unmotivated) group	Self-motivation (competition)	Group motivation (cooperation)	Self-motivation over unmotivated group	Group motivation over unmotivated group	Self-motivation over group motivation
I	314	44.8	50.1	45.6	5.3	0.8	4.5
II	223	37.3	43.0	40.4	5.7	3.1	2.6
III	277	41.0	45.9	44.4	4.9	3.4	1.5
Average	...	41.2	46.3	43.6	5.1	2.3	2.9

\* Adapted from Maller, "Cooperation and Competition: An Experimental Study in Motivation," *Contributions to Education* 384, New York, 1929.

When the student was motivated by the desire to win the prize for himself, he did best; the amount accomplished in working for the group was greater than in working without motivation but not so great as in working for self (self-motivation). It should be emphasized that the differences are for the amount accomplished in 1 minute; hence, because of the short period involved, the difference is really a large one. At the rate of the average difference of 2.9 given for 1 minute the difference for 10 minutes would be 29.

Motivation, both for self and for the group, is effective, but pupils work harder to gain a high ranking and to win a prize for themselves than they do to win standing and a prize for their class. Consistent with this result is the tendency of pupils to work for their individual score rather than the group score when they have an opportunity to choose whether they wish to continue to work for themselves or for the group. The ratio was about 3 to 1, 74 per cent of the choices being for self and 26 per cent for the group. Thus, the pupils choose most often the motivation that is most effective.

Another investigator also found that rivalry was effective in stimulating achievement. Children of the fourth and sixth grades were used

as subjects, and the tasks were arithmetic problems. One group, known as the *control*, were given the tests by themselves but urged to try as hard as they could. The others, known as the *experimental section*, were divided into two competitive groups who competed against each other. The scores of each group were written on the board as well as announced orally. A strong competitive spirit developed during the period of rivalry. It will be observed in Table 14 that the control group gained little, remaining on a relatively constant level. The rivalry groups made all their gain at the beginning and showed no improvement thereafter, having apparently reached in the simple processes of addition the limit of their achievement at the beginning.

In this experiment the younger children improved their scores more than did the older ones, and the duller children also responded more to rivalry than did children of average and superior ability. Because the scores of the

inferior are low at the beginning, more gain is possible; and when expressed in percentage, a smaller gain may make a larger percentage of gain than the larger gain for a brighter person whose initial score is higher. Thus, a gain from 5 to 7, or 40 per cent, is relatively larger than a gain from 12 to 15 or 25 per cent.

The results of the various experiments on individual and group rivalry tend to indicate that young children respond more to group rivalry than do older children, who are stimulated more by individual competition and the desire to win for self rather than for the group. This change in motivation is probably brought about by the emphasis placed by activities in and out of school on individual accomplishment rather than cooperative endeavor and group achievement. The general morale of our society is based on competition and rugged individualism. Stories emphasize the struggle of the individual—the poor boy who struggled and gained wealth and distinction for himself. The marking system, praise and reproof of the individual, and individual achievement are stressed so that individualism is developed and working for self has become a stronger motive than working for the group. Conceivably, if cooperation were emphasized in the school procedures, the cooperative attitude could be developed so that the desire to work for the group would be increased.

TABLE 14. Scores in addition test of control and rivalry groups\*

Day	Groups	
	Control	Rivalry
First.....	7.43	7.24
Second.....	8.12	11.00
Third.....	8.19	11.26
Fourth.....	7.99	11.17
Fifth.....	8.06	11.39

\*After Elizabeth B. Hurlock, *The Use of Group Rivalry as an Incentive*, *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*, 22:278-290, 1927-1928.

The effectiveness of incentives in the forms of prizes, captaincy of groups, and ranking substantiates, in general, the results from other experiments showing that pupils working with definite incentives in mind achieve more than they do ordinarily. Thirty-five children of a 5A class were tested with multiplication problems of two digits by two digits for 7 weeks on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays. In this experiment their usual achievement was first established by ascertaining the number of problems done without incentives. Then the children were tested to determine their scores when they were working for 5-cent chocolate bars, for captaincy of the class, and for other ranking in the class. The person with the highest score was announced as captain, and the ranking of each person was written on the black-board next to his name. There were four situations in which the achievement was tested, as follows: (1) no incentives; (2) chocolate bars; (3) captaincy and ranking in the class; (4) combination of the incentives given in (2) and (3).

A comparison of the achievement with and without incentives is shown in Table 15. Rivalry score refers to the score made when the pupils worked to become captain or obtain a high rank in their class.

TABLE 15. *Average number of problems worked without incentives and with several kinds of incentives\**

	No incentive	Prize of chocolate bar	Captaincy and ranking	Several incentives
Mean.....	23.6	35.9	34.6	38.9
Gain over no incentive.....	....	12.3	11.0	15.3
Percentage of superiority.....	....	52.0	47.0	65.0

\* Adapted from Clarence L. Leuba. A Preliminary Experiment to Qualify an Incentive and Its Effects, *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*, 25:275-288, 1930.

In this experiment, too, the pupils in the lowest quarter made the highest percentage of gain. Apparently, when students are spurred by incentives, their achievement is increased considerably. Most experimenters have found this to be the case. In this experiment a combination of incentives proved to be most effective.

When a person works for a prize, which in this instance was a chocolate bar, it is doubtful that the intrinsic value of the prize lures the student to his highest achievement. Except when the prize is worth a large amount—and even then not in all instances—the desire is not only to have the prize but also to gain the distinction of winning it. This is evident from the fact that the children did about as well to obtain a high rank as they did to win chocolate bars. The feeling of social

recognition and of satisfaction that comes from winning is the most fundamental of incentives and motives. The boy or girl wants to be known as a winner, or one who ranks higher than the other boy or girl.

**The Effect of Working in a Group and of Working Alone.** Some pupils are stimulated by the presence of their fellows and do better in a group; others can accomplish more when they work alone. Then again, differences exist according to the task, some kinds of work being best done alone, others being done better in a group. When a person is writing a book or conducting a complicated experiment, he seeks privacy; but in mechanical types of work, as in much of factory work or in phases of work in physical education where rhythm is a factor, group work is more effective. In this connection, it should be pointed out that this discussion does not pertain to group and individual competition or rivalry. It refers merely to individuals as being in and working in a group in distinction to those working without the presence of the group.

The evidence does indicate differences in achievement in working under the social influences of the group and in working alone. In general, work more mechanical in nature is done better by an individual in a group than when he is alone, but work that is complicated and difficult is usually done better alone than in a group. Speed is a more important factor in simple tasks, and it is stimulated by the presence of others. Difficult problems requiring more careful reasoning and reflective thinking are done best away from the presence of the class.

As is true in almost all situations, some individuals differ from the general trends. Some types respond better to the group situation than do others; the poorer students, for example, respond more readily when they are in a group, whereas sensitive persons do better alone. It matters also how the group is involved in the situation and what the relationship of the individual to the group is. If the group acts as an audience or in some other way that causes the individual pupil to be sensitive to it, some pupils, because of such a sensitivity and because of particular weaknesses, are influenced unfavorably. Others, in turn, are by similar circumstances stimulated by the group and perform at top level.

On the whole, whether the individual works in the presence of others or alone, the differences are not very large. Variations occur among individuals. In general, however, the highest quality of work is done by working alone when the tasks are difficult; when quality and difficulty are not involved to so great an extent and high speed is desirable, working in a group is most effective.

**The Effect of Praise and Reproof on Achievement.** Some teachers and parents are given to speaking pleasantly and approvingly to children; some are inclined to blame or reprove them; others are neutral,

being neither positive nor negative. Words are used to approve or disapprove the behavior of children in order to improve it. The teacher who praises a child for his work does so in order to stimulate him; even more, when she reproves him, she does so to check undesirable behavior or to spur him to greater achievement.

In this connection, it may be pointed out that one of the distinguishing features of very good and very poor teachers is the nature of the responses that they make to the efforts of their pupils. The superior teachers nod approval, speak encouragingly, and in general react positively. The poor ones, on the other hand, are inclined to be negative in their reactions, deprecating their pupils' efforts, scolding them, and finding fault with their work. Of course, these are not the practices that cause some teachers to be good and others poor; rather, they are symptomatic of good or poor teaching and of the personalities of the teachers. On the whole, commendation is more effective than fault-finding, but merely changing one's tactics in this respect would not make a good teacher out of a poor one or a poor teacher out of one who is now effective. But let us turn to the evidence on the effect of praise and reproof on achievement.

The typical experiment consists in having groups of pupils working on tasks when praised, scolded, and neither praised nor scolded. In one experiment a group present in the room was ignored when the other groups were either praised or reproved—nothing whatever was said to the ignored group.

An experiment often referred to is one with an arrangement like that just described, with a praised, a reproved, an ignored, and a control group. Over a period of 5 days, pupils of the fourth and sixth grades worked addition problems of six three-place numbers. All the students of the experiment were first tested and, on the basis of their scores, divided into four groups, a control, a praised, a reproved, and an ignored group. The control group was placed in a separate room, but the praised, reproved, and ignored groups were given the tests in the same room.

The praised group was commended in the presence of the reproved and ignored groups. The name of each member was read, and in response the pupil came forward. Then the praised group was commended for its effort and achievement. When praised, it was also urged to do its best and improve its record. The same procedure was used for the reproved group. It was scolded for its carelessness, poor work, and failure to improve. The members of the ignored group were present in the room with the praised and scolded groups and listened to the treatment that each received. Nothing, however, was said to the ignored group.

The results are given in Table 16. The achievement of the control



group, which worked by itself, practically remained on a level, but with a slight tendency to decline; it is surprising that a fairly sharp decline did not occur. Apparently, these pupils did their work with no increase or decrease in enthusiasm and effort. The ignored group showed a little improvement at first, but the effect of witnessing approval and disapproval apparently dissipated that improvement.

It is a most interesting fact that the initial improvement of the praised and reproved is the same. The effects of scolding soon wear off, however, and there is a decline, though not to a level below the initial score. In the case of the praised group the trend is toward a slow but steadily increasing achievement after the first initial spurt.

TABLE 16. *Average scores made on arithmetic tests by groups working under different incentives for a period of five days\**

Groups	First day	Second day	Third day	Fourth day	Fifth day
Control.....	11.8	12.3	11.6	10.5	11.4
Praised.....	11.8	16.6	18.8	18.8	20.2
Reproved.....	11.8	16.6	14.3	13.3	14.2
Ignored.....	11.8	14.2	13.3	12.9	12.4

\* After Elizabeth B. Hurlock, *An Evaluation of Certain Incentives Used in School Work*, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 16:145-159, 1925.

These results show that praise is most effective and reproof next. Being ignored in the presence of praise and reproof results in a little better achievement than when pupils work by themselves with no particular stimulation of any kind.

Further analysis indicated that praise influences the poor students most and that reproof has an unfavorable effect on them. Reproof, on the other hand, may have a desirable effect on some of the brighter children, although on the whole praise is better. Poorer pupils need praise and encouragement, but the bright are so accustomed to "easy sailing" that occasional reproof may spur them to better work.

The teacher needs to exercise discrimination in the use of praise and reproof and also to be selective in its application. Either one used in excess or in a perfunctory manner may cause it to be not only ineffective but even negative in its effects. An occasional scolding and reprimand may stimulate a desirable response; but if often repeated, they will lose their effectiveness. Praise is effective for a longer time, but it, too may easily be overdone. Pupils also differ individually in their responsiveness to both commendation and disapproval. Thus, praise is best for one and reproof for another. A few pupils are badly upset by unfavorable criticism; others are callous to it. If the teacher

studies her pupils carefully, she can discover their reactions to her criticism, favorable or unfavorable, and can treat them accordingly.

It has been sensed by some psychologists and educators that praise is not always effective and that blame is not always detrimental, in fact, is no less effective in some cases than praise. The suggestion has penetrated through various investigations that praise is better for some people and blame may be better for others. The factors of introversion and extroversion have been suspected as being related to the relative effectiveness of praise and reproof.

An experiment with fifth-grade children by Thompson and Hunnicutt tested this idea. The children were first given an introversion-extroversion test and on the basis of the scores were classified as introverts and extroverts. They were then given a cancellation test, which consisted of rows of Arabic numbers from 0 to 9 printed in random order. The children were instructed to draw a line through the 7's, in other words, to cancel out the 7's, found in the rows of numbers. This is not a difficult or complex task, and attention and effort determine to a large extent the scores that the pupils attain.

The pupils were tested six different times by this cancellation test. P, poor, was put at the top of the test papers of one group, and G, good, was placed at the top of the test papers of another group, and these marks were placed at the top of each paper of the same pupils for all the tests except the last test, when all received G. Thus there was one group of children that received P, poor, all the time, except for the last examination; and one group received G, good, all the time. One group was blamed or scolded in effect, while the other group was praised. There was a third group, a control group, and no comments were made about their test results and no mark written on their papers.

Certain important findings of this study should be emphasized. Both blame and praise increased achievement. Both the blamed and praised groups did considerably better than the control group, and, strangely, the blamed group did slightly better than the praised. A question might be raised, however, about the effect of blame over a long period of time. It is conceivable that negative effects might set in.

The point to be emphasized in this experiment is the effect of blame and praise on extroverts and introverts. Blamed extroverts and praised introverts gained the most and did about equally well in the test. Praised extroverts and blamed introverts gained about equally but did considerably more poorly than did blamed extroverts and praised introverts.

In short, blame stimulates extroverts to improve their achievement but does not have a good effect on introverts. Praise, on the other hand, has a good effect on the achievement of introverts, but it does not have such a stimulating effect on extroverts. Possibly extroverted people

have received more praise during their lifetime and respond less favorably to it, therefore, while the introvert has been found fault with more and consequently is stimulated by praise and not by blame.

These results suggest that the teacher should use blame and praise discriminatingly in terms of the individual child. The more sensitive, retiring child who lives in his own world will probably respond favorably to praise. In fact, approval is good for him, not only because it will improve his achievement, but also because it will do him good emotionally. The extroverted child, the one who is forward and aggressive, will probably be improved by being blamed. At least, the teacher should make him feel responsible for doing better than he is doing at present. Blame and reproof should not be used with an extrovert to the point where the child feels that the teacher is "picking on him." That is bad for any child. The teacher should recognize the differential effect of praise and blame on pupils and adapt her methods accordingly.

Teachers differ in the effectiveness with which they use praise and reproof. Like other teaching methods and techniques, the worth of praise and reproof depends on the personality of the teacher. If she overpraises and overscolds, then they lose their flavor and force. Some teachers praise hardly at all. If the teacher does not have good standing with her pupils, then her lack of prestige nullifies or distorts her attempts to improve her students through praise and reproof. A sincere, highly appreciated teacher can capitalize on the good will of her pupils by praising warmly and generously and by reprimanding on the occasion when it does some good either individually or collectively.

**Knowledge of Results.** In many situations, the pupils hardly know how they stand. They are not certain that they are making progress; what their relation is to others in the class; or whether their work is highly satisfactory, moderately satisfactory, or barely satisfactory. Report cards indicate a child's status in a general way, but they are becoming less specific, indicating only approximately whether the work is satisfactory or unsatisfactory.

A common complaint of pupils is that their teachers do not return their papers. Students wish to have their written lessons and examinations marked and returned, so that, in addition to profiting from the corrections, they also will know to what degree they are successful. They want a knowledge of results.

Graphs and records are sometimes kept of pupils' achievement in spelling, reading, arithmetic, athletic contests, and other school activities so that they may know the results of their work. These charts are kept by the students or posted in the classroom. They watch their curves and are motivated to improve. They have knowledge of

study of a language, takes up the piano, or begins work in other fields, he finds the work rather distasteful at first. If he persists, however, and acquires competence, his attitude toward the work will change. Interest develops and stimulates activity, and thus it is proved again that "nothing succeeds like success."

In the older psychologies, emphasis was placed on "striking while the iron is hot." According to this theory, there are certain periods when children have certain interests, and these periods should be capitalized on. The weakness in this psychology is that there probably are no specific and definite periods when different interests burn brightly.

Another point of view is that *we should strike until the iron becomes hot*. There may be little interest at first; but if we prod ourselves and develop ability, we become interested. Much that we do as regular routine—reading, typewriting, piano playing—was once hard, discouraging work; but when a certain degree of ability was attained, interest increased correspondingly. Thus it is with specialists in any field—medicine, law, chemistry, psychology—when they acquire competence; many features of their work become very fascinating. Interest and drive are concomitants of acquired ability.

**Reasons for Lack of Interest.** High-school students lose interest or never acquire an interest in their studies for reasons that center in the subject, in themselves, and in the teacher. Probably the foremost reason is that the student sees no reason why he should be studying a subject. He sees no need for it. He also finds the material uninteresting and too hard, which may be his fault in that he does not work hard enough or has not the capacity to do well in the subject, or the teacher's in that she does not teach well enough to make it interesting.

In fact, the teacher is often blamed by the student for his lack of interest. The student declares that the teacher is monotonous, explains poorly, has no enthusiasm herself for the subject, and is unable "to put the subject across."

The responsibility is divided, actually. The student should work hard enough to develop interest if at all possible. The teacher should explain to the pupil what need and purpose a subject actually serves and should teach it so well that the student learns the subject and gets interested in it. Usually a student's degree of interest in a subject is in proportion to the teacher's personality and her power to arouse enthusiasm.

**Threat of Failure and Learning.** Related to the problem of marking pupils' achievement is the problem of promotion. Formerly, when pupils had low marks, they ordinarily were failed; when their marks were satisfactory, they were promoted to the next grade. During recent years, however, there has been a definite trend toward lessening

the number of failures; in some schools, children are rarely, if ever, retained in a grade to repeat the work in which they have failed.

A question may be raised concerning the effect of this policy on the industry and achievement of the pupils. Some teachers insist that if the threat of failure is not held over school children they will not work hard on their lessons and that it is necessary to fail some in order to cause all to put forth their best efforts. Other teachers feel that students can be motivated in other ways and that many work even harder when they know that next year they will be in the next grade and will have to do more difficult work.

The value of the threat of failure as a motive has been tested. Nine teachers in teaching their students warned them about the danger of failure and occasionally threatened them with that penalty. Nine other teachers in this experiment, however, made it clear to their students that there would be no failures and that everyone would pass. The awareness of the two groups of the policy that applied to them was adequately maintained, but no more than that. The pupils in this experiment were of the second and fifth grades. They were tested at the beginning of the semester and at the end, in order to check the effect on achievement of the policy of impending failure and no failure. It was discovered that the difference in the achievement of the failure and nonfailure groups was very small—probably inconsequential. If there was any superiority whatever in achievement, it lay with the nonfailure group. When analysis was made to determine the effect on students of different levels of intelligence, it was also discovered that there were very small and unimportant differences.

When the teachers were asked to indicate the reactions of the pupils, a few replied that some worked better when they knew that they were to be promoted; on the other hand, when some pupils felt that they would not pass, they developed the attitude "It's no use anyhow!" Other teachers felt that some pupils became slack when they knew that they would pass no matter how poor their work. Some teachers found no change, others felt that conditions were improved, and others again felt that the classroom situation was poorer. Such wide diversity of opinion is more or less consistent with findings that indicate that a nonfailure or a failure policy makes comparatively little difference in the actual classroom achievement of the pupils. The advantage of any policy on failure or no failure will probably be found in its effect on the feelings and characters of the pupils. Such a policy will have to be tested over a long period of time in order to yield definite results.

**Characteristics of Incentives and Motives.** An incentive, such as a prize or reward that one works for, is extrinsic to a person, or outside of him. As soon as the reward is won, efforts cease largely or even

entirely. Thus, school marks are incentives—in fact the student ceases to study when he gets his mark in a subject. “That course is over,” as is usually said.

A motive is intrinsic, or within a person. It is more closely integrated with a person's activities and therefore more persistent and prevailing. Motives have their roots in needs and drives; one tries to release the tensions caused by these needs and drives by satisfying them. For example, a student works hard to maintain and improve his standing. He wants to be respected and thought well of. This persistent want cannot be satisfied once and for all. It can be gratified only by a chain of achievements and successes. Nearly everyone must work continuously for economic security. These and the other needs and wants come from within the individual, and they have to be satisfied again and again. Thus many motives persist for life.

An incentive should cause the student to focus his energies on the task at hand. This is usually accomplished if the goal is clearly in mind and if the learner feels a real need.

All people have the same basic motives, although in various degrees of strength, but incentives for one person may not be incentives for another. Incentives must fit the levels of the learners, who vary greatly in their capacities and interests. Prizes, scholarships, and high marks appeal only to the few who have a good chance of achieving these honors. For most students, such incentives make no appeal because they are above their capacities and levels of aspiration.

Children and adults have their particular aspiration or goal levels, and these may or may not be consistent with their capacities. A few of high capacity are comparatively satisfied with little and therefore have a low aspiration level, and there are those of low capacities whose goals are relatively much higher. Both types need appropriate incentives, the more capable so that they will “raise their sights” and the less capable so that they will lower theirs. There should be goals for children of all degrees of capacity. Because of the wide range of general and special abilities and interests, the school must provide many incentives. This is ordinarily done in music, athletics, drama, citizenship, industrial arts, and other areas of activities. Still, there are some pupils who are not “reached.”

Incentives vary according to sex, brightness or dullness, and age of the learner. Devices used to stimulate kindergarten children will not appeal to high-school students. There are basic similarities in the recognition given the achievement of old and young, but the incentives for children are more apparent. Similarly, bright and dull children differ, for example, in their response to praise and blame. Still, all motivation that results in the learner's acquiring prestige or a feeling of worth is nearly always effective.

The incentive is often made the end rather than the means. The consequence is that the attitude toward the tasks at hand is not one of deep-rooted interest. Instead, students work for the prize, school mark, praise, or whatever the incentives happen to be, rather than for competence in a subject. The purpose of incentives and motives is not to increase the effort devoted to incentives and motives themselves but to heighten the interest in the tasks at hand. The incentive is basically not effective if the pupil ceases to work when the badge, certificate, or mark has been received.

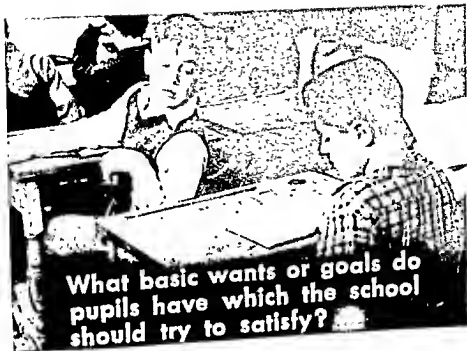
Incentives and methods in general are usually evaluated according to the achievement of the students, which is a good criterion, of course. But incentives should also be evaluated in terms of the feelings and attitudes which result from them. Good will ought to result from the use of incentives. If rivalry is used, does it result in sharp practices and hard feeling? Also, if prizes, such as medals, badges, gold stars, and certificates, are used to give distinction, do they lead to feelings of jealousy, selfishness, and excessive individualism? In other words, the morale that is developed needs to be taken into account along with achievement; generally good morale and good achievement go together, and vice versa. We know that students and workers in coercive and high-pressure situations may achieve well even though their true morale is not good; but if the incentives stimulated good attitudes, their achievement would probably be increased.

Usually praise, reproof, incentives, and any stimulant of interest and effort are potent in terms of their bearing on personal pride and a feeling of worth. If they make a person feel that he is appreciated, respected, and wanted, then his efforts will be directed to maintaining and even enhancing that status. If they deprecate him, he is likely not to care very much and his efforts will be indifferent.

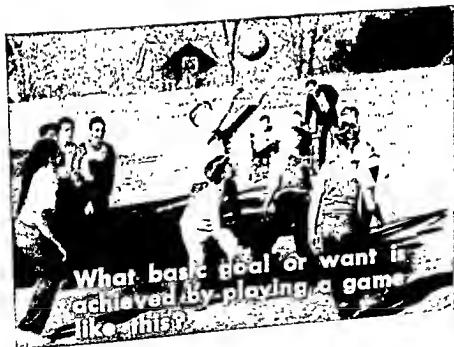
#### AUDIOVISUAL AIDS TO TEACHING

During the past decade, the use of audiovisual aids has greatly increased. Such aids are very successful in capturing the interest and attention of students. The most common to come to mind are sound pictures. But we must not overlook the reliable devices that have been used for so long, such as maps, charts, graphs, lantern slides, the phonograph, models of all kinds, pictures and photographs. The radio must not be forgotten, and the wire and tape recorders that have been used in the last few years. Now we have television, which has already been used educationally.

It has been predicted that television will revolutionize education by taking over much of the teacher's work. According to this notion, scheduled television will reach nearly every classroom, and the teaching and demonstrating will be done by a relatively small group of



What basic wants or goals do pupils have which the school should try to satisfy?



What basic goal or want is achieved by playing a game like this?



highly specialized teachers and performers who can far excel the typical classroom teacher in teaching effectiveness. This, though plausible, is not likely to happen.

It was predicted that the motion picture would replace many teachers, and the radio was expected to accelerate the process. This did not occur. But what has happened will continue to happen, and in fuller measure. The teacher has made educational use of each new device and means as they came along: the slide projector, phonograph, motion pictures, radio, and now television. The teacher will not be replaced, but her teaching will be reinforced by these aids and thereby enriched.

Incorporation of motion pictures, radio, and television in one's teaching adds variety and interest. Through the use of the audiovisual aids, the students are richly stimulated and have vivid experiences which would be impossible without them. A number of technical problems like chemical combinations and the action of electricity and of motors in physics can be clearly pictured and explained with talking motion pictures. The growth and development, for example, of a child during the prenatal and postnatal period can be demonstrated in pictures so that the student sees how the process actually takes place. He can visualize how a child starts as a speck which develops to form the sense organs, nervous system, head, limbs, and torso. This is almost impossible to visualize if not seen in moving pictures. Any concept or idea which is dynamic and developmental in nature or which involves action is taught very effectively by motion pictures or television.

The Army and Navy have used and are using motion pictures extensively. A young man plucked from civilian life must be taught much about military and naval techniques in a short time. Audiovisual aids are used extensively and very effectively to do this job.

**Experimental Results of Teaching with Audiovisual Aids.** A teacher will, of course, use maps in geography and history; models and drawings in biology, botany, physics, and many other subjects; and graphic illustrations of various sorts without questioning whether or not they increase learning. We believe in using every means for making lessons clear and interesting. We can become very expansive in praising audiovisual aids as being vivid and as developing intense interest. We can add that they serve to demonstrate and explain as no other medium can. Pictures, motion pictures, and television enable one to analyze and comprehend what otherwise would be indefinite. All this is appropriate enough, but the vital question is "Does the student learn more?" Perhaps all we do with motion pictures and other audiovisual aids is to interest and entertain him. What is the real objective evidence that audiovisual aids increase learning?

This question is easily answered, for there has been considerable

## SUMMARY AND REVIEW

When people are highly motivated, they work intensively and accomplish much more than they do when working in the usual routine manner.

Rivalry causes people to work hard in order to achieve prestige and a feeling of personal worth.

The teacher regards as her major problem, the problem of interesting her pupils.

Attention consists in concentrating one's energies on some task or activity. Concentration varies in intensity and can center on a few or diffuse over many activities.

Attention varies with the kind of activity in the classroom—reports, demonstration, discussion, workbook, lecture, question and answer, and discussion by the teacher.

Rivalry tends to bring out maximum achievement, but it can cause an excessive desire to win and bad feeling.

Children work harder in competition when they are working for themselves than when they are working for group achievement. The unmotivated accomplish least. Working for prizes stimulates efforts; it is possible that the feeling of worth that comes from winning the prize constitutes greater motivation than the intrinsic value of the prize.

Some activities, such as sensorimotor activities, are stimulated by a social situation and by the presence of others, while complex activities requiring intense concentration are done best when engaged in alone.

Praise tends to produce more improvement than does reproof. But praise affects introverts more favorably, and reproof affects extroverts more favorably. Praise helps poor students more than able ones.

Pupils should have a knowledge of how they are progressing, for such knowledge usually causes them to work harder.

When pupils become more competent in a subject, they tend to become more interested, for ability tends to stimulate interest.

The teacher is responsible for stimulating interest. If she has a good personality and good teaching skills, she will probably stimulate her pupils to strong efforts.

In some schools all pupils are promoted, and in some there is a proportion that are failed. It has been found that when students know they will pass they achieve just as much as, and possibly slightly more than, they do when they know there is a possibility of failure.

Incentives should appeal to students of all ages and abilities. The incentives should be the means and not the ends and should not lead to bad feelings.

A motive is closely integrated with a person's activities and stimulates him to persist in his efforts. An incentive is more temporary; when the goal is reached, effort usually ceases. Motives and incentives stimulate effort, but their effect on morale needs to be considered.

Experiments are consistent in showing that audiovisual aids stimulate learning. Consequently, teachers should use films, slides, maps, models, the radio, phonographs, tape recorders, and museum materials.

Television seems promising educationally and may prove to be another help to the teacher.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. What conditions are conducive to more effective attention in class?
2. Teachers approve and disapprove; they praise and scold. What are the psychological facts about these practices?
3. "Threaten the students with low marks and with failure to pass because these threats will make them work harder." Comment.
4. When teachers state that their major problem is to stimulate pupil interest, they are saying that they find it difficult to interest their pupils in the classwork and in preparing their lessons. What can teachers do to motivate the students?
5. How can you apply the knowledge we have of the effectiveness of working alone or working in a group?
6. Compare the effects of competition and cooperation on learning.
7. Describe what you think is an ideal situation involving incentives and motivation.
8. Audiovisual aids to be effective should interest the student and thus capture their attention. Do they seem to do that? Discuss.
9. When we are awake, we are always attending to something. In class or in studying we should attend to the matter at hand in order to ensure the greatest amount of learning. Thus we should attend a minimum amount to the stimuli that are classified as distractions. Comment on the usual attention in the classroom and also in studying.
10. "The students don't know very clearly how they are getting along in school." Comment.
11. Describe both effective and ineffective attention. Give some examples.

## 19. Memory—Remembering and Forgetting

**What to Look For.** Formulate in your mind some ideas about what the passing of time does to what we have memorized. What materials seem to be remembered better than others?

Learn the factors that influence retention and forgetting.

What are some probable reasons why grade-school pupils do not seem to forget so much of their subject matter as college students do?

How do the experiences following a period of learning influence what has been learned? What is the meaning of *retroactive inhibition*?

Is it probable that subsequent experiences can add to and reinforce previous learning as well as tend to rub it out?

Does the better learner remember more than the poor learner? Does the person who learns much remember more of what he has learned than the person who learns little, or vice versa?

Some losses of knowledge and skill take place during the summer vacation. How serious are such losses? Note the differential nature of the forgetting.

Note that "bare" facts are forgotten more rapidly, while principles and concepts are retained better.

The importance of the recitation, with its recall and repetition of what is learned, should not be overlooked.

Material learned varies in the degree that it is understood, or in its meaningfulness. What is the relationship between meaningfulness and retention?

What is meant by the term *overlearning*, and what is its relationship to remembering?

How can review be made most effective for preventing losses by forgetting?

Some techniques and methods are set forth which will help a person remember better.

**Introduction.** As we were walking down the street, we noticed a poster that persistently appeared in the shopwindows. A "great psychologist" was in town, and he promised in general to "liberate

the mind" and specifically to improve the memory. The reward for taking his course would be the development of a superior memory, he promised.

In his free public lectures, which were held in the ballroom of the city's leading hotel, he gave demonstrations of his power to remember the names of a considerable number of persons in the audience who had been pointed out to him. He promised that he could teach his listeners how to learn and remember. This "psychologist" has no magical method for improving memory. If his methods are in any way effective, they are applications of established psychological principles.

**Forgetting and Retention.** Much that students learn and are able to reproduce in the form of adequate answers to examination questions is soon forgotten following the examination. The poems that children learn well enough to recite in class or on a program are quickly forgotten. It is easy to sense how little is retained of that which is memorized if we check ourselves on our ability to repeat the poems and other "pieces" that we learned as children. The poems remembered are probably those which we have had occasion to use or which we have made a habit of repeating. Most of the hundreds and thousands of facts acquired through the labors of pupils and teachers throughout a school career are forgotten.

A story showing how completely time may erase some memories was related by a person who, by chance, found a copy of the play in which he had had a leading part in high school. Twenty years had passed since he memorized and spoke his lines, and he reread the play in order to reacquaint himself with it and, in particular, to go over his own lines. To his astonishment, he discovered that the whole thing was almost completely unfamiliar. It was almost like reading a new play. A period of two decades had obliterated nearly all memory of lines that had once been well learned but that had been neither reviewed nor associated with anything since they had been learned. Comparably, the experience of seeing again a motion picture that was seen 10 to 20 years ago reveals, too, that most is forgotten.

Not all material learned or memorized is wiped out over a period of 20 years, but much is forgotten if not reviewed. There are also individual differences in the power of retention, some persons retaining much better than others. However, time and experience will destroy the ability to recall most materials that are memorized, such as poetry, passages, dates, names, and formulas. General and personal experiences that may be recalled by association and are surrounded with feeling and emotion are not so easily forgotten. An adult may remember many of his boyhood experiences and still forget much that is purely mental, such as the content of mathematics, physics, and history courses.

ing the end of a course, which leaves progressively less to be forgotten. The rate of forgetting may vary from subject to subject. Generally speaking, at the end of a year, between one-fourth and one-half is retained; at the end of 2 years, the amount retained is even less, and some loss is still going on.

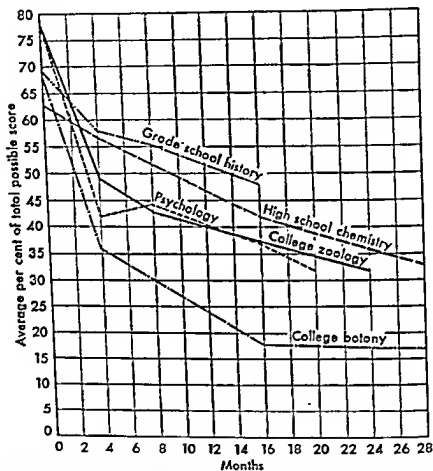


Fig. 23. Retention of one elementary-school subject, one high-school subject, and three college subjects for 16 to 28 months after the end of the course. (After Bassett, Greene, Powers, and Johnson. Reprinted by permission from S. L. Pressey, *Psychology and the New Education*, Harper & Brothers.)

The smaller loss of grade-school subject matter may be accounted for in at least two ways. In the first place, it is reviewed more frequently than the subject matter in high school or college. Arithmetic, geography, and history, for example, are continued throughout a number of grades; consequently, the loss of an appreciable body of knowledge in any of those fields is less likely because of both incidental and direct learning in those subjects. On the other hand, in colleges, for example, the student may take one or two courses in statistics, history, or economics and subsequently have little contact with the subject

matter of those courses. The loss is greatest when the materials of a course do not come again within the student's experience.

Another reason why the loss of learning is less for grade-school children than for older persons is the rapid mental growth and development of children. This development is sharply upward for grade-school children, especially those in the lower and intermediate grades. In high school, this curve of development is reaching a plateau; in college and during adulthood, mere increase in age brings no increase in mental power because of growth. But during the grade-school and, to some extent, the high-school years the strengthening mental power retards the course of forgetting.

#### **FACTORS AND CONDITIONS THAT INFLUENCE LEARNING AND THE AMOUNT OF RETENTION**

There are several factors that influence the amount forgotten and, conversely, the amount retained. Some of these factors, or conditions, are as follows:

- Experience following learning.
- The capacity of the learner and the amount learned.
- Summer vacation.
- Nature of material learned.
- The recitation.
- Meaningfulness.
- Thorough mastery, overlearning.
- Review and practice.

**Experience Following Learning and Effect on Retention.** The learner's experience following the period of studying and learning influences retention or forgetting. Some experiences stimulate forgetting. A period of sleep tends to retard it, whereas periods of other activities, such as active study of other lessons, may result in less retention. Probably the common opinion that the best time to study is early in the morning is not entirely sound. The time before bedtime may possibly be the best for study, for few stimuli play on the mind during sleep to demand attention and crowd out the material learned. This point may not be significant except to emphasize the desirability of fixing the material learned before other material has a chance to cause confusion or usurp the attention unduly.

Some experiences following a given learning increase the amount learned, while others cause a loss. In a study made of the retention of algebra it was discovered that after a year there was about a 19 per cent loss in fundamental operations but in problem-solving ability there was an increase of 10.5 per cent. The fact that all the students in the experiment had been taking geometry the year following their

another list of 20 is learned, it is understandable that the second 20 interfere with the retention of the first 20. Since there are 40 meaningless syllables in all to remember, this extends and greatly complicates their retention. Thus the 20 syllables learned first have now been covered over and obliterated to a considerable extent.

Let us also consider the learning of poetry. Does the learning of the second stanza tend to rub out the memory of the first stanza, and the third stanza the previous two stanzas, and so on? Probably not, for another factor is present in poetry, and that is meaning. There are threads of thought and logical relationships that run through a poem. This binding together by a unity and belongingness of the parts helps to prevent retroactive inhibition. Meaning is the cement that reinforces and enhances rather than inhibits learning.

We shall turn next to learning that is more typical, such as the acquisition of a body of knowledge and skills. This is the learning that accrues from one's experiences and from trying to acquire an education. The learner specializes in a field of learning, and most of the materials in that field are related in content. The engineer studies mathematics, physics, chemistry, and mechanics, and he finds that these learnings correlate. The doctor studies psychology, physiology, anatomy, chemistry, and bacteriology, and he, too, finds that the bodies of knowledge in these fields complement and supplement each other and do not conflict. And so it is within very broad limits with fields of learning.

Thus the learning of additional facts and principles does not complicate what has been learned before and make it more difficult to remember but correlates with it and makes it clearer. Former learnings are now nourished by the enrichment of additional meanings and, rather than obliterating much of what has been learned, actually keeps it alive and reinforces it.

Knowledge is basically unified. Therefore when students are being taught, ideas and principles that go together should be converged on the problem at hand. The more students are helped to correlate knowledge, the more will subsequent learning reinforce previous learning rather than erase it. Until we have solid experimental proof that forgetting is caused by new learning erasing previous learning, we are probably on safer ground to assume that retroactive inhibition applies particularly to rote memory of meaningless materials and that a correlation of skills and subject matter in fields of knowledge, results in strengthening previous learning rather than in weakening it.

**The Capacity of the Learner, the Amount Learned, and Retention.** Some learners have more capacity than others and consequently learn more. Forgetting is less rapid for those who have learned most, and the causes for this are several. Those who have learned most



are the most capable; they understood better what they learned and therefore learned it more thoroughly. Having a firmer hold on what they have acquired, they retain it better.

In addition, the more capable are more expansive in their interests and intellectual activities. They study more widely. Consequently, they learn much that is interrelated, and this wider learning tends to retard forgetting of what is learned. This applies to the usual facts, ideas, principles, and generalizations that constitute a person's education.

**Summer Vacation and Forgetting.** Some educators regard the usual summer vacation of about 3 months as detrimental in that children lose so much information and skill during that period. It is true that children lose some abilities during the summer vacation and that it may take 2 to 15 weeks to regain the education status which they had when vacation began. For most children, however, it takes only a short time to regain the summer-vacation losses.

Not all abilities show a loss, moreover. Reading ability and reasoning power are maintained through the vacation period, though more formal abilities, such as a knowledge of specific facts in history, geography, and arithmetic, decline. Thus, the ability to reason effectively in arithmetic does not decrease; the knowledge of tables and combinations does decline, however. The reading and general activity of students maintain their reading and reasoning ability, but the more specific and formal abilities decline because they are not practiced.

In connection with forgetting or loss of knowledge through disuse, studies have been made of the losses by children over the summer vacation. Some investigators who have studied this problem have discovered considerable loss and have been disturbed by what they consider a canceling of part of the gains made during the school year preceding the vacation. They measured the effect of vacation on the store of the pupils' knowledge by testing them before and after the summer, calculating the differences in achievement.

Not all studies of this question, however, have revealed a loss over the vacation. One made of eighth- and ninth-grade pupils shows that minor gains were made in vocabulary, language ability, history, civics, geography, and literature and that the only loss of any considerable amount was in arithmetical computation, or the more mechanical phases of arithmetic.

There is no cause for worry if a loss in ability occurs over the vacation period, for it is only temporary in nature. When children resume school in the fall, they are older by the length of the vacation—usually by about 3 months—and in many instances have had useful out-of-school experiences. They soon regain their vacation losses, if any, and proceed with greater facility to new ground. Possibly an absence from

work is desirable, for pupils are maturer and fresh when they resume their work.

A group of seventh-grade pupils was taught for a semester ending in June and then tested on its ability with general-science subject matter. It was retested in September following the summer vacation. Two tests were given every 2 weeks during the semester, one of which was used to test the acquisition of new material and the other to test retention of the old. Three different types of test were used; one to test the amount of factual information acquired, the second to test the ability to explain scientific phenomena, and the third to test the ability to draw conclusions from given data. The test used to measure the acquisition of facts and information was of the completion type. That used to measure the ability to explain scientific phenomena contained a number of items, each of which "consisted of a statement followed by five plausible explanations, only one of which was correct." And the test items designed to test the ability to draw conclusions from given data "consisted of a statement followed by five plausible conclusions, only one of which was correct." A long comprehensive test was given in June and again in September; comparison of the results in June with those in September following the vacation indicated an average loss of 14 per cent for all three types of tests in the field of general science. The loss of factual information was a little over 17 per cent, which was also the amount of loss in ability to draw conclusions from given data.

The loss of ability to explain scientific phenomena decreased only 9 per cent during the same vacation period. Apparently, the ability to explain scientific principles is lost to a lesser extent than one's knowledge of facts and information. It is a little surprising that the same statement does not apply to the ability to draw conclusions, for ordinarily this should not decline so rapidly as knowledge of facts and information.

The loss over the vacation taken as a whole was less than usually found, probably because the subject matter was thoroughly learned. The procedure of giving two tests every 2 weeks to measure acquisition of new material and retention of old had resulted in thorough learning.

Analysis was made also of the loss according to mental ability. The losses were least for the group with the highest and greatest for the group with the least ability. Those who know most tend to retain most; those who know least, to retain least.

It must be recognized that a time will come at graduation or other time of leaving school when students will cease studying systematically and that abilities not exercised will decline. Such loss is inevitable, but it is hoped that the students have drawn sound conclusions and made wise generalizations on which to base their judgments, for these

they will not lose. For instance, a person may have forgotten many of the details of his courses in physiology but may have arrived at certain conclusions about exercise and diet. In addition, he may have developed certain ideals and attitudes about the human organism that influence his mode of living or his point of view toward evolution. Even during their school career, students lose some knowledge of a course after they have taken the final examination in it and started new courses. Losses are certain to occur through disuse and retroactive inhibition, but there are certain residual gains in the forms of attitudes, conclusions, and generalizations that last much longer.

**Characteristics of Material Learned and Retention.** Some phases of learning are probably remembered better than others. The retention of material studied has been tested after a year has elapsed to find out whether or not there is differential retention. The examination was devised to measure the ability to select from a list of true and untrue statements pertaining to chemistry those which were untrue; the ability to indicate facts and principles of chemistry that correctly apply to the solution of problems; a knowledge of terminology, such as definitions and descriptions of chemical terms; a knowledge of symbols, formulas, and valence; and the ability to balance equations.

TABLE 18. *Retention in percentage of gain made during the course\**

	<i>Girls</i>	<i>Boys</i>	<i>Both</i>
Selection of facts.....	64	93	84
Application of principles.....	93	91	92
Terminology.....	46	75	66
Symbols, formulas, and valence.....	65	73	70
Balancing equations.....	76	70	72
Total.....	67	87	81

\* Adapted from Frutchey, 1937.

To test the amount of retention, the students were examined a year after the completion of the course. Table 18 indicates the percentage of retention in terms of the gain made from the beginning to the end of the school year. For example, the girls retained 64 per cent of the gain that they had made in the selection of facts during their year of chemistry; the boys, 70 per cent of their ability to balance equations. Sex differences occur also in the percentage of gain retained, but the largest differences evident in Table 18 are probably accentuated by certain accidental factors and probably do not represent the true differences. Generally, sex differences are not so large as these.

Least was retained of terminology, or the ability to identify chemical terms, as it was measured, and most of the application of principles.

These facts are important, for they indicate that the power to use and apply knowledge is lost less rapidly than the knowledge of terms. Therefore the teacher should not limit his teaching to drilling on bare facts and principles but should enrich these by relating them to live situations.

Furthermore, difficult material is forgotten more rapidly than is easy material. This is largely caused by the condition that easy material is learned more thoroughly and is better understood, while the difficult material has not been grasped so firmly.

**The Recitation and Retention.** A pupil may spend all his study time studying, or he may spend part of it recalling and reciting what he has read. Least is retained if the former method is used; both immediate and remote memory are improved by recalling and reciting. One-half to even over three-fourths of the time apportioned to a lesson can be used with profit in recalling or reciting the content of the lesson.

The recitation can be made very effective not only as a means of setting forth and explaining the material to be remembered but also for developing in students the mind-set for trying to acquire during the recitation the contents of the lesson. In addition, some of the principles of the recitation can be applied in supervised study and also in individual study by training the students to recite to themselves or by systematically trying to recall the contents of the lesson. This process requires active attention and the will to learn, which are often absent when the lesson is merely being read. These points are discussed at greater length in the chapter *How to Study and Learn*.

**Meaningfulness and Retention.** Many experiments have been conducted on the retention of meaningful and meaningless material. The results indicate that meaningless material, such as nonsense syllables, is forgotten much more readily than meaningful material. The retention of meaningless material depends on sheer memory, whereas the retention of meaningful material is helped by associations. Facts related to known facts, words arranged in poems, and ideas suggested by others are remembered longer than isolated facts, words, and ideas. In Figure 24, the retention of meaningful material and that of meaningless material is compared. Observe that forgetting of both meaningful and meaningless material is rapid for the first 20 days, but more so for the meaningless material.

Thus, in teaching, it is essential to help the students understand so clearly and fully that forgetting will be retarded. When the pupil says, "The teacher made it so clear and vivid when I learned it that I can hardly forget it," he is psychologically correct. Vividness in learning is the first requisite for effective retention, and obviously something must first be learned before it can be retained.

**Intent to Learn.** The want to learn and to remember determines to a considerable extent the amount achieved. If the attention is indifferent and the repetition perfunctory and there is little or no intent to remember, little learning and retention are achieved. Interest and mind-set are necessary for retention.

The present educational organization with its many required courses, which are completed by an examination at the end, develops in pupils

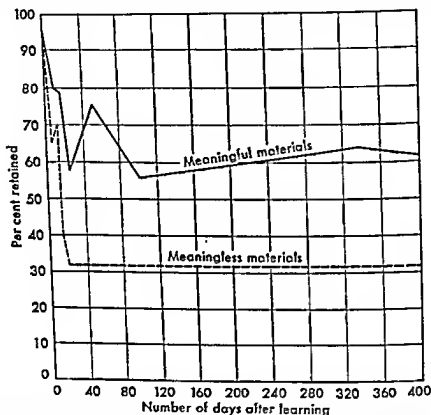


Fig. 24. The retention of meaningless and meaningful material as measured by the recall method. The curve for meaningless material is based upon 18 studies and that for meaningful material is based upon 24 studies. (From Robert A. Davis and C. C. Moore, *Methods of Measuring Retention*, *Journal of General Psychology*, 1935.)

not an intent to remember but even a mind-set to forget. Students feel relieved that a course is over and make little or no effort to retain what they have learned. Consequently, forgetting goes on at a fast pace, with no attempt by the student to prevent it.

**Thorough Mastery, Overlearning.** One of the best ways to prevent forgetting is to learn thoroughly. That which is barely learned is rapidly forgotten. When a pupil learns a poem so that he is just able to repeat it without error; if he has learned his lesson hurriedly and can set forth some, but not all, of the facts; if he can type without error sometimes, if unusually careful; and if he can barely play a piece on the piano correctly, this material on which the hold is weak will be quickly

forgotten. The learning should be carried beyond this stage, so that the facts, information, and ideas are thoroughly understood and firmly retained. Just as one drives a stake deep so that it is firm, ties a rope with an extra knot, drives in an extra nail, and, in general, exercises extra care to prevent loosening, so, to prevent forgetting, the learner should study and review the material until it is firmly and thoroughly acquired.

*Overlearning* is a term applied to learning beyond the stage where the material can be said to have been learned. If a child has learned the arithmetic tables so that he can give the answers without error, he may be said to have learned them. Continued study of them may then be described as overlearning the combinations. Up to a certain extent, time spent in overlearning, in fixing the material learned, is profitably used. If, for example, an hour is needed to learn a number of foreign words, a poem, or some essential facts, up to a half hour, or up to 50 per cent more time, can profitably be used to overlearn them. The forgetting prevented by more thorough learning is of such an amount that it pays to spend time studying a topic after it has been barely learned. There is obvious value in having a firm grasp of a subject rather than a faint hold, even if the latter were not so easily lost.

**Review and Practice for Retention.** Forgetting some facts, names, places, and events cannot be avoided. There is no possible way to retain all that we have learned. People differ widely in their power to retain as well as to learn; but no matter how retentive they may be, human beings are able to recall only a small portion of all that they have learned since birth. Knowledge that has been acquired but is seldom used or rarely brought to the attention may be forgotten, but it can be revived when needed, and generally relearning will take less time than the original learning. For the most part, we retain that which we need and practice most or that which has been vividly impressed on our memory by certain associations or by emotionalized situations such as those of unusual success and happiness.

There is some information, such as arithmetic combinations, various poems, words, technical terms, languages, and outstanding historical events, that one wishes to retain. After acquisition and understanding, reviews and drills may be spaced to decrease forgetting. An important principle to observe is that the first period of review or practice following the learning should come after only a short lapse of time. If new words of a foreign language have been learned, they will be lost if a long period elapses before the review. If they are reviewed within a short time, say the next day, forgetting will be checked. The time interval between succeeding practices can be increased progressively. Thus, if the first interval is 1 day, the next one might be 2, the following one 4 days, then 8, 16, 32, and so on. A distribution approximating

geometrical progression or doubling the previous interval is a fairly satisfactory one. If the interval is too long, the learner will find that forgetting has set in to such an extent that considerable practice is required to relearn. The intervals should be of such length as to reduce to a minimum the necessity for relearning. In general, intervals of increasing length are more conducive to economical relearning. One hundred minutes of review carefully apportioned will prevent more forgetting than 100 minutes used as a single period or distributed unsystematically after long periods of no practice.

In addition to the formal and systematic aspect of learning and forgetting, there is a more indirect and informal method of facilitating the process of learning and retention. To illustrate, consider the case of the pupil who learns words formally. He increases his vocabulary by learning the meanings of a list of words by rote. When he can define all the words without an error, he reviews them systematically to prevent forgetting their meaning.

Such practice and review are effective, but this should not cause us to overlook the learning that is more incidental in its character. The extent of a person's vocabulary can also be increased without planned drill and review. Most of the learning of words by both children and adults is done informally or incidentally. Words are learned by hearing them in speech and by reading them in papers, magazines, and books. The meanings of new words are studied in the dictionary or are defined by someone who knows the definitions. Because the words are used in spoken or written sentences along with other words, their meanings are fitted into a particular context. Associations are made, and the meanings become functional. The most effective method of acquiring words and retaining their meaning is to read widely so that the words are experienced in various uses. It may also be added that discussion, debating, writing, and reciting stimulate the acquisition of word meanings.

The same concepts apply in other fields. Pupils can learn the principles of composition by memorizing rules whose retention can be assured by systematic reviews, for a time at least. A more psychological approach, however, consists in motivating the pupils to write compositions and letters that grow out of projects. The teacher can then utilize the principles of composition to explain the strengths or weaknesses of her pupils' writing and to suggest improvement. Thus, the principles are learned in connection with actual writing. Having been learned by exercise and practice rather than by rote, they can be more readily retained and recalled. When we learn in a real rather than an artificial situation, more cues have been developed and thereby recall is increased.

Continued and systematic review of materials that have been

learned is not a practical way to prevent forgetting the vast amount that we learn from year to year. That procedure is impossible, for we should soon reach a point where we would have to devote all our time to reviewing old material and none to expanding our knowledge and skills. Sustained study in various fields will usually suffice to maintain old proficiencies and abilities and will develop new ones. Because of interrelationship in knowledge, much that has been formerly learned will often be incidentally reviewed and reinterpreted.

However, it must be recognized that a time is reached when the amount forgotten is about equivalent to the amount acquired. Such a point of equilibrium represents the limit of development through learning.

### HOW TO REMEMBER BETTER

Almost daily we are faced with the need to remember a name, fact, number, or event and often are harassed and embarrassed by our inability to do so. Teacher and pupil must rely on their memories constantly, and the more that is remembered, the more effective the mental processes will be. Any discussion that will help to increase the amount retained is vital to everyone.

Actually all there is to having a good memory is to get hold of knowledge and then hold onto it. Getting intellectually rich makes use of the same process as becoming wealthy—keep acquiring, and keep it.

The first consideration is how to learn that which is to be retained. The following are the requisites for acquisition:

1. There must be a want to learn and remember—an interest and motive.
2. One should pay close attention and concentrate on that which is to be learned.
3. Perception and understanding should be clear and comprehensive. The meanings should be clearly understood.
4. Questions should be asked to clarify any difficulties.

After an idea, principle, fact, name, or event is fully understood and learned, the next step is to retain it. Forgetting must be minimized.

1. One must go over and repeat that which has been learned.
2. One should reflect on it and talk about it. Drill may be effectively used to fix in the mind some things like dates, names, and facts.
3. The attempt should be made to associate what has been newly learned with formerly learned material to which it is logically associated.
4. Material should be organized in large units so that it will not be in isolated bits and fragments.

Let us apply this to the learning of some lines from one of Shakespeare's plays. First of all the students must be interested in the play; this may come about from personal pride, the intrinsic interest of the



lines, and the feeling that it is desirable to learn them. The literature class may decide that playing a bit from Shakespeare would enrich their classwork, and this would tend to motivate them.

The students should understand the meaning of every word in the lines to be memorized. It is a good idea for pupils and teacher to say the lines in their own words, that is, to paraphrase them. All historical allusions should be understood, and the psychological implications, too.

Then the material is memorized word for word; to accomplish this, many repetitions will be necessary. Learning should be by larger parts rather than by smaller ones, and the relationships among Shakespeare's various statements should be grasped. Occasionally what has been learned should be repeated both aloud and silently. In trying to learn and remember the names of people, some of the same methods can be applied.

In learning material which is not to be remembered verbatim, equal stress can be placed on perception and understanding, but there is greater opportunity for relating new material with that formerly learned and for organizing it into large, meaningful units. The purpose of doing this is to prevent retroactive inhibition and to improve retention by association, or by the belongingness of the material.

As another illustration, consider the learning of addition combinations and multiplication tables. A considerable amount of motivated drill will be necessary, but this should be supplemented with many illustrations with objects so that the children will understand what it actually means to add and to multiply. Both the drill and illustrations should be accomplished by real problems so that addition and multiplication are used in every order and combination. All this will help the children to remember their addition combinations and multiplication tables as they have learned them in actual situations, and this gives them many cues for recalling what was learned. It will be observed that most of the eight guides for good retention have been practiced in these illustrations.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

We forget much that we learn, and the degrees of forgetting vary from a complete loss to no forgetting whatever. Forgetting is most rapid immediately following learning and slows down in its rate with the passing of time. Apparently, forgetting is most rapid in college, next in high school, and least in the grades.

Activity following a period of learning tends to hasten forgetting of what has been learned, and this acting back on what has been learned is called *retroactive inhibition*. There probably is least forgetting when sleep follows a period of learning.

Because much knowledge is related, subsequent study and experiences may add to and strengthen previous learning rather than tending to erase it.

The ablest student learns most and retains most. A reason for this is that he understands better what he learns than does the less able student.

Forgetting usually takes place during school vacation and is largest in the case of facts, but a general ability like reading increases. Whatever is forgotten is soon regained in the fall.

Principles and the ability to use or apply ideas are retained better than bare facts.

In trying to learn thoroughly and in the attempt to retain as much as possible the learner should recall what he has studied and should recite either silently or orally. The class recitation can be made very effective in preventing forgetting.

Materials which students learn vary in degree of meaningfulness, and retention correlates with meaningfulness.

If a student wishes to retain what he learns, he must first learn very thoroughly. Learning by extra practice beyond the point of bare learning is called *overlearning*. It is very profitable to spend extra time in learning very thoroughly.

The first review should take place shortly after the learning, say within a day or two, and thereafter at increasingly longer intervals. The reviews should be intensive, but during the reviews the student should look for new ideas and interpretations.

Good remembering, or retention, depends first on clear and definite learning and second on use and repetition that results in associations and in organization into larger, meaningful units.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. It is often said, "He learns slowly, but he hangs on to what he learns." Comment.

2. When a student has learned something that he wants to remember, when should he return to it and study it again?

3. There was a song to the effect that the more one learns the more one forgets, and after some manipulation of the words it was concluded that it does not pay to learn. Comment.

4. We forget much of what we learn and retain comparatively little. These experiences can possibly be compared with mining a great deal of ore for the metal obtained. Comment.

5. What are the psychological facts about the capacity of the learner, amount learned, and retention?

6. Can a person improve his capacity to remember? His methods of memorizing? How?

7. What is the relation between thorough learning and retention?

8. By the term *recitation* we refer to recalling the material, reciting it, and discussing and going over it. Discuss the effect of recitation on retention.
9. Why do grade-school children seem to forget less of their lessons than do college students?
10. What are the principles of effective review?
11. Show how experiences following learning of some material can expand that learning or cause a loss of learning.
12. If a student can "get by" with 18 hours of studying per week, why should he study 25 hours per week?
13. A good teacher explains carefully so that the pupils understand what they learn. She imparts meaning to the materials that are studied. Does this kind of teaching improve learning and retard forgetting? Explain your answer.
14. What are the effects of summer vacation on forgetting what the school tries to teach the pupils?
15. You cannot remember what you have not learned, hence the first requirement is thorough learning. Comment.
16. Studying before going to sleep may be a good practice. Comment.
17. Explain whether or not we remember some kinds of materials better than others.
18. Give the ideas and methods for remembering better.

## 20. Mental Discipline and Transfer

### *Training and Education*

**What to Look For.** Learn the meanings of the terms *transfer* and *mental discipline*.

Observe that there may be transfer of (1) knowledge, (2) skills, and (3) ideals.

Observe situations to which training and transfer are attributed when in fact only selection has taken place.

✓ Note that the curriculum has changed greatly and that former notions about transfer and discipline do not control the curriculum, whereas formerly, with a limited curriculum, they governed much of educational practice.

✓ In the case of the former engineering school that is described, differentiate between discipline, transfer, and selection. What is the difference in the educational theory of this school as it is today and as it was yesterday?

✓ Understand and be able to apply the theories of generalization and identical elements.

Some experiments on transfer are described. Be sure you understand the methods of the experiments, the testing, and the results.

✓ Transfer varies according to the mental ability of pupils, and the reader should understand this differential transfer.

Some experimental results are given on the transfer effects of individual school subjects, and these results should be understood.

How can languages be taught most effectively? Specifically, how can Latin be made most valuable?

✓ It is emphasized that teaching and education should be pointed toward achieving maximum discipline and transfer.

A table is given that summarizes the results of experiments on transfer. These results should be understood.

✓ What kind of school curriculum should we have in terms of what we know about transfer?

Observe how disciplinary values and transfer are obtained.

Even though mental discipline and transfer are no longer dominant educational objectives, what should the teacher do in order to train her pupils most effectively?

**Introduction.** The disciplinary value of the study of logic was advocated for prelaw students by the president of an important university. He stated that, according to his observations, law students who had had courses in logic were superior students, and he attributed this superiority to the disciplinary value of training in logic. He overlooked the fact that superior students elected to study logic and probably would have made equally good law students without the course. Skills in analysis and organization of ideas may have been acquired which helped the law students, but the study of logic cannot in itself account for their superiority.

It is also assumed, according to the theory of mental discipline, that the powers of discrimination, perseverance, analysis, and observation developed in one situation function in another, in other words, that powers developed in one situation are transferred to another. A professor of law had that point in mind, too, when he indicated that he preferred, not students who had studied sociology, political science, and economics, but those who had taken a considerable number of courses in mathematics. "They can think more clearly," he said, "and can solve the legal problems that confront a law student." This professor did not say that the knowledge acquired in mathematics helped in law but implied that the training, or mental discipline, obtained from the study of mathematics functioned in the study of law. Again, the selective factor was overlooked. Students who select mathematics courses and finish a number of them are likely to have the mental qualities that enable them to succeed not only in law subjects but in medicine, chemistry, psychology, and other fields as well.

**What Is Learning through Transfer and Mental Discipline?** A person learns through transfer to the extent that the abilities acquired in one situation help in another. Thus, there is transfer from Latin to English to the extent that a student is better in English than he would be if he had had no Latin. There is also transfer from grammar to composition to the degree that the study of grammar enables a child to express himself better than he would have been able to do had he not studied it.

Mental discipline refers to the training of the mental powers. According to this concept, a subject has disciplinary value if the study of it trains one in observing accurately, thinking logically, developing powers of attention, and acquiring general mental power. According to such a theory the study of geometry is believed to train the mind to

cruing from intensive and extensive study in a field of learning will transfer to other situations. A person may be a fox in one situation and an ass in another.

Sometimes what we have learned transfers, and thus we profit in one situation from what we have learned in another. There are different degrees of such profit, or transfer, but in some cases there is no transfer, and in a few there is a loss, or negative transfer.

What is it that transfers? How is it that one gains (and sometimes loses) in a new situation because of previous experiences and learning?

*Knowledge, Facts, and Principles.* When the mathematics one has acquired helps in physics and chemistry, we have an example of transfer, as we do also when a knowledge of geometry is helpful in understanding and appreciating figures and forms in art. Similarly, a knowledge of psychology may help in understanding literature, for example, the frustrations, motives, and behavior of the characters in a novel or play. And when a person's knowledge of right and wrong results in his behavior being more ethical, then there is transfer from knowledge to behavior.

*Skills, Techniques, Habits, and Methods.* Techniques and training may be largely sensorimotor, as in sports and mechanical activities, or those skills and methods used in studying a language, in problem solving, or in doing research. Do the skills acquired in playing baseball, for example, help or hinder one in football? Does experience with carpenter's tools help one in using the tools of a plumber? Do the techniques and methods developed in studying French help in studying German? If a student solves a problem experimentally in the laboratory, is he likely to solve his personal problems in an objective, scientific way? Transfer of training, skills, and methods may be negative, zero, or positive, depending on the nature of the skills, on the learner, and on how he was taught. There is usually some positive transfer, however.

*Ideals, Attitudes, and Beliefs.* One of the earliest experiments on transfer was on the transfer of neatness and was undertaken in order to discover whether or not being neat in one class where neatness was stressed would carry over to other classes. It was found that there was much more transfer when it was stressed that one should be neat in all respects. Do people who have an ideal of honesty in connection with money have the same ideal of honesty about cheating on the examination? If a person would never think of cheating a neighbor, would he cheat the government or a corporation?

Sometimes there is conflict, or negative-transfer effect, as when a student with certain fundamental attitudes and beliefs meets such scientific ideas as those about evolution.

There is a condition known as *compartmentalization*, in which there is no general application of ideals, attitudes, and beliefs. This is the case

with the man who is viewed by the public as exemplary in his behavior but who in private life is a hellion. An American Communist, for example, will gladly take an oath of loyalty and then go directly about his master's business. Compartmentalization is a separation; one set of ideas and one mode of behavior do not carry over to conflict with others. The left hand is seemingly unaware of what the right one does, and vice versa. In this case there is no transfer. In many situations, however, and for many people there is transfer, or the applications of ideals, attitudes, and beliefs to many different situations.

The Curriculum, Mental Discipline, and Transfer. In the nineteenth and the early twentieth century the doctrines of transfer and of mental discipline were commonly accepted by teachers and other educators. Even in this day of modern education, Robert M. Hutchins, formerly the distinguished chancellor of the University of Chicago, maintains that the major function of a university is to discipline the mind—train the students to think—and he recommends the systematic study of Latin and Greek for accomplishing this purpose.

When educators subscribed to the theories of transfer of training and mental discipline, comparatively few subjects were included in the curriculum. It was necessary to have only a few carefully selected subjects, the content of which was assumed to have disciplinary values which transferred to other situations. According to this point of view, many utilitarian subjects were not needed, for training in a few would give one the mental qualities that enable him to be effective in all situations. The principle of learning through transfer of content learned in one situation to another and the functioning in all situations of mental qualities developed in a given situation so dominated the teachers of the nineteenth century that they accepted the utilitarian subjects of home economics and manual training, not for their utilitarian values, but for the training and disciplinary values which they were assumed to have. Mechanical drawing, for example, was accepted in the curriculum by its teachers, not for its vocational value, but because pupils would be trained in perception, would learn to visualize, and would develop a sense of proportion.

Now, however, the principle of transfer and discipline does not control the school curriculum. Subjects are included primarily because of their value in terms of social and practical standards. Skills and abilities are taught directly, for we no longer depend on learning indirectly by transfer. Educators and psychologists realize that the circumstances of life call for many specific functions which must be learned directly and that a general training is not sufficient. Consequently, we have many subjects in our curriculum. Another important factor that accounts for the large number of different subjects in our curriculum is our knowledge of individual differences in abilities and

interests, and we attempt to adjust subject matter and teaching to those abilities and interests.

**A School Based on Discipline and Transfer.** We may describe in this connection an engineering school that operated on the principle that a thorough general training would enable its graduates to apply themselves successfully to specific technical problems. The students enrolled for the 5-year course were required to take almost the same courses as the students in the liberal arts, or the science, letters, and arts, college. They majored in mathematics, physics, and chemistry, but they also did considerable work in English, speech, economics, political science, and the languages.

These engineering students, of course, had some technical training also, such as mechanical drawing, surveying, and machine design. Compared with other engineering schools, however, the students received relatively little training of a purely technical nature—only enough to give them a general orientation to engineering problems and practices.

The guiding principle of the faculty of this engineering college was one of training and discipline. They maintained that, if their students were given a broad training in mathematics, physics, and other academic subjects that underlie engineering and, in addition, were trained in the bare essentials of engineering, they would be able to generalize their training and apply it to the larger engineering problems. They claimed that their students would become more than technicians, who do the elementary work in engineering, such as mechanical drawing, and that they would quickly develop into consultants and executives. Their general point of view was that a broad general training in the fundamentals rather than detailed and specific training in the techniques imparted a quality of mind suited to functioning on a higher level.

An investigation of the graduates of this school seemed to substantiate the position taken by the faculty. They held good positions as executives and consultants. Their employment history indicated that they had spent only a year or two at apprentice work and that they soon acquired positions where they exercised initiative and control. These facts appear to support the point of view that good fundamental education can be generalized and applied specifically and effectively to problems at a higher level.

Another fact was discovered, however, that implied that the ability and success of graduates of the 5-year course of this engineering school could not be incontestably attributed to the type and quality of education that they had received. The fact is that, of those who enrolled as freshmen in this college of engineering, only 5 per cent finished the 5-year course of study. Thus, the graduates were selected for high



When a teacher in general science or physics teaches the interrelationships of pressure and temperature in their effect on gases and requests that students memorize Charles's law, he might raise questions about the inflation of automobile tires in hot weather, ventilation, the combustion of gases in various types of engine, and the relationship of air pressure and weather.

The teacher of psychology might teach the conditioned salivary reflex by explaining clearly how a dog learned to salivate in response to the sound of a bell because this had been rung when the dog was given food. The following illustrates the principle of the conditioned reflex:

$S_1$ (food).....	$R_1$ (salivation)
$S_2$ (sound of bell).....	$R_2$ (hearing or listening)
$S_1S_2$ (food and bell together).....	$R_1$ (salivation and listening to bell)
$S_2$ (sound of bell).....	$R_1$ (salivation)

Food stimulates salivation, but the sound of a bell alone does not. When the sound as a stimulus is associated a number of times with the food stimulus, the sound of the bell alone will cause the salivary response.

A teacher should point out the application of this principle to the problem of changing or conditioning the behavior of people. He can show how we learn to be conditioned for or against certain things because they are associated. We learn to choose a certain soap because it is associated in the advertisements with certain people of prestige; we dislike people with a certain type of face because, at some time, a person with such a face offended us; and we avoid certain topics of discussion or certain fields of study because the associated experiences have been unhappy ones. The pain and pleasure or satisfaction and dissatisfaction that have been associated with so many of our experiences determine to a considerable extent our behavior. The teacher should not only make application of the principle of the associated response by many examples and illustrations but should also encourage students to generalize. Students ordinarily learn many facts and principles in rote fashion and may fail to transfer their knowledge to another situation unless the instructor trains them to see its relationship to other problems.

Some Experiments on Transfer through Generalization. The theory of transfer through generalization was set forth nearly 50 years ago by Judd, a distinguished psychologist and educator. In collaboration with Scholkow, Judd set up an experiment for testing the ability of boys to hit a target placed under water. Some of the boys had studied the refraction of light—how it takes a direction at a different angle when it leaves or enters a substance such as water, glass, or diamond.

Others had not been given such instruction. We know that an oar in water does not seem straight and that a fish or other object is farther under the surface of the water than it seems. This is due to the fact that the light from an object under water refracts at a different angle when it leaves the surface and that when it strikes the eye the object appears closer to the surface than it actually is.

The purpose of the experiment was to determine whether or not boys who had studied the refraction of light could hit a target under water better than boys who had not. It was discovered that when the target was 1 foot below the surface of the water there was little difference in the abilities of the two groups but that when the target was raised to within 4 inches of the water's surface the boys who had been taught the principles of refraction were able to adjust better than the others.

Hitting a target 4 inches under water is considerably easier than hitting one 12 inches under. It is easier to estimate a "correction" for the smaller depth. In this instance, experience with the greater depth and a knowledge of light refraction enables a quicker adjustment on the part of some of the boys. This superiority probably reflects their ability to generalize their knowledge and experience by applying it to a new situation.

Hendrickson and Schroeder repeated the essentials of the Judd-Scholow experiment with eighth-grade boys who shot with a BB gun at a bull's-eye type of target submerged in water at depths of 6 and 2 inches. Three groups of boys were used in the experiment. Group A was told about refraction, but without discussion. Group B was told as much as group A but was given extra explanation also. The control group was given no information about refraction.

The results were essentially these:

1. Group B had the best score at the depth both of 6 and of 2 inches.
2. Group C had the poorest scores for both the 6- and the 2-inch depth.
3. The percentage of improvement also corresponded to the amount of instruction.

Instruction and explanation help people apply ideas and principles to specific situations. In other words, they are helped to make use of their knowledge. Consequently, whenever the teacher is teaching theory and principles, he should stop to give examples and make application to specific situations—in teaching history, to present problems; in teaching chemistry, physics, and biology, to the functioning of the human body and to everyday living. Geography, also, should be closely related to everyday living.

Interest always surrounds the question of the extent to which practice or training in one situation transfers and helps one in another.

An experiment was worked out by Barlow with elementary-school pupils most of whom were seventh- and eighth-graders. The object was to discover how much the power to interpret Aesop's *Fables* was improved by special practice in reasoning and analysis. The subjects were tested both at the beginning and at the end of the experiment with a test consisting of 15 fables. One example was about a widow who doubled the amount she fed her hen, expecting two eggs a day, the best answer or interpretation being that "figures are not always facts."

The experimental group had four lessons on analogies (boy is to girl as man is to \_\_\_\_\_), four lessons on analysis and the practices of generalizing from particular to general and from general to particular, and four in analyzing behavior situations. In the lessons the pupils worked over the material by discussing and explaining how they arrived at their conclusions. The control group did not have this practice. Thus the difference in the ability to interpret the fables as measured by the comparison of the tests before and after training by the experimental or practice group indicates the extent to which lessons in reasoning by analogies, by induction (concrete to general), and by deduction (general to concrete) improved the ability to interpret fables.

The net gain for elementary pupils was 64 per cent. Of the seventh- and eighth-graders the upper half in intelligence gained 30 per cent more than the lower half. After a year's time the subjects were tested again, and it was discovered that much of the gain had been lost. However, this experiment shows that training in methods of reasoning with some materials transfers and improves ability in reasoning with other materials. Possibly in this experiment we have a suggestion that methods of teaching that cause students to study effectively are important from this point of view.

Transfer as a consequence of practice in outlining and summarizing was obtained with seventh- to twelfth-grade pupils in an actual school-room situation. This study, by Salisbury, was similar to that by Barlow, for the practice was in method, and the transfer was a transfer not in knowledge but in a skill or method obtained by the experimental group through practice. In this study the experimental group was given 30 specially prepared lessons, which consisted of material to be outlined and summarized. The practice consisted in picking out the main points, arranging them in logical order, and observing the "next steps" in thought; some practice also was included in preparing outlines for the students' own original compositions. The control group was not given this practice, and consequently the differences in the abilities of the two groups could be attributed to the practice.

The transfer effects were measured by testing the abilities of the

control and experimental groups with a test of general mental ability; a reading examination; a reasoning test; and an achievement test in American history, civics, and general science before and after the practice period. If any transfer has occurred, the practice in extracting the thought from printed material by careful outlining and summarizing should show itself in improvement in the mental, reading, reasoning, and achievement tests.

A comparison of the abilities of the two groups, one with and one without the special practice, indicated the extent to which the effects of the special practice in outlining and summarizing came into play in the abilities measured by the mental, reading, reasoning, and achievement tests. To expect improvement in the abilities measured by a general mental ability test is setting up a very high criterion for transfer, for it is most difficult to influence the scores on a test consisting of various exercises. It is not unexpected that practice in outlining and summarizing will be reflected in a reading test by means of which the ability to obtain the meaning from printed paragraphs is tested. To some degree, this ability may be expected to manifest itself also in reasoning and achievement tests.

The results indicate that an important carry-over occurred. The group with 30 specially prepared lessons showed improvement in all tests. The improvement in the mental ability test was not large enough to be significant or attributable without doubt to the special practice. In the case of the reading test the difference was large enough to be attributable without doubt to the practice. A difference expressed by a critical ratio of 3 is necessary before there can be no doubt that the difference is significant and due not to chance but to the actual effects being measured. The increase in reading was expressed with critical ratios of 4.7 for the seventh grade and 6.6 for the twelfth grade. Even though the ability to obtain meaning from printed paragraphs increased, the speed of reading decreased. Such a decrease illustrates a negative transfer. The practice of studiously outlining a selection resulted in slower and more careful reading.

For the reasoning and achievement tests a carry-over in ability was also represented by differences large enough to be significant. The general results can be summarized by quoting from the study: "The mental skills involved in outlining and summarizing, described herein as the processes of logical organization, transfer to produce improvement in general thinking or reasoning ability, as tested by problems not related to the specific school curriculum."

**The Theory of Identical Elements.** According to the theory of identical elements, which has already been mentioned, there is transfer from one situation to another to the extent that there are elements or components common to the two situations. There is transfer from

algebra to geometry to the extent that parts, or elements, in geometry occur in algebra, some of these common elements being symbols, equations, and proportions. There is transfer from baseball to football to the extent that there are common components such as running, throwing, catching, and general bodily agility. Many of these elements are not exactly identical, but in general there is much in common.

There is more transfer from geography to history, and vice versa, than from geography to penmanship, and vice versa, for geography and history have more in common, or more identical elements, than geography and penmanship. This is obvious. There is more transfer from arithmetic to algebra than from art to algebra because of more identical elements, or commonness. There is more transfer from reading to spelling than from reading to playing baseball because of a greater number of common elements. In reading, one deals with letters and words the same as one does in spelling. The processes are far from being the same, but there are common elements, which is not true of reading and playing baseball.

The teacher should look for common elements in situations and point them out. Common or identical elements will help explain transfer from one situation to another as well as the relationship between them. If the teacher will point out the identical elements, learning will be facilitated.

**Comparison of the Theory of Identical Elements and Generalization.** The two theories or principles commonly advanced to explain transfer of training are those of *identical elements* and of *generalization*. The principle of identical elements involves *specificity and perception*. The transfer depends on the extent to which specific elements exist common to each situation and the degree to which they are perceived. The principle of generalization, on the other hand, is conceptual in nature. Transfer depends on possessing a concept or idea and being able to apply it in another situation. In some respects, it may be difficult to distinguish the two theories. The theory of identical elements pertains to *recognizing common elements in situations*. Generalization is the *application of principles and concepts to situations through perceiving their relationships*.

**Transfer According to Mental Ability.** In connection with the wide differences in the capacity of students, the question arises as to the *relationship between transfer of training and mental capacity*. Does amount of transfer correlate with capacity? In other words, do brighter pupils transfer more than do the duller ones?

In general, the training values are greatest for those who are the brightest. The *experiment by Barlow* indicated this to be true. The abler learn more from a situation and can transfer more to another

situation. Those who are poorer in one situation are relatively poorer in another. This was also shown in a study devised to test the effect of the study of science on the soundness or unsoundness of attitude toward life situations. In other words, an attempt was made to discover the extent to which a scientific attitude, rather than superstitions and biases, controlled one's thinking in different situations. It was discovered that some with considerable knowledge could not apply it to situations, probably because they acquired facts and principles mechanically and by memorizing the content of the book. Many pupils who do well in the tests have acquired their knowledge in this way. It was also discovered that those who apply their facts rationally are students of higher intelligence and have had greater experience in situations embracing the scientific facts involved. For example, the brighter boys who have had experience with electric irons, switches, coils, batteries, and similar equipment can apply the facts and principles of electricity more effectively. In other words, the transfer is greatest for them. Furthermore, persons with knowledge and experience can distinguish sound and valid explanations from fallacious ones. Two points have been made: (1) Most transfer occurs for the bright. (2) Experience facilitates transfer.

Connected with the issue of mental discipline and transfer is the question of the effect of studying various subjects on mental abilities. An experiment was conducted with the purpose of determining the extent to which the abilities measured by intelligence tests were affected by the subjects studied in high school. The courses taken by the students were compared. When they were similar except for two subjects, the training effect of these two subjects on general intelligence could be determined. Thus, if a group of children whose courses for the year were English, algebra, sociology, and Latin had the same initial ability and were similar in other important respects to another group who studied English, algebra, sociology, and economics, the differences in ability in the intelligence tests at the end of the school year could be attributed to the differences in the disciplinary and transfer effects of Latin and economics. The other three courses of the two groups were the same, and thus the only variables were the two subjects Latin and economics. For other groups of students, various other pairs of subjects were the differentiating ones. Groups were compared in this manner so that changes in ability could be attributed to the specific subjects. They were tested at the beginning and end of the experiment with general intelligence tests. In the present example, if the group studying economics scored higher in the end tests than the Latin group, then it might be inferred that economics has greater disciplinary and transfer value than Latin, and vice versa. The other subjects studied by compared groups were evaluated in the same way,

so that differences in mental ability could be attributed to the training effects of specific subjects.

The purpose of discussing this experiment at this time is to interpret the amount of disciplinary and transfer value according to the degree of brightness or dullness of pupils themselves and not primarily to evaluate the effect of various high-school subjects on the development of general ability involving words, numbers, and symbol relationships. A quotation from Thorndike's study includes quantitative comparisons.<sup>1</sup>

Let us now consider the results if we deliberately take the most favorable possibility for large differences between studies, by assuming that the gain from the experience of the examination itself is a special practice effect which is due wholly to that experience and is just as great for one program as for another and has nothing to do with the ability of the mind to think, or is correlated with it negatively, so that 11.9 points should be subtracted from all these estimates. We then have as the effect of the different programs:

22½ for the three courses in science and one in mathematics.

19 for one course each in Latin, French, algebra, and geometry.

17 for one course each in arithmetic, bookkeeping, stenography, and type-writing.

10½ for one course each in cooking, sewing, dramatic art, and physical education.

20½ for the best 1 per cent in initial ability.

1½ for the lowest 1 per cent in initial ability.

11 for the average white pupil.

1½ for the average colored pupil.

The gain from the more intellectual studies is larger relatively to that from cooking, sewing, etc., than it was before, but so also is the gain due to greater initial ability. . . .

It should be emphasized at this point that no large difference existed in the influence of various subjects on the abilities measured. The differences were influenced by the materials of the test. Some subjects, for example, influenced growth in word knowledge more than did others, and some influenced most the development of abilities involving numbers and space. Latin and French, as might be expected, showed their influence most on word knowledge; algebra and geometry caused relatively greater development in the tests of number and space. Conceivably, one could choose tests that would reflect greater training effects of given subjects such as science courses, while others would favor mathematics; and some tests of a definitely verbal nature would show that English, Latin, and French have the greatest disciplinary and transfer value.

<sup>1</sup> Thorndike, E. L., *Mental Discipline in High School Studies*, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 15:94, 1924.

The conclusion to be drawn about the effects of specific school subjects on mental abilities is that no important differences occur. We can say definitely that subjects cannot be chosen for their disciplinary value or for a general improvement of the mind. There is a definite implication that a pupil should have as wide an experience with a number of different subjects as possible and that we cannot depend on a limited curriculum to give him the richness of mental experiences that he should have.

Let us return to the topic of discipline and transfer according to ability. Comparison has been made of three groups: the highest 1 per cent, the average, and the lowest 1 per cent in ability. In the case of no group were the disciplinary and transfer effects large. It was very small in the case of the poorest 1 per cent of the high-school pupils. The average group developed about seven times as much as the poorest and the brightest about twice as much as the average. Not too much significance should be attached to the numerical comparison of the development according to ability, for the quantities involved are small. If the development of one group is several times that of another whose growth is very small, the development of the superior group is still small and of not much importance, even though it is several times that of another.

An important fact is that in this experiment, also, it was discovered that bright children profit more from a situation than average children and that average children, in turn, profit more than dull children. Practically all experiments indicate that the transfer and disciplinary values of subjects tend to vary according to the mental ability of the pupils.

**Transfer Effects of School Subjects.** Questions raised in connection with this topic are largely on the extent to which experience in one subject helps in another, but interest also centers in the training and transfer value of specific school subjects in respect to vocational situations. The topic of transfer from subject to subject raises questions, for instance, about the help that Latin gives pupils when they study French, and vice versa; the extent to which a study of geometry helps a student appreciate art and design; how foreign language helps in the spelling and definition of English words; how extensively the addition process transfers to multiplication; the extent to which formal grammar improves written and spoken English; how much a knowledge of psychology improves teaching methods; how methods of teaching influence the practices and habits of pupils; and what contribution civics and sociology make to citizenship.

When the German explained, "I could English speak before I to America came," he furnished an example of transfer from the German to the English. In this example, transfer results in awkward expression



and may be described as interference, or a negative transfer. German will aid in understanding the English language when there are elements in common, but interference occurs when there are conflicting elements.

A term which applies to this example and helps explain it is *proactive inhibition*. Briefly, proactive inhibition is operative if because a person has learned *A* it is subsequently harder for him to learn *B*. Thus when what one has learned makes it more difficult to learn something new, proactive inhibition is in evidence. Apparently a conflict or interference takes place which is the equivalent of negative transfer. Proactive inhibition is apparent when an adult tries to speak another language. The speech habits he has acquired make it very difficult to speak the new language, and he is sure to have a very pronounced accent. However, if a child grows up familiar with two languages and learns them both over a period of years, there may be comparatively little accent.

Usually the opposite of proactive inhibition is in effect: learning facilitates more learning. As has been pointed out in connection with the discussion of retroactive inhibition, knowledge and skills usually correlate and seldom conflict. Consequently what one has learned will make additional learning easier, and having a good background, as we say, promotes progress is one's fields of study.

Investigations have been conducted that indicate how foreign languages help students in spelling and defining English words. Latin and French, for example, do help in this respect, but the transfer varies according to the nature of the words. If the English words are not derivatives of French or Latin, there is essentially no transfer; if they are, then transfer occurs.

It was discovered in a study of the effect of Latin on the ability to spell words of non-Latin and Latin origin that the study of Latin improved ability involving words of Latin origin. The usual technique of testing is that of measuring the spelling ability at the beginning and also at the end of the year to gauge the gains made during the year. Then the effect of a year's study of Latin on spelling ability can be tested. Words of Latin and non-Latin derivation were used, and the pupils who studied Latin showed essentially no more ability to spell words of non-Latin origin than those who had not studied it. The Latin students, however, did spell correctly more English words of Latin derivation than the non-Latin students. The difference was not large but enough to indicate some transfer, which apparently took place according to the principle of identical elements. When, however, an attempt was made to improve spelling of Latin derivatives by pointing out similarities, even greater improvement resulted in spelling English words of Latin origin. In general, there was no transfer to

words without Latin elements; there was some to the Latin derivatives; and most took place when the teaching was directed toward bringing about transfer. This point is emphasized later in the chapter.

The argument has been advanced that a knowledge of English words is increased by a knowledge of other languages. Latin, especially, has been supported on the basis that a knowledge of it transfers to English and consequently increases one's ability to use and define English words. French, too, has been defended as having similar transfer value.

In general, transfer occurs from Latin and French to English. Not all investigations are consistent in showing such a transfer. Most of them do, however, and it is safe to conclude that some transfer takes place. The amount of transfer depends to a considerable extent on the teaching method. If the teacher consciously works to improve the knowledge of English words by pointing out roots and derivations, the amount of transfer is considerably greater than when no attempt is made to point out relationships and similarities.

**Latin and the Increase of English Vocabulary.** The principle of transfer can be well illustrated by considering the effect on English vocabulary of studying and of not studying Latin. One study of this problem indicates that the growth of vocabulary is limited to words of Latin origin. At the end of the first-year Latin course the gains of the pupils who had taken the course were compared with those of the pupils who had not studied Latin. Two lists of words were used. One contained 25 English words derived from Latin words included in the Latin course. The other contained 25 words also, but they were derivatives from Anglo-Saxon and Greek. On the basis of the test list containing Latin derivatives the Latin students gained 5.5 words, and the non-Latin students gained 2.0. The gain of the Latin over the non-Latin students was 3.5 words. According to the list of words that were not of Latin origin the students who had studied Latin for a year gained 1.2, and those without Latin gained 1.4 words, a net loss of 0.2 word for the students of Latin, a loss that may be called inconsequential in terms of gain or loss. Nevertheless, it is important in showing that no transfer occurs for non-Latin words.

The transfer to Latin words is probably an important one, for a net gain of 3.5 words based on a test of only 25 words cannot be minimized. If Latin students are superior to non-Latin students to the extent of 3.5 words for every 25 words of Latin derivation, they possess a superiority in vocabulary that is especially important for those who are to enter the professions. This point of view should not be interpreted as implying that the most economical and effective way of learning English words of Latin origin is to learn them via the Latin route. Probably the understanding of words can be acquired best by studying them directly rather than indirectly through Latin. Possibly for those who

need a broader background of scholarship, however, such as the teacher, lawyer, and doctor, some Latin may be worth while; but the purpose of this discussion is not to assess the value of Latin particularly but rather to illustrate how and when transfer takes place.

**Transfer According to the Method of Teaching.** If the teacher makes a conscious effort to bring about transfer, then more transfer will take place. The Latin teacher, for example, can point out English words that are derived from the Latin. He can also point out the Latin roots in English words and build up in pupils a consciousness of and an ability to see the common elements in Latin and English.

One teacher of Latin included in her method for relating Latin to English the analysis of some of the more formal statements that appeared in the newspapers. The Latin elements of the words were underlined and the derivations explained and discussed. The number of English words that have Latin roots or are Latin derivatives in some of the speeches recorded in our newspapers is surprisingly large.

The facts are that when Latin is taught with a special study of derivatives a greater increase in English vocabulary results than when it is taught in the usual way. Most, if not all, investigations indicate that more gain is made in the comprehension of English words when teachers of Latin devote some time to the analysis of English words. The gain is greatest in words that are Latin derivatives and very small or nothing for words not derived from the Latin. This fact is consistent with the principle of transfer according to identical components or according to the extent to which the components or elements in the two situations are similar.

**Summary of the Amounts of Transfer.** A summary of the investigations that have been made of the problem of transfer, as indicated

TABLE 19. *Statistical results of transfer experiments from 1890 to 1940\**

<i>Amount of transfer claimed</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Per cent</i>
Considerable.....	53	25
Appreciable.....	95	45
Varies with conditions of learning.....	16	8
Very little.....	20	9
No transfer.....	9	4
Others—duplications excluded.....	18	9
Total.....	211	100

\* Adapted from table on p. 82 of P. T. Orata, Recent Research Studies on Transfer of Training with Implications for the Curriculum Guidance and Personnel Work, *Journal of Educational Research*, 35:81-101, 1941.

in Table 19, reveals that in 70 per cent of the experiments considerable or appreciable transfer was found. It is not surprising that no transfer was found in a few studies, for in a number of experiments it is almost certain that the prevailing situations and the content will be of such a nature that no transfer can take place.

There can be little question about whether or not there is transfer. The educational problem, for the teacher as well as the experimenter, is how to achieve the greatest amount of favorable gain in one situation as a consequence of experience in another.

#### MENTAL DISCIPLINE, TRANSFER, THE SCHOOL CURRICULUM, AND TEACHING METHODS

Of one fact we can be reasonably sure, and that is that we cannot depend on a few subjects to give the richness of experience and training that children need. A few subjects do not possess all the educational virtues. A study of a selected few will not train the mind and provide the information that is needed in many situations. Systematic and diligent translating of foreign languages, proceeding through the logical steps in solving mathematical problems, observing formal steps in grammar, etc., will not equip a person with the knowledge and abilities needed in many situations. If one is preparing to be a teacher, he should acquire a thorough and comprehensive knowledge of the subjects that he is going to teach and also of the allied ones. In addition, he should have actual training and practice in teaching. Whatever subjects in psychology and education he may take as preparation for teaching should be brought into relationship with teaching methods. Applications should be pointed out, or else there may be little transfer to the teaching process.

The importance of actually applying methods and principles to teaching was forcibly brought to the attention of the author when he was delayed in meeting his class because there was so much confusion in making the assignment and distributing mimeographed material to the previous class. The instructor and students of that class occupied the room during the intermission between periods and also during part of the succeeding period, and there was considerable confusion. In response to the inquiry about the name of the class, the instructor replied that it was Methods of Teaching. Apparently, the teacher who was teaching how to teach did not practice what he preached.

In general, then, the student should take the courses that are related directly to the problem at hand. The indirect method, which depends on transfer and discipline, is uneconomical. If one is going to prepare for the profession of law, he should in the later stages of his preparation take those courses which are most closely related to law. It would be unwise, for instance, to study courses in mathematics

because its formal nature is purported to result in a formal discipline of the mind so that one can think logically and legally.

Nor should one study Latin and French for the sole purpose of understanding English. It helps to do so, but it is more economical to study English directly. The claims for formal grammar have also been exaggerated. The study of formal grammar does not result in an improvement in written and spoken composition at all commensurate with the time spent on it. More development results if much of the time spent on formal grammar is devoted to practice in improving written and spoken English directly.

However, one should not take too narrow a viewpoint and be guided by the principle that only subjects should be studied that fall squarely in a field or are directly related to the object at hand. If, for example, a student in college or even in high school is studying to acquire a fair degree of English and French, it would not be amiss for him to take a little Latin and Greek and also a little Spanish and Italian. It may readily be admitted that the most profitable way to study English and French is not through studying the classical languages, Latin and Greek, or the romance languages, Italian and Spanish, but to devote the time to English and French. Yet for a person who desires a thorough knowledge of English and French, some knowledge of the more closely related languages will provide associations and give a background for a profounder understanding of English and French. Courses in other languages can be taken with profit, and the teachers should point out their relationships so that students may interpret them more comprehensively. Furthermore, there usually should be no hurry about students' finishing school so that most students have time enough to study allied material.

A student of history has a broader base for interpreting his materials if he is a fairly good geographer and is trained in relating geographical factors to historical events. The topics of discovery and exploration can best be understood in terms of climate, rivers, lakes, topography of the land, and natural resources. Similarly, our social and economic problems are related to these same factors and also have important historical implications. The War Between the States (1861 to 1865), for example, cannot be adequately understood without an understanding of the geography of the North and South, their resources and products, and the conflicting social and economic forces.

In each of the fields, the languages, the social sciences (economics, sociology, history, and political science), and the natural sciences (physics, chemistry, and biology), there are interrelationships that should be emphasized. Facts in various fields should be brought into connection. The thrilling relationships of knowledge make it educationally unwise to try to approach a problem in too compartmentalized

a way. Related facts should be brought together regardless of the field from which they are taken. Much better education will result from bringing to bear on a subject the pertinent facts from many fields.

**Pointing Out the Relationship.** In order to get the most out of any topic of study, its relationship to others should be pointed out by the teacher. In addition, she should encourage her pupils to look for relationships. Experimentation on transfer has made it clear that we cannot expect much unless teacher and pupil are conscious of the inter-relationships of knowledge and attempt to generalize knowledge or apply it widely.

The question is less that of the existence of formal discipline and transfer than that of instructional methods. Teaching should be planned to bring about transfer. A related problem is to bring knowledge and information together that logically belong together and not to compartmentalize them as we now do. If the teacher of Latin and Greek, for instance, discusses prefixes, she should point out their extensive use and even help the students to find examples of their uses. For example, the prefix *hypo-* is used with words occupying several columns in the unabridged dictionaries; words with the prefix *hyper-* occupy several columns, also. These and other prefixes are important. A knowledge of the extensiveness with which different prefixes are used will help make language teachers more sensitive to the opportunity of sharpening a pupil's awareness of prefixes and of enlarging his background for understanding the meaning of words with prefixes and suffixes.

History is often compartmentalized as a separate subject consisting of dates of battles, wars, and various other events. But it should be a story of the past describing and explaining the forces and factors that cause people to behave as they do. True history of this type will help us understand people, interpret their behavior, and predict what they will do under certain circumstances. History treated richly is broader than history taught in the usual mechanical way and brings in focus historical problems; the psychology of human nature; numerous geographical facts and principles; the economic forces involved; the beliefs, traditions, motives, and attitude of the people; and the other forces that underlie human behavior. We cannot expect "date, name, and battle" history to transfer to everyday living and to help students interpret the social and economic problems of the present day. History will do that only when it is conceived more broadly by scholars and teachers and made a living subject rather than a dead one.

As a student, the author took a college course in history called *The Modern World*, which included the seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, and twentieth centuries. He had just lived through the First World War, was intensely interested in the world-stirring events that

had taken place, and hoped to obtain an interpretive basis for understanding them. Instead of being living and vital, the course consisted, of a superficial recitation by both "lecturer" and students of events anchored to their dates. Before the great events of the twentieth century were reached, the course ended, and it was just as well.

It may be maintained that because of the form the work took—memorizing details, dates, and events—the course had good disciplinary values. However, no one in the light of modern psychological findings on that topic could seriously defend this. According to the findings, little transfer to present-day events would take place. Instead of keeping history buried in the vault of the past by making it merely a monotonous and mechanical procession of past events, it could be made the roots of the present. We could learn to trace present situations back into the past and thus interpret the present more profoundly. Whether history as a subject is merely rattling the dead bones of the past or the living story of man's attempt to adjust to his environment depends in large part on the teacher. He has to plan his assignments, organize the material, and ask questions or stimulate his pupils so that they achieve a wide orientation to the field of study.

**Subject Matter and Its Use.** Experimentation has shown that the values ascribed to the study of formal subject matter according to certain theories of discipline and transfer of training are not so great as has been claimed; consequently, educators have turned their attention to the selection of subject matter that is actually used by the people. For example, in arithmetic, studies have been made to determine the arithmetical processes that are actually used. The arithmetic used by bank clerks, store clerks, and housewives has been determined by finding out the arithmetic that they need in their everyday occupations. Examination of newspapers and periodicals has also revealed the quantitative materials that are met with in one's general reading. As a result, in present-day arithmetic we do not find problems that fall far outside routine experience. In modern arithmetic lessons the hound is not sent after the rabbit, who has a 300-foot start, the pupils being asked to find out how many bounds the hound has to make to overtake the rabbit if the latter leaps 3 feet at a time and the former 4 feet. Nor do we mix 3 gallons of \$2 wine,  $5\frac{1}{2}$  gallons of \$2.50 wine, and  $7\frac{3}{4}$  gallons of \$2.75 wine to find what the resultant mixture costs per gallon. Problems in wallpapering, plastering, apothecaries' weights, surveyor's measures, etc., are found only to a limited extent, if at all, in the modern arithmetic texts. Problems of this type were once thought to have value in training the mind to reason logically; but because it has been learned that training values are not inherent in any specific type of problem, we now choose problems that are realistic, or true to life.

A difficulty in employing grammar in this way lies in the fact that grammar cannot be used to explain to the younger children the nature of their errors. Children acquire their language from their environment. If they hear only good language, they will speak correctly. If they hear defective language, their speech will reflect that experience. Young children will have to be taught the correct form without being given the reason for it. When lower-grade pupils become "grammar-grade" pupils, they will still persist in most of their errors and then they can be given grammatical explanations.

**How to Achieve Mental Discipline.** *Mental discipline* refers to good training in the skills and methods of learning and thinking. *Mental* in this connection should be considered broadly to include sensorimotor and social learning and thinking, as well as the abstract. But if this is putting too much under *mental*, we can speak of educational discipline and reserve *mental* for the thinking processes.

In speaking of the mind we speak of the orderly mind, the systematic and the logical mind. For instance, a person reasons carefully and has a problem-solving attitude. He can be contrasted with the person who jumps to conclusions and does not search for the facts. Another person may meddle with facts but does not know how to organize and utilize them in solving a problem.

A well-disciplined mind, then, is one which through training and experience has become effective in thinking. It can reason clearly and find the solutions to problems. Such a mind is equipped with knowledge and insights and has the ability to differentiate the major ideas from the minor, the sound from the unsound, and the power to organize facts and ideas into useful patterns. It can concentrate on problems and sustains interest for longer than usual periods. It understands cause-and-effect relationship and applies the idea of "all other things being equal," or the concept of the single variable. A well-disciplined mind asks for the facts by inquiring, "What is the evidence?"

This does not imply that going through the form or the formal process of studying some of the old, traditional subjects or "the hundred great books" will train the mind as nothing else will. The old idea of formal discipline is not being espoused—not at all. But because it has been proved that mental discipline does not accrue particularly from going through the formal procedures in studying grammar, languages, and mathematics, for example, we have not dismissed the fact that mental discipline is an important reality. Actually, mental discipline is at the heart of education in the sense that we try to equip students with knowledge and skills and also to train them in using these skills and knowledge effectively. Accordingly the most efficient learning and thinking processes constitute mental discipline. We attempt to guide students in practicing good methods of learning, in reasoning



soundly, and in attacking problems intelligently. Education aims to equip students with the best skills and develop in them the best habits. Such training and education may be thought of as discipline, and good parents and the teachers of all and every subject try to achieve it.

**How to Achieve Transfer.** This like mental discipline is a basic educational problem. Transfer pertains largely to the use and application of what we learn. Whether or not there is transfer is no longer a question. The issue centers on how to get the most good out of our learning, and this depends on the widest and most extensive application of it. Thus the problem of transfer becomes one of techniques and methods for bringing it about. Specifically, how should we learn or what should our education be so that we achieve the best transfer? It was mentioned before that the teacher should point out relationships.

It is not difficult to understand that learning or education is not very effective if there is not considerable transfer. Why study educational psychology, for example, if it does not help us to live better and to teach more effectively? Similarly, why study the many other subjects we study if we do not use and enjoy in many situations that which we learn? We do, of course, and the psychological and educational problem is how to get as much transfer or as wide application and use of what we learn as possible. Hence a discussion of how to achieve maximum transfer is pertinent at this time.

*Meaningfulness, Understanding, and Completeness.* Again we are back to a persistent issue. It is a problem at the core of teaching and learning. It was stressed that, in order to memorize effectively and to improve retention, a first requisite is to understand fully the meanings of that which is to be memorized. The same applies to achieving the fullest transfer and use of what is learned.

Meaningfulness and understanding are achieved in various ways. Every word, formula, and principle should be understood. They must be defined, illustrated, and discussed; examples must be given and applications made. In teaching history, geography, sociology, home economics, physics, or any other subject, the teacher should "slide off" the pages of the text book and utilize the experiences of the students and his own. He should try to correlate these experiences with one another and with the ideas of the text. He should discuss and discuss, reflect and reflect, and then generalize. To generalize is to summarize what is common to a number of principles, theories, ideas, and situations. Seeing what is common to all situations enables one to transfer from one to the other.

✓ *Differentiation*, too, is a process which enriches one's understanding. It is the analysis of differences in a number of situations, experiences, and meanings. Differentiation then is the opposite of generalization, but both processes give a fuller understanding of a number of situa-

tions, principles, and areas of thought than does either generalization or differentiation alone. Both processes go together logically, as thinking of differences aids in thinking of similarities, and vice versa.

*Learning in a Lifelike Situation.* This is the theme of the progressivist, the followers and proponents of John Dewey's principles. We should learn by doing. This is a protest against the academic formalism which characterizes the drill and recitation in the old school—drill and fantastic problems in arithmetic, parsing and diagraming sentences in grammar, repeating dates and events in history, giving names and places in geography, memorizing formulas in chemistry, and, in general, reciting the words of the books.

It is contended that, when the classroom is the stimulus center for problems, projects, and activities, the learning has a much broader setting and is more highly motivated. The wider interests carry the students to many sources for their answers, and they assemble many facts and ideas to converge on their problems. It is believed that such learning brings together what belongs together and separates out the irrelevant and incongruous. Such learning results in the learner having many more cues for recalling what he learned and for applying what he has learned to many situations. Thus learning in lifelike situations facilitates the transfer of learning.

*Learning through Vital Experiences.* This is related to the previous point of learning in lifelike situations. It is not enough just to read and read about a subject and talk and talk about it, for this is vicarious experience and soon becomes barren and anemic. We have examples of this in the case of mechanical engineers who cannot make the simplest repairs and adjustments on a motor, professors of finance and economics who cannot make much money or handle wisely what little they make, agriculturists who cannot manage a farm, psychiatrists with unhealthy personalities, and the man with solutions for every one of his country's and the world's ills who is a failure in handling his own affairs. Ideationally all these people are well equipped, but they fail in practice. Their "mental" learning should have been integrated with vital, practical experiences. The learner needs to meet up with reality—have real experiences.

Hence schools encourage their pupils to have work experiences. Students take small jobs and earn money.

Excursions are becoming an increasing part of the school program. With the school bus as standard equipment in many schools, the means are available for taking students to places of interest and educational value. Some trips take a week or more, and the children have social and educational experiences that give them an affinity with reality.

A few colleges and high schools have courses in business, commerce,

engineering, and teacher training which provide that the students alternate their time between the classroom and the job. Thus the students get a chance to transfer their mental learning to actual performance. They get a chance to try out and apply what they learn. Again transfer is facilitated, and more all-round effectiveness is achieved.

The value of learning in real situations probably is seen in our greatest characters and geniuses who grew up and solved their problems through the struggles of life rather than in the formal and artificial situations in the schoolroom. The great Americans were relatively unschooled. Who are some of them? Benjamin Franklin in science, government, diplomacy, and general citizenship. Thomas Edison in science and invention, Henry Ford as manufacturer and industrialist, and Mark Twain as philosopher and writer. Furthermore a look at our great entertainers and unique characters shows that most of them were unschooled—Will Rogers and W. C. Fields are particularly good examples. We do not know how great these men would have become had they had the schooling from which most of them chose to escape. As we scan our list of truly great men, it will be readily observed that nearly all had little schooling but educated themselves through experiences and the circumstances of life. Their studying was highly motivated by their needs and interests.

Such learning possesses a core of reality and has many implications and ramifications. The learner transfers and applies such learning. In school the learning is often so formal and artificial that it does not transfer. Intellectual independence and vitality are deadened. This effect has prompted the statement about school's being a place "where pebbles are polished and diamonds are dimmed."

Formal Discipline and the Training of Pupils. Even though it may readily be granted that subjects whose values are not very apparent should not be studied because of purported disciplinary values, teachers must not overlook opportunities to train their pupils in the habits of good scholarship. The teacher's methods and procedures may, on the one hand, help to develop in pupils carelessness, indifference, and inability to concentrate or, on the other, train them to express themselves clearly and fully, prepare their lessons carefully, and maintain attention to the problem under consideration. Considerable dispute may arise as to how pupils may be trained in the habits of good scholarship, but hardly anyone will deny the value of good classroom methods even though we no longer attribute disciplinary values to specific subjects. Under a good teacher, children will acquire the habit of being industrious and will develop a willingness to undertake difficult problems. But under poor control or if poorly motivated, they may become careless and indifferent. Their attention deteriorates into

the type that flits about from one object to another. Discipline and training interpreted broadly in terms of the qualities and habits that characterize good and poor scholarship should be recognized as very important. The teacher should interpret her work occasionally in terms of its effect on the interest of her children; on their capacity to work independently; and, in general, on the habits of scholarship that they are developing.

The training that children receive in different school situations differs according to the control and motivation that exist in these situations. If assignments are indefinite, if the children are uncertain, if there is much disorder, and if confusion characterizes most of the activities, the pupils will develop poor work habits and become less effective in dealing with school situations.

Training and discipline are important in this sense. But though we train children so that they have the technique for solving their school problems, we are not sure that they will have the ability to attack other problems or that the habits and characteristics acquired in school will carry over into adult life. Possibly there may be some carry-over, for habits acquired in childhood are stubborn and tend to persist a long time. Even if there is no transfer, however, good training during and for the school situation is important in itself. A common aberration in our thinking is to conceive of training and discipline as intended for a situation or time different from the present. It is significant that the teacher develops interests and good habits for the situation at hand. It probably is not most desirable that the teacher have foremost in mind the training or discipline of her pupils for adult life situations. The immediate situation is primary. That good training persist and that it carry over to all situations is, of course, to be desired. The "carry-on," or "carry-over," quality of training should be looked for, for a pupil may be well controlled in one situation but in others show no such effect. Still, the education of the child for his present should govern the teacher more than concern for his future.

Children in the schoolroom, because of strict control, may prepare their lessons diligently and recite according to a fixed pattern. The teacher makes assignments; the pupils prepare and recite them to her. They go through the "form" of lesson getting. Generally, the desired habits, or "disciplines," of scholarship are not established, for the pupils study under compulsion and are working for such artificial rewards and external satisfaction as teachers' approval. Most students cease to study as soon as they finish school. There is little carry-over, for they have had no true motive for learning. They were compelled by teacher-pupil relationship to study, but little if any propelling interest was generated. Most of our formal educational work of the compulsion, lock-step type shows little carry-over, and the graduates

of our schools carry on practically no independent study. When the compulsion of the teacher is removed, the pupils manifest no habits of scholarship. Formal processes directed from the outside, which involve much repetition, do not result in the establishment of controlling aims and dominant habits. Mere mechanical form or "going through the motions" under direction does not develop habits that govern behavior. Only activities that are permeated with interest, motive, purpose, and their associated feelings will result in a training and mental discipline that have significant value.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

Transfer refers to the transfer of knowledge, skills and training, and ideals acquired in one situation to another situation. Mental discipline refers to the training and discipline of the mind, which results in improved power to reason, visualize, imagine, perceive, and concentrate and the acquisition of skills, techniques, and methods.

The curriculum of a half century ago was determined and defended in terms of disciplinary and transfer values, and a few educators today still believe that the study of a certain few subjects will cause such values to be achieved.

The engineering school with few practical subjects but with a strong academic curriculum graduated good engineers, probably not so much because of the values in the training for engineering but because only comparatively few of the very best students finished the course. Today this school has a large engineering plant and offers much practical and applied work.

According to the theory of generalization there is transfer when the principles or ideas acquired in one situation are applied to another situation. Experiments have indicated that there is such transfer but that there is more transfer when the applications are pointed out.

According to the theory of identical elements or components there is transfer from one situation to another to the extent that there are identical or common elements in the two situations. Experiments support this theory, although the amount of transfer is probably not exactly proportionate to the number of identical elements.

There is more transfer for bright children than for average and more for average children than for dull. In short, the amount of transfer corresponds in general with the intelligence of the learner.

Positive transfer from one language to another takes place in terms of similarity. Negative transfer takes place when the structures of the languages are conflicting. Evidence indicates that the study of Latin does help one to understand English words, but only those which have Latin elements.

It is believed that education as a method and process should achieve

discipline and transfer through (1) meaningfulness and understanding, (2) real and lifelike learning, and (3) vital experiences. Applications should be made.

A summary of 211 experiments on transfer shows that in 70 per cent of the experiments there was appreciable or considerable transfer.

In order to obtain transfer, the teacher should work for it by pointing out relationships and making applications. If she does so, much more transfer will be achieved and learning will consequently be greatly broadened.

Even though mental and formal disciplines in the old sense are not now generally accepted as important educational values, the teacher should not overlook the opportunity for training and educating pupils in good methods and habits of living. She should check her teaching in this regard by noting the behavior that her students actually develop.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. What is the difference between mental discipline and transfer?
2. The present school curriculum has several times as many subjects as it had in 1900, for example. What is the connection between this fact and present-day psychology of mental discipline and transfer of training?
3. Discuss fully what the teacher can do to achieve maximum transfer values and also disciplinary or training values.
4. It might be said that the arguments given in favor of the engineering school in its first phase (see page 472) were really rationalization. Comment. Do you think that the same arguments are used now that the engineering school has an extensive, modern plant?
5. Let us assume that for some reason the brightest students, and only the brightest, took one course in typewriting in high school and also one course in college. What values would soon be attributed to typewriting?
6. Give some illustrations of transfer according to identical elements.
7. Discuss amount of transfer according to mental ability, and show that the facts are consistent with other psychological facts about advantages accruing to the bright and disadvantages to the dull.
8. On the basis of the amount of transfer according to the 211 experiments reported by Orata, discuss whether or not we are justified in teaching with transfer or discipline in mind.
9. If a person has been trained to reason carefully in zoology, for example, and draw conclusions based only on carefully validated facts, then he will surely do the same when he is thinking about the candidates for the presidency of the United States. Comment.
10. Give some evidence showing improvement or failure to improve because of transfer resulting from generalization.
11. What can a teacher do to increase the amount of mental discipline and the amount of transfer?
12. Define the theory of generalization, and give a few examples to illustrate.

13. There are economists who cannot get ahead financially, deans of colleges of agriculture who cannot operate a farm profitably, marriage counselors who divorce their mates, and psychiatrists with poor personalities and in bad mental health. What does this illustrate?

14. There will be more transfer from Latin to Italian than from Latin to Swedish. Explain.

## 21. Fatigue, Drugs, Atmospheric Conditions, and Efficiency

**What to Look For.** Be able to describe the mental efficiency of pupils during the course of the school day.

What ideas should be observed in scheduling courses or arranging the school program in order to maintain maximum interest and efficiency?

Be able to describe the relation between feelings of fatigue and actual fatigue.

The effects of loss of sleep on efficiency are described and should be understood. How rapid is recuperation?

Does a student during the typical day experience any impairment from actual mental fatigue?

Can fatigue be induced by sustained mental effort so that mental efficiency will be reduced considerably?

Note the relationship between physical and mental fatigue and the factors that cause fatigue, both physical and mental.

Observe that fatigue is a real problem and that there are internal and external causes.

The drugs discussed are caffeine, nicotine (tobacco), alcohol, strychnine, benzedrine sulfate and dexedrine (pep pills), and opiates and barbiturates. Learn the effects of these drugs on efficiency. Note individual differences in their effects.

What are considered the ideal temperature and humidity, and under what conditions can efficiency be at a maximum even though the temperature and humidity are considerably above the ideal?

What do you think are the actual effects of high temperatures and humidity on efficiency?

### SUSTAINED MENTAL EFFORT AND EFFICIENCY, MENTAL FATIGUE

**Efficiency throughout the School Day.** Can a pupil learn as well at the end of the day as he can at the beginning? Does the school child become so mentally fatigued from doing his lessons that he is unable to do his work as well in the afternoon as in the morning? These questions pertain to mental fatigue and its effect on learning ability.



From a practical point of view, there is no true mental fatigue. Children have been tested at different times of the school day to discover their power to repeat digits, multiply, add, read, insert the missing words in incomplete sentences, and do other tests of mental efficiency. The results indicate that abilities change very little throughout the school day. On the average, children are as capable of doing mental work at three o'clock in the afternoon as they are at nine o'clock in the morning. If anything, there is a slight tendency to do better in hours other than the first hour of the day. The differences are so slight that it is probably most accurate to conclude that during the school day the mental and learning abilities show no material decline or fluctuation because of mental fatigue.

Even though pupils do not become mentally fatigued during the school hours, still they may feel tired. A feeling of fatigue may cause them to be less efficient, unless the circumstances of the schoolroom cause them to work at top efficiency. Any decrease in performance during the school day is caused not by a reduction of actual capacity but by lagging interest, restlessness, and a feeling of being tired. Sitting in a seat for several hours causes some muscles to become tired, and the pupil often gets bored by the monotony of the situation.

With the passing of the day, a mind-set develops for the afterschool activities, and consequently the pupil concentrates less on his lessons. Thus, in a practical sense, the teacher does have to contend with decreasing efficiency on the part of her pupils. They can do as well at the end of the school day as at its beginning; but in the typical schoolroom she finds it harder as dismissal time nears to interest them and to maintain her own alertness and interest. Neither teacher nor pupils feel so able to work as earlier in the day, and their general behavior shows it. If the pupils were placed in a test situation, they would do about as well as at any other time of the day; but the usual control during the school-day routine is not so rigorous as that of a test situation. Consequently, the children are likely to slump toward the end of the school day. The teacher's problem is a practical one. It consists in arranging her program so that the pupils and she will work more zealously when it seems harder to concentrate and thereby offset the last-hour letdown. It is a problem of motivation.

Various investigations of efficiency throughout the school day generally consist in testing the ability of school children with arithmetic tests, tests of memory, and other tests. The general course of ability shows an increase from the beginning of the school day until noon. No fatigue should manifest itself during the morning; in fact, there is a tendency for efficiency to increase slightly during the course of the morning.

The facts hardly warrant charting a precise course of efficiency.

It may safely be said that actual fatigue is not an important factor and that efficiency does not decline by an important amount throughout the school day. Even though there is a slight decline of pupils' ability in the afternoon, the problem, apparently, is one not of their actual efficiency but of their feeling toward their work.

The first and last hours of the school day are not the most efficient. During the first 2 hours of the day there is an improvement in effi-

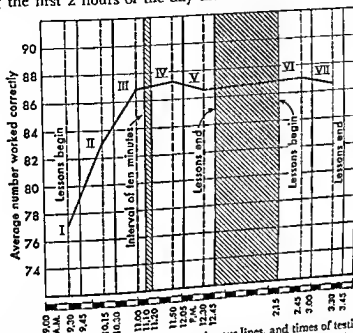


Fig. 25. Changes of lessons are shown by continuous lines, and times of testing by interrupted vertical lines. (After W. J. Stainer, *Rate of Work in Schools*, *British Journal of Psychology*, 19, 439-451, 1929.)

ciency, which reaches a level quite uniformly maintained until the last hour, when a decline sets in. The improvement at the beginning of the school day is probably the result of "warming up," and the decline at the end is caused by a dropping of interest and the letup that usually accompanies the anticipation of the end of the school day. For younger children, continued mental effort over the length of the school day is known to result in a true and considerable decline in the ability to sustain that effort.

Figure 25 shows the curve of ability to add. The rise in the curve indicates a more rapid increase than is actually the case, for the curve begins, not at zero, but at approximately 77. In general, then, most findings agree with those indicated in Fig. 25, showing that the periods of greatest output are between the end periods.

**School Subjects and Hours of Day.** The investigations of mental fatigue have demonstrated that there is no need to schedule certain

school subjects for the beginning of the school day on the ground that they are more fatiguing than others. A common belief has existed among teachers that arithmetic, for example, should be scheduled for the beginning of the school day because it should be studied while the children are fresh. It has also been recommended that other subjects, such as reading, grammar, history, and geography, should be placed at the beginning of the day's schedule. Actually there is no need to differentiate subjects on this particular basis, for pupils are essentially as able to learn at one time of the day as at another.

In one school, for example, it proved desirable to teach arithmetic in the last hour of the school day. A teacher had explained to her superintendent that she had difficulty in maintaining the interest of her pupils during the last hour of the afternoon. She was teaching history during this period, and she complained that the pupils were restless and inattentive. The superintendent recommended that she teach history, which called for little activity as it was being taught, in the first part of the day and have arithmetic in the last hour. The teacher thought that arithmetic was too "hard" a subject for the last hour of the day. She was told that subjects differed little in that respect and that she should try it. The arrangement proved most satisfactory. The activity that the arithmetic called forth overcame the boredom and listlessness that had been apparent during the teaching of a subject that had required much less activity of the pupils. But now the pupils worked with pencils and paper at their seats; they were active at the blackboard; and short drills and exercises also maintained attention.

Actual mental fatigue could be induced during the span of the school day if the attempt were made to do so. If pupils had to work at only one type of task, such as solving arithmetic problems, memorizing poetry, learning the meaning of words, or writing compositions, all day, they would not be so capable at dismissal time as at the beginning of the school day. A small decrease in these abilities might set in by the end of the morning; immediately after the noon hour the pupils would be nearly as effective as ever; however, before the school day was over, decline that could be attributed to actual fatigue would set in.

True, or actual, fatigue is avoided by varying the school program; practical fatigue, boredom, or loss of interest can also be prevented to a large extent by avoiding monotony. Recesses occur in the middle of morning and afternoon sessions; drawing, shopwork, and gymnasium are scheduled between academic subjects to relieve the strain and loss of interest that develop from continued application for long periods to similar kinds of schoolwork. It is important that the schoolwork be judiciously varied and balanced so that interest can be more easily maintained during the school day.

Even though actual mental fatigue does not set in during 2 to 4

hours of mental work to impair mental power materially, interest in the work that is being done declines considerably. A person can translate French, mark papers, memorize geography facts for a period of 2 or 3 hours with a loss of efficiency of less than 10 per cent, but his feelings of zeal and enthusiasm for the work he is doing decrease materially during that period. The practical problem for teachers who direct learning and for those learners who have control of their own time is to vary their tasks as far as possible in order to maintain maximum interest. The problem is one fundamentally of interest rather than of fatigue.

The effect on mental efficiency of 3 hours of work involving reading, defining words, detecting word relationships, and working arithmetic problems has also been tested by measuring efficiency before and after the long period. College students have been found as capable at the end as at the beginning.

Instead of giving a test before and after a long period of mental work, efficiency may be checked by changing the order of the tests so that various groups will take a given test at the beginning and others will take it at the end of the period. If a decrease in ability occurs, because of mental fatigue, a comparison of the scores will show that the scores for the test taken last are lower. Several thousand adults were tested between 8 and 10 p.m., and a comparison of the scores of the various groups taking the test first with those taking it last showed that ability in a mental-test situation was just as high at the end of that period as at the beginning.<sup>1</sup> Most of these adults were professional and semiprofessional people whose work may be described as mental in nature, but at the end of a 2-hour testing period comparatively late in the evening they were just as capable as ever.

In another situation, efficiency might decline. If, for example, students listen to an ordinary lecture from eight to ten o'clock in the evening, their attention probably will wander a good deal, particularly during the last hour. A few may even fall asleep, and only a comparatively few will pay full attention. In a test situation, however, students are equally capable throughout a long period of 2 or 3 hours. Unless the situation calls forth the complete attention and power of individuals, as does a test or examination, a group of children or adults is apt to behave as if fatigued during a class period, lecture, sermon, or other situation where they are passive.

A theory has been advanced, for which there is some experimental evidence, that the mind protects itself by operating in short cycles interspersed with short rest periods. Thus, if a child is working arithmetic problems, his attention is released periodically. These cycles of work with short rest periods tend to keep the mind efficient over a

<sup>1</sup> Based on unpublished research by the author.

long period. This is advanced not as an established fact but as a partly substantiated theory that may explain why the mind maintains its efficiency so well over a comparatively long period. The heart actually works in this way, which no doubt accounts for the almost unbelievable amount of work it does.

Even though the mind does not become truly fatigued during the usual school day, the conclusion should not be drawn that mental fatigue is not a reality. It is an actual condition but is brought about only by severe and sustained mental work. This fact was demonstrated by Arai when she multiplied four-place numbers by four-place numbers mentally for periods of 11 hours during several days. She first memorized the numbers, such as 8,743 and 5,964, and then proceeded to find their product. She did the multiplication mentally. After 11 hours it took her about twice as long to get the answer, and also the amount of error increased slightly. In other words, at the end of 11 hours, her efficiency was about 50 per cent of what it was at the beginning of the period.

At the end of her 11-hour periods of mental multiplication, Miss Arai memorized 40 German words. The significant fact brought out in connection with this is that the loss of efficiency in learning German because of 11 hours of multiplication was only one-fourth as great as the loss of efficiency in the multiplication itself. This indicates that, when fatigue has set in for a given task, if the subject changes to another task the efficiency for the latter will be greater than for the former. Again, it seems that variety or a change of activity prevents to a large degree loss of efficiency because of mental fatigue.

In connection with the problem of fatigue the age factor should be considered. The younger students cannot concentrate so effectively on formal schoolwork for as long periods as the older. Types of tasks that require systematic study are not so fatiguing to upper-grade, high-school, and college students as they are to preschool and lower-grade pupils. Consequently, the work for beginners should be less formal and should consist to a greater extent in activities and projects that capitalize on the natural tendency of children to be physically active.

**Feeling Tired and Actual Efficiency.** A study of the relationship between feeling and efficiency shows that efficiency in some tasks increases though the feeling about the work is one of tiredness. The scale of feeling included seven degrees: (1) extremely good; (2) very good; (3) good; (4) medium; (5) tired; (6) very tired; (7) extremely tired. In an experiment, four different tasks were performed, each for about 5½ hours. They consisted in the addition of two-place numbers, sentence completion, rating compositions according to a scale, and intelligence tests. In the addition test, each subject, using one of the terms given above, reported how he felt at the end of each 30 minutes

of work. In the test of ability to fill in the missing parts of a sentence the subjects reported individually on how they felt every 21 minutes; at the end of every 10 compositions rated and at the end of each 21 minutes, in the case of the intelligence tests, the subjects described their feelings as being extremely good, very good, good, etc., as given above.

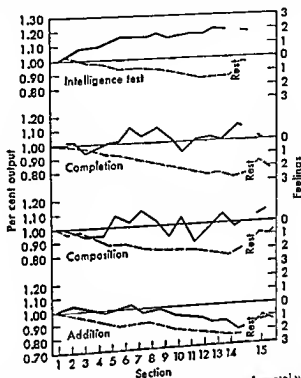


Fig. 26. Relation between output and feelings in four forms of mental work. Solid line represents output, and dotted line represents feeling record. (After A. T. Poffenberger, *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 12: 459-467, 1928.)

Figure 26 shows the relationship between a feeling of fatigue and actual, or true, fatigue. The solid line representing actual achievement reflects the course of actual fatigue over the work period of about 5½ hours; the dotted line indicates the feeling of the worker toward the task.

In all tasks the feeling of fatigue is more pronounced than actual fatigue. Thus, even though a subject is becoming increasingly tired of the work, his efficiency can still be maintained and possibly even be increased, as in the case of the subjects taking the intelligence test.

The relationship between the curves for performance in the addition of two-place numbers and the feeling for that task is different from the rest in that efficiency and feeling parallel each other more closely and

also in that efficiency reaches a point almost as low as the feeling for the work. Possibly in the simpler, more monotonous and routine tasks the actual output follows feeling for the work more closely than it does in the performance of tasks and functions that are more diversified and complicated. Thus, one will maintain efficiency in the functions employing the higher mental processes but not in the simpler functions, even though the feeling for the simpler and less varied tasks takes about the same course as does the feeling for tasks involving a higher order of response.

Rest periods, it may be observed, change the feeling toward work more than they change actual performance. Rest improves the feeling toward the work but has little effect on the work itself. This is to be expected, for there is no actual fatigue but only an attitude of fatigue. One's feeling toward his work is very important, and rest periods probably are most important because of their psychological effects. They improve the feeling for work.

It is not the amount of work in the school day that fatigues the child, but the sameness of it, the monotony. If the work is unvaried and uninteresting, the student gets bored. Hence, during the school day, subjects that are "sitting and recitation" subjects should be alternated with physical education, industrial arts, music, painting, and laboratory courses. Different courses call for different activities; if the schedule is arranged with a view to varying the activity, monotony and boredom will be greatly reduced, efficiency increased, and retro-active inhibition may possibly be reduced.

The problem of sameness and boredom is not limited to the program of a single day only but applies also to the activities day after day. A pupil gets tired of doing the same things every day. Scheduling the tasks and activities during the day to achieve variety helps avoid monotony, but new interests need to be aroused throughout the school year. Special projects, excursions, dramatics, athletic contests, parties, and various curricular and extracurricular activities help enliven the school year.

Recesses, week ends, and vacations help to maintain interest. Breaks and rest periods during the day have proved their worth in industry. Efficiency is maintained and even increased, but another great value lies in the good feelings and attitudes of the workers. In other words, the morale is improved, and this is evident in greater enthusiasm for the work. In school, too, rest and recreational periods may be used to stir the zeal and maintain the efficiency of the pupils at a high level.

**Loss of Sleep and Mental Efficiency.** Teachers at times complain that some of their pupils are too sleepy in class to learn as much as they might. They accuse parents of permitting their children to stay

up so late at night that schoolwork suffers the next day, and they maintain that students lose efficiency when they lose sleep.

Experiments have been made that help to answer questions concerning loss of sleep and efficiency. They have demonstrated the effects of loss of sleep on mental ability, strength of grip, speed of tapping, and ability to aim a gun accurately. In several experiments the sleepless periods were 60 to 70 hours long. The length of such periods can be appreciated when we realize that ordinarily the maximum period that a person goes without sleep is about 20 hours; such a period of sleeplessness generally means that going to bed is postponed until three or four in the morning. At the end of even 20 hours, a person feels very sleepy and tired.

The general results of experiments on sleeplessness indicate that one sleepless night causes hardly any decline in efficiency. The abilities measured by intelligence tests, for instance, are just as high after a night without sleep as before. This is true of practically all abilities. In this connection, however, the factor of effort must be recognized. In the experimental situation, those who were deprived of sleep keyed themselves to maximum effort and thus overcame the effect of sleeplessness. In the ordinary circumstances of the classroom, home, or office, children and adults would be more likely to yield to their drowsiness.

Toward the end of the 60- to 70-hour periods of sleeplessness a definite decline in mental efficiency was apparent. The time required for doing a task increased, and errors were more frequent. Most of the loss occurred toward the end of the period. In addition, the subjects developed nervousness, headaches, a dazed condition, and disturbances of speech. Evidently, up to a certain point, a loss of sleep may even act as a stimulant, but prolonged sleeplessness exacts a heavy penalty.

Complete recovery of mental power lost because of a long period of sleeplessness is brought about by a normal period of sleep. An 8- or 10-hour sleep following the long period without sleep restores mental powers to normal, though a person may not feel fully recovered. It is altogether possible, however, that exhaustion due to inadequate sleep over an extended period of weeks or months would not yield so readily to the resumption of a normal routine. There is no psychological evidence against a program of living that provides for reasonably regular and substantial periods of sleep.

In an experimental situation in which subjects were awake for 100 hours there was great loss of physical and mental efficiency during the last few hours of the 100-hour period. For example, there was no very great loss of memory at 72 hours, but at the end of 96 hours the ability of the subjects was only one-fourth to less than one-half of their normal



ability. Prolonged lack of sleep caused dozing and falling asleep, extreme difficulty in paying attention, irritability, restlessness, reduced ability to study, and staggering. After the period of sleeplessness the subjects had extra sleep to the extent of 29 to 86 per cent of the 100 hours lost, but it took a week before they no longer felt the effects of the long period of sleeplessness.

Prolonged sleeplessness causes actual fatigue, it is true, but we should not interpret a feeling of sleepiness as necessarily indicating actual fatigue. We may occasionally feel sleepy and tired without having our actual efficiency impaired. If, when sleepiness and fatigue seem to overtake us, we eagerly attack a problem, we shall be as efficient as ever, for a few hours at least. It is customary for us to identify the feeling of not desiring to work with diminished capacity for work, but the two are often different. At times, we may be actually fatigued mentally without being clearly aware of our condition. Our feelings of tiredness are not a reliable index to our actual state of mental efficiency.

Both mental and physical work, if prolonged, appear to bring out reserves of energy. We may feel tired, but renewed effort results in continued efficiency for a long time after the initial feelings of fatigue set in. If, therefore, a pupil is to develop his powers, he should not stop studying as soon as he feels fatigued. By continuing beyond that point, he trains himself to study for longer periods. The psychology of fatigue indicates that, when a loss of interest, boredom, or feeling of tiredness sets in, we still have reserves of energy that have not been tapped. To experience mild fatigue is good training, for it conditions one for harder work. Acute weariness, however, should be avoided. For it conditions one to avoid the work that causes it. If one experiences the emotions that accompany too severe fatigue, he may develop a distaste for mental work. Some students are conditioned against study because at some time they have felt very tired and distressed from having worked too hard. The mild fatigue induced by sustained mental effort, however, trains a student for harder levels of work by developing his ability to concentrate and to ignore minor discomforts.

**Need for Sleep and Relaxation.** Sleep is an important factor in mental efficiency, but it is difficult to fix standards, or norms, of the amount needed by children of various ages, for children differ in their individual requirements. As a general guide, the following may be given. Children six to twelve years old require, on the average, about 11 to 10 hours; children twelve to fifteen, about 10 to 9 hours; persons from fifteen to adulthood, 9 to 8 hours, the amount varying inversely with age. Some may require a little more than the amount indicated in order to avoid tiredness, and for some the normal amount is less. Careful observation of the general condition of a child will reveal what for him are the best bedtime and rising time.

One of the best ways to avoid loss of interest and loss of efficiency is to have short periods of rest or a period of relaxation. The recess period and the periods between classes serve this purpose. If pupils persist in being inattentive, the teacher might declare a short rest period or cause them to do a little marching. She should check the temperature and also the ventilation to see that these factors are conducive to attentiveness. Temperature and ventilation should be as ideal as possible.

Children and adults should practice relaxation. Taking a short nap is the best antidote for sleepiness and feelings of fatigue. A short nap either before or after lunch, after school, or just before the evening meal will tend to keep one fresh and free from tensions. It may not be convenient at school to take naps, although in many schools it is part of the routine for preschool and kindergarten children, but naps can be taken at home. Children are not inclined to take time off from play for a nap; but if they would do so, feelings of fatigue would be largely eliminated and efficiency would be increased. Adults should relax by taking regular naps and thus eliminate tensions and maintain maximum health and efficiency.

**Physical Conditions and Fatigue.** A child or adult becomes tired because continued work exhausts the energy supply and causes toxins, or fatigue products, to be formed. We are not certain how mental work consumes energy and causes fatigue products. It is the common scientific opinion that thinking requires very little energy. But the fact must not be overlooked that mental work involves, not the nervous system alone, but also to some extent the whole body. The senses are used intensively, the eyes making hundreds and thousands of movements, and the muscles must support the body generally in a sitting posture. Consequently, fatigue is certain to develop.

Fatigue is caused by physical work because the activity of the muscles produced chemical products, or toxins, that reduce efficiency. These organic poisons—this tissue waste—resulting from use of the muscles produce feelings of fatigue as well as actual fatigue. It is believed that muscular, or body, fatigue causes mental fatigue also or that the two are not entirely distinct and separate and that body fatigue reduces mental efficiency.

A nerve is difficult to fatigue. It can be stimulated again and again and its efficiency decreases very little. Furthermore, no researches have established definitely what fatigue poisons result from the activity of nerve tissues, as they have what fatigue poisons result from muscular work. Possibly fatigue poisons affect the connections of the nerves, or the synapses, and thus reduce mental efficiency. Efficiency in terms of both muscular and mental fatigue should be kept in mind, however, and the two should not be regarded as being independent of each

other. If fatigue is interpreted narrowly in terms of limited nerve stimulation, one may overlook its wider significance in terms of physical and mental health. We know that mental and physical activity do produce fatigue and, if prolonged without adequate rest and recreation, may result in a state of nervousness and ill health that will cause a low state of efficiency for a long time.

The continued use of the eyes induces fatigue; if illumination is inadequate, too strong, too weak, or too glaring, fatigue is developed much more quickly. Consequently, the illumination of classrooms, laboratories, and libraries needs to be governed to protect the students. Good translucent shades, plenty of windows, and well-arranged artificial lighting will provide adequate light. Not enough light is a serious condition, but the wrong light, such as direct sunlight or reflection from shiny surfaces, also induces eyestrain and consequent headaches. The light should be even and uniformly free from shadows and bright patches. With the aid of a light meter the amount of light can be tested, and adequacy can be determined by comparison with standards. A standard of 15 foot-candles is good.<sup>1</sup>

A child tires easily and becomes restless if kept in the same position for a comparatively long period. The restlessness of a child, the continual shifting of position, is an attempt to distribute the stress to various muscles and thus to reduce the amount of postural fatigue. Sitting, standing, and even lying in the same position induce fatigue in a short time because of the strain put on certain muscles.

Noise produces an impact on the nervous system through the ears, just as light stimulates through the eyes, and causes fatigue. Noises in the school building from machinery, the gymnasium, the music department, the hallways, and even the classrooms themselves contribute to pupils' fatigue. Schoolhouses are often situated where the loud and drumming sounds of the traffic—streetcars, busses, trucks, and automobiles—bear down on the pupils and teachers in the school-rooms. Noises are often distractions. Even if pupils become used to them, they are objectionable. On the other hand, it is not necessary to work in gravelike silence. Most healthful of all is the hum of a busy room, not necessarily because the hum is desirable but because it is symptomatic of a healthy condition.

Fatigue-producing factors may be external or internal. Some of the internal factors that contribute to fatigue or breakdown are defective eyes, diseased tonsils, bad teeth, malfunctioning of the endocrine glands, and other forms of organic deficiencies. These are matters that require the attention of a physician, but the teacher can do much toward discovering symptoms and see to it that the child gets the

<sup>1</sup> This is the intensity of light on a surface 1 foot from a light equal to 15 candles.

required attention. This is especially simple if the school has a good health program.

Some students are poorly nourished: they are getting insufficient or deficient food. Poor nutrition brings on fatigue. Also, people with emotional problems develop poor eating and drinking habits. The human machine cannot work efficiently unless it gets the right fuel and body-building foods. Some children and teen-agers are tired because they manage their time badly. Their bad habits show themselves in irregular mealtimes and especially in late hours. Poor nutrition and insufficient sleep leave them tired, irritable, low in energy, and unable to concentrate on the tasks before them. It seems that poor and unhealthy situations work back and forth unfavorably, while good conditions do so favorably.

External factors that induce fatigue are overstimulation, unhealthful clothing, inadequate ventilation, poor illumination, excessive noise, poorly adjusted seats, and even poorly adjusted schoolwork. If pupils from the kindergarten through college are engaged in too many tasks and activities, schoolwork, parties, dramatics, and athletic events, they will be overstimulated. If schoolwork is either too hard or too easy, a fatigued condition will also be induced. Also, sharp, glaring light or light that is too strong or too weak, excessive temperatures, and poor air are decidedly unhealthful in their effects and cause children to tire more rapidly than they would under healthful circumstances.

Breakdown attributed to overwork and fatigue is often due to other causes, such as stress, worry, fear, repressions, and other tensions, which have feeling and emotion at their core. For example, many students are unsuccessful in their work. This frustration brings on unhealthy feelings. In other situations, the work is monotonous and boring. When the student says, "I'm so tired of the work, I could scream," his statement is not without foundation. Other students worry about getting along with the teachers and their peers. When the student is speeding up at the end of the course to avoid failing, when the graduate student is hurrying to complete his thesis, when the housewife is preparing a big dinner, these circumstances induce feelings and emotions that cause more wear and tear than the physical and mental fatigue induced by the activity. Fears, anxieties, and tensions over both real and imaginary problems tire a person more than hard work does.

Many of the ill effects from work can be avoided by managing it correctly. The teacher should plan the work, make her assignments, and guide her children so that they do their work systematically and with a minimum of stress and strain. The tasks should be well distributed; drill periods should be short and interesting. The accumulation of tasks toward the end of the term can be prevented if the in-

ordinate stress on examination and marks is replaced with an interest in the hygiene of the school and the health of the child. If these things are done, fatigue in its broader sense can be avoided. A child or adult, happy and content in his work, can expend an unusual amount of effort without being tired by his work or tired of it. However, when continued application causes overconcern, worry, and other tensions, the work should be left until one can approach it again with zest.

There are a number of fatigue symptoms to look for. Sleepiness, which has already been mentioned, is the most obvious one. Another that the teacher is quickly aware of is lack of attention. It takes energy to attend to the proceedings of the class, and if a child is tired, he will tend to avoid expending that energy. A tired child may be worried, tense, and fretful. He is irritable and easily upset and may cry easily. Also, if a student seems especially awkward and seems to drop everything, he may have this "dropsy" because of fatigue. Fumbling and other evidences of poor motor coordination may be symptoms of fatigue.

The student should not be scolded for such evidences of fatigue, for this is likely to make him worse rather than better. Careful observation of such pupils supplemented by interviews may reveal why they are tired. When the diagnosis has been made, the problem remains to bring about a cure. If the home and school cooperate, a high percentage of success should be achieved.

If a child is poorly adjusted to schoolwork because he has not the ability for it or because the teacher is *too* severe a taskmaster, he may react by being tired, or "lackadaisical," as teachers are inclined to call it. If he is overstimulated by too much activity and too many sensory impacts in the form of music, noise, motion pictures, etc., he may also become fatigued. Understimulation, too, may cause a pupil to be apathetic. He may become tired of just sitting.

In general, a pupil's work should be planned so that his habits of working, sleeping, and eating become wholesome. A good balance can be struck among work, rest, and recreation. By sensitiveness to her children's physical state the teacher may be able to detect conditions that are causing them to seem tired, apathetic, and lethargic.

On the basis of the studies it is easy to draw the conclusion that in a practical sense there is no mental fatigue. Consequently, the tendency may be to generalize that fatigue is a factor in the lives of school children about which teachers and parents need not be concerned. Such a generalization is too narrow, for it may cause parents and teachers to overlook the problem of fatigue in its wider sense. Fatigue can hardly be restricted to that induced by mental activity alone. It is the product of mental and physical work, emotional stresses and strains, poor health, malnutrition, and other factors.

## THE EFFECT OF DRUGS ON MENTAL EFFICIENCY

Man is continuously in search of some food, drink, or drug which will increase and sharpen the mental powers and processes. A few years ago it was reported that some physicians were using glutamic acid, an extract from the wheat germ, to actually increase the mental capacity of growing children. Small to substantial increases in mental capacity or I.Q. of all children taking glutamic acid were reported. The theory advanced to explain the increase in the I.Q. was that the glutamic acid promoted growth and thereby improved the structures, the neurological ones particularly, which underlie intelligence.

All this is very good except that the reported results are not dependable. Careful analysis has cast doubt on the validity of the reported results, and there has been no subsequent evidence to support what seemed for a time a method of improving the mental capacity of children. We may state that at present we are no further along in changing biological copper into biological gold than we ever have been.

Are there any harmless drugs or stimulants that increase a person's learning power? This is a pertinent question, for some students and people in general have the habit of taking certain drinks and sometimes drugs because they feel that they are stimulated by them. Drinkers of tea and coffee, which contain caffeine, feel more alert after a cup or two. Many habitually go to the soda fountain to be refreshed by drinks that contain caffeine. Some men and women drink whisky, wine, or beer in order to be stimulated mentally and physically.

Tobacco companies advertise the therapeutic value of tobacco that gives one a "lift." Some mental workers have taken drugs in order to maintain their efficiency over longer periods. In the attempts of some to maintain and increase their mental and physical alertness, drugs play an important part.

Obviously, a discussion of drugs in a book on educational psychology will lay the greatest emphasis on their effect on learning ability and personal development. But their effect on health may be of much greater importance. Even though their effect on learning ability and personal development is emphasized here, the reader should not be deflected from a consideration of the effect of their continued use on general health. If drugs do injure the health, then, of course, they impair mental and physical efficiency. Most of the studies of drugs and efficiency have covered relatively short periods of time; possibly the effects would be much increased over the span of a lifetime.

Elementary-school pupils are less involved in the problem of how coffee, tea, soft drinks, tobacco, alcohol, and "pep pills" affect a person's efficiency than high-school and college pupils. But they are involved to a certain extent, for the use of tea, coffee, "cokes," and

tobacco falls within the experience of some of them. Questions are often raised about the ill effects on their behavior, and teachers should know the answers, of which the following discussion provides some.

**Tobacco and Mental Efficiency.** A number of studies have revealed that boys who smoke obtain lower marks in their subjects than do boys who do not smoke. Nonsmokers, on the average, are better students than are smokers. This fact has been interpreted as indicating that smoking affects the interest and learning capacity of boys to such a degree that their scholarship suffers appreciably. The interpretation would be justifiable if the smoker and nonsmoker were the same in every respect except for the smoking, but this is not the case. The facts are that schoolboys who are nonsmokers have, in the main, higher I.Q.'s, come from better homes, and show fewer behavior-problem tendencies. The smokers and nonsmokers are different in traits and characteristics that influence scholarship, so that the difference in school achievement cannot be attributed to the use of tobacco. It happens that the pupils who smoke are those who have the least aptitude for schoolwork. This has been the case in the past. If more schoolboys take up smoking, the difference will be less marked.

Conceivably, smoking may have some effect on the learning ability of school children, but we cannot conclude that this is the case from the findings that smokers and nonsmokers differ in their scholarship. The effect of tobacco on learning ability can be determined experimentally by testing the mental efficiency of persons during the periods when they smoke and when they do not or, better yet, by measuring the achievement of two equal groups of which the members of one group smoke, whereas the members of the other do not. In the experiment, all factors that influence learning ability must be the same, and the only variable, or differing factor, must be the smoking.

Studies that have been made to measure the effect of tobacco indicate that smoking does have a slight tendency to reduce mental efficiency. Not all who smoke manifest such a reduction, but the general trend is slightly downward. The physiological effects are more pronounced than the mental effects. The heartbeat is stimulated; steadiness is decreased; and the powers of motor coordination are weakened.

Evidence indicates that smoking has an effect on mental and physical efficiency. We are fairly certain that it does not improve either. Of one fact we are certain, and that is that for everyone except the very rare exceptions there are no benefits to be obtained from smoking; instead, some slight injury to health and efficiency probably results. However, anyone who associates the use of tobacco with intellectual bankruptcy has a distorted point of view. Everyday observations show that much mental work is being done by men who are

habitual and, in some cases, heavy smokers. Some of the most capable college students are smokers, while some of the poorest are not. The use of tobacco does not reduce mental efficiency materially, or we should not see so many smokers among the great scientists and authors.

Most experiments of this sort have included adults as subjects. Probably the effect on growing children would be greater. The use of tobacco has been interpreted in terms of its influence on mental efficiency. In appraising it fully, it should also be evaluated for its effect on health; as an expense; as pleasure or annoyance; and also as a time-consuming, ill-smelling, and unclean habit. These points are outside the present study but are mentioned in order to suggest a wider orientation to this as well as to attempt to train the student to see problems fully, with all their ramifications.

**Alcohol and Efficiency.** We need no experiment to provide data on what large dosages of alcohol do to mental and physical efficiency. Almost everyone has heard the incoherent words of a person who has drunk heavily or has seen such a person stagger about or lie collapsed on the floor. The evidence is fairly clear that, in cases of intoxication, mental and physical abilities are seriously impaired.

Even though larger amounts of alcohol deaden and anesthetize the senses, it is conceivable that small amounts may stimulate the human organism and improve the facility with which it learns. There are those who insist that even a little alcohol reduces the mental and physical powers; others maintain that moderate and restricted drinking improves the abilities to respond to a situation. The only satisfactory answer to the question is to be found in carefully conducted experiments.

One such experiment, conducted by Hollingsworth, will be discussed. Tests of mental ability included multiplying two-place numbers by each other, finding the opposites of a list of adjectives, and learning to make substitutions involving letters and geometrical forms. Steadiness was measured by testing the ability to hold a small steel pointer in a hole without touching its edge. Coordination was measured by the persons being tested having to make contact with the metal inserts in a wooden triangle; those who could go around the triangle most often by making contact at each corner were considered as having greater powers of coordination. In a tapping test the subjects tapped a metal plate with a metal pointer as fast as they could, and the number of taps was recorded electrically.

The young men who were subjects in this experiment were examined by these tests under a number of circumstances: when they did no drinking, when they drank a considerable amount of water, when they drank beer that contained no alcohol, when they drank about three bottles of 2.75 beer, when they drank six to nine bottles of 2.75



beer, and when they ate a heavy noon meal. They were in the laboratory a number of days from nine o'clock to four. The drinking or eating was done at noon, and the record on the tests during the morning was compared with the afternoon's record in order to test the effect of alcohol on mental ability, steadiness, and coordination.

The results indicated that efficiency was decreased by alcohol. The decrease was largest during those afternoons following the heaviest drinking, being about 10 to 15 per cent for the mental functions; the loss was only about 5 to 10 per cent during the afternoon following the noon of light drinking. The greatest effect was on steadiness; there was considerable unsteadiness when much beer was drunk. The losses of ability measured by the coordination and tapping tests were essentially the same as the losses in the mental functions and corresponded to the amount of alcohol consumed. It is rather difficult to interpret percentages psychologically; but, in general, it may be concluded that the drinking of comparatively weak beer lowered mental and physical efficiency a little; furthermore, as the amount of alcohol consumed was increased, mental and physical efficiency was further decreased.

Some of the more specific results of the experiment were that toward the end of the afternoon period, which ended at 4 P.M., efficiency was being regained because the effect of the alcohol was wearing off. It was also discovered that individual resistance to the effects of alcohol varied according to abilities. In general, those of the highest mental and physical capacity were influenced least by alcohol, and those least capable were affected most. This is consistent with the general principle that good influences favor most those who are best and favor least those who are poorest originally, or that unfavorable influences affect least the most favored and most those who are least endowed. Another observation made in connection with the Hollingworth study noted that efficiency may be maintained quite well if the subject is highly motivated or fights off the effects that lower it. In other words, if one does not "let go," the injurious effects are much less marked.

This principle also applies to fatigue, pain, distraction, and uncomfortable weather conditions. If a person fights off their effect, the loss of efficiency is much less. It should be emphasized, however, that any prolonged attempt to defeat fatigue or to stimulate efficiency by artificial means, as by drugs, can end only in ultimate loss of efficiency. Possibly for a short period, as in an emergency when one must accomplish much in a short time, one might fight off the effects of fatigue and stimulate efficiency artificially. The aftereffects, however, are not good, and in the long run the net result will be less accomplishment than if one works an optimum amount from day to day.

Alcohol is commonly regarded as a stimulant, while in fact it is a

depressant. It gives the impression of being a stimulant because it tends to make people talkative. Alcohol relaxes a person and reduces his inhibitions, and consequently his talkativeness is stimulated. The quality of the talking is not improved; only the quantity is increased.

Not all persons react in the same way to varying sized doses of alcohol; but, in general, efficiency in all activities and processes, either simple or complex, is lowered by alcohol. Tapping rate, reaction time, typing, reading, automobile driving, and answering mental-test questions are all affected adversely by alcohol. It does not stimulate more rapid and more accurate responses but has the opposite effect.

**Caffeine, Strychnine, and "Pep Pills."** These are stimulants, and, in general, temporarily improve mental function and sensorimotor abilities. Caffeine is usually associated with tea and coffee, for these beverages contain it to the extent of about two to three grains per cup. Amounts of caffeine ranging from the amount in a cup of tea or coffee to three times as much have been used to test its effect on mental and physical abilities. The effect on typewriting, for instance, was found to vary according to the size of the dose. Small doses not exceeding three grains increase the speed, and accuracy is not impaired; but larger doses, between three and six grains, retard both speed and accuracy.

Small doses of caffeine also stimulate the mental processes. The effect is noticeable about an hour after the drug is taken and persists for several hours. Larger doses persist longer than smaller ones. Apparently no negative reaction from the stimulating effect on efficiency follows the period of stimulation from small doses; but when large doses of caffeine are used, the efficiency drops below average when the stimulating effect has worn off.

The effects of one or two cups of coffee are to increase the pulse rate about 5 to 10 per cent and to increase blood pressure about 5 per cent. Memory is improved slightly, as is the rate of adding, and this supports most findings to the effect that caffeine stimulates the higher mental processes. The evidence indicates that caffeine or coffee and tea reduce boredom and sleepiness and tend to stimulate "peppiness" and attentiveness.

Not much need be said about strychnine except that certain dosages may increase efficiency temporarily; the aftereffects are reduced efficiency. Strychnine is a dangerous poison and should be administered only by a competent physician.

"Pep pills" are sometimes taken by college students, particularly when they are cramming for their examinations. These pills contain benzedrine sulfate, and they keep a student awake so that he can study for longer hours than usual. "Pep pills" are effective for this purpose, but their use is not to be recommended, for their physiological

aftereffects, namely, headache, fatigue, sleeplessness, and poor circulation, are bad.

The reactions of people to benzedrine sulfate or similar drugs are not uniform. The largest number feel "peppy," stimulated, and exhilarated. They also feel that their powers of concentration have been increased. On the other hand, a considerable number complain of insomnia and nervousness. A few complain of headache, uneasiness, and increased fatigue. For most people, "pep pills" lessen sleepiness and cause greater alertness, but some respond to them with increased fatigue and depression. In general it has been found that the mind is more alert and thinks better as a result of being stimulated by "pep pills." The same is true of the speed and accuracy of physical reactions. Some persons are affected adversely by this stimulant, but, on the whole, it improves the mood and feeling tone and tends to reduce fatigue. The aftereffects, however, more than offset the advantages gained.

Dexedrine is an improvement over benzedrine because it stimulates with less ill effect. Still, its use should be most conservative and only under the guidance and control of a doctor who understands the effects of both energy pills and barbiturates.

Besides being interested in opiates and stimulants because she wants to be well informed, the teacher has a special interest in their use by teen-agers. Magazines and newspapers have carried many stories of high-school students being drug addicts. Featured in these articles are lurid stories of marijuana smoking and opium shots for taking trips into the dreamy lands of warm, sweet dreams. The facts are that very little "dope" gets into the hands of high-school students, but occasionally marijuana, particularly, may tempt some of them.

High-school students and college students, too, in seeking a "kick" or thrill may take energy pills which are referred to as "thrill pills," "goof balls," or "a bolt and a jolt." These pills usually have the general effect of making one feel "pepped up" so that one can cut loose with new energy and vigor.

Again it must be emphasized that the use of either dream stuff (opiates) or energy pills (dexedrine) by high-school students is comparatively rare. However, high-school teachers ought to know about these distorted attempts to short-circuit nature into producing some exciting thrills, "kicks," and jolts. Some teen-agers have a strong taste for excitement, and it does happen that they employ artificial means to find it.

The use of drugs to increase mental and physical powers results, in the end, in lowered efficiency. It is true that, when a person is depressed and apparently without energy, some drugs can be taken that cause a temporary feeling of exhilaration and renewed energy. They

also prevent sleepiness. Thus, if a person must drive an automobile all night or be active in an emergency, he can improve his powers temporarily. But in general, efficiency can be maintained best by a sensible regimen of work, recreation, and diet and by observing the established psychological principles of learning and thus making the best of the capacities we possess.

#### THE EFFECT OF HUMIDITY AND TEMPERATURE ON ACHIEVEMENT

Teachers and school administrators lay great stress on the temperature of the schoolroom and the humidity of the air. Today, air conditioning has become an important industry, and the public is "air-condition-minded." Educators are interested in temperature and humidity primarily because they are thinking of the health of students and secondarily because they feel that, unless the temperature and humidity are nearly ideal, learning ability is impaired.

The ideal temperature is generally considered to be about 70 to 72 degrees and the proper relative humidity approximately 50 per cent. It is usually assumed that students work best under such conditions; but measurement of mental performance when the temperature and humidity are unduly high indicates that one can do just as well at such times as when these two factors are ideal. In a study of mental ability the subjects were tested in a poorly aired room where the temperature was 86 degrees and the relative humidity was 80 per cent. The test consisted of problems in mental multiplication and in finding words opposite in meaning to given words. The subjects were tested for 4 hours each day on 5 consecutive days. They were also tested when the room was well aired, the temperature was 68 degrees, and the relative humidity 50 per cent. No essential difference was noted in the mental efficiency of the subjects in the two situations.

These results suggest that for a period of several hours, at any rate, human beings can adjust themselves to unfavorable climatic conditions and maintain their efficiency. Probably, if high temperatures and humidity were maintained for much longer periods, mental efficiency would finally be reduced, just as it is in the latter part of a long period of sleeplessness. Conceivably, then, efficiency may be maintained for a time when atmospheric conditions are not favorable, but a depressing and enervating effect would set in after a prolonged period.

High temperature and high humidity actually do reduce efficiency. It is true that for a short period a person can make a special effort and resist the unfavorable effects, but this in itself is fairly good evidence that high temperatures and high humidity reduce efficiency.

Poffenberger reports that in two unventilated factories the output was 11 and 18 per cent less in the hottest weeks of the year than in the

coldest. In ventilated factories the output was only 8 per cent less in the warmest weeks than in the coldest. Such facts are reliable evidence that comfortable and healthful temperatures and humidity are conducive to greater efficiency.

It is known from general observation that in geographical areas where the temperatures and humidity are high throughout much of the year the intellectual productivity and creativeness of the people are low. The products of great energy and creativeness, such as achievements in art, letters, and science, are given the world principally by men and women in the temperate zones, where the climate is cold a portion of the time and never very hot and humid for a large part of the year. Statements such as these are not proof that high temperatures and high humidity affect mental efficiency, for possibly men with potential creativeness are attracted to the temperate zones by the greater opportunities there in industry, science, and art. These selective factors should always be considered. However, examples are on record of young men charged with ambition to do research and to publish their findings who after residing for a time in a warm, moist climate have lost much of their interest and are no longer creative.

Experiments show that for a short period one can by determination overcome the enervating, debilitating effects of poor ventilation and unhealthful temperatures. High motivation will maintain efficiency for a short period, but on the basis of broad experience and observation such conditions apparently influence efficiency eventually. The work accomplished under experimental conditions is hardly what will be done in the typical classroom. Teachers and administrators are wise, therefore, in regulating the temperature and humidity so that the room conditions are pleasant and comfortable. In school it is especially necessary to keep the temperature as comfortable as possible because students in their seats do not have much chance to warm up if it is too cold or to cool off if it is too warm. In general, if the room is kept free from drafts and the temperature and humidity are maintained at a comfortable level, the children will be happier even if not materially more efficient; in the long run, they probably will be considerably more efficient, also.

#### SUMMARY AND REVIEW

From the beginning of the school day to its end there is little change in actual efficiency. The first and last periods are the least efficient, probably because they are the warm-up and terminal periods. Any changes in efficiency throughout the day are caused, not by fatigue, but most probably by changes in interest.

In preparing the daily program no consideration need be given to

4. In arranging the order in which subjects are to be studied in the course of the day in an elementary school, the interest of the pupils should be taken into account, rather than the hardness of the subjects. Discuss.

5. If a pupil is highly motivated, his efficiency varies little throughout the school day. Comment.

6. What conclusions can you draw and what applications can you make from the findings on the effects of loss of sleep?

7. What is the effect of drinking a cup of coffee on motor and mental efficiency?

8. What effect does a moderate drink of hard liquor have on motor and mental efficiency?

9. If a person started out in the morning to memorize poetry, to work arithmetic problems, or to translate German and continued in one of these activities diligently for 10 hours without interruption, there would probably be a true decline in efficiency of 25 to 50 per cent. Discuss whether or not such a decline is caused by actual fatigue.

10. Is it not probable that a decline in mental efficiency that is attributed to mental fatigue may also be accompanied and partly caused by physical fatigue also? Comment.

11. For the majority, "pep pills" destroy sleepiness. What are the ill effects? Under what special circumstances might it be desirable to take a "pep pill"?

12. What methods can be used to prevent a loss of interest and to minimize the possible effects of fatigue during the day?

13. How much advantage is possibly gained by not smoking?

14. What can a person, child or adult, do to be in a condition that is conducive to efficiency?

## 22. The Activity and Project Method of Teaching

### *Learning in Problem and Lifelike Situations*

**What to Look For.** Differentiate between the activity, project, or problem method and the traditional method. What terms distinguish these two methods?

Note the claims that are usually made for each method.

What were the results of one of the early experiments on the effectiveness of the activity method, and why can the results be questioned?

Learn the features of the Collings experiment with the project experiment, and learn how the results were evaluated.

How can arithmetic be taught by the activity method, and what are both the immediate and the more remote results of such methods of teaching?

What were the results of trying to teach English by means of a puppet show?

Is the material covered when taught by the informal, activity, or project method?

What are your reactions to postponing formal arithmetic for several grades and devoting the time to developing concepts and understanding?

An experiment was conducted that is referred to as the Thirty Progressive Schools. Learn the features of the experiment and the results.

Note that not all the results are on the side of the more modern methods.

Give consideration to the relationships of the traditional and the newer methods of teaching to American democracy. Which is more in harmony with our philosophy of government?

What are the results obtained from the new and old methods in terms of subject matter and personal development?

**Introduction.** Methods of teaching range from the rigorous question-and-answer, textbook, and drill method to the project and pur-

posing type of teaching. The former makes little appeal to motive and is not based on an activity program; the latter is based on problems, purposes, and motives.

Controversy has raged for many years over the comparative effectiveness of the older and newer types of teaching. The experimental evidence is not one-sided, with all of it supporting one type of method. Some evidence indicates that pupils taught through drill and reviews, with emphasis on the acquisition of facts, do better in examinations designed to measure the extent to which facts have been acquired. Progressive educators emphasize that educational values should include many other values besides the acquisition of facts. They insist that more facts are actually acquired through the project, purposing, and activity methods and, besides, more social, ethical, training, or scholarly values are acquired, also.

Teachers and administrators today are deeply interested in the activity, or project, method of teaching. This movement is at present attracting the interest of educators as hardly ever before. Leaders are arguing heatedly, and even bitterly, over its merits and demerits. We have the "progressives," on the one hand, advocating this method of teaching and sponsoring experiments; on the other, we have the "conservatives," or "essentialists," denouncing some features of it and pointing out the virtues of the more formal methods. It might further education to forget such terms as *progressive* and *conservative* and center our efforts on an experimental evaluation of various methods in terms of how much they help students.

In the public press, because of the results obtained from history tests given to high-school graduates a few years ago, a torrent of editorial criticism was poured out against the schools. The apparent lack of knowledge was caused, it was claimed, by progressive methods of teaching. Teachers were told to get back to teaching the good old fundamentals in the good old-fashioned way. Whatever progress the country has made in going to the dogs, and it seems to be a good deal, is laid at the uncertain feet of progressive education, with its activities, projects, and purposes.

Even though it has not been and is not a prevailing method, the activity method of teaching is not new. It is probably as old as teaching itself. Some teachers have always taught by means of controlled activities and larger units. There have also been philosophers throughout the ages who have expressed disapproval of the rigorous, formal, lock-step type of teaching and advocated a more liberalized method based on the pupils' normal interests and activities.

Some fundamental differences exist between the more common traditional type of teaching and the newer methods that have been designated as *activity methods*. The traditional method is more formal



tively. They also mention that students of the activity school actually acquire more information and have more knowledge than students in schools laying the greatest stress on such acquisition and also that the interests, needs, and wishes of children are satisfied to a greater extent than in the more conventional type of school. Furthermore, those of the activity school maintain that much of the learning in the typical school is artificial and not lifelike to the child but largely rote and mechanical. On the other hand, when a child learns through activities and projects, he acquires his skills and knowledge from a natural problem and in a lifelike situation. Consequently, the work of the school has meaning to him because it is real and vivid.

These issues are fundamental, for they pertain to the learning and living of the school child. Since the principal purpose of the teacher is to guide the pupil to learn effectively and to live successfully, these issues are also vital to the student of educational psychology.

The major purpose in discussing the activity, purposing, or project methods is not to argue for its effectiveness but to show that these methods provide additional means for stimulating learning, for developing personality, and for providing for individual differences. These more modern educational methods enlarged our concepts of learning, and the educator should have an experimental attitude toward any method that will develop the students. Furthermore, no given principle of learning or educational method has a monopoly on effectiveness. It is thus best to enrich the experiences of the students as far as possible by utilizing all accepted methods.

### EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS

**An Early Experiment.** Even as far back as about 40 years ago, a report was made of a grade school in which the students did not study arithmetic, grammar, history, and the other traditional subjects but instead learned through activities, which consisted of observation, games, handwork, stories, pictures, and music. The pupils thus taught were studied when they had become high-school students, and it was then discovered that they did better on the average than students taught in the usual way. This, of course, does not prove the superiority of the activity method, for the students from the activity school may have been superior in capacity and consequently might have done superior work regardless of the method employed in teaching them. Nevertheless, the report of this work is important in showing that the activity type of teaching and the project method do not belong exclusively to this decade.

**Some Experimental Results.** One of the more extensive studies of the project method was made in a Missouri rural-school situation. Three rural schools were included. One, known as the *experimental*

school, had an enrollment of 41; two others, known as the *control schools*, had enrollments of 29 and 31, respectively. Over a period of 4 years the project and activity program predominated in the experimental school; in the control schools the traditional methods prevailed; the object of the experiment was to test the effectiveness of the method stressing purposes and motivation.

In the experimental school the day was devoted to four types of project—story, hand, play, and excursion. The investigator's words describe these projects:<sup>1</sup>

Play projects represent those experiences in which the purpose is to engage in such group activities as games, folk dancing, dramatization, or social parties. Excursion projects involve purposeful study of problems connected with environments and activities of people. Story projects include purposes to enjoy the story in its various forms—oral, song, picture, phonograph, or piano. Hand projects represent purposes to express ideas in concrete form—to make a rabbit trap, to prepare cocoa for the school luncheon, or to grow cantaloupes.

The teachers in the experimental school tried to stimulate situations so that these various types of projects grew naturally out of lifelike experiences. For example, the children studied the causes of frequent typhoid fever in the home of Mr. Smith, one of the residents of the school district. They made visits, wrote for bulletins, made flytraps, and prepared reports. This project caused them to do considerable reading, reporting, and writing; they found use for arithmetic in calculating costs for window screens and flytraps; and they also had experience in manual training. Thus, as a part of their motivated activity, they received excellent training in oral and written English, arithmetic, manual arts, and sanitation and hygiene. Because they actually studied a real problem and made real recommendations to Mr. Smith on how to avoid typhoid fever, the pupils also developed definite ideals and attitudes toward hygienic and sanitary living.

Many other projects grew out of their immediate environment, such as how Mr. Long made molasses, how the dandelion spreads so rapidly, how tomatoes were canned at the local factory, what was seen at the big circus and at a trial in a juvenile court, and how the county agent tested oil. Out of such projects the grade pupils of this experimental school were expected to obtain the knowledge and skills that are expected to be achieved through the traditional curricula. The exponents of the project method maintain that out of the children's rich experiences they acquire certain ideals and appreciations which probably are more significant to them than are the facts and information that they learn.

<sup>1</sup> Collings, Ellsworth, *An Experiment with a Project Curriculum*, p. 48, The Macmillan Company, New York, 1926.

The experimental and control schools, which had been matched at the beginning so that valid comparisons could be made at the end of the experimental period, were tested to determine the effectiveness of the project method. The pupils were tested in penmanship, composition, spelling, American history, geography, reading, and the four fundamental processes in arithmetic. The achievement of the students in the experimental school was 138.1 per cent of that of the control school. There is always a danger of fallaciously expressing relative achievement by means of percentages; nevertheless, the results indicated a definite superiority in knowledge and skills of the children taught by the project method.

Apparently, when children are motivated in the study of real and lifelike problems and projects, they acquire more subject matter than do those who study just the teacher's daily assignments. In order to answer their own questions and to solve their problems, pupils of the project method studied in the various subject-matter fields extensively enough to achieve better than those who studied only the "next lesson."

In addition, the attitudes of both pupils and parents toward the school were investigated. That of the pupils was evaluated by calculating changes in attendance, tardiness, truancy, corporal punishment, graduation from the eighth grade, and the number entering high school. In all these items, distinct superiority existed for the experimental school. For example, 85 per cent of the pupils of the experimental school graduated from the eighth grade, whereas only 10 per cent of the control-school pupils did so.

The parents' attitudes were judged by the number of their visits to the school, attendance at annual school meetings, tax rate for teachers' salaries, use of school apparatus and school library, and votes for establishment of a rural high school. All items were decidedly in favor of the school using the project method. For example, the change in the number of parents visiting school was 90 per cent in the experimental school and 5 per cent for the control.

The evidence from this experiment by Collings is convincing that a type of schoolwork which is motivated and has a purpose felt by the students results in outcomes favorable in terms of both subject matter and attitudes. Mention might be made of the fact that, when the effectiveness of any program of teaching or supervision is tested, improved results are usually obtained. This improvement comes about because the experiment stimulates increased efforts on the part of teachers and supervisors. The experimental program takes on the character of a drive, or campaign, to improve achievement. And experience has shown that achievement can be stimulated when special effort is directed to that end.

ing on real and interesting problems will be retained better because of being learned through use and practice in a situation where the pupils are highly motivated. Knowledge and ability acquired in this way, they claim, will be retained, for it is learned psychologically in a real situation where many rich associations are developed. These educators state that, on the other hand, knowledge acquired by rote and by teacher-assigned lessons will be largely forgotten, since the subject matter has not the real meaning that it has when learned through activities and experiences. It is contended that true and real meaning is achieved through vivid activities and is not acquired by means of the mechanical and routine procedures of the old-style teaching.

Other experiments also indicate that pupils taught according to the activity method learn very effectively. In one study the activities consisted of a candy sale, mothers' party, preparing baskets for needy families, preparing a luncheon, making quilts for children's hospitals, and serving the teacher's luncheon. Each of these units took 8 to 12 periods; the purpose was to test whether or not the pupils learned the fundamental processes. Of the 17 processes tested, 14.2 steps, or 84 per cent of them, were mastered. The period covered was half a grade, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  year; and an analysis of the examination showed that 79.5 per cent of the basic steps were mastered during that period. The pupils had comparatively little arithmetical ability in the beginning; they acquired most of it during the experimental period.

It did not matter whether the steps appeared logically or in random order; the students learned them just as well one way as another. Furthermore, no correlation existed between the number of times the process was repeated and the degree of mastery; the results in general show that all the processes were acquired to a satisfactory degree.

These results cast doubt on the idea that in teaching arithmetic the steps must follow in logical order and textbooks should make regular provision for consistent review and repetition. Conceivably, if a step is experienced in a problem or activity situation, the usual principles of exercise and repetition do not hold. We have learned that principles of learning through practice and repetition do not hold in many instances and apparently have been oversimplified.

**Results in English and Language.** Additional evidence on the effectiveness of the activity method was obtained for a semester's work of a fifth-grade class, the activity consisting in writing and presenting a puppet show. The pupils gave the show in order to earn money to buy library books, and they made \$26. They studied the history of puppetry in Greece, China, Japan, Italy, India, England, and the United States. They read many books in order to obtain suitable material for the construction of their show. Some of these were Hans Andersen's *Fairy Tales*, Lewis Carroll's *Alice's Adventures in Wonder-*

land, and Daniel Defoe's *Robinson Crusoe*. Oral English was practiced in committee meetings, in the discussion of plans, in telling visitors about the show and how puppets are made, in talking to shopkeepers in making purchases, and in reading parts in the play. Practice in written English was obtained by writing the play, recording experiences, and writing letters to business concerns about needed materials, advertisements, letters of invitation, and critical reviews. Activities were not confined to English alone, however. The pupils also had to figure the cost of materials, to sew, to paint, and to do carpentry work. Moreover, they derived valuable social experiences from working together, from meeting visitors, and from going to the library.

In this experiment, no control group was used, but tests were given to determine the gains acquired, and comparisons were made with the standards. The percentage of normal, or average, gain in reading vocabulary was 156 per cent; in reading composition, 163 per cent; in language usage, 163 per cent. Thus, the gains in fundamental skills were about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  times the average, and probably most important were the gains from experiences outside the field of English.

**Covering the Material.** Teachers accustomed only to the usual classroom procedures doubt that the pupils will have an opportunity to acquire fundamental skills and knowledge unless they are taught in a regular and systematic way. Usually they ask, "How can a child get his concept of numbers and acquire practice in the fundamental process and also in reasoning unless he acquires skills and abilities through formal drill?" They do not realize that a method can exist outside the regular drill-and-assignment, textbook method.

Nothing is further from experience than this assumption, however, as students from kindergarten through graduate school learn by means of problems and activities that cause them to acquire many facts and develop new ideas. In fact, in the graduate school a student learns largely through working on problems and conducting research. In the kindergarten, children can learn arithmetic by using the calendar and raising questions about various days, by keeping attendance charts, by keeping track of vacation days, and by holding parties for their mothers. Any number of situations arise where children attending school can learn numerals and ordinals much more effectively than through formal drill and teaching.

In this connection, reference may be made to a study conducted to determine the origin of activities and the courses or subjects involved. Teachers of Berkeley, Calif., were asked to indicate the subjects in which activities originated; those which became involved, in addition to those in which the project originated; the length of time covered by the activity; and whether the activity was initiated by the pupils or by the teachers. Other points were covered, also. It was found that most

activities originated in the social studies, about one-fourth as many in reading, and nearly the same number in nature study as in reading. Thus, it is apparent that far more activities originate in the social studies and fewer in the others.

Of the subjects which became involved but in which the activity did not originate, art was involved most often, with reading and language nearly as often, and spelling only one-half as often as art. Other subjects were included less often than spelling.

Activities vary considerably in their length, some taking a whole semester, others 8 weeks, some 4, and others a still shorter time. It is quite apparent, therefore, that activities fit into some fields of study better than others. Possibly it is not safe for all teachers to depend on activities to cover all the so-called *fundamental* subject matter. The proponents of the activity movement, however, might argue that the curriculum should not be divided into subjects and that projects and activities that disregard subject-matter lines will cover all fields of learning in the elementary school very adequately.

Another analysis of whether or not the processes are covered by activities was made to see how many involved the adding of tenths, hundredths, thousandths, and various mixed decimals. It was evident from this analysis that most of the steps involving the processes mentioned and also various combinations of decimals used in multiplication, subtraction, addition, and division were used. In one unit, for example, 34 out of 47 steps were practiced; in another, 26 out of 47. It appears, therefore, that if several activities or projects are carried out, practically all the steps will be covered.

**Developing Ideas and Concepts in Arithmetic.** One of the most fascinating experiments reported in the literature is one pertaining to the examination of pupils in arithmetic and the subsequent postponement of formal arithmetic until the seventh grade. This experiment was not scientific in the usual sense, for it had no control and experimental group; nevertheless, it is so provocative of ideas that it is worth detailed consideration. Benezet was disturbed by the large number of failures in the first grade accountable to arithmetic; also, he was appalled by the answers that eighth-grade pupils gave to his questions. A stenographer reported the replies. To a question about fractions, some of the replies were as follows:

1. The smaller number in fractions is always the largest.
2. If the numerators are both the same, and the denominators one is smaller than one, the one that is the smaller is the larger.
3. The denominator that is smallest is the largest.
4. If you have two fractions and the one fraction has the smallest number at the bottom, it is cut into pieces, and one has more pieces. If the two fractions are equal, the bottom number was smaller than what the other one in the

other fraction. The smallest one has the largest number of pieces—would have the smallest number of pieces, but they would be larger than what the ones that were cut into more pieces.

The English used by the pupils was astounding; the knowledge of arithmetic was no better. As a consequence, Benezet stated that he "abandoned all formal instruction in arithmetic below the seventh grade and concentrated on teaching the children to read, to reason, and to recite—my new three R's!"

The new plan was carried out where the parents did not speak English; if it had been tried in schools where the children's parents were high-school and college graduates, there might have been a revolution. "Educated" parents would not have permitted such a drastic change in the school program, but the foreign-speaking were less sensitive. In the first six grades the program was informal but directed to give students quantitative concepts and to stimulate quantitative thinking. In the first grade, for example, the pupils learned the numbers up to 100 and such comparative terms as *more, less; many, few; higher, lower; taller, shorter*. In the second grade the comparatives were continued; but pupils learned also about how to tell time, page numbers, values of certain coins, and such simple measures as the pint and quart. The fourth grade did considerable estimating of dimensions in terms of inches, feet, and yards and distances in terms of miles. In all this informal work an attempt was made to stimulate the students to reason soundly, judge accurately, and comprehend matters realistically rather than mechanically.

As a general test exercise the members of both the conventional and the experimental classes were also asked to put down what they were inspired to write when a picture of a polar bear on a small iceberg was hung before them. It was Benezet's theory that formal arithmetic resulted in unimaginative statements and stifled the power of expression. He found that in the classes where the arithmetic was informal the pupils were distinctly superior in their use of adjectives. They used such words as *magnificent, awe-inspiring, unique, and majestic*, whereas the students in the classroom where the arithmetic was formal used such words as *nice* and *pretty*. Of course, this is not quantitative experimental proof, but it is a definite straw in the wind, showing possibly the direction in which the evidence points.

After a period of time the formal and informal classes were visited again and given a problem such as this: A wooden pole is stuck in the mud of a pond; one-half the pole is in the mud, two-thirds of the rest is in the water, and 1 foot is sticking out in the air; how long is the pole? In the traditional classrooms the answers were as incoherent as those of which samples have been presented here; figuratively speaking, the pupils themselves were stuck in the mud. On the other hand, the

students in the classes where formal arithmetic was postponed to the upper grades figured out the answers without any difficulty; and when the answers of 5 years before were read to them, they shouted with laughter.

It can be argued, of course, that the type of arithmetic problem used is the old type, which is now out of date. In addition, as has been said before, claim may be made that the procedures were of an observational nature and did not involve carefully controlled measurements. This is true, of course; nevertheless, this type of study has considerable value because of the ideas that it emphasizes.

**The 30 Progressive High Schools.** An experiment was conducted by 30 high schools that broke away from the traditional by liberalizing their procedures. They adopted in various degrees the progressive, or activity, method. Their objectives were:

1. To acquire fundamental knowledge, skill, and habits.
2. To develop good work habits.
3. To learn to think independently.
4. To acquire cultural interests and appreciations.
5. To adjust socially.
6. To be emotionally stable.
7. To be healthy.
8. To discover and develop fundamental purposes—vocational objective.

These are worthy objectives and much more comprehensive than the limited but often dominant objective of acquiring facts and information.

One of the major tests made of the effectiveness of the experimental program was the collection of evidence on how well the students from the experimental high schools did in college. Traditionally, many colleges require for entrance certain prescribed courses, but they waived the requirement for the students from the experimental schools. It is well that they did, for the students from the experimental schools got slightly higher marks than did the students of equal intelligence from the traditional high schools.

Of greater importance was the finding that, when a group of students was selected for capacity to do independent work, 75 per cent were students educated in the experimental high schools. In addition, research into the activities of the college students revealed that the experimental students were more interested in social problems and politics, had more dates, and attended more dances. Except for athletics, they were more active on the campus and exercised more leadership.

Academically, the experimental students were described as knowing how to search for facts and as having a tendency to base their opinions



on the facts. They were also described as not being "grinds" but as being more dynamic than students educated in the traditional way.

In some instances the students from the experimental schools were handicapped. One discovered that his professor was not interested in his reading extensively, as he was accustomed to doing; instead, the professor's procedures called for memorizing the details of the textbook. A student in history discovered that his preparing an extensive bibliography and interpreting his wide reading did not fit the plans of another professor, who "wants me to take notes and give back to him what he has said." Of course, it is unfortunate that the students from the experimental schools had their good study habits upset in college by narrow teaching methods.

**Different Factors and Results to Be Considered.** Not all the evidence indicates that the project method of teaching is most effective. In the following investigation a nature-study project was used in grade 2A, an arithmetic project in grade 4A, and a geography project in grade 8A. Certain criteria were set up for projects, such as that the activity should be pupil-directed, that there was to be no drill, recitation, or review in the conventional meaning of these terms, and that the teacher, in general, was to be a guide and counselor. This, of course, was an unfair restriction, as drill and review have a place in the project method. The control groups were taught in the usual way, and tests were given to both groups to measure the achievement in the fields covered by the projects. The tests revealed that the control group was consistently ahead of the project group, having made gains more than twice as great and, in some instances, more than three times as great. The teachers felt, however, that the project, or activity, method aroused more interest, increased the amount of reading, stimulated more extensive oral expression, and made greater use of the pupil's personal experiences.

In evaluating the effectiveness of any teaching method in terms of what children learn, it should be kept in mind that the teachers who use the method are also being tested. It is possible that the teachers in some instances use one method much more effectively than another. Not because of any inherent advantages in the method, but rather because of the teachers' ability to use it, advantages are found for almost any method by its advocates. Those who are exponents of a system of teaching have a zeal for it that results in superior achievement. Therefore, in weighing the merits of any method, this factor should be taken into account in the final summing up.

**Method, Philosophy, and Personal Development.** In the traditional type of teaching the teacher is in charge, making the assignments, directing the students, drilling them, asking the questions, and laying much emphasis on examinations and marks. In many respects

this method of teaching is autocratic in its nature and probably is not conducive to the best and fullest development of the student's personality. It is probable that curiosity, initiative, self-control, and leadership are not well developed by the traditional method of teaching.

The project, or activity, method, often called the progressive method, is more democratic and consequently in closer harmony with our political and social philosophy. It allows for the fullest development of the individual and takes into account individual differences in capacity, interests, and personality. There is evidence that students who are educated in schools where they have opportunity to plan and work cooperatively with their teachers and fellow students are better developed personally and get along better with each other. This is of the utmost importance. It is sound philosophically that in a democracy the methods in school should also be democratic. Otherwise, the school does not educate its students for the society in which they live.

**General Results of the Activity and Nonactivity Methods.** In general, students taught in activity schools acquire more knowledge than do students of the traditional school. It seems also that the greatest advantages of the more modern methods lie in the qualities of independence, initiative, and enterprise that the students acquire. They acquire more competence in using the library and more specifically in using reference books, dictionaries, and glossaries. In general, they have more work-study skills. Usually they know how to interpret and apply facts better than pupils in the traditional classes.

Probably some of the greatest advantages lie in the personal qualities that students of activity schools acquire. They learn to work with their fellow students, planning their projects and developing them. Students work in groups, learning to give and take and exercising leadership in various phases of the work according to individual interest and capacity. It seems clear that all-round personal and intellectual development is better fostered in the activity school than in the traditional one.

## SUMMARY AND REVIEW

The traditional method of teaching is formal in nature and concentrates on the students' mastering the subject matter. The activity, or project, method, also called the *progressive method*, is less formal and stresses learning in natural problem situations. The acquisition of subject matter is only one objective, the general objective being the full development of the individual.

Typical projects and activities are play, handwork, music, stories, excursions, and social and health problems.

Various experiments have been conducted to test the relative effectiveness of the more modern methods and the traditional methods.

The results are gauged by achievement tests and by evaluating the attitude of children and parents through the children's attendance, tardiness, truancy, and number graduating and continuing their education, and through visits to the schools by parents, their attendance at school meetings, and their willingness to support the schools. The effectiveness of the progressive methods in high school has been tested in terms of the performance of the graduates of such schools when they are college students—specifically, with respect to school adjustment, ability to work independently, leadership, and social activity.

Most results show that, when tested experimentally, the activity, project, or progressive method is effective from all standpoints. The subject-matter achievement is higher, and the students learn to work independently, are more active socially, and exercise more leadership. Not all results show superiority of the progressive method, but many of them do.

With the informal method, most of the work can be covered, and achievement usually is above average. The point of view of the exponents of the newer methods is that the most important outcomes are in the form of the personal and social development of the pupils.

### TEST YOUR THINKING

1. Which type of teaching harmonizes with the ideals and principles of democracy? Explain.

2. Describe what you conceive of as your ideal school.

3. Progressive education is spanked now and then in the press for the failure of high-school graduates to know as much as is expected. Explain whether or not you think progressive education should be blamed, and give your reasons.

4. What were the results from the evaluation of the Thirty Progressive Schools?

5. How do the progressive and traditional schools differ?

6. What are the values claimed for the traditional school? For the progressive or activity school?

7. The effectiveness of the more modern, or progressive, methods has been tested. What have been the results in terms of acquiring subject matter? In terms of the development of work habits? In terms of attitudes? In terms of participation in extracurricular activities?

8. Explain how a student can learn the content of various subjects through projects and problems?

9. What would be the advantage of postponing the teaching of some school-work until children were older than when taught this material now?

## Appendix:

### Discussion of Some Statistical and Experimental Concepts That Are Contained in This Volume

#### CORRELATION

One of the most common and probably one of the most important concepts in psychology and education is that of correlation. It appears many times in this volume, and it is highly desirable that the reader have more than the ability to recite a few words about it. Rather, he should have a true comprehension of it.

A synonym for correlation is *relationship*. In statistics, correlation pertains to the relationships between traits, scores, values, and other quantities. In the text, the relationship, or correlation, of school marks, of the characteristics of identical twins, and of many other values is given, and the amount of the correlation is indicated by a decimal fraction usually expressed in hundredths.

**Nature of Correlation.** First let us consider the nature of correlation by using columns of values. When thinking of correlation, think of pairs of scores or values arranged in vertical columns. Each pair represents the scores or attributes of a person or thing. Examine the relationship between the values in Table A. The pairs of values are designated by Roman numerals. Note how the values are related. Observe pair I, with the values 24 and 60, the largest in each column; thus, the highest value is related or associated with the highest. Note also that, in pair II, the next to the highest is related to the next to the highest; in pair III, the third from the highest in the column of X values is accompanied by the third from the highest in the Y column; and so on down to the value 2, the smallest X value, accompanied by 5, the smallest Y value. These relationships make up a perfect positive correlation which is designated by the coefficient of correlation 1.00. The correlation is said to be plus one.<sup>1</sup>

TABLE A

	X	Y
I	24	60
II	22	55
III	20	50
IV	18	45
V	16	40
VI	14	35
VII	12	30
VIII	10	25
IX	8	20
X	6	15
XI	4	10
XII	2	5

<sup>1</sup>When correlations are positive, the sign is usually omitted.

In Table B, the relationship of the pairs of values has been changed. Now the X and Y values are associated systematically in reverse order—the highest with the lowest; the next to the highest with the next to the lowest; and on down to the last pair, number XII, in which the lowest is associated with the highest. This relationship is called a *perfect negative correlation*, and it is designated by the coefficient of correlation  $-1.00$ . The correlation is said to be a negative one.

TABLE B

	X	Y
I	24	5
II	22	10
III	20	15
IV	18	20
V	16	25
VI	14	30
VII	12	35
VIII	10	40
IX	8	45
X	6	50
XI	4	55
XII	2	60

The order of the 12 pairs of values will be changed again, as shown in Table C. In this instance, no consistent relationship, either positive or negative, exists between them. The high, average, and low values are associated in a hit-or-miss fashion, so to speak. The correlation of the values as arranged in Table C is called a *zero correlation* and is expressed by the coefficient  $0.00$ .

**Extent of Correlation.** Correlations range in magnitude from zero to either plus or minus one and are usually expressed in hundredths although sometimes in thousandths.

In the text, various coefficients were given, some very high, as those in the .90's; others moderate, as those in the .40's and .50's. Low correlations are in the .10's and .20's. The examples given on these pages illustrate correlations of plus and minus one and of zero, or no correlation. There are intermediate amounts of correlation, in which the extent of relationship varies between the extremes illustrated. When the trend is greater, the coefficient expressing the relationship approaches plus or minus one; and when the relationships are least, the coefficients approach zero.

TABLE C

	X	Y
I	24	10
II	8	50
III	14	60
IV	2	20
V	6	30
VI	12	40
VII	20	25
VIII	22	55
IX	4	35
X	18	45
XI	16	5
XII	10	15

The nature of the correlation is indicated by whether it is positive or negative. If the trend in the magnitude of the values is inverse, then the correlation is negative; and if it is direct, then the correlation is positive. The nature of the correlation, whether positive or negative, does not determine the extent of relationship, which is indicated by the coefficient.

Thus, a coefficient of correlation of  $-.50$  indicates the same extent of relationship as does a correlation of  $+.50$ . The difference is in the nature of the relationship, as indicated by Tables A and B and their accompanying discussions.

Coefficients of correlation range from zero to plus or minus one, as has been indicated; and questions may be raised as to the extent of relationship according to coefficients .10, .20, .30, .40, etc. The answer to this question is very complicated and will be treated only in a general and superficial way. It is probably sufficient to say that the extent of correlation does not follow closely its numerical size. For example, a correlation of .80, roughly speaking, is considerably more than twice the correlation of .40; and simi-

metrical distribution, the standard deviation is the distance above and below the mean that includes about two-thirds of the scores or values.

In groups having approximately the same averages, the size of the standard deviation indicates the variability of the groups. Because the amount of variation in groups is so important educationally, a knowledge of the variability of groups, or classes, in a school might result in action for better adjustment of pupils to school situations as well as for changing the situations for the pupils.

## MEASURES OF CENTRAL TENDENCY

These have been mentioned and discussed either directly or indirectly to a sufficient extent. If a fuller knowledge and understanding of the averages or measures of central tendency as well as of other statistical measures are needed or desired, a text in statistics should be consulted.

## EXPERIMENTAL AND CONTROL GROUPS

In the course of experimentation, scientists have found it necessary to test their theories and hypotheses by arranging their experiments so as to make use of experimental and control groups. The need for having a "control" was strikingly demonstrated in William James's uncontrolled experiment in which he first memorized 158 lines of Hugo's *Satyr* in 131 minutes, then "practiced" his memory 20 minutes a day for 38 days on *Paradise Lost*, and then found that it took him 151½ minutes to memorize 158 other lines from Hugo's *Satyr*. He concluded that because it took him longer to memorize the second 158 lines, his mind had not improved. This experiment lacked a "control." According to good experimental procedure for a situation such as this one, it is necessary to have a single variable, which in this instance would have been the practice of *Paradise Lost*. It is possible that the second 158 lines of Hugo's *Satyr* were more difficult and therefore required more time to memorize, even though practice on *Paradise Lost* had increased efficiency. The experiment, in order to be valid, should have had an experimental and control group, as indicated by the following hypothetical example:

It is highly desirable that the initial abilities of the two groups be equal or very nearly so, which is true in this example. The experimental group is given special practice, the value of which is being tested. In this instance, the plan of the experiment is to test the value of practice in memorizing

	Experimental group (30 high-school juniors)	Control group (30 high-school juniors)
Initial test (memorizing 158 lines from <i>Satyr</i> ) . . . . .	181	180.5
Practice . . . . .	Memorizing of <i>Paradise Lost</i> 20 minutes each day for 38 days	No practice in memorizing
Final test (memorizing 158 other lines from <i>Satyr</i> ) . . . . .	178	180

*Paradise Lost* on the ability to memorize lines from the *Satyrs*. The control group had not had any practice in memorizing, and it is assumed that the experiences that might affect the results are the same for both groups except for the special practice of the experimental group. This, being the only difference, is known as the *single variable*; and if there is any difference in the results, it can be attributed to this one difference in this experience.

According to this hypothetical arrangement, the score (number of minutes) of the experimental group is slightly better than the control, thus hypothetically indicating that probably a little advantage accrues from the practice on *Paradise Lost*. The difference, however, should be tested statistically to see if it is large enough to be statistically significant.

The outline given here is simple. For instance, other experimental groups could memorize nonsense syllables, mathematical formulas, Latin words, or any other material. It is necessary, however, to have a control group not experiencing the activities that are the variables whose effects are being tested.

### SIGNIFICANCE OF THE DIFFERENCE

This term is frequently used in psychology and education, and its general meaning should be set forth. Its fuller meaning will have to be obtained by special study and instruction. When the difference between the averages of two groups is found, the question is asked: Is the difference large enough to be significant? In other words, it may be asked whether or not similar differences will be found if corresponding groups are compared under similar conditions a great number of times. If, with repetition, a difference was found between groups, and the same group was superior each time, then we may be sure that the difference is a true and significant one.

Obviously, it is impossible to repeat an experiment a large enough number of times to discover whether or not one group or the groups of the same characteristics are always superior and thus to determine that the difference first obtained is a true one. For example, if one is testing the effectiveness of a method of teaching reading by comparing it with other methods through actually trying the various methods on groups of pupils of similar initial ability and capacity, it would be impossible to repeat the experiment indefinitely to see whether or not the differences obtained are consistent and thus real ones. Instead, statistical procedures are applied to the averages of the groups to determine whether the differences are true ones or are due to chance or to factors incident to a poorly managed and controlled experiment. The results of the statistical analysis also indicate the extent to which the differences are real ones and thus indicate the certainty with which we can conclude that a difference will occur under similar circumstances.

In other words, the largeness of the difference is tested. Thus, when it is said that the difference between two groups, as determined by comparing their averages, is significant, this means that the difference has been tested and found to be a real one and not one due to chance or accidental and extraneous factors. Then reliance can be placed on the value of the method, influence, or factor being tested.

## Glossary

- Aberration, mental.** Deviation from the average, or normal, in mode of thinking and behaving to a degree sufficient to be considered a disorder.
- Ability.** Refers to what a person actually can do. Actual performance.
- Acceleration.** Extra promotion or faster than usual school progress.
- Achievement quotient.** Same as accomplishment quotient. It is obtained by dividing subject-matter or achievement age by mental age.
- Accomplishment quotient.** Obtained by dividing the achievement age by the mental age. Achievement age is determined for any given subject by means of standardized tests in that subject; and mental age, by means of an intelligence, or mental, test. Not a very dependable quotient.
- Adolescence.** The period between childhood and maturity; it approximates the teens.
- Adrenals.** Ductless glands adjacent to the kidneys. The adrenals give off a chemical known as *adrenin*, which releases a sugar supply from the liver for energy purposes.
- Adrenin.** The chemical or hormone given off by the adrenals. Adrenin functions to increase energy output.
- Age, chronological (C.A.).** The number of years, months, and days that one has lived.
- Age, mental (M.A.).** Mental level according to the average scores of any given age as determined by mental, or intelligence, tests.
- Age, subject-matter.** Educational age, level of achievement in standardized, subject-matter test according to the average scores of any given age. Arithmetic, history, reading, geography, and other subject-matter ages are determined by the average obtained by pupils of any given age on a standardized test for each subject.
- Alpha hypothesis of learning.** One of Dunlap's principles of learning: A response to stimulus increases the likelihood of that response's resulting from the same stimulus.
- Altitude.** When applied to mental ability or intellect, altitude is determined by the difficulty of the tasks a person can do.
- Ament.** A person characterized by amentia. So lacking in mental development as to be classified as feeble-minded.
- Amentia.** Feeble-mindedness. Mental deficiency. Subnormal mental development.
- Analogies.** In psychology, the relationship of pairs of attributes or qualities as found in mental, or intelligence, tests.
- Anatomical age.** Status of physical growth and development in terms of age standards.
- Antisocial.** Refers to behavior that is not for the good of society.
- Aptitude.** Potentiality, capacity.
- Associated response.** A response to a different stimulus from the one that ordinarily produces the response because the stimulus was paired with the usual stimulus.
- Associate learning.** The acquisition of facts, principles, ideas, or materials that are related to or are an outgrowth of primary learning.



- Attention.** The direction of the energies and efforts toward stimuli. An awareness of stimuli. Concentration of energies on some stimuli in a situation to the exclusion of others.
- Beta hypothesis of learning.** One of Dunlap's principles of learning: The response to a stimulus lessens the probability of that response to the same stimulus.
- Bond theory.** The theory that there is a specific neural connection between stimulus and response.
- Caffeine.** An alkaloid that has a stimulating effect and is usually associated with coffee and tea.
- Capacity.** Aptitude, potentiality. A person's capacities are indicated by his abilities or what he can actually do when he has had optimum practice.
- Compensation.** Behavior that has for its purpose the making up for or the covering over of weakness and deficiency. Frequently, the compensating behavior is undesirable.
- Complex.** An emotionally colored idea. Hate, bias, prejudice, and jealousy are complexes.
- Concave learning curve.** A curve representing learning in which the first portion of the learning curve is followed by a portion which represents an increasing rate of learning.
- Concomitant learning.** The acquisition and development of attitudes, ideals, and appreciations that result from primary and associate learning.
- Conditioned response.** A response evoked by the second of two stimuli which though originally not effective has been made so by its simultaneous occurrence with the original stimulus.
- Configuration.** The pattern, form, or structure of stimuli resulting from their relationships or arrangement.
- Conflict.** The clash or struggle of conflicting ideas, ideals, and tendencies of behavior. A clash of wants, motives, and drives.
- Congenital.** Acquired or influenced during the period of gestation, or in the uterus.
- Control group.** The group that is matched with the experimental group but is not subjected to the special experimental conditions of the experimental group.
- Convex learning curve.** A curve representing learning in which the first portion of the learning curve is followed by a portion which represents a decreasing rate of learning.
- Correlation.** The relationship between traits, qualities, or measurements. The coefficient of correlation is a numerical amount ranging from  $-1.00$  to  $+1.00$  that indicates the nature of the relationship or correspondence and also its extent.
- Cramming.** Hurried and concentrated attempts to learn a great deal in a short time in order to satisfy certain requirements.
- Cretin.** An infant or child who is suffering from a deficiency of the secretion given off by the thyroid gland. A cretin's physical development is not normal, and he is mentally deficient.
- Critical ratio.** A statistical quantity calculated to determine whether or not the difference between two quantities is statistically significant or is owing to chance factors.
- Daydreaming.** The act of withdrawing into the imaginative world, or realm of fancy, usually to provide a more pleasant world than the real one. Fantasy.
- Deductive reasoning.** Reasoning from the general to the particular, from the whole to its parts. Applying general principles to specific situations.
- Defense mechanism.** A psychological process practiced by those making poor adjustments in order to protect themselves from the forces and stimuli of life. Negativism and rationalization are examples of defense reactions.

- Delinquent.** A boy or girl whose behavior is antisocial and who has come to the attention of the court.
- Development.** Change in character and quality accompanying growth. In psychology, most emphasis is placed on physical, mental, social, and emotional development.
- Deviate.** One who differs considerably from the normal, or average. Either a feeble-minded person or one of exceptional talents may be classified as a deviate.
- Differential retention.** Degrees of remembering for different types of material; some types are forgotten more rapidly than others.
- Digit span.** Determined by the largest number of digits a person can repeat without error after having heard or seen them once.
- Discrete.** Entirely separate and distinct. The opposite of continuous.
- Disuse, the principle of.** According to this principle, facts, knowledge, information, and skills that are not reviewed, practiced, or used are forgotten.
- Ductless glands.** Glands that give off their chemical or hormone directly into the blood stream. The thyroid, adrenals, pituitary, and others are ductless glands and make up the endocrine system.
- Educational age.** Same as subject-matter age. Determined by achievement in various subject-matter tests such as in arithmetic, reading, etc. Norms or standards are in terms of average achievement according to chronological age.
- Effect, principle of.** A principle of learning: If the result is pleasant, the response to a stimulus is strengthened, but it is weakened if the result is not satisfying or is unpleasant.
- Egocentric.** Self-centered, selfish, neglectful of others.
- Embryo.** In the case of human beings, the child during the first three months of prenatal, or intra-uterine, life.
- Emotion.** A state of strong feeling. Emotion is accompanied by physiological reactions. Some of the more common emotions are joy, anger, fear, and grief.
- Emotional adjustment.** Effective control of the emotions and good emotional responses to the situations of life.
- Empathy.** Projecting oneself into or identifying oneself with the consciousness of others, a work of art, or a natural thing or object. Taking on the same feelings or state of mind as those of another person or group.
- Empirical.** Depending upon observation and experience. Founded upon experience or experiment.
- Endocrine glands.** The ductless glands, such as the thyroid, adrenals, and pituitary, whose secretions pass directly into the lymph or blood.
- Enrichment.** Extra activities and experiences provided for children so that they can be educated to their capacity.
- Enuresis.** Inability to control adequately the passage of urine.
- Escape mechanism.** A term used in connection with mental health or mental hygiene. It refers to methods of escaping from reality by means of daydreaming, fantasy, and repressions.
- Essay examination.** An examination in which the answers are written out in paragraph or essay form.
- Exercise, principle of.** A principle of learning involving use and disuse: That which is used and practiced is learned, but that which is not used and practiced is forgotten.
- Experimental group.** The group that is subjected to special experimental conditions and is usually matched with a control group.
- Extrovert.** A person whose thoughts, energy, and behavior are directed to persons and things outside of self. The opposite of introvert.
- Fantasy.** Daydreaming, an imaginary world.
- Feeble-mindedness.** Specifically, those persons who have intelligence quotients under

- Individual test.** A test that can be given to only one person at a time.
- Inductive reasoning.** Reasoning from the specific to the general, from the parts to the whole. Drawing conclusions or generalizing on the basis of specific observations, data, and evidence.
- Inferiority complex.** Thoughts of self accompanied by feelings of inferiority. A person with an inferiority complex is often shy and lacks confidence in himself.
- Insight.** A sudden or quick conception of the meaningful relationship of the elements in a situation or problem.
- Insulin.** A chemical from the islands of Langerhans in the pancreas. Insulin promotes the utilization of sugar. It is also manufactured from the pancreas of sheep and oxen and used by diabetics.
- Intelligence quotient.** Obtained for a child by dividing his mental age by his chronological age. It is the index of brightness and indicates the rate of mental growth. Mental ratio.
- Internal secretion.** The secretion, or chemical, given off by the ductless, or endocrine, glands.
- Introspection.** The mental process of looking into and examining one's own thoughts, feelings, and activities. Looking into one's own mind.
- Introvert.** A person whose thoughts and feelings are directed inward to himself. The opposite of extrovert.
- Langerhans, islands of.** The part of the pancreas that gives off insulin.
- Learning.** The acquisition of skill and knowledge from experience. Modification or acquisition of responses.
- Maladjustment.** Poor and ineffective reactions to the situations of life. Unsatisfactory behavior; a state of poor mental health. Not in harmony with the environment.
- Malingering.** Pretending or assuming illness to avoid or to escape from personal difficulties.
- Malnutrition.** Poor nutritional status.
- Maturity.** The period when and after maximum growth has been reached. State of full development.
- Maze.** Devices, instruments, or figures containing many pathways, or routes, and varying in complexity. The object is to find the most direct route from the beginning of the maze to the end. Mazes are used to test the abilities of both human beings and animals.
- Mean.** A measure of central tendency determined directly by dividing the sum of the scores or values by their number.
- Median.** A measure of central tendency. The median is the value above and below which there is an equal number of values when they have been arranged according to size.
- Medullary sheath.** The nerve fiber (axon, or dendrite) is surrounded by a fatty covering, which, in turn, is encased by an outside covering, or membrane, known as the neurolemma. A fiber so enclosed is said to be medullated; the medullary sheath consists of the neurolemma and the fatty sheath.
- Memory.** Ability to recall or recognize. Knowledge of and ability to repeat or use that which was previously learned or experienced.
- Memory span.** The amount that can be recalled or reproduced correctly after a single impression.
- Mental age (M.A.).** Determined by the use of mental, or intelligence, tests. The average score for children of any chronological age indicates mental level, or level of mental development.
- Mental discipline.** Training or disciplining the mind through the processes of study and intellectual activity. The qualities purported to be obtained thus are also purported to manifest themselves in any situation in which the mind is used.

of percentages. Thus, a value that is the 75th percentile has 75 per cent of the values below it and 25 per cent above.

**Perception.** An awareness of sensory stimulation. Sensing the meaning of stimuli.

**Phylogenetic.** Race history from the simplest to the most complex. Evolution of the species from the single cell to man.

**Physiological age.** See Anatomical age.

**Physiological limit.** The point at which performance cannot be exceeded because of the limit of the capacity of eyes, fingers, legs, or any other part of the body. Thus, the rate at which the eyes move sets a limit on the speed of reading, and the rate at which the fingers move sets a limit on the speed of typewriting.

**Pituitary gland.** A small ductless gland in the brain whose secretions influence growth and the activity of other ductless glands.

**Plateau.** That part of the learning curve that is flat and thus represents the period of no apparent progress. The plateau is followed by improvement.

**Plus gestures.** Certain types of behavior by a person that are designed to cause him to appear favorably in the eyes of others. Plus gestures are a substitute for a successful adjustment in life.

**Pollyanna.** An attitude or response to the effect that everything is for the best, things could have been worse, and therefore we should be pleased. Same as sweet lemon.

**Power.** Refers to the power of the mind as determined by the complexity or difficulty of tasks that can be mastered when plenty of time is given; the factor of speed is minimized when power is tested.

**Practical level.** The level of learning and achievement that results from typical or average effort. For most children and adults, it is considerably below the optimum level.

**Primary learning.** The learning of material or subject matter that constitutes the lesson at hand or the immediate objectives.

**Projection.** Attributing to others the weaknesses that are characteristic of oneself. Attributing to others one's own motives and complexes. Also, rationalizing by putting the blame on others.

**Psychiatrist.** A specialist in mental diseases who is trained in medicine and has an M.D. degree.

**Psychosis.** Insanity, mental disease. Much more serious than the conditions described in this book in connection with mental health and mental hygiene.

**Psychosomatic.** Mind-body. Specifically refers to the influence of psychological factors on the health.

**Puberty.** The beginning of adolescence and sexual maturation.

**Quotient, accomplishment.** Achievement age, such as reading age and geography age, divided by mental age.

**Quotient, educational.** Achievement age divided by chronological age.

**Quotient, intelligence.** Mental age divided by chronological age.

**Rationalization.** The process of giving logical and reasonable but untrue excuses. The reasons given are not true to the motives. The purpose is to deceive oneself and others in order to maintain a better status in the eyes of oneself and others.

**Readiness.** Being prepared to learn or undertake tasks because maturing and experience have given one the capacities and abilities for making satisfying progress.

**Readiness, principle of.** Being disposed to attend to stimuli or to respond; to do so is usually satisfying, and not to do so is thwarting and dissatisfying.

**Reasoning.** Process of logical thinking and problem solving. Thinking in terms of logical relationships and reaching logical conclusions.

**Regression.** Tendency to move toward the average. Manifesting immature and childish behavior characteristic of considerably younger ages. Tendency to go back and live in the past.

- Reliability.** The accuracy of a test or measuring instrument. A reliable instrument gives the same results on any occasion under the same condition.
- Repression.** Holding back, or pushing into the subconscious, certain feelings and ideas. One who bottles up, or keeps secret, many of his experiences, emotions, and ideas is said to repress them.
- Retention.** See Memory.
- Retroactive inhibition.** The negative or erasing effects of a new experience on the learning of an earlier experience.
- Sample, sampling.** A part of the total that is representative of the total. A portion that has the characteristics of the whole. When it is impossible to study all of a group of children, for example, a number of them, or a sample, is selected carefully so that it will represent as closely as possible the total group.
- Secondary sex characteristics.** Refers to the masculine and feminine growth and development of voice, hair, and body shape. This growth is influenced by the endocrines.
- Sensorimotor.** Refers to response, or behavior, involving the senses, nerves, and parts of the body, such as the fingers, arms, and legs.
- Short-answer test.** The objective, or new-type, test (see Objective test).
- Single variable.** The one factor that is not equalized or matched. The factor whose effect or influence is being tested.
- Socioeconomic.** Referring to social and economic factors and conditions.
- Sociogram, sociograph.** A diagram or chart which depicts certain social relationships that exist between members of a group.
- Sociometrics.** Methods of measuring the social relationships that exist between members of a group.
- Sour grapes.** A form of rationalization in which the person who fails to obtain his objectives states that they are not worth achieving anyway. In Aesop's fable the grapes, which represented the objective and were not obtained, were said to be "sour" by the fox.
- Speed.** The number of tasks of uniform but not very great difficulty that can be done in a fixed period determines speed of performance and is interpreted as indicating mental ability. Should be contrasted with power, which refers to the difficulty of the task that can be accomplished when plenty of time is allowed.
- Sperm.** The male germ cell.
- Standard deviation.** A measure of variability; the distance above and below the mean that includes 68.27 per cent of the cases or scores.
- Standardized test.** A test for which norms, or standards, have been established. It has been used to determine the exact performance for persons of given ages and in some cases for a given grade.
- Superiority complex.** A complex characteristic of a person whose feelings about self are that he is superior to others. Such a complex in a desirable form is equivalent to healthy confidence; in its undesirable form, it usually represents compensation for inferiority.
- Sweet lemon.** Same as Pollyanna.
- Teens.** The ages thirteen to nineteen inclusive. Corresponds closely to the period of adolescence.
- Temper tantrum.** A fit of temper indulged in to obtain one's way. Children often throw themselves on the floor and kick, scream, and hold their breath in order to get what they want.
- Thymus.** A gland located in the lower part of the throat. It reaches its highest development at about the age of fifteen and gradually atrophies after that age. Its function is not satisfactorily understood.
- Thyroid.** A very important ductless gland located in the neck close to the larynx.

- Thyroxin.** A secretion given off by the thyroid. A deficiency or excess of this chemical seriously affects health and personality.
- Torso.** The body exclusive of head, arms, and legs.
- Transfer.** Recognition, use, and application to a given situation of knowledge, skills, and habits that were learned in another situation.
- Unreliability.** Not possessing reliability (see *Reliability*).
- Use, principle of.** A principle of learning: Knowledge and skills that are used are strengthened and retained. Correspondingly, the retention of that which is not used is weakened.
- Validity.** Term used with reference to tests and measurements. Tests have validity if they measure what they are intended to measure. Thus, an intelligence test has validity if it measures true intelligence and not schooling and other advantages.
- Variability.** The range, spread, and heterogeneity of scores, values, and characteristics. Variability is described by a number of statistical quantities.
- Viscera.** The internal organs in the cavity of the body, such as the stomach, heart, intestines, and liver.
- Want.** Something desired because of a need or lack.
- Weight age.** Weight in terms of averages or standards for the different ages. Weight in terms of age norms.
- Whole method.** Learning by wholes, such as learning a poem or a musical selection as a whole or as a unit. Contrasted with learning by parts or sections, or by the part method.
- Worry.** Overconcern and care about the past, the present, or the future. Concern that is fretful and troublesome.

# Bibliography

## RECENT TEXTBOOKS IN EDUCATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY

- Cole, Lawrence E., and William F. Bruce: *Educational Psychology*, World Book Company, Yonkers, N.Y., 1950.
- Ellis, R. S.: *Educational Psychology: A Problem Approach*, D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., New York, 1951.
- Guthrie, Edwin R., and Francis F. Powers: *Educational Psychology*, The Ronald Press Company, New York, 1950.
- Simpson, R. G.: *Fundamentals of Educational Psychology*, J. B. Lippincott Company, Philadelphia, 1949.
- Skinner, Charles E. (ed.): *Educational Psychology*, 3d ed., Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1951.
- Skinner, Charles E. (ed.): *Elementary Educational Psychology*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Stephens, J. M.: *Educational Psychology: The Study of Educational Growth*, Henry Holt and Company, Inc., New York, 1951.
- Trow, William C.: *Educational Psychology*, 2d ed., Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston, 1950.
- Witherington, H. C.: *Educational Psychology*, rev. ed., Ginn & Company, Boston, 1952.
- Woodruff, Asabel D.: *The Psychology of Teaching*, 3d ed., Longmans, Green & Co., Inc., New York, 1951.

## MEASURING, MARKING, AND REPORTING THE LEARNING AND ACHIEVEMENT OF STUDENTS

- Bean, Kenneth L.: *Construction of Educational and Personnel Tests*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1953.
- Carter, H. D.: Correlation between Intelligence Tests, Study Methods Tests and Marks in a College Course, *Journal of Psychology*, 30:333-340, 1950.
- Carter, R. S.: How Invalid Are Marks Assigned by Teachers? *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 43:218-228, 1952.
- Davis, Grace S.: Report Cards versus the Pupil, *Education*, 72:193-198, 1951.
- DePencier, I. B.: Trends in Reporting Pupil Progress in the Elementary Grades, 1938-1949, *Elementary School Journal*, 51:519-523, 1951.
- Edson, Frank G.: Grade Distribution in 80 Mid-western Liberal Arts Colleges, *School and Society*, 73:312-315, 1951.
- Erickson, Clifford E.: *The Counseling Interview*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Finlayson, D. S.: Reliability of the Marking of Essays, *British Journal of Educational Psychology*, 21:126-134, 1951.
- Gough, Harrison G.: What Determines the Academic Achievement of High School Students? *Journal of Educational Research*, 46:321-332, 1953.
- Hightower, H. W.: Progress Reports to Parents of Pupils in Primary Grades, *Nation's Schools*, 49:74-76, 1952.

- Johnson, C. S.: Parents Help Plan Report Cards, *Nation's Schools*, 38:45-46, 1946.
- Jones, Stewart: Process Testing—An Attempt to Analyze Reasons for Students' Responses to Test Questions, *Journal of Educational Research*, 46:525-534, 1953.
- Jordan, A. M.: *Measurement in Education*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1953.
- Lennon, Robert T.: The Stability of Achievement Test Results from Grade to Grade, *Educational and Psychological Measurements*, 11(1):121-127, 1951.
- Lindcamp, C. P.: How Should the Secondary School Evaluate and Record Student Progress? *National Association of Secondary School Principals Bulletin*, 36:135-142, 1952.
- Little, R. C.: Whither Grading? *National Educational Association Journal*, 36:12-13, 1947.
- Lowell, A. Lawrence: Examination in the Educational Process, *Harvard Teachers Record*, 3:183-188, 1933.
- Micheels, W. J., and M. R. Karnes: *Measuring Educational Achievement*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Miller, E. F.: Report Card Goes Home, *American Childhood*, 32:7-8, 1947.
- Rogers, D.: Common-sense Considerations Concerning Report Cards, *Elementary School Journal*, 52:518-522, May, 1952.
- Russell, David H.: What Does Research Say about Self-evaluation? *Journal of Educational Research*, 46:561-574, 1953.
- Seigle, William F.: The Teacher Reports Test Scores to Parents, *Journal of Educational Research*, 46:543-550, 1953.
- Silvey, H. M.: Student Reaction to the Objective and Essay Test, *School and Society*, 73:377-378, 1951.
- Smith, Eugene R., Ralph W. Tyler, and staff: *Appraising and Recording Student Progress*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1942.
- Travers, Robert M. W.: *How to Make Achievement Tests*, The Odyssey Press, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Traxler, A. E. (ed.): *Measurement and Evaluation in the Improvement of Education*, American Council on Education, Washington, D.C., 1951.
- Walters, H. G.: Let's Diagnose Jimmy, Not Mark Him, *School Executive*, 66:39, 1947.

## PHYSICAL GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

- Breckenridge, Marian E., and Vincent E. Lee: *Child Development*, 2d ed., W. B. Saunders Company, Philadelphia, 1949.
- Dearborn, Walter F., and John W. M. Rothney: *Predicting the Child's Development*, Science-Art Publishers, Cambridge, Mass., 1941.
- Espenschade, A. S.: Motor Development, *Review of Educational Research*, 17:354-361, 1947.
- Gallagher, J. R.: Adolescents Have Special Health Problems, *Child*, 15:29-32, 1950.
- Garrison, Karl C.: *Growth and Development*, Longmans, Green & Co., Inc., New York, 1952.
- Gesell, Arnold, and Helen Thompson: *The Psychology of Early Growth*, The Macmillan Company, New York, 1938.
- Harris, J. A., C. M. Jackson, D. G. Paterson, and R. E. Scammon: *The Measurement of Man*, University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, 1930.
- Hildreth, Gertrude: The Development and Training of Hand Dominance: I. Characteristics of Handedness, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 75:197-220, 1949.
- Hildreth, Gertrude: The Development and Training of Hand Dominance: II. Developmental Tendencies in Handedness, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 75:221-254, 1949.



- Hildreth, Gertrude: The Development and Training of Hand Dominance: III. Origins of Handedness and Lateral Dominance, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 75:255-275, 1949.
- Hildreth, Gertrude: The Development and Training of Hand Dominance: IV. Developmental Problems Associated with Handedness, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 76:39-100, 1950.
- Hildreth, Gertrude: The Development and Training of Hand Dominance: V. Training of Handedness, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 76:101-144, 1950.
- Jones, Harold E.: Motor Performance and Growth, *University of California Publications in Child Development*, 1(1), University of California Press, Berkeley, 1949.
- Jones, H. E.: The Development of Physical Abilities, *Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education*, 43:100-122, 1944.
- Jones, Mary Cover, and Nancy Bayley: Physical Maturing among Boys as Related to Behavior, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 41:129-148, 1950.
- Krogman, Wilton M.: A Handbook of the Measurement and Interpretation of the Height and Weight in the Growing Child, *Monograph 3*, Child Development Publications, Northwestern University, Evanston, Ill., 1950.
- Kuhlen, Raymond G., and George G. Thompson: *Psychological Studies of Human Development*, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., New York, 1952.
- Laird, D. A., M. Levitan, and V. A. Wilson: Nervousness in School Children as Related to Hunger and Diet, *Medical Journal and Record*, 134:494-499, 1931.
- Lockwood, E. A.: Educational Implications of Clinical and Research Findings in Nutrition, *Journal of School Health*, 19:180-185, 1949.
- Meredith, H. V., and E. M. Meredith: Annual Increment Norms for Ten Measurements of Physical Growth on Children Four to Eight Years of Age, *Child Development*, 21:141-147, 1950.
- Millard, C. V.: *Child Growth and Development in the Elementary School Years*, D. C. Heath and Company, Boston, 1951.
- Rowe, F. A.: Should Junior High Schools Have Highly Organized Competitive Athletics? *School Activities*, 22:96-99, 129-130, 1950.
- Schuman, C. B., and N. Voegelé: Nutrition Education and the School Lunch, *Nation's Schools*, 41:48, 1948.
- Sells, L. G.: Relationship between Measure of Physical Growth and Gross Motor Performance of Primary-grade School Children, *Research Quarterly*, 22:244-260, 1951.
- Terman, L. M., and others: Mental and Physical Traits of a Thousand Gifted Children, *Genetic Study of Genius*, Vol. I, Stanford University Press, Stanford University, Calif., 1925.
- Van Dalen, D. B.: Study of Certain Factors in Their Relation to the Play of Children, *Research Quarterly*, 18:279-290, 1947.
- Willgoose, C. A., and M. R. Rogers: Relationship of Somatotype to Physical Fitness, *Journal of Educational Research*, 42:704-712, 1949.
- Wolfe, J. B., and V. A. Digilio: Heart in the Athlete, *American Association for Health, Physical Education, and Recreation Journal*, 20:8-9, 1949.

#### SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT, PERSONALITY, MENTAL AND EMOTIONAL HEALTH AND HYGIENE

- Alexander, T., Jr., and M. Alexander: Study of the Personality and Social Status, *Child Development*, 23:207-213, 1952.
- Alilunos, L. J.: Needed Research in Teacher Mental Hygiene, *Journal of Educational Research*, 38:653-665, 1945.
- Altman, E.: Mentally Unbalanced Teachers, *American Mercury*, 52:391-401, 1941.

- Axelrod, P. L., M. S. Cameron, and J. C. Solomon: An Experiment in Group Therapy with Shy Adolescent Girls, *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry*, 14:616-627, 1944.
- Blair, G. M.: Personality and Social Development, *Review of Educational Research*, 20:375-389, 1950.
- Bonney, Merl E.: Personality Traits of Socially Successful and Socially Unsuccessful Children, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 34:449-472, 1943.
- Bonney, Merl E.: The Relative Stability of Social, Intellectual, and Academic Status in Grades II to IV, and the Inter-relationships between These Various Forms of Growth, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 34:88-102, 1943.
- Bonney, Merl E., and Johnny Powell: Differences in Social Behavior between Sociometrically High and Sociometrically Low Children, *Journal of Educational Research*, 46:481-496, 1953.
- Bossard, James H.: *The Sociology of Child Development*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1948.
- Boynton, P. L.: An Analysis of the Responses of Woman Teachers on a Personality Inventory, *Peabody Journal of Education*, 20:13-19, 1942.
- Bray, D. W.: The Prediction of Behavior from Two Attitude Scales, *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*, 45:64-84, 1950.
- Brieland, Donald: Variation of the Guess Who Technique for the Study of the Adjustment of Children, *Journal of Educational Research*, 45:385-390, 1952.
- Bryan, R. C.: Opinions of Teachers Held by Former Pupils, *School Review*, 51:555-561, 1943.
- Buck, J. V.: Sociometric Technique and the Teaching of General Science, *School Science and Mathematics*, 52:456-461, 1952.
- Carroll, Herbert A.: *Mental Hygiene: The Dynamics of Adjustment*, 2d ed., Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1951.
- Cavanaugh, J. O.: The Relation of Recreation to Personality Adjustment, *Journal of Social Psychology*, 15:63-74, 1942.
- Clark, R. A., and C. McGuire: Sociographic Analysis of Sociometric Valuations. *Child Development*, 23:129-140, 1952.
- Crow, L. D., and Alice Crow: *Mental Hygiene*, 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1951.
- Davis, R. A.: The Teaching Problems of 1075 Public School Teachers, *Journal of Experimental Education*, 9:41-60, 1940.
- Debus, Elaine, and Alberta L. Meyer: What Do We Mean by Discipline? What Do We Mean By Freedom? *Childhood Education*, 27:200-208, 1951.
- Denice, Sister Mary: Psychological Principles of Discipline, *Catholic School Journal*, 51:245, 1951.
- Deutsch, M.: Social Relations in the Classroom and Grading Procedures, *Journal of Educational Research*, 45:145-152, 1951.
- Dodge, A. F.: What Are the Personality Traits of the Successful Teacher? *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 27:325-337, 1943.
- Dollard, J., and N. E. Miller: *Personality and Psychotherapy*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Douglas, O. B., and L. Rack: Problems of Junior College Students, *Junior College Journal*, 20:377-387, 437-452, 1950.
- Downie, N. M.: A Comparison between Children Who Have Moved from School to School with Those Who Have Been in Continuous Residence on Various Factors of Adjustment, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 44:50-56, 1953.
- Drake, R. M.: A Study of Leadership, *Character and Personality*, 12:285-289, 1944.
- Dunlap, C. C.: Recording of Sociometric Data Made Concise and Continuous, *School Review*, 60:225-227, 1952.

- Dyer, D. T.: Are Only Children Different? *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 36: 297-302, 1945.
- Fenton, Norman: *Mental Hygiene in School Practice*, Stanford University Press, Stanford University, Calif., 1951.
- Ferguson, Harold, and Herman O. Howde: Improving Teaching Personality by Pupil Rating, *School Review*, 50:439-443, 1942.
- Forty-seventh Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education, Part 1, Juvenile Delinquency and the Schools, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1948.
- Fostering Mental Health in Our Schools, 1950 Yearbook, *Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development*, National Education Association, Washington, D.C., 1950.
- Friedrick, J. A.: Sociograms Provide Graphic Pictures of Camper Group Relations, *Camp Magazine*, 25:16-18, 1953.
- Glasser, M. A.: How Does a Child Develop a Healthy Personality? *Child*, 14:185-186, 1950.
- Glueck, S. S., and Eleanor Glueck: *Unraveling Juvenile Delinquency*, Commonwealth Fund, Division of Publication, New York, 1950.
- Gough, H. G., and others: Children's Ethnic Attitude: Relationship to Certain Personality Factors, *Child Development*, 21:83-91, 1950.
- Greenleaf, Walter J.: Sociodrama as a Guidance Technique, *California Journal of Secondary Education*, 26: 71-75, 1951.
- Guilford, J. P., and H. Martin: Age Differences and Sex Differences in Some Introverted and Emotional Traits, *Journal of General Psychology*, 31:219-229, 1944.
- Haggard, W. W.: Some Freshmen Describe the Desirable College Teacher, *School and Society*, 58:238-240, 1943.
- Hinkelman, E. A.: Intellectual Level and Personality Adjustment, *Elementary School Journal*, 52:31-35, 1951.
- Horrocks, J. E., and M. E. Buker: Study of the Friendship Fluctuations of Pre-adolescents, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 78:131-144, 1951.
- Jersild, A. T., B. Goldman, and J. J. Loftus: A Comparative Study of the Worries of Children in Two School Situations, *Journal of Experimental Education*, 9:323-326, 1941.
- Justman, J., and J. W. Wrightstone: Comparison of Three Methods of Measuring Pupil Status in the Classroom, *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 11(3): 362-367, 1951.
- Kaplan, Louis, and Denis Barton: *Mental Hygiene and Life*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1950.
- Kinney, Elva E.: A Study of Peer Group Social Acceptability at the Fifth Grade Level in a Public School, thesis, Pennsylvania State College, 1950.
- Kotinsky, R.: For Every Child a Fair Chance for a Healthy Personality, *Educational Leadership*, 7:524, 529, 1950.
- Kuhlen, Raymond G., and Beatrice J. Lee: Personality Characteristics and Social Acceptability in Adolescence, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 34:321-340, 1943.
- Langdon, Grace, and Irving W. Stout: *These Well-adjusted Children*, The John Day Company, New York, 1951.
- Lindgren, Henry C.: *The Psychology of Personal and Social Adjustment*, American Book Company, 1953.
- Loran, Walter: A Study of Sensitivity among Adolescents, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 44:102-112, 1953.
- Menninger, W. C.: Mental Health in Our Schools, *Educational Leadership*, 7:510-523, 1950.
- Mensh, I. N., and E. P. Mason: Relationship of School Atmosphere to Reactions in Frustrating Situations, *Journal of Educational Research*, 45:275-286, 1951.

- Mooney, Ross L.: Personal Problems of Freshman Girls, *Journal of Higher Education*, 14:84-90, 1943.
- Muller, Frances A.: Truancy and Classroom Disorder as Symptoms of Personality Problems, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 41:97-109, 1950.
- Ohlsen, M. M.: Helping Teachers Interpret Sociometric-test Data, *Journal of Teacher Education*, 2:99-104, 1951.
- Pinter, R., and J. Lev: Worries of School Children, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 56: 67-76, 1940.
- Pope, Charlotte: Personal Problems of High School Pupils, *School and Society*, 57: 443-448, 1943.
- Redl, F., and W. W. Wattenberg: *Mental Hygiene in Teaching*, Harcourt, Brace and Company, Inc., New York, 1951.
- Retan, G. A.: Emotional Instability and Teaching Success, *Journal of Educational Research*, 37:135-141, 1943.
- Rummell, Frances V.: What Are Good Teachers Like? *School Life*, 30:4-9, 1948, 7-11, July, 1948.
- Sandin, A. A.: "Social and Emotional Adjustment of Regularly Promoted and Non-promoted Pupils," *Child Development Monograph* 32, 1944.
- Selling, L. S.: Malnutrition and the Problem Child, *New Child*, 3:187-194, 1944.
- Sells, S. B., and R. W. Ellis: Observational Procedures Used in Research Sociometric Methods, *Review of Educational Research*, 21:432-439, 1951.
- Shafel, Fannie R.: Learning to Feel with Others, *Childhood Education*, 27:161-165, 1950.
- Shaw, C. R., H. D. McKay, and others: *Juvenile Delinquency and Urban Areas*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1942.
- Sims, V. M.: Technique for Measuring Social Class Identification, *Education and Psychological Measurements*, 11(4): 541-548, 1951.
- Singer, A.: Certain Aspects of Personality and Their Relation to Certain Group Modes, and Constancy of Friendship Choices, *Journal of Educational Research*, 45:33-42, 1951.
- Slobetz, Frank: How Elementary School Teachers Meet Selected School Situations, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 42:337-356, 1951.
- Smith, Gladys H.: Sociometric Study of Best-liked and Least-liked Children, *Elementary School Journal*, 51:77-85, 1950.
- Snygg, Donald, and Arthur W. Combs: *Individual Behavior*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1949.
- Spock, B. M.: What We Know about the Development of Healthy Personalities in Children, *National Parent Teacher*, 45:22-24, February, 1951, 17-19, March, 1951.
- Stagner, Ross: *Psychology of Personality*, 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1948.
- Stendler, Celia Burns, and Norman Young: The Impact of Beginning First Grade upon Socialization as Reported by Mothers, *Child Development*, 21:241-260, 1950.
- Symonds, P. M.: Suggestions for the Adjustment of Teachers, *Teachers College Record*, 44:417-432, 1943.
- Tecters, Negley K., and John O. Reinemann: *The Challenge of Delinquency*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Thompson, C. E.: The Attitudes of Various Groups toward Behavior Problems of Children, *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*, 35:120-125, 1940.
- Thorpe, L. P.: *Psychology of Mental Health*, The Ronald Press Company, New York, 1950.
- Torrance, P.: The Influence of the Broken Home on Adolescent Adjustment, *Journal of Educational Sociology*, 18:359-364, 1945.
- Tyler, Leona E.: Relationship of Interest to Abilities and Reputation among First Grade Children, *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 11(2): 255-264, 1951.

- Wallin, J. E. W.: *Personality Maledadjustments and Mental Hygiene*, 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1949.
- Wiles, Kimball: When Is a Teacher Mature? *Educational Leadership*, 8:493-496, May, 1951.
- Witryol, S. L., and G. G. Thompson: Experimental Comparison of the Stability of Social Acceptability Scores Obtained with the Partial-rank-order and the Paired-comparison Scales, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 44:20-30, January, 1953.
- Wolf, Anna W. M.: Discipline: The Role of Punishment and Reward, *National Parent Teacher*, 45:11-13, 1950.
- Wrightstone, J. Wayne: Measuring the Social Climate of a Classroom, *Journal of Educational Research*, 44:341-351, 1951.
- Young, Lyle L., and Dan H. Cooper: Some Factors Associated with Popularity, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 35:513-535, 1944.

**GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF MENTAL CAPACITY,  
GENERAL INTELLIGENCE, INDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES,  
HEREDITY-ENVIRONMENT, SCHOOL PROGRESS AND GUIDANCE**

- Adams, F. J.: College Degrees and Elementary-school Intelligence Quotients, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 31:360-368, 1940.
- Anastasi, Anne, and John P. Foley, Jr.: *Differential Psychology*, The Macmillan Company, New York, 1949.
- Baker, Harry J.: *Introduction to Exceptional Children*, rev. ed., The Macmillan Company, New York, 1953.
- Bayley, Nancy: Consistency and Variability in the Growth of Intelligence from Birth to Eighteen Years, *Pedagogical Seminary*, 75:165-196, 1949.
- Belding, R. E.: Cleveland's Child Progress Plan, *Journal of Education*, 129:88-90, 1946.
- Benson, Viola E.: The Intelligence and Later Scholastic Success of Sixth-grade Pupils, *School and Society*, 55:163-167, 1942.
- Blaha, M. J.: Meeting Individual Differences, *National Association of Secondary School Principals Bulletin*, 34:97-108, 1950.
- Bradway, K. P.: An Experimental Study of Factors Associated with Stanford-Binet I.Q. Changes from the Preschool to the Junior High School, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 66:107-128, 1945.
- Brayfield, Arthur H. (ed.): *Readings in Modern Methods of Counseling*, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Conrad, H. S., F. N. Freeman, and H. E. Jones: Differential Mental Growth, *Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education*, 43:164-184, 1944.
- Cooke, Edward W.: Ability Grouping, *Bulletin of the National Association of Secondary School Principals*, 36:79-83, 1952.
- Corey, Stephen M., and others: Grouping Children: A Discussion, *Educational Leadership*, 4:365-373, 1947.
- Dolbear, Amos E.: Antediluvian Education, *Journal of Education*, 68:424, 1908.
- Dressel, P. L., and W. A. Mann: Appraisal of the Individual, *Review of Educational Research*, 21:115-131, 1951.
- Eells, Kenneth, Allison Davis, Robert J. Havighurst, Virgil E. Herrick, and Ralph Tyler: *Intelligence and Cultural Differences*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1951.
- Erickson, Clifford E.: *The Counseling Interview*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Forty-ninth Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education, Part II, The Education of Exceptional Children, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1950.
- Freeman, Frank S.: *Theory and Practice of Psychological Testing*, Henry Holt and Company, Inc., New York, 1950.

- Galton, Francis: *Hereditary Genius*, Macmillan & Co., Ltd., London, 1869.
- Gates, Arthur I., and David H. Russel: The Effects of Delaying Beginning Reading a Half Year in the Case of Underprivileged Pupils with I.Q.'s 75-95, *Journal of Educational Research*, 32:321-328, 1939.
- Gerlach, D.: Treating Individual Differences in Texas Schools, *Social Education*, 10:298-300, 1946.
- Gilliland, A. R.: Socio-economic Status and Race as Factors in Infant Intelligence Scores, *Child Development*, 22:271-273, 1951.
- Goddard, H. H.: *The Kollikak Family*, The Macmillan Company, New York, 1912.
- Goodenough, F. L., and K. M. Mauer: The Mental Growth of Children from Two to Fourteen Years: A Study of the Predictive Value of the Minnesota Preschool Scales, *University of Minnesota Child Welfare Monograph Series*, 20, 1942.
- Gordon, Hugh: Mental and Scholastic Tests among Retarded Children, *Educational Pamphlets* 44, Board of Education, London, 1923.
- Heck, Arch O.: *The Education of Exceptional Children*, 2d ed., McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1953.
- Hieronymus, A. N.: A Study of Class Motivation: Relationships between Anxiety for Education and Certain Socio-economic and Intellectual Variables, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 42:193-205, 1951.
- Hilden, A. H.: Longitudinal Study of Intellectual Development, *Journal of Psychology*, 28:187-214, 1949.
- Hildreth, Gertrude H.: *Educating Gifted Children*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1952.
- Joyce, H. A.: Democratic Education and Individual Potentialities, *High School Journal*, 35:8-11, 1951.
- Knapp, Robert H.: *Practical Guidance Methods for Counselors, Teachers and Administrators*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1953.
- Krug, Edward, and G. Lester Anderson: "Adapting Instruction in the Social Studies to Individual Differences," *Fifteenth Yearbook of the National Council for the Social Studies*, 1944.
- Lehman, H. C.: Some Examples of Creative Achievement during Maturity and Old Age, *Journal of Social Psychology*, 30:49-79, 1949.
- Luchins, Abraham S. and Edith H. Luchins: Children's Attitudes toward Homogeneous Groupings, *Journal of Genetic Psychology*, 72:3-9, 1948.
- Mandelbaum, D. G.: Wolf-child Histories from India, *Journal of Social Psychology*, 17:25-44, 1943.
- Martens, E. H.: Gifted Children: What Do We Know about Them? What Should We Do about Them? *Nation's Schools*, 47:31-34, 1951.
- Miller, W. S.: "The Classification of 6A Pupils into Ability Groups," *Proceedings of the Minnesota Society for the Study of Education*, 1924.
- Morris, Glyn: *Practical Guidance Methods for Principals and Teachers*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1952.
- Nagge, J. W.: *Psychology of the Child: Mental and Physical Growth*, The Ronald Press Company, New York, 1942.
- Nature and Nurture, *Twenty-seventh Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education*, Public School Publishing Company, Bloomington, Ill., 1928.
- Nemezek, Claude L.: The Constancy of the I.Q., *Psychological Bulletin*, 30:143-168, 1933.
- Newman, Horatio H., Frank N. Freeman, and Karl J. Holzinger: *Twins: A Study of Heredity and Environment*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1937.
- Ojemann, R. H., K. C. Garrison, and K. Jensen: Mental Development from Birth to Maturity, *Review of Educational Research*, 11:502-530, 1941.
- Oliver, Albert I., Jr.: Administrative Problems in Educating the Gifted, *Nation's Schools*, 48:44-46, 1951.

- Terman, L. M., and others: *Mental and Physical Traits of a Thousand Gifted Children*, *Genetic Study of Genius*, Vol. I, Stanford University Press, Stanford University, Calif., 1925.
- Theis, Sophie Van Senden: *How Foster Children Turn Out*, *New York Publications* 165, State Charities Aid Association, 1924.
- Thurstone, Thelma G., and Katherine M. Byrne: *Mental Abilities of Children*, Science Research Associates, Chicago, 1951.
- Thorndike, R. L.: Community Variables as Predictors of Intelligence and Academic Achievement, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 42:321-380, 1951.
- Thurstone, T. G.: Testing Primary Mental Abilities, *National Education Association Journal*, 39:346-347, 1950.
- Topp, R. F.: How Far Can We Trust the I.Q.? *Grade Teacher*, 68:18-19, 1950.
- Tyler, Leona: *The Psychology of Human Differences*, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., New York, 1947.
- Waterhouse, J. A. H.: Heredity and Environment in Relation to Education, *Yearbook of Education*, 1950:90-116.
- Wechsler, David: *The Range of Human Capacities*, 2d ed., The Williams & Wilkins Company, Baltimore, 1952.
- Willcockson, M.: How Ability Groups Improve Social Climate, *Education Digest*, 12: 28-31, 1946.
- Williamson, E. G.: *Counseling Adolescents*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1950.
- Wilson, F. T.: Evidence about Acceleration of Gifted Youth, *School and Society*, 73:409-410, 1951.
- Winship, A. E.: *Jukes-Edwards: A Study in Education and Heredity*, Meyers, Harrisburg, 1900.
- Woolf, Maurice D., and Jeanne A. Woolf: *The Student Personnel Program*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1953.

## LEARNING

- Aiken, W. W.: *The Story of the Eight Year Study*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1942.
- Ansbacher, H. L.: On the Permanence of College Learning, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 31:622-624, 1940.
- Arai, T.: Mental Fatigue, *Columbia University Contributions to Education* 54, 1912.
- Barlow, M. C.: Transfer of Training in Reasoning, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 28:122-128, 1937.
- Barmack, J. E.: The Time of Administration and Some Effects of Two Grains of Alkaloid Caffeine, *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 27:690-698, 1940.
- Barr, A. S.: *Characteristic Differences in the Teaching Performance of Good and Poor Teachers of the Social Studies*, Public School Publishing Company, Bloomington, Ill., 1929.
- Bassett, S. J.: "Retention of History in Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Grades with Special Reference to the Factors That Influence Retention," *Johns Hopkins University Studies in Education*, 1928.
- Bates, R. L.: The Effects of Cigar and Cigarette Smoking on Certain Psychological and Physiological Functions, *Journal of Comparative Psychology*, 2:371-424, 1922.
- Benezet, L. P.: The Story of an Experiment, *Journal of the National Education Association*, 24:241-244, 301-303, 1935; 25:7-8, 1936.
- Berrien, F. K., J. L. Kennedy, and D. L. Carmel: How Quickly Do Students Start Studying? *School and Society*, 55:482-483, 1942.
- Bills, A. G.: Blocking—A New Principle of Mental Fatigue, *American Journal of Psychology*, 43:230-245, 1931.
- Bills, Arthur G.: *The Psychology of Efficiency*, Harper & Brothers, New York, 1943.
- Bird, Charles, and Dorothy M. Bird: *Learning More by Effective Study*, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., New York, 1945.

- Briggs, L. J., and H. B. Reed: The Curve of Retention for Substance Material, *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 32:513-517, 1943.
- Brinkley, S. G.: Mental Activity in College Classes (student estimate of relative value of 10 learning situations), *Journal of Educational Research*, 46:535-542, 1953.
- Brown, C. W.: The Study Habits of Failing and Successful Students in the First Two Years of College, *Journal of Experimental Education*, 9:205-208, 1941.
- Brown, E. M.: Better Shop Teaching When Shop Film, Know Your Hand Tools, Is Used, *Industrial Arts and Vocational Education*, 40:338-340, 1951.
- Burnstead, A. P.: Finding the Best Method for Memorizing, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 34:110-114, 1943.
- Burnham, W. H.: The Effect of Tobacco on Mental Efficiency, *Pedagogical Seminary*, 24:297-317, 1917.
- Burton, W. H.: *The Guidance of Learning Activities*, 2d ed., Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., New York, 1952.
- Carl, G. P., and W. D. Turner: The Effects of Benzedrine Sulfate (Amphetamine Sulfate) on Performance in a Comprehensive Psychometric Examination, *Journal of Psychology*, 8:165-216, 1939.
- Carter, Harold D.: Emotional Correlates of Errors in Learning, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 27:55-67, 1936.
- Carter, Harold D.: Correlation between Intelligence Tests, Study Methods Tests, and Marks in a College Course, *Journal of Psychology*, 30:333-340, 1950.
- Carter, Harold D.: Methods of Learning as Factors in the Prediction of School Success, *Journal of Psychology*, 26:249-258, 1948.
- Clark, Brant, and Neil Warren: A Photographic Study of Reading during a Sixty-five-hour Vigil, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 31:383-390, 1940.
- Collings, Ellsworth: *An Experiment with a Project Curriculum*, The Macmillan Company, New York, 1926.
- Cook, T. W.: Repetition and Learning, Stimulus and Response, *Psychological Review*, 51:25-36, 1944.
- Davis, R. A.: Helping the Learner to Help Himself, *Education*, 72:252-256, 1951.
- Davis, Robert A., and C. C. Moore: Methods of Measuring Retention, *Journal of General Psychology*, 12:144-153, 1935.
- Deese, James E.: *The Psychology of Learning*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, 1952.
- Digna, Sister M.: An Integrated Program of Remedial Reading, *Journal of Higher Education*, 13:207-211, 1942.
- DiMichael, Salvatore G.: Increase in Knowledge of How to Study Resulting from a How-to-study Course, *School Review*, 51:353-359, 1943.
- DiMichael, Salvatore G.: The Transfer Effects of a How-to-study Course upon Different I.Q. Levels and Various Academic Subjects, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 34:166-175, 1943.
- Drought, N. E.: Measuring Success in College of Students from Experimental High Schools, *School Review*, 49:349-358, 1941.
- Duncan, C. P., and others: How the Poorer Student Studies, A Research Report, *Journal of Educational Research*, 45:287-292, 1951.
- Dunlap, Knight: *Habits: Their Making and Unmaking*, Liveright Publishing Corp., New York, 1932.
- Dunlap, Knight: Repetition in the Breaking of Habits, *Scientific Monthly*, 30:66-71, 1930.
- Dunlap, Knight: The Technique of Negative Practice, *American Journal of Psychology*, 55:270-273, 1942.
- Edwards, A. S.: Effects of the Loss of One Hundred Hours of Sleep, *American Journal of Psychology*, 54:80-91, 1941.



- Fitch, Mildred L., A. J. Drucker, and J. A. Norton, Jr.: Frequent Testing as a Motivating Factor in Large Lecture Classes, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 42:1-20, 1951.
- Forty-eighth Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education, Part I, Audio-visual Materials of Instruction, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1949.
- Forty-ninth Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education, Part I, Learning and Instruction, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1950.
- Freeman, F. N.: Visual Education from a Twenty-five Year Perspective, *Educational Screen*, 25:15-16, 1946.
- Geyer, D. L.: The Results of Activity Instruction: An Interpretation of Published Findings, *Journal of Educational Research*, 30:188-197, 1936.
- Guthrie, E. R.: *The Psychology of Learning*, rev. ed., Harpers & Brothers, New York, 1953.
- Harap, Henry, and Charlotte E. Mapes: The Learning of the Fundamentals in an Arithmetic Program, *Elementary School Journal*, 34:515-526, 1934.
- Heilman, J. D.: Student Employment and Student Class Load, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 30:527-532, 1939.
- Hendrickson, Gordon, and William H. Schroeder: Transfer of Training in Learning to Hit a Submerged Target, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 32:205-213, 1941.
- Hildreth, G. H.: Role of Experimental Learning in the Education of Teachers, *Journal of Teacher Education*, 2:180-184, 1951.
- Hilgard, Ernest R.: *Theories of Learning*, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., New York, 1948.
- Hollingsworth, H. L.: The Influence of Alcohol, *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*, 18:204-237, 311-333, 1923-1924.
- Hollingsworth, H. L.: The Influence of Caffeine on Mental and Motor Efficiency, *Archives of Psychology*, 3(22), 1912.
- Hull, C. L.: The Influence of Caffeine and Other Factors on Certain Phenomena of Rote Learning, *Journal of General Psychology*, 13:249-273, 1935.
- Hurlock, Elizabeth B.: An Evaluation of Certain Incentives Used in School Work, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 16:145-159, 1925.
- Hurlock, Elizabeth B.: The Use of Group Rivalry as an Incentive, *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*, 22:278-290, 1927-1928.
- Jensen, Milton B., and Lemaire A. Jensen: Ten Experiments on Whole and Part Learning, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 28:37-54, 1937.
- Johnson, P. O.: The Permanence of Learning in Elementary Botany, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 21:37-47, 1930.
- Kingsley, Howard L.: *The Nature and Conditions of Learning*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1946.
- Kinney, Lucien, and Katharine Dresden: *Better Learning through Current Material*, rev. ed., Stanford University Press, Stanford University, Calif., 1952.
- Klugman, S. F.: The Effect of Money Incentive versus Praise upon the Reliability and Obtained Scores of the Revised Stanford Binet Test, *Journal of General Psychology*, 30:255-269, 1944.
- Koffka, Kurt: *Gestalt Psychology*, Harcourt, Brace and Company, Inc., New York, 1935.
- Köbler, Wolfgang: *Gestalt Psychology*, Liveright Publishing Corp., New York, 1947.
- Lahey, Sister M. Florence Louise: Permanence of Retention of First Year Algebra, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 32:401-413, 1941.
- Laycock, S. R., and D. H. Russell: An Analysis of Thirty-eight How-to-study Manuals, *School Review*, 49:370-379, 1941.
- Leavitt, H. J.: The Relation of Speed of Learning to Amount Retained and to Reminiscence, *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 35:134-140, 1945.
- Leonard, J. P., and A. C. Eurich: *An Evaluation of Modern Education*, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., New York, 1942.

- Sorenson, Herbert: *Adult Abilities in Extension Classes*, University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, 1933.
- Stadtlander, Elizabeth L.: *Planning to Study Efficiently*, Educational Publisher, St. Louis, 1950.
- Stainer, W. J.: Rate of Work in Schools, *British Journal of Psychology*, 19:439-451, 1929.
- Stolurow, Lawrence M. (ed.): *Readings in Learning*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1953.
- Swenson, Esther J., Lester G. Anderson, and Chalmers L. Stacey: *Learning Theory in School Situations*, University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis, 1949.
- Symonds, Percival M., and Doris Harter Chase: Practice vs. Motivation, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 20:19-35, 1929.
- Thelen, H. A.: Experimental Research toward a Theory of Instruction, *Journal of Educational Research*, 45:89-136, 1951.
- Thompson, G. G., and C. W. Hunnicutt: The Effect of Repeated Praise or Blame on the Work Achievement of Introverts and Extroverts, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 35:257-266, 1944.
- Thorndike, E. L.: *The Fundamentals of Learning*, Columbia University Press, New York, 1932.
- Thorndike, E. L.: Mental Discipline in High School Subjects, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 15:1-22, 83-98, 1924.
- Thorndike, E. L., and G. J. Roger: The Effect of First-year Latin upon Range in English Vocabulary, *School and Society*, 17:82-84, 1923.
- Thorndike, R. L., J. J. Loftus, and B. Goldman: Observations of Excursions in Activity and Control Schools, *Journal of Experimental Education*, 10:146-149, 1941.
- Tilton, J. W.: *Educational Psychology of Learning*, The Macmillan Company, New York, 1951.
- Travis, R. C.: Length of the Practice Period and Efficiency in Motor Learning, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 24:339-345, 1939.
- Traxler, A. E.: The Improvement of Study, *School Review*, 53:286-293, 1945.
- Tresselt, M. L., and Milton Richlin: Differential Prognosis in a College Study Methods Course, *Journal of Psychology*, 31:81-89, 1951.
- Trow, William C.: Growth, Development, Learning, and Maturation as Factors in Curriculum and Teaching, *Review of Educational Research*, 21:186-195, 1951.
- Underwood, B. J.: Studies of Distributed Practice: Learning and Retention of Paired-adjective Lists with Two Levels of Intra-list Similarity, *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 42:153-161, 1951.
- Underwood, B. J.: Studies of Distributed Practice: Learning and Retention of Paired Adjectives as a Function of Intra-list Similarity, *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 45:143-149, 1953.
- Vaughn, James, and Charles M. Diserens: The Experimental Psychology of Competition, *Journal of Experimental Education*, 7:76-97, 1938.
- Vernon, M. D.: Visual Presentation of Factual Data, *British Journal of Educational Psychology*, 20:174-185, 1950.
- Walsh, W. J.: Are We Using or Abusing Educational Films in Our Junior High Science Classes? *School Science and Mathematics*, 51:473-478, 1951.
- Wittenborn, J. R.: Classes in Remedial Reading and Study Habits, *Journal of Educational Research*, 37:571-586, 1944.
- Word, A. H., and R. A. Davis: Acquisition and Retention of Factual Information in Seventh Grade General Science during a Semester of Eighteen Weeks, *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 30:116-125, 1939.
- Wrightstone, J. W.: Evaluation of the Experiment with the Activity Program in New York City Elementary Schools, *Journal of Educational Research*, 38:252-257, 1944.
- Yearbook of the National Society for the Study of Education*, 41 (Parts 1 and 2), 1942.
- Zeiss, I. C.: Use of Film Strips in the Kindergarten, *American Childhoods*, 37:20-21, 1951.

## Text-films on Educational Psychology

### *Importance of Goals* (19 min. sd. MP)

Tommy is full of the natural curiosity of a thirteen-year-old who wants to know all about the world around him. But inside his ninth-grade class little challenge is offered to stimulate his desire to learn. Outside the classroom, however, he shows that he *can* learn when the desire to keep his small business flourishing provides the incentive to make him *want* to learn. His teacher, observing him in this natural learning situation, is made aware of Tommy's need for a specific goal. With the possibility of a post in the Safety Patrol, Tommy's schoolwork takes on a new meaning.

### *Motivating the Class* (19 min. sd. MP)

Bill, a young student teacher, is enthusiastic about his first class in geometry. He can see the wider implications of mathematics for his students but is unable to translate these values in terms they can understand. The class becomes bored and restive. In conference, his sympathetic supervising teacher guides Bill to plan for learning situations that will be of immediate concern to the class. The next day Bill makes a class focus of yesterday's distraction—the class works out, together, the speed of a jet plane. Bill encourages class competition by staging a contest featuring models of geometric figures. Class interest and achievement skyrocket together; for now learning situations are aimed toward goals each child can recognize as attainable and desirable.

### *Individual Differences* (23 min. sd. MP)

Roy is shy, a slow, deliberate learner, different from his classmates and different from his older, socially adept brother, whose example the teacher tries to have Roy emulate. After successive failures Miss Hart has a conference with Roy's parents, who provide her with a new approach to Roy's problems. Miss Hart realizes that everyone needs to succeed, most of all those individuals who have been accustomed to failure, and that individual differences must be met in terms of individual interests and capabilities. Miss Hart then demonstrates how she might have dealt with Roy from the beginning of the term—recognizing the signs of a shy child, praising him for his modest class contributions, making use of his musical talents in a dramatic presentation, and making him feel his own importance as a person.

*Problem of Pupil Adjustment. Part I, The Drop-out: A Case Study* (19 min. sd. MP)

Steve Martin should be graduating with his high-school class today, but instead he quit school after freshman year, and since then he has drifted from one mediocre job to another. Steve's is not an unusual case. He is only one of the high-school freshmen who quit school before graduation. Four years ago Steve was eager to begin high school. But classes turned out to be dull repetitions of textbook material, or they presented pointless, useless problems that Steve would never come up against in his out-of-school life. Even athletics were regimented. Steve left school as soon as the law allowed. A life-adjustment program, in which subjects are related to the natural interests of boys and girls and in which classes offer them the opportunity of individual participation, has become the answer to the drop-out problem in an increasing number of schools.

*Problem of Pupil Adjustment. Part II, The Stay-in: A School Study* (20 min. sd. MP)

This is the study of an actual school that holds an enviable record for reducing its drop-outs to less than 5 per cent of its total student population. It shows clearly what can be done to meet this problem when individual pupil needs are met in a school program that stresses learning in terms of adjustment to actual everyday living. We are shown classes in poultry raising, aviation fundamentals, and driving, where young people learn by doing. English, biology, and civics classes, too, are translated in terms of pupil experience and need. With this curriculum pupils see a relationship between their in-school and out-of-school lives, and the drop-out problem ceases to exist.

# Index

- Ability, abstract, 291
  - age and learning, 391-395
  - blood relationship and, 357-358
  - educational and mental test of, 366-367
  - intellectual, in adolescence, 322-323
  - motor and athletic, 94-95, 291-292
  - of soldiers from various states, 368-369
- Ability grouping and instruction, 330-335
- Achievement, atmospheric conditions and, 519-520
  - effect on, of group and working alone, 435
  - of praise and reproof, 435-439
  - of rivalry, 430-435
  - of threat of failure, 441-442
  - learning and, measurement of (*see* Tests)
- Achievement tests, 14-15
- Activity, desire for, 109-110
  - and project method, 342-343, 523-526
  - arithmetic taught by, 529-530, 532-534
  - covering of subject matter, 531-532
  - English and language, 530-531
  - experimental evidence, 526-532, 534-536
  - individual difference and, 342-343
  - personal development by, 535-536
  - progressive high schools, 534-535
- Adjustment, personal, 143-145
  - effect of physique and personality on, 166-169
  - individual differences in, 143-145, 170-171
  - of overprotected child, 159-160
  - of physically handicapped, 169
  - to school situation, 160-163
  - socioeconomic conditions and, 169-170
  - in the well adjusted, evidence of (*see* Mental health, improvement of)
  - (*See also* Personality, development of)
- Adolescence, 83-85
  - delinquency in, 214-216
  - intellectual abilities in, 322-323
- Adult ages and learning, 391-398
- Age, educational, 16
  - growth of mental ability with, 260-261
- Age, and learning ability, 391-392
  - mental, 249-253, 293-294
  - and social development, 210-211
- Alcohol, 145, 515-517
  - effect of, on efficiency, 515-517
- Aptitude tests, 309-310
- Associated learning, 419-420
- Associated response, 418-419
- Athletics and fatigue, 78-81
- Atmospheric conditions and achievement, 519-520
- Attention, 426-430
- Audiovisual aids, 444-446
- Behavior problems, and guidance, 171-173
  - seriousness of, 178-181
  - (*See also* Discipline)
- Beta hypothesis of learning, 417-418
- Body types and personality, 86-89
- Bond theory, 414-416
- Bonds and connections, 285
- Brain, growth of, 82-83
- Caffeine and learning, 515-517
- Capacity for learning (*see* Learning capacity)
- Catharsis, 129-130
- Central tendency, measures of, 6-11, 542
- Character and intelligence, 296-298
- Chromosomes, 350-351
- Classification tests, 10-11
- Compensation, 133-137
- Competition, 430-435
- Completion test, 9-10
- Complexes, 123-126
- Concave learning curve, 384-385
- Concomitant learning, 420-421
- Concrete intelligence, 291-292
- Conditioned reflex, 475
- Conflict, 137-138
- Congenital influences, 353-354
- Conscience, 126-127
- Control groups, 542-543
- Convex learning curve, 384-385

- Cooperation and learning, 431-435
- Correlation, 7-11, 312-313, 539-541
  - between mental test rating and school success, 310-313
  - motor and athletic ability, 94-95
  - between physical and mental growth, 90-93
- Cramming, 50
- Dalton plan, 343-344
- Daydreaming, 137-138
- Defense mechanisms, 145-146
- Delinquency, 214-216
- Digit span, 265
- Discipline, authoritarian and cooperative control, 174-175
  - and behavior, 171-173
  - methods and procedures, 176-178
  - punitive versus mental hygiene, 174-175
  - in school, 173-181
- Distribution of effort, 59-62
- Diversions, 130-131
- Drives (*see* Needs, wants, urges, drives, and motives)
- Drugs and learning, 513-519
- Dunlap's hypothesis of learning, 416-417
- Economic security, 103-104
- Ectomorph, 88
- Educational age, 16-17
- Educational quotients, 16-17
- Effect, principle of, 407-411
- Efficiency and mental fatigue, effect on, of
  - alcohol, 515-517
  - of caffeine, 517-519
  - of drugs, 513
  - of factors causing fatigue, 509-512
  - of humidity, 519-520
  - of loss of sleep, 506-509
  - of "pep pills," 517-519
  - of physical condition, 509-512
  - of strychnine, 517-519
  - of temperature, 519-520
  - of tobacco, 514
  - during school day, 499-506
- Ego value, 105-107
- Egocentricity, 192, 213-214
- Endomorph, 88
- Enrichment, 342
- Environment (*see* Heredity and environment)
- Escape mechanisms, 145-146
- Essay-type examination, 2-5
- Examinations (*see* Tests)
- Experimental and control groups, 542-543
- Extra promotion, 340-342
- Extrovert, 220, 221, 223, 438-439
- Fantasy, 137-138
- Fatigue, 78-81, 163-164, 499-512
  - athletics and, 78-81
  - mental, efficiency and (*see* Efficiency and mental fatigue)
  - mental health and, 163-164
- Foster children, 361
- Freedom, desire for, 111-112
- Freud, 112-113
- Friends and friendships, 221-227
- Frustration, 114-115, 146-148
- General factor, 286
- Generalization, theory of, 473, 479
- Genes, 350-352
- Genitals, growth of, 83
- Gestalt principle of learning, 414-416
- Gifted children, 255-256, 294-300
- Grades (*see* Reporting achievement and adjustment of pupils)
- Gregariousness, 104
- Group tests, 243-249
- Growth and development, meaning of,
  - 68-69
  - mental, 258-277
    - age, and ability, 260-261
    - of maturity, 272-273
    - correlation with physical, 90-92, 259-260
    - general, 267-269
    - intelligence and constancy of I.Q., 269-272
    - during maturity, 273-274
    - memory, 264-265
    - readiness, 274-275
    - thinking ability, 265-267
    - vocabulary, 261-264
  - physical, 66-99
    - abilities and, 92-95
    - adolescence, 83-84
    - athletic and motor abilities, correlation of, 94-95
    - before birth, 69-70
    - body proportions, 77-78
    - body structures, 81-84
    - correlation with mental, 90-92
    - ectomorph, 88
    - effect on personality, 86-90
    - endomorph, 88
    - general, 70-75
    - health, 76-81
    - height, 72-74, 76
    - prediction of adult, 85-86

- Intelligence tests (*see* Tests)
- Interest, 427-428, 440-441, 444-446
- Introverts, 223, 238-239
- I.Q. (*see* Intelligence quotient)
- Isolates, 230
- Knowledge of results and learning, 439-440
- Leadership, 219-221
- Learning, and achievement, measurement of (*see* Tests)
- activity and project method (*see* Activity)
- adult, 395-398
- age and ability for, 391-392
- associated, 419-420
- atmospheric conditions and, 519-520
- caffeine and, 515-517
- capacity for (*see* Learning capacity)
- complexity of, 402-403
- concomitant, 420-421
- cooperation and, 431-435
- curves of, concave, 384-385  
concave-convex, 382-384  
convex, 384-385
- drugs and, 513-519
- fatigue and (*see* Fatigue)
- hierarchical organization, 386-387
- knowledge of results and, 439-440
- limits and levels of, 389-391
- maturation and, 392-395
- meaning of, 380
- plateaus of, 385-389
- praise and, 435-439
- principles of, 403-409, 414-419  
associated response, 418-419  
Dunlap's hypothesis, 416-417  
beta theory, 417-418
- effect, 407-409  
negative, 409-411  
satisfiers and annoyers, 411
- exercise use and disuse, 304-307
- gestalt, 414-416
- logical, 421
- negative practice, 417-418
- pleasant and unpleasant, 411-414
- primary, 419
- psychological, 421
- readiness, 405-407  
(*See also* Individual differences)
- rivalry in, 430-435
- sleep and, 506-509
- training and, 392-395
- transfer of (*see* Transfer of learning)
- use of these ideas by teacher, 391
- variations in, and performance, 381-382
- Learning capacity, measurement of, mental tests, 237
- development of, 238-240
- feeble-mindedness, 254-255
- intelligence quotients, 249-254
- intelligence tests, group, 243-249
- mental age, 249-253
- nature of, 242-243
- norms and standards, 249
- Stanford Binet revised, 240-242
- very superior, 255-256  
(*See also* Tests)
- and retention, 455-456  
in adulthood, 273-274
- and school progress, 304-305
- aptitude and guidance, 309-310
- correlation, meaning of, 312-313
- grade placement and capacities, 306-307
- intelligence and school subjects, 307-308
- predicting of ability of child, 305-306
- readiness, 309
- school success and mental-test rating,  
correlation of, 310-313  
I.Q., and school level, 313-317  
and school subjects, 317-319
- variation in, 319-323  
classes of same school, 319-320  
different schools, 320-323  
university departments, 319  
(*See also* Growth and development, mental)
- Left-handedness, 95-97
- Leptosome, 88
- Limits and levels of learning, 389-391
- Maladjustment, and health, 142-145, 149-150  
in the home, 159-160  
of teachers, characteristics of, 192  
(*See also* Mental health)
- Malingering, 142-143
- Marks (*see* Reporting achievements and adjustment of pupils)
- Matching tests, 8-9
- Maturation, mental, 260-261, 273-274  
and social, 210-213, 219-221, 233-234, 392-395  
physical, 75-76, 92-94
- Mean, 5-10, 542
- Meaningfulness and retention, 454-455
- Measurement of learning and achievement  
(*see* Tests)
- Mechanical intelligence, 291-292
- Median, 5-10, 542
- Memory, 449

Needs, wants, urges, drives, and motives,  
 avoidance of pain, 107-109  
 definitions of, 101-102  
 economic security, 103-104  
 freedom and liberty, 111-112  
 frustration, 114-115  
 health, 107-109  
 personal worth, 105-107  
 relationship of, 114  
 security, of life, 102-103  
   social, 104-105  
 sex drive, 112-113  
 stimulation and activity, 109-111  
 understanding of, 113-114  
 Negativism, 145  
 Neglectees, 230  
 Nervous habits, 149-150  
 Neurotic tendencies, 149-150  
 Norms and standards, 249  
   age, 15  
   standardized tests, 15  
 Objective examinations (*see* Tests)  
 Occupational status, 290  
 Overcompensation, 135-136  
 Overconcern, 119-123  
 Overprotection, 159-160  
 Pain, desire to avoid, 107-109  
 Part method of learning, 51-54  
 Performance, 380  
 Personal adjustment (*see* Adjustment)  
 Personal worth, desire for, 105-107  
 Personality, and ability, 296-298  
   problems centering on self, 125  
   of teachers, 193-194, 199-201  
   (*See also* Mental health, and emotional health)  
   development of, 153  
   fatigue and work, 163-164  
   habits, 158-159  
   influence of teacher, 161-163  
   maladjustment, 159-160  
   overprotection, 159-160  
   physique, 86-89, 166-169  
   school and personal relationship, 160-163  
   (*See also* Adjustment; Mental health, improvement of)  
 Physical development (*see* Growth and development)  
 Physical growth (*see* Growth and development)  
 Physiological limit, 389-390  
 Plus gestures, 145-146  
 "Pollyanna," 132-133  
 Praise and learning, 435-439

Primary mental abilities, 286-288  
 Procrastination, 42-43, 140  
 Project method (*see* Activity)  
 Projection, 132  
 Psychiatrist, 119  
 Psychosomatic illness, 142  
 Puberty, 84

Quotient, accomplishment or achievement,  
 17  
   educational, 16-17  
   intelligence (*see* Intelligence quotient)

Rationalization, 131-133  
 Readiness, 75-76, 92-94, 260-261, 274-275, 391-395, 405-407  
 Reading ability, improvement of, 57-58  
 Recall test, 11  
 Recognition, 11  
 Regression, 352  
 Rejectees, 330  
 Reporting achievement and adjustment of pupils, 21-39  
   conferences, teacher-parent, 37-38  
   distribution of marks, guides for, 29-32  
   guidance, 37-38  
   importance of marks, 27-29  
   modified marking system, 33-38  
   standards for marking, 23-24, 29-32  
   undesirable effects of marking, 33-35  
   variability, among departments, 26  
     among schools, 26-27  
     among teachers, 24-26  
 Repression, 127-129  
 Response, associated, 418-419  
 Retention (*see* Memory)  
 Retroactive inhibition, 453-454  
 Right-handedness, 95-97  
 Rivalry in learning, 430-435

Scholarship and study habits, 54-56  
 School and social development, 217-219  
 School success and learning capacity (*see* Learning capacity, and school progress)  
 Security, economic, 103-104  
   of life, 102-103  
   social, 104-105  
 Self-preservation, 102-103  
 Sex differences, physical development of, 70-75  
 Sex glands, 83  
 Sex urge, 112-113  
 Sleep and learning, 506-509  
 Social development (*see* Growth and development, social)



- Social intelligence, 292  
 Sociodrama, 232-233  
 Socioeconomic status, 221, 224-226, 233-284  
 Sociogram, 230-232  
 Sociometrics, 227-230  
 Specific factor, 286  
 Standard deviation, 5, 7, 8, 541-542  
 Standardized achievement tests, 14-17  
 Standards and norms, 15-16  
 Stanford Binet revision, 240-243  
 Stars, 230  
 Statistical measures, 5-11, 539-543  
 Stimulation, desire for, 109-111  
 Strychnine and learning, 517  
 Studying effectively, 40-65  
   distractions, 43-44  
   distribution of time, 59-62  
   employment and achievement, 63  
   examinations, preparing for, 50-51  
   load and learning, 62-63  
   methods, of learning, 47-54  
     of teaching, effect of, 41-42, 46-47  
     whole and part, 51-54  
   preparation of lesson, 44-50  
   and scholarship, 54-62  
   supervision, 56-58  
   system, 41-43  
 Sublimation, 130-131  
 Suppression, 127-129  
 "Sweet lemon," 132-133
- Teachers, effect of, on mental health of  
   pupils, 161-163  
   as environment, 375-376  
   maladjustment and health of, 192  
   mental health of (*see* Mental health)  
   personality and ability of, 193-194, 199-201  
 Temper tantrums, 140-142  
 Tensions, 148-149  
 Tests, aptitude, 309-310  
   educational, 2-19  
     achievement, standardized, 14-17  
     essay-type, 2-5  
     objective (short-answer, new-type), 2, 5-14  
   Tests, educational, objective (short-answer, new-type), desirable features, 12  
     disadvantages, 13-14  
     matching, 8-9  
     multiple-choice, 7-8  
     recall, 11  
     true-false, 5-7  
     study and nature of, 59  
     value of, 17-19  
   intelligence, culture-free, 284  
     group, 243-249  
     validity of, 288-289  
     (*See also* Learning capacity)  
   mental, 288-289  
   Stanford Binet revised, 240-243  
 Transfer of learning, according to mental  
   ability, 479-482  
   amount of, 485-486  
   based on school, 472-473  
   curriculum and teaching methods, 471, 486-492  
   definition of, 468-471  
   experimental evidence of, 475-478, 485-486, 489-491  
   generalization, theory of, 473-479  
   how to achieve, 486-494  
   identical elements, 469, 478-479  
   and mental discipline, 468-471  
     achievement of, 494-496  
   methods of teaching and, 485-494  
   school subjects and, 482-485  
 True-false test, 5-7  
 Twins, identical, 363-366
- Urges (*see* Needs, wants, urges, drives, and motives)  
 Use and abuse, principle of, 403-405
- Variability, measure of, 541-542
- Wants (*see* Needs, wants, urges, drives and motives)  
 Whole and part methods, 51-54  
 Worry, 119-123